



CITY OF  
**Polokwane**  
NATURALLY PROGRESSIVE

**DRAFT IDP STATUS QUO ANALYSIS  
REPORT**

**2023/24**



# Table of content

(i)List of Acronyms .....	27
<b>Chapter One: Introduction</b> .....	33
1.1 Analysis Phase .....	33
1.2 The Outputs of the Analysis Phase: .....	33
1.3 Status Quo Analysis per KPA.....	34
<b>CHAPTER Two: Spatial Planning and Land Use Analysis</b> .....	35
2. SPATIAL RATIONALE .....	35
2.1 Strategic Location of Polokwane City .....	35
2.1.1 Map of Limpopo Province (Polokwane Strategic Location).....	35
2.1.2 City of Polokwane Entrance .....	36
2.1.3 The main 7 Clusters of settlements in Polokwane.....	37
2.2 REGIONAL CONTEXT.....	39
2.3 HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT .....	40
2.3.1 National and International legislative guides and programme .....	42
2.4 SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT TOOLS/LUMS .....	42
2.4.1 Town planning and Township Ordinance, Ordinance 15 of 1986 (to be repealed).....	43
2.4.2 Proclamation R293 of 1962 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927) .....	43
2.4.3. Proclamation R188 of 1969 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927) .....	43
2.4.4 Local Government Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000. ....	44
2.4.5 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013.....	44
2.5. THE PURPOSE OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT ACT (SPLUMA) ....	47
2.5.1 SPLUMA implementation Progress .....	47
2.6 Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS).....	47
2.7. MUNICIPAL PLANNING BY-LAW 2017 .....	48
2.8. POLOKWANE URBAN RENEWAL STRATEGY (URS) AND CBD DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2016.....	49
2.9. GROWTH POINT ANALYSIS.....	50
2.10. MUNICIPAL LAND ANALYSES.....	51
2.11. LAND CLAIMS ANALYSIS .....	52
2.12. LAND AVAILABILITY ANALYSIS.....	52
2.13. LAND INVASIONS COURT ORDERS .....	54
2.14. SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND INTERVENTIONS.....	55
2.14.1 General challenges and Intervention.....	57

2.15. SPATIAL INTERPRETATION OF THE POLOKWANE MUNICIPALITY .....	59
2.15.1 Key guiding policies and municipal By-laws.....	59
2.15.2 Economic opportunities and growth .....	59
2.16. RURAL DEVELOPMENT.....	60
2.17. URBAN DEVELOPMENT .....	61
2.17.1 Integrated Urban Development Framework Plan.....	61
2.18 ECONOMIC SPIN-OFF DEVELOPMENTS.....	62
2.18.1 Baobab Gardens Motor City .....	62
2.18.2 Eskom Regional Offices .....	64
2.18.3 Polokwane International Convention Centre (PICC).....	66
2.18.4 Urban Renewal projects.....	67
2.18.5 City wide Development initiatives .....	70
2.18.6 Commercialisation of Municipal Facilities/Properties.....	72
2.18.7 Metropolitan Municipal Requirements .....	72
2.18.8. ROAD MAP TO METRO .....	74
2.19. IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR STUDENT ACCOMMODATION.....	74
2.20 LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY CONTEXT.....	75
2.21 Catalytic Land Development Programme in support of the CEF. ....	76
2.21.1 Science Park .....	77
2.21.2 Arts and Cultural Hub.....	77
2.21.3 Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor.....	77
2.21.4 Agro processing.....	78
2.21.5 TOD precinct .....	78
2.21.6 Softball stadium .....	78
2.21.7 Post incubation Hub.....	78
2.21.8 Academic Hospital.....	79
2.21.9 Eco-Estate at Game reserve .....	79
2.22 Progress on priority/ Catalytic Land Development Programme.....	79
2.23 Progress with the implementation of Circular 88.....	81
2.24 Intergovernmental Planning .....	82
2.24.1 Intergovernmental Projects in progress .....	82
2.24.2 Pilot Projects for Inter-Governmental Planning.....	83
2.25 IUDF Implementation to Date.....	84
2.25.1 CEF Modules Progress Status Quo. ....	84

2.25.2 Capital Expenditure Frameworks (CEF) Status Quo .....	84
2.26 IUDG Process Roadmap followed. ....	85
2.26.1 CEF Success and Challenges .....	86
2.26.2 Impact of the adjustments budget on CEF priority projects.....	86
2.26.3 IUDF Levers .....	86
2.26.4 District Development Model (DDM) Progress .....	86
2.27 Challenges experienced in endeavor to seek integration and collaboration .....	87
2.28 Approved Land for New Leases .....	87
2.29 Sales of sites –City Planning and Properties .....	87
2.30 Progress Report on Aganang Township Land .....	88
2.31 CORPORATE GEO-INFORMATICS .....	88
2.31.1. INTEGRATED GIS SYSTEM.....	89
2.31.2 Modules that form part of the integrated GIS System .....	90
2.31.3 Challenges and Intervention of GIS.....	91
2.31.4 Successes of Corporate Geo-Informatics SBU .....	91
2.31.5 Role of GIS in the City of Polokwane.....	92
2.32 Economic Development and Tourism.....	93
2.32.1 Introduction .....	93
2.32.2 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy .....	93
2.32.3 Highlights of the Local Economic Development Strategy:.....	94
2.33 Status Quo of Programs and Projects of Economic Development .....	94
2.33.1 Investment Promotion and Tourism.....	94
2.33.2 Types of Tourism industries found in Polokwane.....	95
2.34 Strategies used to promote Polokwane Municipality.....	95
2.34.1 Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC).....	95
2.34.2 Stakeholder relations.....	96
2.34.3 Tourism Development .....	97
2.35 Marketing.....	97
2.36 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT .....	97
2.36.1 Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre.....	98
2.36.2 INCUBATION PROGRAMME AND ITS BENEFITS .....	98
2.36.3 BUSINESS SUPPORT CENTRES .....	99
2.36.4 Business Compliance and Regulation .....	100
2.36.5 Economic Research and Development: .....	102



<b>CHAPTER Three: Housing and Human Settlements</b> .....	103
3.1 HUMAN SETTLEMENT STATUS QUO ANALYSIS.....	103
3.2 NEW DIRECTORATE: HUMAN SETTLEMENT.....	103
3.2.1. Housing Challenges.....	103
3.3 HUMAN SETTLEMENT STRATEGIC OVERVIEW.....	104
3.3.1 HUMAN SETTLEMENT PLAN.....	104
3.3.2 DEMAND VS SUPPLY.....	104
3.3.3 Priority Human Settlement Developments and Housing Development Areas (PHSHDA).....	105
3.4 legislative and policy frameworks.....	106
3.5 Challenges confronting sustainable human settlement.....	107
3.6 Housing Backlogs.....	107
3.7 Status of rental housing.....	108
3.8 Urban Housing Developments.....	109
3.9 Land availability and acquisition strategies.....	110
3.10 Informal Settlements Profile.....	111
3.10.1 Summary of informal settlements within the jurisdiction of the municipality.....	111
3.10.2 Juju Valley.....	112
3.10.3 Mamahule Settlement.....	112
3.10.4 Polokwane Extension 78.....	113
3.10.5 Response plan and project Prioritisation.....	114
3.10.6 Progress with the implementation of informal settlement upgrading.....	116
3.10.7 Good Story to tell for Council (EXT 78 Houses under Ward 08).....	116
3.10.8 Top 3 Priorities for the City of Polokwane in engaging informal settlements.....	118
3.11 Social/Rental Housing.....	118
3.12 Tenure Upgrading.....	119
3.13 Housing Accreditation.....	119
3.14 Priority Housing Development Areas (PHDA's).....	120
3.14.1 Purpose and objectives of Priority Housing Development Areas.....	120
3.15 Building Inspection.....	122
3.15.1 Building Inspection Key challenges.....	122
3.15.2 Building Inspection Required intervention.....	122
3.15.3 Legislation and Policy Perspective for Building Inspection.....	122
3.15.4 Services Rendered by building Inspections sub-unit.....	123
3.16 Housing Allocation Status Quo from 2016-2021 Status Quo.....	123

3.16.1 2016/17 Financial Year allocation, Completed and Outstanding .....	123
3.16.2 Rectification of 2016/17 Financial Year .....	124
3.16.3 Additional allocation during 2016/17 financial year.....	124
3.16.4 2017/18 allocation, Completed and Outstanding .....	124
3.16.5 Challenges Experienced During 2017/18 Housing Backlog and Allocations.....	124
3.16.6 2018/19 allocation, Completed and Outstanding (Urban Allocation) .....	125
3.16.7 2020/21 allocation, Completed and Outstanding (COGHSTA) .....	126
3.16.8 2020/21 (HDA) Replacement of Vharanani Projects for 2017/2018 Housing Backlog....	126
3.16.9 Summary of Allocation, completed and Outstanding.....	126
3.16.10 Challenges of projects started but not completed .....	127
3.17 Overall Housing Challenges.....	127
3.18 Military Veteran Housing Projects.....	128
3.19 City of Polokwane housing success over 25 years.....	128
3.20 Proposal for the walk-up RDP at extension Pietersburg 40.....	129
3.21 Relocation plan for 126 and 127.....	129
3.22 TITLE DEED REGISTRATIONS STATUS QUO .....	130
3.22.1 TITLE DEEDS RESTORATION .....	130
3.22.2 TITLE DEEDS RESTORATION LEGISLATION .....	130
3.22.3 Title Deed Status Quo for (Seshego; Westernburg; Ladanna; Mankweng and Sebayeng). .....	131
3.23 Low-cost housing (RDP) Summary.....	135
3.24 Extended Enhanced Discount Benefit System (EEDBS) .....	135
3.25 Challenges and Intervention for Human Settlement.....	135
3.26 List of Building Plans Received (2016 to date).....	137
3.27 List of Building Plans Approved (2016 to date).....	137
3.28 EXT 133 Allocation of Stands Status Quo.....	138
3.28.1 Scenarios suggested to address the Gap Markets Beneficiaries .....	139
3.28.2 Summary of sequence of event in respect of relocation of Ext 133 Beneficiaries .....	140
3.28.3 Challenges and intervention caused by delays in selling of site at Ext 133 .....	141
3.28.4 State of Engineering Services within Ext 133.....	141
3.28.5 Building Plans Submission.....	141
3.28.6 Encroachment that affect the development controls (coverage, FAR, Height, and building lines .....	142
3.28.7 Encroachment that effect the adjacent properties .....	142

3.29 Construction of RDP Houses to Ext. 133 – Top Structures .....	142
3.30 FLISP Programme .....	142
3.30.1 About FLISP program .....	142
3.30.2 How to apply for a FLISP Grant .....	142
3.30.3 Recommendation to be submitted to Council to deal with the Disposal of land.....	143
3.31 Polokwane Housing Association – PHA.....	144
3.31.1 Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna .....	144
3.31.2 Seshego CRU .....	145
3.32 New Project under Development .....	146
3.32.1 Ga-Rena Phase 2 .....	146
3.32.2 Ga-Rena Phase 2 Completed at Ladanna.....	147
3.33 PHA Projects and Year of Implementation .....	149
3.34 Designs of upcoming PHA key Projects.....	149
3.34.1 Phase 1-4 Student Accommodation Designs .....	149
3.34.2 Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing Designs .....	150
3.35 Land parcels earmarked for Development of New Projects.....	151
3.36 Proposed Development Options.....	151
3.37 PHA Key Success over the past 5 years.....	153
<b>CHAPTER Four – Economic Analysis</b> .....	153
4. INTRODUCTION .....	153
4.1. DEMOGRAPHY.....	154
4.1.1 Total Population.....	154
4.1.2 Population by population group, Gender and Age .....	156
4.1.3 Number of Households by Population Group.....	157
4.1.4 HIV+ and AIDS estimates.....	160
4.2 Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R) .....	163
4.3 Gross Value Added by Region (GVA-R) .....	167
4.4 Tress Index .....	177
4.5 Location Quotient .....	177
4.6. Labour .....	179
4.6.1 Economically Active Population (EAP) .....	179
4.6.2 Labour Force participation rate .....	181
4.6.3 Total Employment.....	183
4.6.4 Formal and Informal employment.....	185

4.6.5 Unemployment .....	187
4.7 Income and Expenditure .....	191
4.7.1 Number of Households by Income category .....	191
4.7.2 Annual total Personal Income.....	193
4.7.3 Annual per Capita Income.....	194
4.7.4 Index of Buying Power .....	196
4.8 Indicators of Development .....	198
4.8.1 Human Development Index (HDI).....	198
4.8.2 Gini Coefficient.....	199
4.8.3 Poverty .....	201
4.8.3 Poverty Gap Rate .....	204
4.8.4 Education .....	205
4.8.5 Functional literacy.....	208
4.8.6 Population Density.....	210
4.9 Crime Rate.....	212
4.9.1 IHS Composite Crime Index.....	212
4.9.2 Overall crime index .....	213
4.10 Tourism .....	214
4.10.1 Trips by purpose of trips .....	215
4.10.2 Origin of Tourists.....	216
4.10.3 Bed nights by origin of tourist.....	218
4.10.4 Tourism spending.....	220
4.10.5 Tourism Spend Per Resident Capita .....	220
4.10.6 Tourism Spend as a Share of GDP.....	221
4.11 International Trade .....	222
4.11.1 Relative Importance of international Trade .....	222
<b>CHAPTER Five: Water and Sanitation</b> .....	225
5.1 Water and Sanitation Directorate Overview.....	225
5.1.1 Water Provision.....	225
5.1.2 Reliability of Water Supply in Polokwane .....	225
5.1.3 Water Provision – Short Term Interventions .....	225
5.1.4 Progress of Groundwater Developments projects .....	226
5.1.5 Water Provision – Long Term Interventions .....	226
5.2 Powers and Function of Polokwane Municipality.....	227

5.3. WATER.....	227
5.3.1 Principles of Water Service Provision .....	227
5.3.2 16 Regional Water Schemes (RWS).....	228
5.3.3 Water Scheme Sources .....	228
5.3.4 Lepelle Northern Water supplied Schemes.....	230
5.3.5 Polokwane Water Supply .....	230
5.3.6. Polokwane Groundwater Development .....	231
5.3.7 Setbacks in planning and implementation (Technical report approval) .....	231
5.3.8. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Water Projects) .....	232
5.3.9 Free Basic Water.....	233
5.3.10 Water Quality .....	234
5.3.11 Surface water quality test results.....	234
5.3.12. Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing water .....	236
5.3.13. Water Supply to schools .....	237
5.4. SANITATION .....	237
5.4.1 Sanitation Provision .....	237
5.4.2 VIP Sanitation Programs in Rural Areas.....	238
5.4.3 Green Drop Audit.....	238
5.4.4 Sanitation Provision - (Medium- & Long-Term Solutions) .....	238
5.4.5. Free Basic Sanitation.....	239
5.4.6. Wastewater Treatment Plants.....	239
5.4.7. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Sanitation Projects) .....	240
5.4.8 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Sanitation. ....	240
5.4.9 Sanitation in Schools .....	241
5.4.10 Rural Household Sanitation.....	241
5.5. BACKLOG OF BASIC SERVICES .....	242
5.5.1 Regional Water Scheme (RWS) –Demand and Shortfall .....	242
5.6. SMART METERING .....	243
5.7. AC Pipes Replacement .....	246
5.7.1 Challenges -AC Pipes Replacement.....	246
5.7.2 Phase 2 – AC Pipes Replacement .....	246
5.7.3 Remaining extent of AC Pipes Replacement per cluster .....	246
5.8 Construction of Borehole Infrastructure for Sandriver North Wellfield.....	247
5.9 Water Losses .....	247

5.9.1 Causes of Water losses .....	248
5.9.1 Water losses Mitigation Strategy.....	248
5.9.2 Longer term plan to address Water losses .....	249
5.9.3 Progress in addressing water Provision Backlogs .....	249
5.9.4 Planned water expenditure towards new infrastructure .....	250
5.10 Strategic issues facing municipal water business (Water resilience) .....	250
5.10.1 Water Resource Security.....	250
5.10.2 Polokwane City Water Supply.....	251
5.10.3 Quality of Polokwane Drinking water: (Compliance with SANS 241) .....	251
5.10.4 Network Management:.....	251
5.10.5 Waste Water Treatment .....	251
5.10.6 Water Resilience Summary Risk Assessment.....	252
5.10.8 HR for Water and Sanitation Directorate (Professional Engineers).....	252
5.11 Smart Meters .....	253
5.11.1 Smart Meters Support and Enquiries.....	253
5.11.2 Turnaround Time when attending Complains.....	253
5.12 WATER TANKERS.....	254
5.13 Municipal Boreholes Status Quo.....	255
5.13.1 City of Polokwane Boreholes Status Quo Report .....	255
5.14 Pump Station Status Quo.....	255
5.15 CHALLENGES WATER SERVICES.....	256
5.16 Interventions to solve the Challenges .....	257
5.16.1 WHY REGIONAL WASTE WATER TREATMENT PLANT .....	258
5.16.2 Impact of the reduction of RBIG funding .....	258
5.17 Polokwane Water Utility - Metro Vision .....	261
5.17.1 KEY WATER INFRASTRUCTURE.....	261
5.17.2 Recommendations for Polokwane Water Utility .....	262
<b>CHAPTER Six: Energy Services.....</b>	<b>263</b>
6.1. ENERGY SERVICES .....	263
6.1.1 Energy Master Plan .....	263
6.1.2 Free Basic Electricity .....	264
6.1.3 Free Basic Alternative Energy (solar light system).....	265
6.1.4 Solar Water Geysers.....	265
6.1.5 Challenges/Achievements by the Municipality to provide Energy.....	266



6.1.6 BACKLOG OF ENERGY SERVICES.....	267
6.1.7 Rural Areas Electrification.....	267
6.1.8 Polokwane/Seshego Urban Complex Technical Assessment.....	267
6.1.9 The Supply and Installation of Electrical network at EXT 78 - Phase 2.....	268
6.2 Electricity Losses .....	269
6.2.1 Causes of electricity losses.....	269
6.2.2 Longer Term plan to address Electricity losses (distribution and revenue) .....	269
6.2.3 Electricity Losses (Key Findings).....	270
6.2.4 Maintenance Plan for Electrical infrastructure.....	272
6.3 Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane).....	272
6.3.1 Approved Townships List that Require Electrification.....	273
6.3.2 Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years) .....	279
6.4 Electricity Master Plan .....	283
6.5 Future Township Developments.....	283
6.5.1 Energy Services Challenges .....	286
6.5.2 Financial Impact .....	286
6.5.3 Recommendations .....	286
6.6 The Electrification Acceleration Process.....	286
6.6.1 Rural Electrification Backlog .....	287
6.6.2 Challenges of Rural Electrification.....	287
6.7 Installation of High Mast Lights in rural areas .....	287
6.7.1 Challenges of High Mast lights.....	287
6.7.2 High Mast Lights Recommendations .....	288
6.7.3 Electrification Project in progress at EXT 78(July 2022).....	288
6.7.4 Construction of Bakone Substation .....	288
<b>CHAPTER Seven: Environmental and Social Analysis</b> .....	289
7.1. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS .....	289
7.1.1 Climate Description.....	289
7.1.2 Pollution Levels - Air Quality .....	289
7.1.3 Topography .....	290
7.1.4 Geology .....	290
7.1.5 Hydrology .....	290
7.1.6 Vegetation.....	291
7.1.7 Soils .....	291

7.1.8 Heritage Resources .....	291
7.1.9 Protection and Conservation of ecosystems (Biodiversity) .....	292
7.1.10 Euphorbia Clivicola.....	293
7.1.11 Euphorbia groenewaldii.....	293
7.1.12 Giant Bullfrog - Pyxicephalus adspersus .....	293
7.2. CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING.....	294
7.2.1 City of Polokwane Plans on Climate Change.....	295
7.2.2 Environmental Challenges .....	295
7.2.3 Major Environmental Achievements .....	296
7.2.4 Provincial Intervention for Environmental Management – LEDET.....	297
7.2.5 Approved Capital Projects (2022/23) .....	297
7.2.6 Polokwane Environmental Forum.....	298
7.2.7 Capricorn District Environmental Forum.....	298
7.2.8 Arbor Day Celebration .....	298
7.3 Maintenance of Open Spaces and Parks (48 x Municipal Parks) .....	299
7.3.1 48 x Municipal Parks Status Quo.....	299
7.3.2 Grass Cutting Teams .....	305
7.3.3 Grass cutting teams on the Ground. ....	305
7.3.4 AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme.....	306
7.3.5 Establishment of Animal Pound.....	307
7.3.6. An effective approach on animal pound (Revised approach) .....	307
7.3.7. Options Available for Animal Pound Establishment.....	308
7.3.8 Availability of Alien Invasive Species Eradication Plan .....	308
7.4. National Arbor City Award Received .....	309
7.5. AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT .....	309
7.5.1 Air Quality Management Plan developed and adopted/approved by Council .....	309
7.5.2 Submission of AQO Annual Report & report on implementation of Air Quality Management Plan.....	310
7.5.3 Developed an Air Quality By-Laws .....	311
7.5.4 Air quality monitoring stations and monitoring of ambient air quality pollutants .....	311
7.5.5 Designation of Air Quality Management Officer .....	311
7.5.6 Conducting of industry inspection .....	313
7.5.7 Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs.....	313
7.5.8 Allocation and availability of Air Quality Management related work budget .....	313

7.6 ENVIRONMENTAL GOVERNANCE AND CROSS CUTTING ISSUES .....	313
7.6.1 Municipal Projects consider EIA.....	313
7.6.2 Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties .....	313
7.6.3 Environmental Outlook.....	313
7.6.4 Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA).....	314
7.6.5 Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness .....	314
7.6.6 Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions.....	314
7.6.7 Allocation and availability of budgets for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA .....	314
7.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT .....	314
7.7.1 Waste Management Services Municipal Wide .....	315
7.7.2 Vision and Mission-Waste SBU .....	315
7.7.3 CORE FUNCTIONS OF WASTE SBU .....	315
7.7.4 Personnel (Waste SBU) .....	315
7.7.5 TYPES OF EQUIPMENTS REQUIRED.....	316
7.7.6 SERVICE LEVEL STANDARDS: OPERATIONS.....	316
7.7.7 weekly waste collection service.....	317
7.7.8 WASTE FACILITIES (Landfill sites and Transfer Stations).....	317
7.7.9 Rural Skips Distribution Summary.....	317
7.7.10 CURRENT WASTE PROJECTS: 2022/23 .....	317
7.7.11 CONTRACTED SERVICES UNDER WASTE MANAGEMENT .....	318
7.7.12 IMPLEMENTATION OF BY-LAW .....	318
7.8 Challenges for cleanliness of the City .....	318
7.8.1 Designation of Waste Management Officer .....	319
7.8.2 South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) reporting.....	319
7.9. WASTE MANAGEMENT (2).....	319
7.9.1 Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP) .....	320
7.9.2 Recycling and Recovery of Waste .....	321
7.9.3 Refuse Removal Trends.....	321
7.9.4 Licensed Landfill Sites .....	322
7.9.5 Waste Management Challenges .....	323
7.9.6 Waste Management Status Quo.....	324
7.9.7 Waste Collection in Rural Areas.....	325

7.10 Waste Management Services Status Quo.....	325
7.10.1 Status Quo on Rendered Services .....	325
7.10.2 Rural Waste Transfer Stations and landfill sites status quo .....	326
7.10.3 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Maja/Chuene/Molepo Cluster) .....	327
7.10.4 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Moletjie and Aganang clusters).....	328
7.10.5 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters) .....	329
7.10.6 Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection Service Once a Week .....	330
7.10.7 Plan to improve Cleanliness of the City CBD.....	331
7.10.8 Waste Management Challenges and Intervention .....	331
7.10.9 Management of illegal Dumping in the City, Seshego and Westernburg.....	332
7.10.10 General Method of Dealing with Illegal Dumping .....	335
7.10.11 Challenges in addressing illegal dumping problem. ....	335
7.10.12 Progress Report on 2021/22 Waste Management Capital Projects.....	336
7.11 By-Law Enforcement & SECURITY .....	336
7.11.1 Challenges and the intervention Within the SBU .....	337
7.12 CALL CENTRE STATUS QUO .....	338
7.12 .1 Crime awareness at school .....	339
7.12.2 Re-launch of community safety forum and crime awareness .....	340
7.12.3 Joint Crime Prevention Operation (search for expired goods in businesses).....	340
7.13 DISASTER MANAGEMENT AND FIRE SERVICES .....	341
7.13.1 Fire Services Status Quo.....	341
7.13.2 Polokwane Main Fire Stations .....	341
7.13.3 Challenges of Fires Services Unit: .....	341
7.13.4 Accredited Fire-Fighting Course.....	342
7.13.5 Disaster Management Status Quo .....	343
7.13.6 Challenges of Disaster Management Unit .....	344
7.13.7 Polokwane Fire and Disaster Fleet.....	344
7.14 TRAFFIC AND LICENSES ANALYSIS.....	344
7.14.1 Traffic and licenses services .....	344
7.14.2 Roles and responsibilities: Traffic and Licenses .....	345
7.14.3 City of Polokwane current Traffic Fleet .....	345
7.14.4 Revenue Enhancement Streams .....	346
7.15 Licensing Services.....	346
7.15.1 Computerised Leaners Testing Facility .....	347

7.15.2 Licensing Transactions Over a period of 12 months .....	347
7.15.3 Polokwane Road Accidents Statistics.....	350
7.15.4 Traffic and Licences Challenges: .....	350
7.15.5 Measures to address Challenges: .....	351
7.16. ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH.....	351
7.16.1. Polokwane Environmental Health .....	352
7.17 SPORTS AND RECREATION ANALYSIS.....	353
7.17.1 Municipal Swimming Pools .....	354
7.17.2 New Peter Mokaba Stadium .....	355
7.17.3 Two Premier Soccer League Teams Hosted at the new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium	356
7.17.4 ABSA Premiership Fixture for 2022/23 .....	356
7.17.5 Horticultural Services.....	358
7.17.6 Sport and Recreational Facilities.....	358
7.18 New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane.....	358
7.18.1 Profile information on New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane as at (08 September 2022.....	358
7.18.2 Softball Stadium Concept Designs .....	361
7.18.3 Construction of Softball Stadium Progress as at (08 September 2022).....	361
7.19 SPORTS GROUND GRADING STATUS QUO.....	362
7.19.1 Sports Field Grading Program.....	363
7.20 CULTURAL SERVICES .....	364
7.20.1 Cultural Services.....	364
7.21 Libraries.....	364
7.21.1 Challenges and Interventions for Libraries .....	365
7.22 Museums.....	368
7.22.1 Objectives of the Museum.....	369
7.22.2 Museums located within the City .....	369
7.22.3 Irish House Museum .....	370
7.22.4 Hugh Exton Photographic Museum .....	370
7.22.5 Polokwane Art Museum.....	371
7.22.6 Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.....	371
7.23 Heritage Sites .....	372
7.23.1 Eersteling monument.....	372
7.23.2 Other heritage sites that have been identified.....	373

7.24 Cultural Desk .....	374
7.24.1 key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection .....	374
7.24.2 Cultural Desk Challenges .....	374
<b>CHAPTER Eight - Good Governance and Public Participation</b> .....	<b>375</b>
8.1 Performance Management System (PMS).....	375
8.1.1 Alignment of the IDP, Budget and SDBIP .....	376
8.1.2 Legislation that governs Performance Management in Municipalities .....	376
8.1.3 Performance Reporting.....	377
8.2. Audit of Performance Management Information.....	377
8.2.1 PMS Challenges .....	378
8.3. INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP).....	378
8.3.1 Integrated Development Planning.....	378
8.3.2 Evolution of the IDP (Trends since 2001).....	379
8.3.3 IDP/ Budget Process Plan .....	380
8.3.4. The IDP/Budget Committees .....	380
8.3.5 IDP/Budget Technical Committee.....	380
8.3.6 IDP/Budget Steering Committee.....	380
8.3.7 IDP Representative Forum .....	380
8.4 Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements Process.....	380
8.5 MEC IDP Assessments .....	381
8.5.1 MEC rating for Polokwane Municipality IDP .....	381
8.6 Strategic Planning Session (Bosberaad).....	382
8.7 District Development Model (DDM) .....	382
8.7.1 Background to the DDM .....	382
8.7.2 Formulation and implementation of a One Plan .....	384
8.7.3 District Development Model (DDM) Executive Summary .....	385
8.8. MUNICIPAL CLUSTER OFFICES.....	386
8.8.1 Number of Municipal Clusters and their Wards .....	386
8.8.2 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards.....	387
8.9 Municipal Cluster Offices .....	387
8.9.1 City Cluster Office - Municipal Head Office .....	387
8.9.2 Molepo-Chuene-Maja Cluster Office .....	387
8.9.3 Mankweng Cluster Office.....	388
8.9.4 Sebayeng-Dikgale Cluster Office.....	388



8.9.5 Seshego Cluster Office .....	389
8.9.6 Moletjie Cluster Office .....	389
8.9.7 Aganang Cluster Office.....	389
8.10 Cluster Offices Challenges.....	390
8.10.1. Proposed intervention on Identified Challenges .....	390
8.10.2 CORE RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CLUSTERS-SBU.....	391
8.10.3 Municipal CLUSTERS Offices .....	391
8.10.4 CLUSTER OFFICES AND THEIR LOCATIONS.....	392
8.10.5 CURRENT STAFF COMPONENT ACROSS CLUSTERS.....	392
8.10.6 SERVICES RENDERED IN THE VARIOUS CLUSTER OFFICES.....	393
8.10.7 CLUSTERS CAPITAL PROJECTS .....	394
8.11 Project Management Unit (PMU) .....	394
8.11.1 NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME.....	394
8.12 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).....	396
8.12.1 Objectives of EPWP Phase IV .....	397
8.12.2 Community Work Programme .....	397
8.12.3 EPWP Vuk'uphile Learnership Programme.....	398
8.12.4 EPWP Jobs Targets.....	399
8.13 PMU Challenges .....	399
8.13.1 Proposed Intervention on PMU Challenges.....	399
8.14 Technical Report Approval.....	400
8.15 2021/22 Grants performance. ....	400
8.15.1 2021/22 GRANTS PERFORMANCE (Graph) .....	401
8.15.2 RBIG OVERVIEW .....	401
8.15.3 RBIG OVERVIEW.....	402
8.15.4 IUDG OVERVIEW .....	403
8.15.5 IUDG OVERVIEW (Projects on construction).....	404
8.15.6 NDPG OVERVIEW .....	407
8.15.7 NDPG PROJECTS.....	407
8.15.8 WSIG OVERVIEW .....	408
8.15.9 WSIG PROJECTS.....	408
8.16 Unspent budget to be rolled over to 2022/23FY .....	409
8.16.1 Poor spending challenges .....	410
8.17 FORWARD PLANNING FOR 2022/23 .....	412

8.17.1 2022/23 GRANTS ALLOCATIONS – PMU MANAGED.....	412
8.17.2 SUMMARY OF FORWARD PLANNING .....	412
8.17.3 2022/23 Financial Year Project Status Quo .....	413
8.18 INTERNAL AUDIT .....	413
8.18.1 Definition and mandate of Internal Audit.....	413
8.18.2 Internal Audit Strategic Coverage Plan .....	415
8.18.3 Audit Committee and Performance Audit Committee .....	416
8.18.4 Operation Clean Audit (OPCA) .....	416
8.18.5 Resources availability for Internal Audit.....	416
8.18.6 Report of the Chief Audit Executive on AGSA Audit Opinions.....	417
8.19 RISK MANAGEMENT.....	418
8.19.1 Risk Management core responsibilities .....	418
8.19.2 Risk Management Committee .....	419
8.19.3 The Risk Champions Committee .....	419
8.19.4 Top 10 Strategic Risks Identified.....	419
8.19.5 Risk assessment review process.....	420
8.20 Fraud and Corruption Strategy .....	420
8.20.1 Polokwane Municipality statement of attitude to fraud .....	420
8.20.2 Whistle Blowing Policy.....	420
8.20.3 Anti-Fraud and awareness .....	420
8.21 PUBLIC PARTICIPATION AND COUNCIL SUPPORT .....	420
8.21.1 Key Municipal Stakeholders.....	421
8.21.2 Relationship with Traditional Leaders .....	421
8.21.2 The building blocks of Good Governance .....	422
8.21.3 Ward Committee and CDW's.....	422
8.22 SECRETARIAT.....	422
8.22.1 The main objectives of the Secretariat unit.....	422
8.22.2 Challenges /Constraints at Secretariat and Records.....	423
8.23 COUNCIL COMMITTEES.....	423
8.23.1 Political Parties Represented in Council: .....	423
8.23.2 Portfolio Committees.....	424
8.23.3 MPAC - Municipal Public Account Committee.....	424
8.24 COMMUNICATION AND MARKETING .....	425
8.24.1 Complaints Management System .....	426

8.24.2 New electronic and social media channels of Communication .....	427
8.25 EXECUTIVE SUPPORT PROGRAMMES .....	427
8.25.1 Core Function of the Executive Support SBU.....	428
8.25.2 Special Focus Challenges.....	429
8.26 Health and Social Development.....	430
8.26.1 Health Facilities Analysis .....	430
8.26.2 Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane.....	430
8.26.3 HIV /AIDS Prevalence in Polokwane .....	431
8.26.4 National HIV prevalence .....	431
8.26.5 Awards Received by Special Focus.....	432
8.26.6 The 90-90-90 targets.....	432
<b>CHAPTER Nine - Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development.....</b>	<b>433</b>
9.1. ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE.....	433
9.1.1 Political Governance Structure .....	434
9.2 The organizational structure.....	435
9.2.1. Appointment of Senior Managers.....	436
9.2.2 New Senior Managers Positions on the organogram .....	436
9.2.3 Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate .....	436
9.2.4 Positions and Budget Per Directorate.....	438
9.3 Skills Development and Training.....	439
9.3.1 Addressing Weakness in workplace skills .....	439
9.3.2 Skills Development Act (SDA).....	440
9.3.3 Learnership programmes.....	440
9.4 Employment Equity.....	441
9.4.1 Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality.....	441
9.4.2 Summary of people with disabilities.....	442
9.4.3 Equity Plan for Polokwane Municipality .....	443
9.5 Job grade analysis .....	443
9.6 Vacancy rate and Turnover .....	444
9.7 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH & SAFETY (OHS) .....	445
9.7.1 OHS unit Challenges.....	446
9.8 EMPLOYEE RELATIONS .....	447
9.9 EMPLOYEE ASSISTANCE PROGRAMED (EAP) .....	448
9.10 RECRUITMENT.....	449

9.11.1 Number of Fleet .....	450
9.11.2 Municipal fleet status quo .....	451
9.11.3 Fleet units per category .....	451
9.11.4 New vehicle procurement status quo during 2021/2022.....	452
9.11.5 Project for the current financial year 2022/2023 .....	452
9.11.6 Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy .....	453
9.11.7 Challenges within Fleet SBU.....	453
9.11.8 Interventions and control measures.....	454
9.12 INFORMATION COMMUNICATION AND TECHNOLOGY (ICT) .....	454
9.12.1 ICT - SMART City Concept .....	455
9.12.2 ICT Governance.....	455
9.12.3 ICT Challenges.....	457
9.12.4 Enterprise Resource Planning Project.....	457
9.12.5 New Hardware Upgraded (2019/20 FY).....	459
9.12.6 New Hardware Benefits.....	459
9.13 Network Connectivity and VOIP Telephone System Implementation.....	460
9.13.1 ICT (Telephone Systems).....	460
9.13.2 Telephone Network Configuration.....	460
9.13.3 City of Polokwane Call Centre Numbers .....	460
9.13.4 Telephone System Challenges .....	461
9.13.5 Connectivity for Aganang Cluster .....	462
9.13.6 Network cabling in the offices .....	463
9.14 RECORD MANAGEMENT .....	464
9.14.1 Record Management Objectives.....	464
9.14.2 Challenges/Constraints for Record Management .....	464
9.15 LEGAL SERVICES .....	465
9.15.1 Core Functions of Legal Services.....	465
9.15.2 Legal Services challenges .....	472
9.15.3 Interventions-Legal Services .....	472
9.16 FACILITIES MANAGEMENT .....	473
9.16.1 List of Municipal Facilities in all Clusters.....	473
9.16.2 Procedures for maintenance services.....	477
9.16.3 Maintenance of municipal facilities .....	477
9.16.4 Trades conducted under routine maintenance .....	478

9.16.5 Codes and Standards .....	480
9.16.6 Covid 19 Fumigation of Municipal Offices .....	480
<b>CHAPTER Ten: Roads and Transportation Services</b> .....	<b>481</b>
10.1 Transportation Services .....	481
10.1.1 Introduction .....	481
10.1.2 COMPREHENSIVE INTEGRATED TRANSPORT PLAN (CITP) .....	481
10.2 MODE OF PUBLIC TRANSPORT FACILITIES .....	482
10.2.2 Metered Taxi .....	483
10.3 Polokwane International Airport .....	484
10.3.1 Polokwane Municipality Airport .....	484
10.3.2 Rail .....	484
10.4 FREIGHT TRANSPORT .....	484
10.4.1 Road freight .....	484
10.4.2 AIR FREIGHT .....	485
10.4.3 RAIL FREIGHT .....	485
10.5 A SMART WAY TO TRAVEL! .....	485
10.6 TRANSPORT IMPLICATIONS OF THE SDF .....	486
10.7 INTERMODAL/ LONG DISTANCE TRANSPORT HUB .....	487
10.8 SYSTEM ELEMENTS OF THE LEETO LA POLOKWANE INTEGRATED PUBLIC TRANSPORT SYSTEM .....	487
10.8.1 Universal Access (UA) .....	487
10.8.2 Non-Motorized Transport (NMT) .....	488
10.8.3 Industry Transition .....	488
10.8.4 Transport Planning and Operations .....	489
10.8.9 Intelligent Transport System Modelling .....	489
10.8.10 Marketing and Communications .....	489
10.8.11 Business and Finance .....	490
10.8.12 Leeto Infrastructure .....	490
10.9 Construction of the Bus Depot at Seshego .....	490
10.10 General Joubert Street Bus Station Precinct .....	491
10.10.1 Construction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD as of (27 July 2022) .....	491
10.11 Seshego Trunk Route .....	493
10.11.1 Painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus dedicated lanes in the CBD .....	493
10.11.2 Leeto Daytime Layover Facility .....	494

10.11.3 Leeto La Polokwane Control Centre .....	495
10.11.4 Leeto La Polokwane (LLP) .....	495
10.11.5 Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane .....	496
10.11.6 Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane.....	497
10.12 Leeto la Polokwane Turnaround Strategy.....	498
10.12.1 Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service .....	500
10.12.2 Challenges for Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A Operations.....	500
10.12.3 Bus Stop Coverage .....	501
10.12.4 Route Alignment Coverage.....	502
10.12.5 Flora Park (F1) Route.....	502
10.12.6 Westernburg (F4A) Route .....	502
10.12.7 Seshego (TE4) Route .....	503
10.12.8 Seshego (TEB) Route .....	503
10.13 Modal Competition .....	503
10.13.1 Information Dissemination .....	504
10.13.2 Insufficient Human Resources .....	504
10.13.3 POSSIBLE Strategies to Address Identified Challenges .....	504
10.14 ROADS & STORM WATER.....	505
10.14.1 Introduction to Roads and Storm water .....	505
10.14.2 Classification of Roads .....	507
10.14.3 Leeto La Polokwane Infrastructure.....	508
10.14.4 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Roads. ....	508
10.15 ROADS BACKLOG.....	508
10.15.1 Municipal Roads Current Status Quo.....	509
10.15.2 Potholes Repairs in the City CBD .....	509
10.15.3 Grader's status per Cluster (Their Condition) .....	510
10.15.4 Roads SBU Yellow Fleet Status Quo .....	510
10.16 PUBLIC TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT.....	511
10.16.1 CONSTRUCTION OF LOW-LEVEL BRIDGES FOR 2021/2022 FINANCIAL YEAR:.....	511
10.16.2 Areas where low level bridges were constructed and completed .....	511
10.16.3 Refurbish two bridges .....	513
10.17 REPAIRS ON STORM WATER DRAINS .....	513
10.17.1 Challenges for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance .....	513
10.17.2 Interventions for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance.....	513



10.18 Rehabilitation of City CBD Roads (Road Concession CBD).....	514
10.18.1 Rehabilitation of City CBD Roads .....	514
10.18.2 Personnel for Roads and Storm Water .....	514
10.19 Grading of rural roads Status Quo Per Cluster .....	515
10.19.1 Grading of Roads Status Quo .....	515
10.19.2 Challenges for Rural Roads Grading.....	515
10.19.3 Roads SBU Fleet analysis.....	516
10.19.4 Incomplete Provincial D-Roads (Bermuda Roads) .....	516
10.19.5 Overview summary achievement of Public Transport Infrastructure Development ....	517
<b>CHAPTER Eleven -Financial Analysis</b> .....	519
11.1. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY.....	519
11.1.1 Revenue Management.....	519
11.1.2 Status on Revenue Management.....	520
11.1.3. Revenue Enhancement .....	520
11.1.4 Collections from households, businesses and Government Departments.....	520
11.1.5 Implementation of revenue enhancement strategy .....	521
11.1.6 New system Key achievements - Revenue Management.....	521
11.1.7 Key Challenges and Interventions in Revenue Management .....	521
11.2 Billing System .....	522
11.3. FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK.....	523
11.4 Expenditure Management .....	523
11.4.1 Expenditure Management Status Quo/Achievement.....	523
11.4.2 Expenditure analysis .....	523
11.4.3 Key contracted services .....	524
11.4.4 General Expenditure .....	524
11.4.5 Overtime .....	525
11.4.6 Capital Performance .....	526
11.4.7 Non-core expenditure.....	526
11.4.8 Challenges and Intervention for Expenditure Management .....	527
11.4.9 Roll Overs Projects .....	527
11.4.10 Budget Adjustments.....	527
11.5 Investments.....	527
11.6 Asset Management .....	528
11.6.1 State of Assets.....	528

11.6.2 State of Assets – Asset Portfolio .....	529
11.6.3 Asset Consultants.....	529
11.7 DEBTORS MANAGEMENT .....	530
11.7.1 Debtor Book .....	530
11.7.2 Debtors Aging (30 June 2022).....	530
11.7.3 Creditors.....	531
11.7.4 Payment of creditors.....	532
11.7.5 Key Intervention on Debt Book.....	532
11.8 CASH FLOW .....	533
11.8.1 The municipality implemented the following controls.....	533
11.9 Auditor General Outcomes.....	534
11.9.1. AUDIT OUTCOMES OPINIONS PER FINANCIAL YEAR .....	534
11.9.2 Audit Strategy .....	534
11.10 FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY .....	535
11.11. SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT POLICY (SCM) .....	536
11.11.1 Supply Chain Committees.....	536
11.11.2 SCM Challenges on Projects.....	537
11.12 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS ON A STANDARD CHART OF ACCOUNTS (MSCOA) .....	538
11.12.1 mSCOA as a Business Reform .....	538
11.12.2 mSCOA Implementation by Polokwane Municipality.....	538
11.12.3 mSCOA - Business process & systems alignment .....	539
11.12.4 mSCOA Governance Structures .....	539
11.12.5 mSCOA Implementation Progress.....	540
11.12.6 mSCOA Implementation Progress -(PHA).....	541
11.12.7 NT benchmarking Session mSCOA Request.....	541
11.12.8 BORROWINGS .....	541
11.13 COST CONTAINMENT .....	542
11.13.1 UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR AND FRUITLESS EXPENDITURE .....	542
11.14 Indigent support .....	544
11.14.1 Status of Municipal Indigent Register.....	544
11.14.2 Processes in indigent Applications.....	545
11.14.3 Challenges and Mitigation/Control – Indigent Support.....	545
11.15 Extent of existing loans, and associated finance and redemption payments. ....	546
11.15.1 Loans Repayments .....	547

11.16 Key Ratios.....	548
11.16.1 Net cash flow position from working capital .....	548
11.17 FINANCIAL HEALTH ASSESSMENT .....	548
11.17.1 Description of each Financial Health Category .....	548
11.17.2 Polokwane Financial Health Status .....	549
11.17.3 The Status of the City of Polokwane in terms of the NT Assessment.....	549
11.17.4 SHIFT TO THE SHORT TO MEDIUM CATERGORY .....	550
11.18 KEY RATIOS.....	550
11.18.1. Asset Management .....	550
11.18.2. Debtor Management .....	551
11.18.3 Liquidity Management .....	552
11.18.4 Liability Management .....	553
11.19 Key Ratios - Financial Performance.....	553
11.19.1 Key ratios – Distribution losses .....	555
11.19.2 Key ratios – Revenue Management .....	556
11.19.3 Key ratios – Expenditure Management .....	556
11.19.4 Key ratios – Grant dependency.....	558
11.19.5 Key ratio - Budget performance.....	559
11.20 EXPENDITURE.....	559
11.20.1 Expenditure analysis .....	560
11.21 Expenditure.....	560
11.21.1 Expenditure Flow Chart .....	560
11.21.2 Key contracted services .....	561
11.21.2 Expenditure .....	562
11.21.3 Cash flow vs Budget .....	563
11.21.4 Cash Reserve .....	563
11.21.3 Debtors – Government .....	563
11.21.4 Debtors Aging (March 2022).....	564
11.21.5 Debtors Incentive Scheme .....	565
11.22 Indigent Support .....	565
11.22.1 Indigent management.....	565
11.23 Revenue performance .....	566
11.24 Revenue enhancement initiatives through technology.....	566
11.24.1 FINANCE MODELLING .....	566

11.24.2 CASH FLOW STRATEGY.....	566
11.24.3 Cash flow strategy methodology .....	566
11.24.4 New Budget Approach .....	567
11.24.4 BUDGET ALLOCATION - FIXED MONTHLY COSTS .....	567
11.24.5 BUDGET ALLOCATION - MONTHLY NET AVAILABLE RESOURCES EXCLUDING CONDITIONAL GRANTS .....	567
11.25 AUDIT OUTCOMES .....	568
11.25.1 Audit COMMITTEES Outcomes .....	569
11.25.2 Audit paragraph .....	569
11.25.3 Plan targets .....	570
11.23.4 Cash flow monitoring .....	570
11.25.5 CASH FLOW PER DIRECTORATE.....	571
11.25.6 MONTHLY CASH FLOW GRAPH .....	571
11.25.6 Plan to achieve targets.....	572
11.25.7 RISKS TO VIABILITY .....	573
11.25.8 Revenue and Cost Optimization .....	573
11.25.9 Revenue and Cost Optimization → What has been done already .....	574
11.25.10 Revenue generation from other SBUs .....	574
11.26 Research and Development.....	575
11.26.1 City of Polokwane Investor summit.....	575
11.26.2 Use of early warning underground cable theft alarm system to prevent cable theft... 575	
11.26.3 Revamped IT infrastructure and control centre .....	575
11.26.4 Risk to our financial viability .....	575

**(i)List of Acronyms**

<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>ABET</b>	Adult Basic Education and Training
<b>ACDP</b>	African Christian Democratic Party
<b>AIDS</b>	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
<b>ANC</b>	African National Congress
<b>AZAPO</b>	Azanian People Organization
<b>AFS</b>	Annual Financial Statements
<b>AGSA</b>	Auditor General of South Africa
<b>AG</b>	Auditor General
<b>AR</b>	Annual Report
<b>AO</b>	Accounting Officer
<b>APAC</b>	Audit & Performance Audit Committee
<b>B&amp;B</b>	Bed and Breakfast
<b>BBBEE</b>	Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment
<b>BRT</b>	Bus Rapid Transport
<b>COPE</b>	Congress of the People
<b>CAS</b>	Controlled Access Site
<b>CBD</b>	Central Business District
<b>CBP</b>	Community Based Planning
<b>CCTV</b>	Closed Circuit Television
<b>CDM</b>	Capricorn District Municipality
<b>CDW</b>	Community Development Worker
<b>CFO</b>	Chief Financial Officer
<b>CEO</b>	Chief Executive Officer
<b>CGICTPF</b>	Corporate Governance of Information and Communication Technology Policy Framework
<b>Cllr</b>	Councillor
<b>COGHSTA</b>	Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
<b>CRM</b>	Customer Relationship Management
<b>CRMP</b>	Cultural Resources Management Plans

<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>CRU</b>	Central Re-examination Unit
<b>CRZ</b>	Commercial Restricted Zone
<b>DA</b>	Democratic Alliance
<b>DC</b>	Development Corridors
<b>DEA</b>	Department of Environmental Affairs
<b>DORA</b>	Division of Revenue Act
<b>DCoG</b>	Department of Cooperative Governance
<b>DPME</b>	The Presidency Department of Planning Monitoring and Evaluation
<b>DSAC</b>	Department of Sports, Arts and Culture
<b>DWA</b>	Department of Water Affairs
<b>DWAE</b>	Department of Water Affairs and Environment
<b>DWS</b>	Department of Workforce Service
<b>EFF</b>	Economic Freedom Fighters
<b>ECM</b>	Electronic Content Management
<b>EGDP</b>	Economic Growth and Development Plan
<b>EXCO</b>	Executive Committee
<b>EDFS</b>	Environmental Defence Fund Service
<b>EHP</b>	Environmental Health Projects
<b>EIA</b>	Environmental Impact Assessment
<b>ELMDP</b>	Executive Leadership Municipal Development Programme
<b>EM</b>	Executive Mayor
<b>EMP</b>	Environmental Management Plan
<b>EPWP</b>	Expanded Public works Programme
<b>ERP</b>	Enterprise Resource Planning
<b>ETDP</b>	Education, Training and Development Practices
<b>FFP</b>	Freedom Front Plus
<b>FFC</b>	Financial and Fiscal Commission
<b>FBW</b>	Free Basic Water
<b>FDA's</b>	Functional Development Areas
<b>FIFA</b>	Federation of International Football Associations



<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>FY</b>	Financial Year
<b>GAAL</b>	Gateway Airport Authority
<b>GDP</b>	Gross Domestic Product
<b>GGP</b>	Gross Geographic Product
<b>GIS</b>	Geographical Information System
<b>GITOC</b>	Government Information Technology Offices Council
<b>GVA</b>	Gross Value Added
<b>HDI</b>	Human Development Index
<b>HOD</b>	Head of Department
<b>HDI's</b>	Historically Disadvantaged Individuals
<b>HIV</b>	Human Immune Virus
<b>HR</b>	Human Resources
<b>HV</b>	High Voltage
<b>ICT</b>	Information and Communication Technology
<b>ITP</b>	Integrated Transport Plan
<b>IDP</b>	Integrated Development Plan
<b>IA</b>	Internal Audit
<b>IGR</b>	Intergovernmental Relations
<b>IIA</b>	Institute of Internal Auditor
<b>IKS</b>	Indigenous Knowledge System
<b>IRPTS</b>	Integrated Rapid Public Transport System
<b>IT&amp;T</b>	Information Technology and Telecommunications
<b>ITS</b>	Intelligent Transport System
<b>IUDG</b>	Integrated Urban Development Grant
<b>IWMP</b>	Integrated Waste Management Plan
<b>JMPF</b>	Joint Municipal Pension Fund
<b>KPA</b>	Key Performance Area
<b>KPI</b>	Key Performance Indicator
<b>LED</b>	Local Economic Development
<b>LEGDP</b>	Limpopo Employment, Growth and Development Plan

<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>LDP</b>	Limpopo Development Plan
<b>LGSETA</b>	Local Government Sector Education Training Authority
<b>LTD</b>	Limited Company
<b>LTP</b>	Limpopo Tourism and Parks
<b>LUMS</b>	Land Use Management Scheme
<b>LV</b>	Low Voltage
<b>MAYCO</b>	Mayoral Committee
<b>MMC</b>	Member of Mayoral Committee
<b>MCPF</b>	Municipal Councillors Pension Fund
<b>MEC</b>	Member of Executive Council
<b>MEPF</b>	Municipal Employee Pension Fund
<b>MEW</b>	Measure of Economic Welfare
<b>MFMA</b>	Municipal Finance Management Act
<b>MGF</b>	Municipal Gratuity Fund
<b>MIG</b>	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
<b>MIS</b>	Management Information System
<b>MLL</b>	Minimum Living Level
<b>MM</b>	Municipal Manager
<b>MPAC</b>	Municipal Public Account Committee
<b>MSA</b>	Municipal Systems Act
<b>MTEF</b>	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
<b>mSCOA</b>	Municipal Regulations on Standard Chart of Accounts
<b>N1</b>	National Road (Cape town-Beit Bridge)
<b>NSDP</b>	National Spatial Development Perspective
<b>NDP</b>	National Development Plan
<b>NFMW</b>	National Fund for Municipal Workers
<b>NGO</b>	Non-Governmental Organization
<b>NOX</b>	Nitrogen Oxides
<b>NTC</b>	National Training Centre
<b>NTK</b>	Need To Know

<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>NMT</b>	Non-Motorised Transport
<b>OC</b>	Organizing Committee
<b>OHS</b>	Occupational Health and Safety
<b>OPCA</b>	Operation Clean Audit
<b>PC's</b>	Professional Corporation/Personal Computer
<b>PHA</b>	Polokwane Housing Association
<b>PLM</b>	Polokwane Local Municipality
<b>PHP</b>	People Housing Partnership
<b>PICC</b>	Polokwane International Conventional Centre
<b>PIMS</b>	Planning and Implementation Management Support
<b>PMS</b>	Performance Management System
<b>PPU</b>	Public Participation Unit
<b>PR</b>	Public Relations
<b>PRASA</b>	Passenger Railway Agency of South Africa
<b>PSL</b>	Premier Soccer League
<b>PTIS</b>	Public Transport Infrastructure Support Fund
<b>PTY</b>	Proprietary Company
<b>PPP</b>	Public Private Partnership
<b>RAL</b>	Road Agency Limpopo
<b>RDP</b>	Reconstruction and Development Programme
<b>ROD</b>	Record of Decision
<b>RWS</b>	Regional Water Scheme
<b>SA</b>	South Africa
<b>SABC</b>	South African Broadcasting Corporation
<b>SANRAL</b>	The South African National Roads Agency Ltd
<b>SADC</b>	Southern Africa Development Community
<b>SALGA</b>	South African Local Government Association
<b>SAMWU</b>	South African Municipal Workers Union
<b>SANABP</b>	South African National Association of Blind and Partially Sighted
<b>SANDF</b>	South African Defence Force

<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>Explanation</b>
<b>SANS</b>	South African Network Service
<b>SAPS</b>	South African Police Service
<b>SBU</b>	Strategic Business Unit
<b>SCADA</b>	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
<b>SCM</b>	Supply Chain Management
<b>SDA</b>	Service Delivery Area
<b>SDBIP</b>	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
<b>SDF</b>	Spatial Development Framework
<b>SDI</b>	Strategic Development Initiatives
<b>SETA</b>	Sector Education and Training Authority
<b>SMME's</b>	Small and Medium Enterprises
<b>SMS</b>	Senior Management Services
<b>SOP'</b>	Stand Operating Procedure
<b>SOX</b>	Sodium Oxides
<b>SPLUMA</b>	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act
<b>SPPIA</b>	Standards for Professional Practice of Internal Audits
<b>Stats,S.A</b>	Statistics South Africa
<b>TLC</b>	Transitional Local Council
<b>UDM</b>	United Democratic Movement
<b>UPVC</b>	Unplasticized Polyvinyl Chloride
<b>VP</b>	Vryheidsfront Plus
<b>VIC</b>	Visitors Information Centre
<b>VIP</b>	Ventilation Improved Pit
<b>WSA</b>	Water Service Authority
<b>WSP</b>	Water Service Provider
<b>WSDP</b>	Water Services Development Plan
<b>ZCC</b>	Zion Christian Church

# Chapter One: Introduction

## 1.1 Analysis Phase

The first step for the Reviewal of the IDP is to conduct an analysis of the current state of affairs of the Municipality so that the planning process will be informed by the true reflection of affairs on the ground.

In the analysis phase, Polokwane Municipality is obliged to conduct SWOT analysis as far as the **backlogs in service delivery** is concerned. The information provided should enable the municipality to decide on priority issues or problems, with due consideration of the residents'/communities' perceptions and of available facts and figures.

The municipality should be able to know about the concrete nature of these priority issues or problems, such as trends, context, causes and impacts related to these issues, in order to make informed decisions on appropriate solutions.

The analysis phase should also serve as a **gauge** on how the municipality is performing towards the achievements of the 2030 Vision which has been approved by Council and also to align municipal plans towards the vision.

The identified problems should be considered and prioritised according to levels of urgency and/or importance, thus constituting the key development priorities.

Through the analysis phase, the Municipality must also be aware of existing and accessible assets and resource limitations before making decisions on strategies in order to allocate scarce resources strategically.

It is important that a municipality understands not only the **symptoms**, but also the causes of problems in order to make informed and appropriate decisions. The municipality must not make assumptions on what the problems are in its area. The people affected should be involved in determining the problems and priorities.

## 1.2 The Outputs of the Analysis Phase:

- ✓ Assessment of the existing level of Development (**with specific reference to service gaps**).
- ✓ Key Development Priorities (**Problems**)
- ✓ Information on dynamics and causes of Key Development Priorities
- ✓ Information on available resources, potentials and assets

The municipality has conducted Status Quo analysis in **all** the KPA's of local government. Below is the status quo report per Directorate/KPA.

### 1.3 Status Quo Analysis per KPA

	KPA / Directorates
<b>1</b>	KPA1.Spatial Rationale
<b>2</b>	KPA 2. Basic Services and Infrastructure Planning
<b>3</b>	KPA 3. Local Economic Development
<b>4</b>	KPA 4. Good Governance and Public Participation
<b>5</b>	KPA.5 Financial Viability
<b>6</b>	KPA 6. Municipal Transformation and Organizational Development

STATUS QUO



# CHAPTER Two: Spatial Planning and Land Use Analysis

## 2. SPATIAL RATIONALE

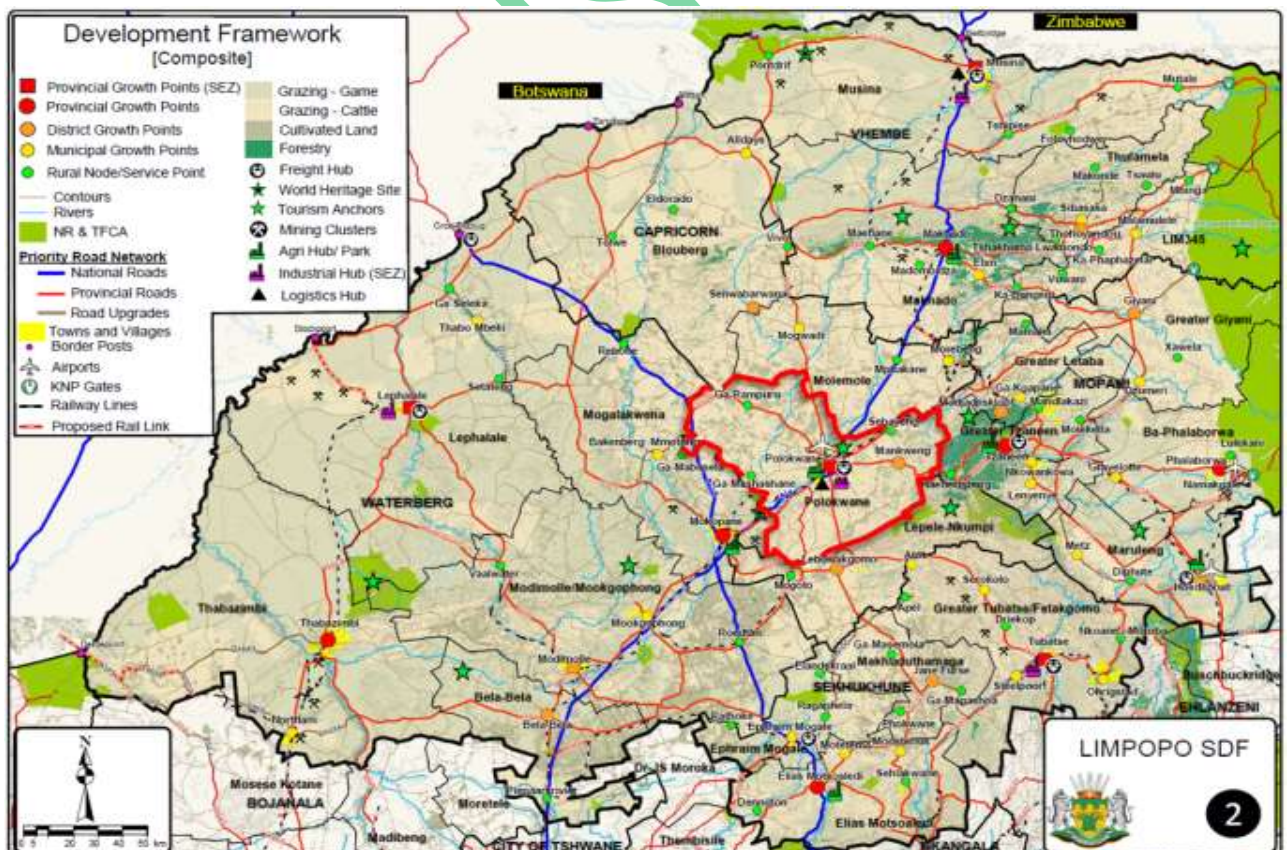
### 2.1 Strategic Location of Polokwane City

The central and strategic location of City of Polokwane, which is complemented further by the National Road **N1** highway, which strategically links the City of Polokwane to the south with **Gauteng** and to the north with **Zimbabwe**, and Polokwane International airport. The City is seen as a gateway to Africa, particularly for the neighbouring Southern African countries such as **Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Botswana**.

The City of Polokwane is not only earmarked as one of the Provincial Growth Points in Limpopo and as a **Special Economic Zone (SEZ)** in the Provincial SDF and Limpopo Development Plan 2030.

Located within the Capricorn District, City of Polokwane is the **economic hub** of Limpopo Province and is strategically located to be the **administrative and economic capital** of the province.

#### 2.1.1 Map of Limpopo Province (Polokwane Strategic Location)



Source: Limpopo Province SDF

## 2.1.2 City of Polokwane Entrance

### City of Polokwane Entrance



**Polokwane** meaning "Place of Safety" in Sotho, is a City and also the Capital City of the Limpopo Province, Polokwane is South Africa's largest urban centre north of Gauteng.

Polokwane municipality comprises of a total area of +/- **539 982.5 Ha** and is located in the central part of the Limpopo Province. Polokwane Municipality is located within the Capricorn



District in the Limpopo Province and accounts for 3% of the Province's total surface area of ±124 000 km<sup>2</sup>. In terms of its physical composition Polokwane Municipality is **23%** urbanised and **71%** still rural. The remaining area (**6%**) comprises small holdings and institutional, industrial, and recreational land.

It is the economic hub of Limpopo Province and is strategically located to be the administrative and economic capital of the Province. It is situated at the cross roads of important national and provincial roads which radiate out into the hinterland providing good access to other towns. There is a definite opportunity for Polokwane to become a logistics hub and freight interchange within the region, also given its proximity to the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland. Three of the four Spatial Development Initiatives pass through Polokwane, which repeat the City's strategic location and its importance as far as the economy of the province is concerned.

The municipal spatial pattern reflects that of the historic apartheid city model characterised by segregated settlement. At the centre of the area is the Polokwane economic hub, which comprises the CBD, industrial area, and range of social services and well established formal urban areas servicing the more affluent residents of Polokwane.

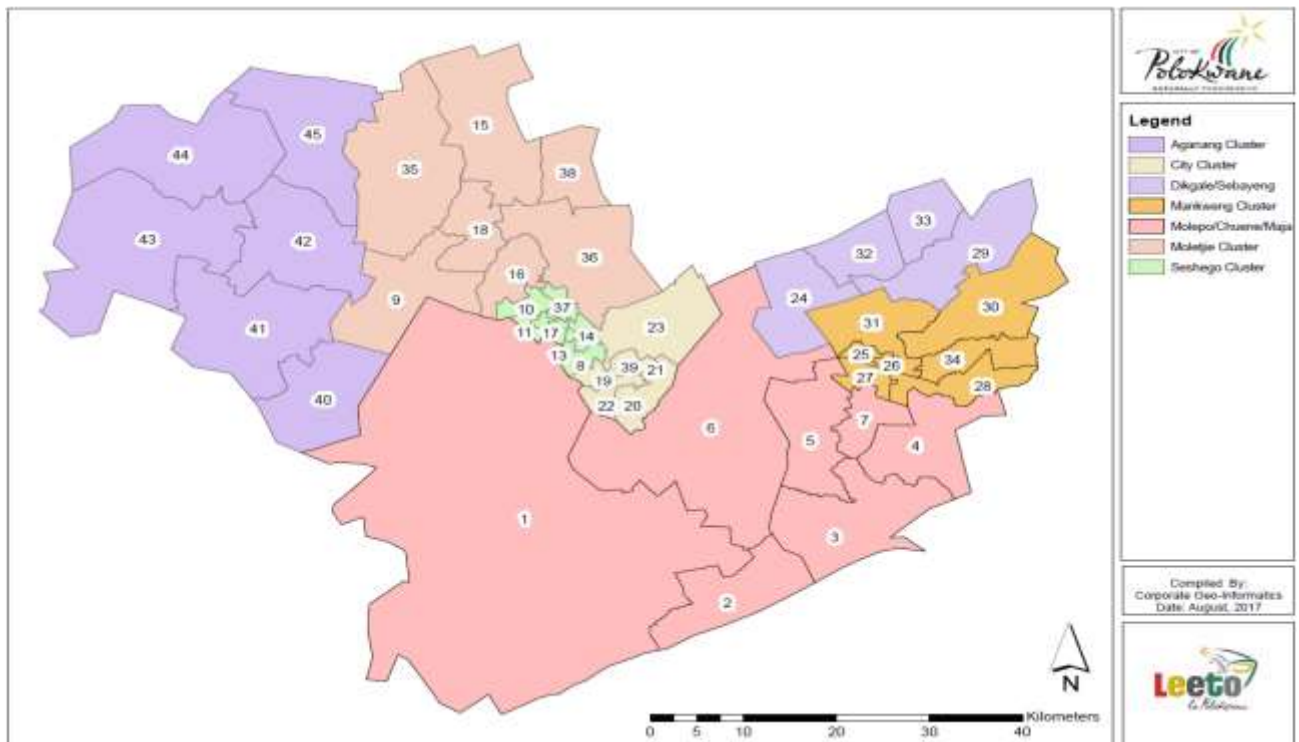
Situated on the outskirts in several clusters are less formal settlement areas which are experiencing enormous influx from rural urban migration trends. These areas are in dire need of upgraded services and infrastructure, both social and engineering, and are struggling to cope with the informal influx of more people who want access to an improved quality and standard of living. Polokwane municipality is made up of Forty-Five (**45**) wards.

### **2.1.3 The main 7 Clusters of settlements in Polokwane**

**The main 7 Clusters of settlements are:**

- 1) City
- 2) Seshego
- 3) Mankweng
- 4) Sebayeng/Dikgale
- 5) Molepo/ Chuene/ Maja
- 6) Moletjie
- 7) Aganang

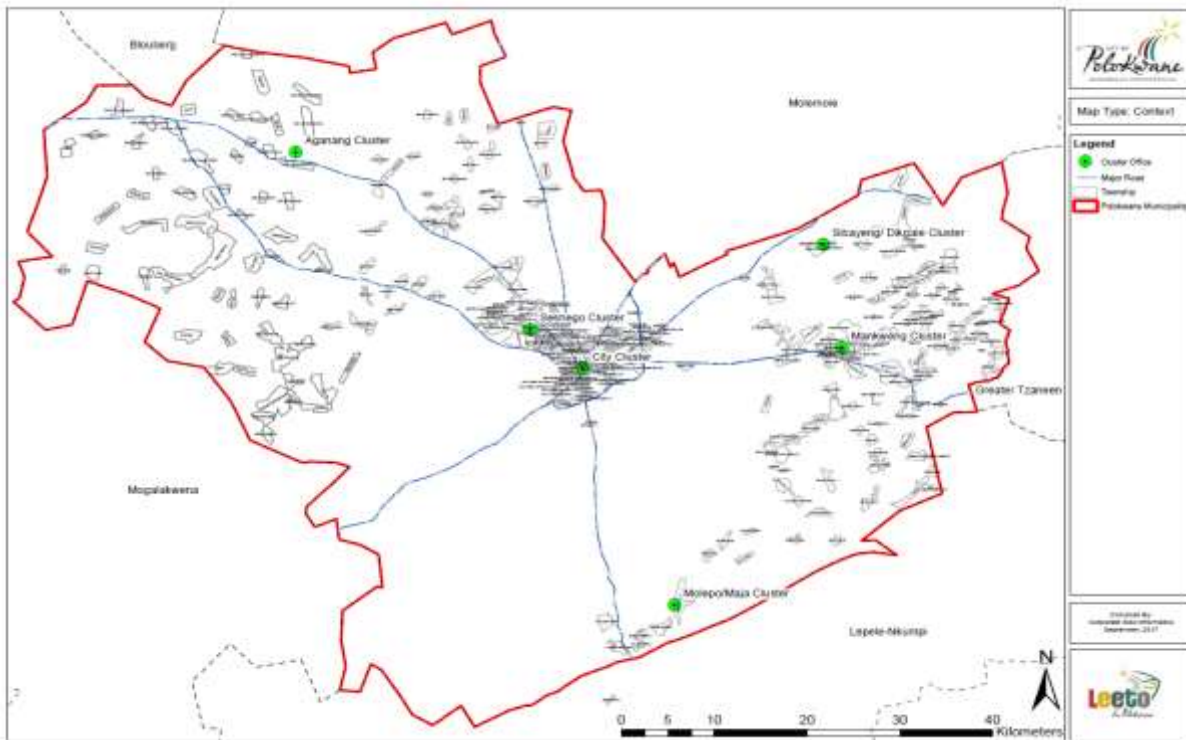
## Map: Polokwane Cluster Map (all 45 wards)



Source: Polokwane G.I.S SBU:

- **Seshego:** located west of the CBD. It is nearest to the economic core of all settlement areas and thus has the best access to the formal economy of Polokwane.
- **Mankweng:** located 30km to the east of the city. It constitutes a large area and is mixed formal and informal. It accommodates the University of Limpopo and is a long-established settlement area.
- **Sebayeng:** located 30 km to the north-east of the city centre and is less formal and newer than Mankweng. The area is experiencing influx and is growing at a rapid rate.
- **Maja:** is located 20km to the south and comprises an informal settlement area, with very limited services and infrastructure. The settlement area sits on the fringe of the rural hinterland and is hence surrounded by a vast clustering of rural / semi-rural areas.
- **Moletjie:** It is about 32 km northeast of City of Polokwane and comprises an informal settlement area, with very limited services and infrastructure. The settlement area sits on the fringe of the rural hinterland and is hence surrounded by a vast clustering of rural / semi-rural areas.
- **Aganang:** is situated 45 km west of Polokwane. It is a rural Cluster and has 4 Traditional Authorities namely Moletji, Matlala, Maraba and Mashashane. The area has been incorporated into Polokwane Local Municipality and is now serving as the seventh cluster area for Polokwane. The area is purely rural and has no township; it has potential in Agriculture and Tourism.

**Map: Polokwane Municipal Jurisdiction**



**Source: Polokwane G.I.S SBU:**

Polokwane City is the vibrant capital of Limpopo Province, situated on the Great North road to Zimbabwe; it is the largest Municipality that serves as a Capital of Limpopo with major economic centre. Its proximity to the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, as well as its convenient distance from the Kruger National Park and Magoebaskloof that makes it a perfect gateway to Africa and attractive tourist destination in itself.

**2.2 REGIONAL CONTEXT**

Polokwane Municipality is located at the heart of Limpopo Province within Capricorn District Municipality. In view of the City's central location in the Province, a number of main arterial routes converge in Polokwane. Polokwane City inter-connects and interrelates horizontally with the adjacent municipal areas. Municipalities that are adjacent to Polokwane Municipality include the following:

**Table: Regional Context**

Municipalities that are adjacent to Polokwane	
<b>Mogalakwena</b>	The N1 National Road forms the main carriage way from the south to the north. The main connection between Polokwane Municipality and Mogalakwena Municipality is the Makapan's World Heritage site in the north eastern part of the Mogalakwena Municipal Area.

<b>Municipalities that are adjacent to Polokwane</b>	
<b>Molemole</b>	Agriculture forms the main economic base of Molemole Municipal area. Agricultural produce is transported to Polokwane City. Road P94/1 and the N1- North form the main links between Molemole Municipality and Polokwane Municipality.
<b>Greater Tzaneen</b>	Road P17/1 (R71 east)) forms an important link between Polokwane Municipality and Greater Tzaneen Municipality. Various tourism attractions exist in the western part of the Greater Tzaneen Municipal Area, e.g., Magoebaskloof, the Wolkberg Conservancy Area and various overnight accommodation facilities. Apart from tourism, the R71 is used as a transport corridor for agriculture and mining.
<b>Lepelle Nkumpi</b>	Lebowakgomo, which is the capital of Lepelle Nkumpi Municipality, is located approximately 40km South of Polokwane City. The legislature and other government related functions are located in Lebowakgomo. Road P33/1 forms the main link between Lebowakgomo and Polokwane City. Lepelle Nkumpi Municipality has a strong mining base. Mining- related goods and services are transported along Road P33/1

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

### **2.3 HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT**

The hierarchy of settlements according to the SDF is indicated in the below table.

#### **1st ORDER SETTLEMENTS (GROWTH POINTS)**

<b>Cluster</b>	<b>Polokwane</b>	<b>Polokwane</b>	<b>Seshego</b>			
<b>01</b>						
<b>02</b>		Ga-Makanye Ga-Thoka Mankweng A	Mankweng B Mankweng C Mankweng D	Nobody Mothapo Nobody Mothiba	– –	University of Limpopo
<b>03</b>		Sebayeng A	Sebayeng B			
<b>04</b>						
<b>05</b>						

## 2nd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (POPULATION CONCENTRATION POINTS)

<b>Cluster Polokwane 01</b>	Bloodriver	Kgohloane	Mabotsa	Makgofe	Mokgokong
<b>Cluster Polokwane 02</b>	Badimong Boyne La-Magowa	Ga-Mahlanhle Ga-Ramogale <b>Shilwane</b>	Viking Zion City Moria Komaneng	Makgwareng Matshela-Porta Mountain Views	Phomolong Rivier View
<b>Cluster Polokwane 03</b>	Tibibe Dikgale 1	Dikgale 2 Dikgale 3	Ga-Makgoba	Makgoba 1	Mantheding
<b>Cluster Polokwane 04</b>	Hlahla	Makibelo	Ramongwana 1	Ramongwana 2	Semenya
<b>Cluster Polokwane 05</b>	Koloti Komape 2	Komape 3	Mabokelele	Madikoti	Moshate

## 3rd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (LOCAL SERVICES POINTS)

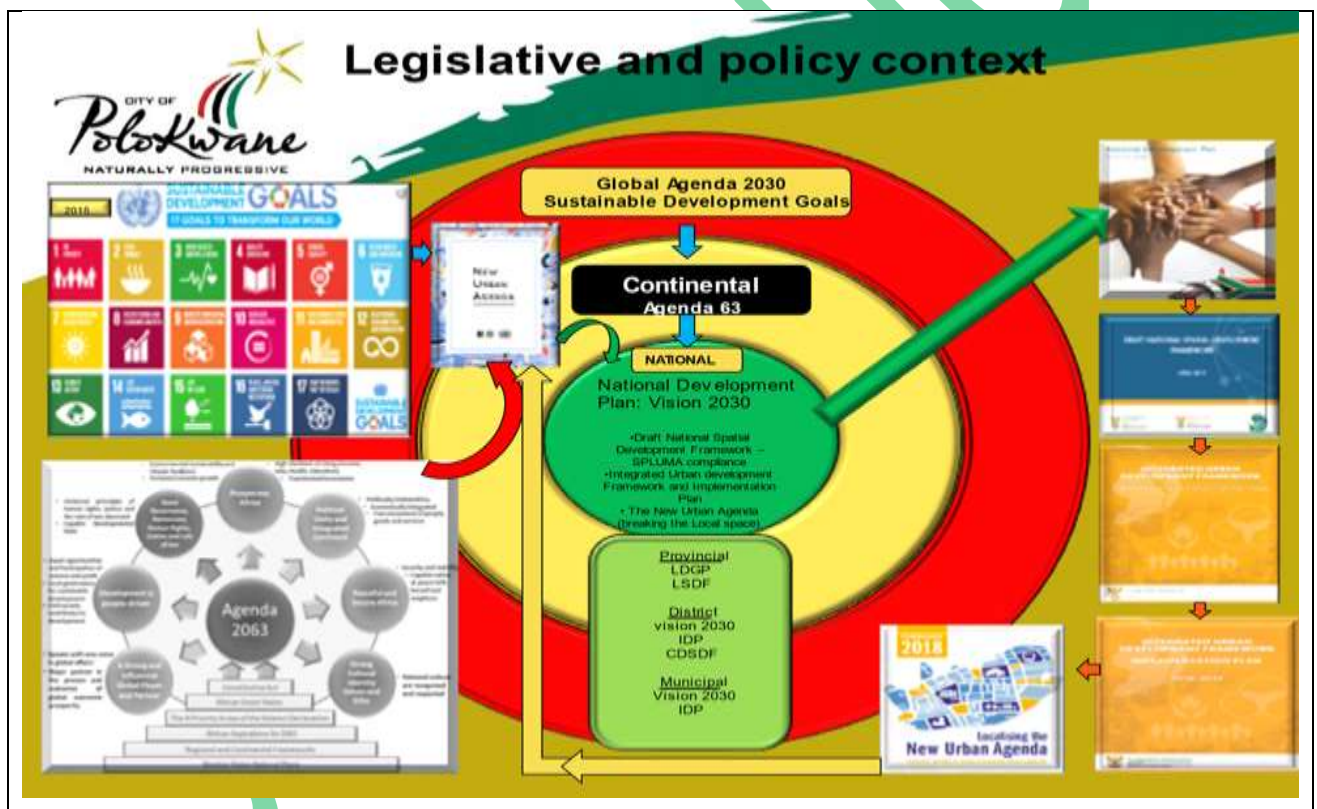
<b>Cluster Polokwane 01</b>	Ga-Maja Ga-Molepo	Ga-Phiri Kopermyne	LaasteHoop 7 Leshikishiki	Maratapel <b>Maripathekong</b>	<b>Mmoto wa Bogobe Thokgwane ng</b>
<b>Cluster Polokwane 02</b>	Chebeng Choke Chuene Ditengteng Ga-Kama Ga-Kgole	Ga-Lekgothoane Ga-Mobotsa Ga-Mailula Ga-Momphaka Ga-Mapanyula	Ga-Mathiba Ga-Mogano Ga-Mokgopo Ga-Mothiba Ga-Motholo	Ga-Rakopi Ga-Rampheri Ga-Sebati Ga-Thaba Kgokong Bergnek	Kgoroshi: (Mphela) <b>(Thantsha)</b> Kgware Laaste Hoop Ward 7A
<b>Cluster Polokwane 03</b>	Lekgadimane Mabitsela Makweya Lenyenye Maboi Makgwareng Mamadila	Leswane Mabotsa 2 Makotopong 1 Mamatsha <b>Dithupaneng</b> Madiga Makotopong 2 Mamotintane	Manamela Mashita Mehlakeng Newlands Mankgaile <b>Masobohlen g</b> <b>Mmakata Ramakgaphola</b>	Manthorwane <b>Matamanyane</b> Sebayeng Marulaneng Matobole Mosharw Sefateng Segwasi	Sekgweng Sengatane Setati Thabakgon e Thune Toronto Zondo Tsatsaneng
<b>Cluster Polokwane 01</b>	Bergvley Bethel Cottage Dichueneng	Maselaphaleng Melkboom Moklakeng	Ga-Moropo Kobo Lefahla	Sentsere College Tsware Ga-Moswedi	Makgopeng Masealama Masekwats e



	Doornspruit Klipspruit Lebowa Mogokubung Makgeng Makubung Masekho	Mphalong Quayle Setotlwane Tsebela Ga-Kololo Ga-Maphoto Ga- Mawashasha Ga- Molalemame	Mahwibitswane Makgobe 2 Marobo Masekoleng Mashongolile Moduwane Mongwaneng Mphogodiba	Jack Katzenstem Kgatla Kgwareng Komape 1 Mabotsa 1 Makengkeng	Matikireng Mogole Pax College Sepanapudi Subiaco Vaalkop 1 Vaalkop 2 Thema
--	---	--	--	---	---

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

### 2.3.1 National and International legislative guides and programme



Source: PLK town planning SBU

### 2.4 SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT TOOLS/LUMS

The provision of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 requires that the Municipality must develop a system of planning that guide the spatial and land use planning within the Municipality. The Municipality is administered by the series of planning legislations that govern the administration of land use planning namely:

#### **2.4.1 Town planning and Township Ordinance, Ordinance 15 of 1986 (to be repealed).**

The application of the Ordinance is within the area that is within the proclaimed Polokwane/Perskebult Town planning Scheme, 2016 and the Polokwane Land Use Scheme (Mankweng, Sebayeng, Aganang and Rural Areas), 2017. The area provides types of ownership such as deed of transfer (secured ownership). The said act is applicable in area proclaimed by the said legislations.

Therefore, mixed tenure rights are found within the Municipality. In this regard, there is a need for upgrading of the R293 tenure system from the deed of grant, Permission to Occupy (PTO) to Deed of transfer. Those entire townships have to be upgraded in terms of the provision of SPLUMA, Act 16 of 2013 through which the one scheme is developed and land releases on the state land is finalised and incorporated through a formal process.

The Municipality have witnessed the issue of revenue collection and valuation of the properties contradicting with the provision of proclamation R293 of 1962 since it has its own application that differs with the rates act and property valuation. There is a great need to deal with the current situation and upgrade the status quo of the townships through the engagement with the Limpopo provincial department of Corporate Government, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs for those outstanding township to be donated to the Municipality.

#### **2.4.2 Proclamation R293 of 1962 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)**

Polokwane Municipality has the black Township known as Mankweng, Sebayeng and Seshego as developed by the provision of the said legislation. Several issues need to be dealt with in terms of upgrading the status of the Land and the rates collection. Polokwane has witnessed the issues of boycott on the payment of rates by the community of Mankweng for example. The issues cut across the provision and services and better planning since the majority has district potential use such as hospitals, universities, and FET colleges. The following are key challenges:

- a. The zoning in terms of the provision of the proclamation R293 of 1962 is govern by the condition attached to the Deed of Grant that does not provide different classification of zoning unlike in terms of the provision of ordinance.
- b. There is a Town Planning Scheme and a Land Use Scheme to deal with the issue, even though the Municipality still need to comply and Compile the Land Use Scheme (Wall to Wall) in terms of the SPLUMA Act. Section 2(2) of the SPLUMA may be used but the upgrading of the Tenure System has to be deal with since the act may not automatically change the tenure system.
- c. The provision of the scheme as control tool needs to be accompanied by upgrading of all the Townships within those areas under R293 of 1962 as briefed on (b) above. The final approval is still with the provincial governance for other processes since the amendment on the condition still within the ambit of the provincial department.

#### **2.4.3. Proclamation R188 of 1969 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)**

Polokwane was assigned power of dealing with processing of the Land Use Rights in areas under the control of the Traditional Local Authorities. The ownership is Permission to Occupy

(P.T.O). In this form, there is no real right registered against the property since the majority of the settlement are not proclaimed and registered with the deed's registry. The provision of the SPLUMA requires that all citizens should have access to secure tenure. In this regard, it is the duties of all the spheres of government to properly plan the development in rural areas for better transfer of ownership to occupants. The introduction of the Rural settlement development strategy is used as a key towards addressing the issues of tenure and better management of the land use rights and associated uses. The Provision of the Land Use Management Scheme for the entire Municipal Area as a control tool need to be accompanied by the upgrading of the Tenure System of all the Rural Settlements within those areas under R188 of 1962.

#### **2.4.4 Local Government Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000.**

The focus on the act is based on section 26 of the said legislation that demand that the Municipality in areas of operation must develop the Spatial Development Framework that will provide the guidelines for the Implementation of the Land use management System (Land Use Scheme or Town Planning Scheme). The Spatial Development Framework provides the current and future development plans of the Municipality looking at ensuring the integration with other components of the IDP. This includes financial spending, environmental management plans etc.

#### **2.4.5 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013**

The Municipality has started with the key components of the as identified for the implementation of the SPLUMA which includes the following:

- Established MPT and Authorized official (Gazette as per Council resolution)<sup>ii</sup>
- Municipal Appeal Tribunal<sup>iii</sup>
- Delegation of Power<sup>iv</sup>
- Tariff<sup>v</sup>
- By-law<sup>vi</sup>
- Land Use Scheme<sup>vii</sup> (process for wall to wall is at Draft Stage)
- Municipal Spatial Development Framework<sup>viii</sup>(Proposals Stage)



The above act provides new form of planning that demand new planning approaches such as development of the New Spatial Development Framework That complies with the contents as highlighted in section 20 of the said legislation. All above activities should be in line with the provision of or incompliance with section 6 of the SPLUMA, Act 16 of 2013. The principles below provide the guides for the application of the Act:

(a) The principle of spatial justice, whereby—

- (i). past spatial and other development imbalances must be redressed through improved access to and use of land.
- (ii). spatial development frameworks and policies at all spheres of government must address the inclusion of persons and areas that were previously excluded, with an



- emphasis on informal settlements, former homeland areas and areas characterised by widespread poverty and deprivation.
- (iii). spatial planning mechanisms, including land use schemes, must incorporate provisions that enable redress in access to land by disadvantaged communities and persons.
  - (iv). land use management systems must include all areas of a municipality and specifically include provisions that are flexible and appropriate for the management of disadvantaged areas, informal settlements and former homeland areas.
  - (v). land development procedures must include provisions that accommodate access to secure tenure and the incremental upgrading of informal areas; and
  - (vi). a Municipal Planning Tribunal considering an application before it, may not be impeded or restricted in the exercise of its discretion solely on the ground that the value of land or property is affected by the outcome of the application.

### Submission

The principle provides guides in addressing the spatial segregation by putting measures in place for proper planning for both areas' disadvantages and informal settlement. This is done through providing access to the use of land through policy such as SDF that provides spatial information useful for economic development at large (Mining, Agriculture etc.). It is through planned settlement that most of the Informal Settlement has to be eradicated and provides secure tenure. These aspects of secure tenure need to be addressed at large by looking at the rural areas as well.

Our plans and policies should visualise the long term's view of at least 20 years and beyond in an integrated manner. This is through our SDF, Density policies, URS, RSS, HSP, Infrastructure Master Plans, City development Policies, financial planning etc. Both urban and rural should be guarded for managed growth<sup>ix</sup>.

"54% of the world's population lives in urban areas, a proportion that is expected to increase to 66 per cent by 2050. Projections show that urbanization combined with the overall growth of the world's population could add another 2.5 billion people to urban populations by 2050, with close to 90 percent of the increase concentrated in Asia and Africa, according to a new United Nations report launched today".

- (b) the principle of spatial sustainability, whereby spatial planning and land use management systems must—
- (i). promote land development that is within the fiscal, institutional and administrative means of the Republic.
  - (ii). ensure that special consideration is given to the protection of prime and unique agricultural land.
  - (iii). uphold consistency of land use measures in accordance with environmental management instruments.
  - (iv). promote and stimulate the effective and equitable functioning of land markets.
  - (v). consider all current and future costs to all parties for the provision of infrastructure and social services in land developments.
  - (vi). promote land development in locations that are sustainable and limit urban sprawl; and result in communities that are viable.

Polokwane Municipality has developed the Economic Growth and Development Plan, a vision 2030 which was adopted by the Municipality in line with the national and provincial

Development Plan. The vision 2030 of the Municipality has identified the 6 pillars that aimed addressing the challenges by year 2030 or prior. Each pillars signals the action needed within each directorate in driving the city into a “Smart City”. Polokwane for example, it experiences shortage of water, and that is a basic need. The concept aimed at putting measures in place to deal with the management and sustainable uses of limited resources in a sustainable means.

The programs as identified should cleared, be assessed and measures as per the targeted date. Until to date, there is still a great need for the alignment of the projects with the segments of each pillar and be measured or reviewed. This demands the revisiting of the Implementation Plan of the EGDP targeted time.

(c) the principle of efficiency, whereby—

- (i). land development optimises the use of existing resources and infrastructure.
- (ii). decision-making procedures are designed to minimise negative financial, social, economic or environmental impacts; and
- (iii). development application procedures are efficient and streamlined and timeframes are adhered to by all parties.

This principle tries to strengthen the physical cluster of the Implementation [plan of the EGDP with the aim of speed-up services delivery without Red tapes. Process plans and procedures should be clear and provided in various forms. The Introduction of the SPLUMA requires that, the systems and procedures must be transparent and fair.

(d) the principle of spatial resilience, whereby flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods in communities most likely to suffer the impacts of economic and environmental shocks.

The 2030 vision is a long plan that should be guided by the proper plans of the municipality. However, it is important that the plans should not be rigid or static but encourage flexibility when new development introduced. This enables the developers to be accommodated based on the sufficient evidence that such demand may yield good results at the end. Municipal plans must be accommodating when new initiatives introduced and be aligned with the municipal plans.

(e) the principle of good administration, whereby—

- (i). all spheres of government ensure an integrated approach to land use and land development that is guided by the spatial planning and land use management systems as embodied in this Act.
- (ii). all government departments must provide their sector inputs and comply with any other prescribed requirements during the preparation or amendment of spatial development frameworks.
- (iii). the requirements of any law relating to land development and land use are met timeously.
- (iv). the preparation and amendment of spatial plans, policies, land use schemes as well as procedures for development applications, include transparent processes of public

- participation that afford all parties the opportunity to provide inputs on matters affecting them; and
- (v). policies, legislation and procedures must be clearly set in order to inform and empower members of the public.

The IDP is an Integrated Development Plan that has to include all plans of the Municipality together with the national and provincial mandate in development. This is concluded based on the intergovernmental relations within the spheres of Government. Public participation becomes a key towards transparent governance. Therefore, the principle strengthens the use of all mechanism in collecting the data, communicating the data collected and interpretation of the data collected to the community. By so doing this, it will enable the Municipality to deliver its basic services with success.

## **2.5. THE PURPOSE OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT ACT (SPLUMA)**

It replaces the application of Town Planning and Township's ordinance, Ordinance 15 of 1986 and all other pieces of town planning legislation. In addition to all the land use applications which were processed through the ordinance, the following were repealed by the SPLUMA:

- Act No. 84 of 1967 Removal of Restrictions Act (The whole)
- Act No. 88 of 1967 Physical Planning Act (The whole)
- Act No. 113 of 1991 Less Formal Township Establishment Act (The whole)
- Act No. 125 of 1991 Physical Planning Act (The whole)
- Act No. 67 of 1995 Development Facilitation Act (The whole)

All of the above applications were administered through the Provincial Government, because of the SPLUMA; they will all be administered and processed by the local authority.

### **2.5.1 SPLUMA implementation Progress**

The municipality has already developed and implementing the Municipal Planning By-law, 2017 as from the new financial year 2018/19. All components of the act were adhered to, and the Municipal Planning Tribunal is in operation. The Polokwane Land Use Scheme 2017 for areas under R293 and R188, that covers the area which was not included in the existing Town Planning Scheme has been developed and proclaimed. The Land Use Scheme for the entire Municipal Boundary and the Municipal Spatial Development Framework still need to be compiled (at Draft and Proposals Stage) to Comply the with SPLUMA ACT.

## **2.6 Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS)**

Polokwane Land Use Scheme, 2017, has been adopted by Council and covers areas of Aganang, Sebayeng and Mankweng and other rural areas not covered by Perskebult/Polokwane Town Scheme, 2016 in order to regulate land uses through the whole municipal area.

The Municipality has developed the Land Use Scheme that was covering the area outside the Polokwane/Perskebult town Planning, 2016 which was adopted by 2017 and gazetted. We are using two different Schemes at the Moment.

A service provider is currently integrating the current Polokwane land Use Scheme for **Mankweng, Sebayeng, Aganang and rural areas** and the Polokwane/Perskebult Town planning Scheme, 2016 to a **single** Land use scheme that is in line with the SPLUMA and Municipal Planning By-Law, 2017.

The Municipality has budgeted for the compilation of the Polokwane Municipal Land Use Scheme.

An integrated Land Use Management Scheme that will cover the wall to wall is currently under the process of being developed (Draft Stage) or to be compiled to address some of the main short comings of the existing Polokwane/Perskebult Town planning scheme, 2016 and current LUS, 2017. The existing Town Planning Scheme was limited to the urban area of Polokwane City/ Seshego as well as the adjacent small holdings / farm portions (Urban Fringe Area). The commercial farming area, rural villages and Tribal areas were excluded from the current land use scheme, but with the enactment of the SPLUMA, the Municipality has approved Polokwane Land Use Scheme, 2017 for Mankweng, Sebayeng, Aganang and rural area which will cover the rest of the municipal boundary excluding the area under the current Polokwane/Perskebult Town planning Scheme, 2016.

Land use management system of the municipality consists of various mechanisms of which the Spatial Development Framework (SDF), Municipal Planning Tribunal, Municipal Appeal Tribunal and Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS) form the main or core components of a land use management system.

Capacity building on land use planning and management are amongst the core strategic mandates of the Provincial Department. In terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Act 13:2005 the department is mandated to build the system's capacity in the province – especially Traditional Authorities for land use planning management and control. Mankweng and Sebayeng is now covered, and the Department of Cooperative Government, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs has assisted the municipality with the Pilot project. Tribal Authority have mixed challenges relating to land use planning, control, management and integrity systems: linking to planning, legal rights, ownership, control records, conflict and environmental management failure.

## **2.7. MUNICIPAL PLANNING BY-LAW 2017**

The Municipality was required to develop a Municipal Planning By-Law for its entire area in terms of section 32 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013. The reason for such demand was to have uniform procedures within the Municipality for Spatial Planning and Land Use Management and address the challenges caused by the old order legislations. Even though the By-law adopted and gazetted as well as comes in to operation, some section of the Ordinance may still be applicable for the outstanding issues on the Ordinance applications. This transitional arrangement may take up to two years or beyond

subject that, the ordinance is phased out by the province. The Polokwane Municipal Planning By-law has positively included most issues that the ordinance fails to address the operation of the By-law commenced on the 2 July 2018 with all the supporting components in place.

## **2.8. POLOKWANE URBAN RENEWAL STRATEGY (URS) AND CBD DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2016**

The said plan has highlighted the key issue to be addressed in the retaining of the business within the city and unpacking the development needs as per the provision of the EGDP 2030 vision. Key principles identified for URS and CBD Development plan 2016 (page 63-88).

<b>PRINCIPLE 1: URBAN MANAGEMENT AND MAINTENANCE</b>
Action 1: Establishment of Polokwane CBD Manager's Office
Action 2: Establishment of Communication/ Complaints System in CBD Manager's Office
Action 3: Joint Service Agreements for External Stakeholders
Action 4: Minimum Basic Service Levels Commitment
Action 5: Special Precinct: Mini IDP/ Joint Maintenance Scheduling Programme/ Budget
Action 6: Dedicated Response Crews
Action 7: Public Property Management – Neglected Buildings
Action 8: Private Property Management – Neglected Buildings
Action 9: Monitoring and Review
<b>PRINCIPLE 2: SAFETY, SECURITY AND BY-LAW ENFORCEMENT</b>
Action 1: Visible Policing and Support Services
Action 2: CCTV and Other Crime Prevention Mechanisms
Action 3: Design-out Crime and Provision of Street Lighting
Action 4: By-Law Enforcement Campaign/ Capacity Building
Action 5: Implement By-Law Enforcement Programme
Action 6: Speeding Up Of Municipal Prosecution Processes
<b>PRINCIPLE 3: LANDMARKS, PUBLIC SPACES, ARTS, CULTURE AND HERITAGE</b>
Action 1: Enhancement of Gateways and Access Routes
Action 2: Establish Public Arts and Culture Initiatives in Civic Park and Mark Street Park
Action 3: Formalization of the Sterkloop Spruit Public Open Space
Action 4: Developing of the Water land Iconic Public Space
Action 5: Strengthening of the Provincial Sports and Recreation Precinct
Action 6: Enhance Priority NMT Movement Network
Action 7: Proper Management of the Visual City Scope
<b>PRINCIPLE 4: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>
Action 1: Informal Trading / Micro-retailing Formalization
Action 2: Revitalization of the African Market Square
Action 3: Waste Management and Recycling
Action 4: Expansion of Urban Development Zone
Action 5: Incentives
<b>PRINCIPLE 5: SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT</b>
Action 1: Social Capacity Building and Training Strategy
Action 2: Provision of Community Facilities
Action 3: Provide Access to Broadband Telecommunication at Iconic Public Spaces

The above principle will enable the city to restructure and consider key elements that will address the current challenges faced by the Municipality. If proper plans are integrated, the municipality will further attract investors to the city that will address city decay. Managing the



city need dedicated team of both the external and internal to deal with the challenges holistically. Safety, open space management, LED and social development are important. Key strategic projects in response to the above principles are detailed in the page 89-98 of the said document.

## **2.9. GROWTH POINT ANALYSIS**

Polokwane Municipality has the provincial growth point which functions as a first order settlement. However, the geographical area of Polokwane Municipality is predominantly rural including considerable land under traditional authority. Polokwane has a large portion of the population living in rural or peri-urban areas, which for most part is unplanned and poorly serviced. All spatial planning must take cognizance of the population and contribute to the improvement of their living conditions.

The Limpopo Spatial Rationale identified a hierarchy of settlements from provincial growth point to scattered settlements. Development interventions are proposed in terms of infrastructure provision and government services in such a manner that the natural economic potential of growth points is further stimulated. Interventions at scattered settlements are such that basic services are provided to ensure that the quality-of-life objective in the Growth and Development Strategy is achieved, but that prevents over investment in places that are depopulating.

- 1. Provincial Growth Point: City and Seshego**
- 2. District Growth Point: Mankweng**
- 3. Municipal Growth Point: Sebayeng and Aganang (to be incorporated)**

However, the following Development Corridors (DC's) and Functional Development Areas Have been identified according to the SDF analysis, namely:

- **Development Corridor (DC) 1: The Pretoria/Gauteng - Pietersburg – Mankweng – Tzaneen**

**Development Corridor (N1- south road/ R71 road)**

- **Development Corridor (DC) 2: The Burgersfort/ Chuenespoort - Polokwane - Louis Trichardt Development Corridor (R33- N1 north road)**

The Municipality has opened the corridor by initiating the key project that are under catalytic project for CEF such as the **Science park, Bakoni Malapa Township** where the provincial State Theatre will be developed and **Eco-Estate** at the Game reserve. Their status will be elaborated further in detail.

**Public Transport Integration Corridor F1;** Due to the proposed re-alignment of N1 toll road bypass, it is necessary to revise a study conducted in 1999, namely the Development Plan for the Public Transport Integration Corridor alongside **Nelson Mandela Drive**.

**Southern Gateway Development Corridor (F2);** This corridor (N1 South, along the western entrance to Polokwane City) is an excellent example of positive spin-offs from this kind of forward planning of a development corridor, in view of recent development. The continued

consideration of appropriate land-uses is essential for the long-term sustainability of this corridor and also with a view to not jeopardizing the other initiative in the SDF plan.

**Eastern Gateway Development Corridor (F3);** The functional development area was previously called the Eastern Corridor or Private Transport Corridor, and involved the Thabo Mbeki and Grobler Streets one-way pair, stretching from Biccard Street to the Savannah Centre. The study conducted in July 1999, titled Eastern Corridor Development Plan and investigation to formulate policy on the Biccard Street Transitional Area, is being reviewed).

**Northern Gateway Development Corridor F4;** The corridor starts at Landros Maré Street extension on the northern border of the CBD and traverses the industrial area (Extensions 3 and 12), running past the International Airport, and also includes part of Annandale. The proposal for SEZ or Industrial Hub may also take cognisance of the proposed development on the proposal for the mixed use and proposal for the expansion of the satellite university Campus through a mixed-use development. The expansion of the Urban edge is crucial since the development of the industrial use has now bordered to the urban edge that is a success story for the past 8 years of implementing the current SDF.

**Outer Eastern Link (F5);** This is a completely new development area and was proposed because of the amalgamation of the different TLC areas. It is part of the Tshwane / Gauteng – Polokwane – Mankweng – Tzaneen Development Corridor (DC1) which would play a major role in integrating the Polokwane and Mankweng clusters with one another. This integration should be regarded as a long-term vision.

The PDA1 proposal for the Dalmada Precinct, is being developed in order to support the development and address the issues of informal or illegal occupation of the land and land invasion. Currently, the Municipality has received township application development in order to support the PDA1 that will comprise of the mixed-use development including the Business, industrial recreational and Residential in a form of a new Nodes or suburban area. Looking at the long terms plan of the SDF, the area will consider the area to be a catalyst for linking Mankweng and Polokwane City.

The development area starts where the Eastern Gateway Development Corridor (F4) ends. From this point it runs to the area in the vicinity of the Boyne and Ga-Mokwane villages, on the eastern border of the Polokwane Municipality Area.

In view of the above corridors, has open an opportunity for the spinoff- development for the key catalytic projects as planned for the various land that support the PHDA'S as gazetted. **R81 corridor** as well is becoming an active spinoff of the Mall of the North, the approved institutions or educational zoning around the area and other land uses will constitute to a kind of mixed used development that will constitute a **student village/Varsity village** since the interest of proposed development around the area as per the current applications received seen the potential for expansion.

## 2.10. MUNICIPAL LAND ANALYSES

The Municipality is currently intending to develop the Land Audit report in order to account on the opportunities that the land may impact looking beyond 2030 vision. The map below provides the developable properties within the register of the Municipality.

There is more land that the Municipality has not investigated or yet transferred to the Municipality that needs to be researched. The commissioning of the Land Audit may pave the way for proper land management and the need to address urban challenges. The current land parcels of the municipality are not enough in terms of the projected 2060 urbanisation rate in Urban areas. It is vital that the Municipality advance its strategy in land acquisition with the 2060 urbanisation rate in mind. In this case, having a backlog of housing demand of almost 60000, what will the situation be if the strategic land is not used efficiently through planning approaches such as densification and compact settlement and do away with urban sprawl.

### **2.11. LAND CLAIMS ANALYSIS**

A number of land claims have been lodged with Government within the Polokwane Municipal area of jurisdiction. However, the majority of these claims are not yet concluded or finalized. It is currently not possible to determine their likely impact on spatial development. There is concern from some quarters that more unsustainable rural settlements might be established as a result of restitution of land rights.

From a spatial development point of view, land claims do not necessarily impact on the type of land use. It, however, do have an impact in delaying development processes. Prospective developers are obliged to seek consent of the respective Land Claims Commissioner prior to undertaking any form of development, that is, either for township establishments or change in land use. Although consultations do not hinder development, they do derail the speed at which development moves.

The claimants that receive their land through restoration process becomes a challenging issue that impact negatively to the Municipality especially in areas that are within the Municipal proclaimed scheme. It also plays a negative role and foster illegal invasion. No settlement plans or Township established, and people tend to develop on those land. Such occupants tend to demand services on the area not well surveyed and declared suitable from environmental point of view.

### **2.12. LAND AVAILABILITY ANALYSIS**

The municipality owns a sizable number of land parcels within the urban area. This includes erven within proclaimed townships, farm portions, agricultural holdings and proclaimed townships for mixed housing developments primarily to cater for the housing gap which is outlined in detail in the Housing Chapter.

**Table: The below table represents vacant municipal owned townships**

#	NAME	LOCALITY	NUMBER OF UNITS
1	Polokwane X72	Doornkraal	800 Residential 1



#	NAME	LOCALITY	NUMBER OF UNITS
2	Polokwane X79	Doornkraal	500 Residential 1
3	Polokwane X78	Doornkraal	2863x "Residential 1"; 5x "Residential 2"; 7x "Residential 3"; 2x "Business 3"; 1x "Special"; 5x "Institutional" (Church) 7x "Educational" 4x "Municipal"; 13x "Public Open Spaces" 1x "RSA"
4	Polokwane X108	Portion 188 (a ptn of ptn 8) of Doornkraal680 LS	200 Industrial 2 Sites
5	Polokwane X126	Engelschedoornboom 668LS	500 Residential 1 Erven
6	Polokwane X124	Portion 12 of the remainder of Krugersburg 933 LS	19 erven zoned "Special": "Business 2: 1 Erf ±6 650m <sup>2</sup> . "Municipal": 1 Erf ±917m <sup>2</sup>
7	Polokwane X127	Engelschedoornboom 668LS	500 Residential 1 Erven
8	Southern Gateway X1  PICC	N1 southbound (Pretoria road) and Lawton Road, in the southwestern corner of Polokwane city adjacent to the Nirvana suburb and Ivydale Agricultural Holdings  Portions 407, 408, 409, 410, 411 and 412 of the farm Sterkloop 688 LS	The "Special" zoned Erf for a Convention Centre: Tunnel Level Basement Level, Ground Floor First Floor Second Floor  The "Special" zoned Erf for a Hotel The "Public Open Space" zoned Erf will be used as a Green Belt Buffer
9	Polokwane X106	Portion 171 Doornkraal 680 LS	190 Residential Erven
10	Polokwane X107	Portion 191 Doornkraal 680LS	142 Residential Erven
11	Polokwane X133	Klipfontein 670 LS Stoefontein 678 LS	3000 sites 208, 422 Ha 138,1129 ha
12	Polokwane X134	Farm Volgestruisfontein 667 LS	2591 sites 178.4699 Ha
13	Nirvana X 5	Portion 74 and 75 of Ivy Dale Agricultural Holdings	105 sites 8. 92224 Ha

**Source: PLK Town planning SBU**

Township establishment processes for Mixed Housing Development (BNG) are currently underway for the below farm portions:

**Table: Land with Township Establishment in progress.**

<b>PROPERTY DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>SIZE</b>
Portion of portion 7 of the Farm Palmietfontein 24KS	104.8367Ha
Farm Weltevreden 746 KS	Part of 5 980.00 Ha
Portion 151 to 160 Farm Sterkloop 688 LS	215 Ha

**Source: PLK Town planning SBU (2021)**

Although the Municipality does not own land in the Tribal Authority's area of jurisdiction, the provisions of the development objectives and development planning in general still vests within the Municipality's guidelines and control. These processes are illustrated in detail in the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) By-Laws as well as Proclamation R188 of 1969 regulations.

### **2.13. LAND INVASIONS COURT ORDERS**

As land invasions were starting to be a problem in the City of Polokwane, Council has obtained **court orders** which protect the following land parcels.

1. Polokwane Extension 40
2. Polokwane Extension 108
3. Polokwane Extension 78
4. Polokwane Extension 106 and 107
5. Erf 6045 Pietersburg, Mikes Kitchen
6. Portion 1-16 of the farm Pelgrimshoop 630 LS
7. Erf 60 and 374 Seshego 9G
8. Erf 36 Seshego 9F
9. Erf 2406 Seshego E (Church)
10. Erf 5289 Pietersburg Extension 11
11. Erf 8518 Seshego Zone 1 extension

#### **Farms:**

1. Farm Engelshedoornboom 688LS
2. Farm Volgestruisfontein 667 LS
3. Farm Klipfontein 670 LS
4. Holding 76 of Ivy Dale Agricultural Holdings

5. Farm Doorndrai 606/ LS
6. Farm Sterkloop 688 LS

Court Orders are fully implemented in dealing with land invasion to assist the City with proper Land Management and Planning. But the challenging issue is the cost lost due to unplanned invasion since it is unknown. A comprehensive strategy to deal with the Land invasion is crucial for the municipality in order to safe guard its properties.

## **2.14. SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND INTERVENTIONS**

### **Spatial analysis**

#### **i. Planning control and Outdoor advertising**

##### **Challenges**

- inadequate control over illegal land use practices within the city
- lack of human capital to deal with illegal land uses (shortage of staff)
- inadequate control over illegal outdoor advertising
- management of contracts for outdoor advertising projects

##### **Interventions**

- reviewed the operational manual contained in the illegal land use strategy 2012- to enable the imposing of fines for illegal land uses.
- Council has budgeted for 2 positions of Planning Control Officers positions and have been advertised. Short listing and interviews still have been concluded.
- 3 contractors appointed to deal with the removal of illegal advertisement of council land. Their contracts expired, revised ToR submitted for approval and advertisement of the Project for new Contractors.
- The outdoor advertising bylaw has been reviewed to deal with inadequacies of the 2009 by-law

#### **ii. Land Use Management**

##### **Challenges**

- Installation of services on approved municipal townships.
- Installation of Services on new approved municipal townships.
- Lack of Truck in Facilities.
- Townships without Street names

##### **Interventions**

- The process of servicing municipal township has started. Engineering Services SBU had appointed engineer to start with the designs for (Polokwane Extension 108,26 and 126) and thereafter contractors will be appointed to install services. The Detailed design report has been submitted and approved. The Tender has been prepared and submitted for approval and advertisement of the project.

- List of Municipal Townships attached that require services to be installed. Engineering Services SBU to budget for and appoint engineers and contractors.
- Application for Truck Inn Facility lodged on Polokwane Extension 136 (Municipal Township). Municipal Planning Tribunal has decided on the application, and it is approved.
- Polokwane Local Geographic Names Policy has been adopted to deal with naming of streets within townships.

### iii. Spatial Planning

#### Challenges

- Spatial Inequalities/Injustices
- Inadequate ownership of land in rural areas
- Underutilised airport infrastructure
- Lack of alignment in municipal plans
- Lack of areas earmarked for Student Accommodation and policy to address the need
- Confusion in Multiple legislation not repealed by SPLUMA
- Municipal By-Law Implementation

#### Interventions

- Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant (NDPG) is a grant that unlocks investments, by funding neighbourhood development projects to improve the life of residents in targeted areas, generally townships. The partnership of the municipality and National Treasury with this program, enable the municipality to implement projects identified in municipal plans in order to curb spatial inequalities.
- The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has approached the municipality on some portions which are owned by the state. The intention is to release land owned by state to the municipality in order to unlock development and promote ownership. For example, Portions affected by invasions (**Mamahule Area**) will be the initial intervention areas.
- Enhancing the status of the municipal airport has been prioritised. Mixed land uses are to be promoted around portions surrounding the airport. Terms of reference to conduct feasibility studies have been drafted in order to get a consultant to carry out the relevant studies.
- The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs. The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. A Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) is a long-term infrastructure plan that flows from a Spatial Development Framework. The CEF was developed in order to incorporate those Strategic Development Areas that details the Future Priority Development Areas, as such there will be alignment between planning, infrastructure and financial plans.

- Through the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBB Plan, 2016, areas where student accommodation is to be promoted has been identified. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and social housing.
- Polokwane Municipal Bylaw, 2017 has been and approved by Council and currently in operation and covers the whole municipal area. Polokwane Land Use Scheme, 2017, has been adopted and will cover areas of Aganang, Sebayeng and Mankweng and other rural areas not covered by Perskebult/Polokwane Town Scheme, 2016 in order to regulate land uses through the whole municipal area.
- The Municipality must compile or integrate the current Scheme to have a single wall to wall Land Use Scheme for the entire Municipal area of jurisdiction in order to comply with SPLUMA Act and Municipal Planning Bylaws. The process is at the level of a Draft Land Use for the entire Municipal Jurisdiction.

### 2.14.1 General challenges and Intervention

Spatial Challenges	Intervention
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inadequate ownership of land in rural areas</li> <li>• Illegal land uses</li> <li>• Lack of human resource to fast-track updating of spatial data regularly</li> <li>• Property Management (Leasing and valuation roll)</li> <li>• Human Capital</li> <li>• Limited Funding (Development of the strategies and feasibility studies)</li> <li>• Land claims</li> <li>• Illegal townships</li> <li>• Poor integrated human settlement with institutional facilities</li> <li>• Limited power on the administration of R293 proclamation</li> <li>• Illegally occupied RDP housing units</li> <li>• Underutilised airport infrastructure</li> <li>• Fresh produce market for regional trade</li> <li>• Lack of commitment on the establishment of Cargo HUB or Agro-processing HUB</li> <li>• Townships without Street names</li> <li>• Management of Contracts for Outdoor Advertising Projects</li> <li>• Installation of services on approved municipal townships.</li> <li>• Installation of Services on new approved municipal townships.</li> <li>• Lack of Truck in Facilities.</li> <li>• Spatial Inequalities/Injustices</li> <li>• Lack of Alignment in Municipal Plans</li> <li>• Lack of areas earmarked for Student Accommodation and policy to address the need</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• review the operational manual contained in the illegal land use strategy 2012- to enable the imposing of fines for illegal land uses.</li> <li>• Two (2) Planning Control Officers positions have been appointed to deal with illegal.</li> <li>• To Appoint 3 contractors/ or require services from Directorate Roads and transportation to deal with the removal of illegal advertisement on council land.</li> <li>• . The outdoor advertising bylaw 2009 has been reviewed to deal with inadequacies</li> <li>• To benchmark with Municipality of our size to learn how Management of Contracts for Outdoor Advertising Projects are done. The Municipal Council has already resolved that benchmarking should be conducted.</li> <li>• The process of servicing Municipal Township has started. Engineering Services SBU had appointed engineer to start with the designs for (Polokwane Extension 108,26 and 126) and the contractor are appointed to install services.</li> <li>• List of Municipal Townships attached that require services to be installed. Engineering Services SBU to budget for and appoint engineers and contractors.</li> <li>• Application for Truck Inn Facility lodged on Polokwane Extension 136 (Municipal Township). Municipal Planning Tribunal decided on the application and approved it.</li> </ul>

Spatial Challenges	Intervention
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confusion in Multiple legislation not repealed by SPLUMA</li> <li>• Integrated Human Settlements</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Polokwane Local Geographic Names Policy has been adopted to deal with naming of streets within townships.</li> <li>• Neighborhood Development Partnership Grant (NDPG) is a grant that unlocks investments, by funding neighborhood development projects to improve the life of residents in targeted areas, generally townships. The partnership of the municipality and National Treasury with this program, enable the municipality to implement projects identified in municipal plans in order to curb spatial inequalities.</li> <li>• The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has approached the municipality on some portions which are owned by the state. The intention is to release land owned by state to the municipality in order to unlock development and promote ownership. For example, Portions affected by invasions (<b>Mamahule Area</b>) will be the initial intervention areas.</li> <li>• Enhancing the status of the municipal airport has been prioritised. Mixed land uses are to be promoted around portions surrounding the airport. The feasibility studies have been finalised and approved by Council.</li> <li>• The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs. The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. A Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) is a long-term infrastructure plan that flows from a Spatial Development Framework. The CEF was developed in order to incorporate those Strategic Development Areas that details the Future Priority Development Areas, as such there will be alignment between planning, infrastructure and financial plans.</li> <li>• Through the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBB Plan, 2016, areas where student accommodation is to be promoted has been identified. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and social housing.</li> </ul>



Spatial Challenges	Intervention
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Polokwane Municipal Bylaw, 2017 has been and approved by Council and currently in operation and covers the whole municipal area. Polokwane Land Use Scheme, 2017, has been adopted and will cover areas of Aganang, Sebayeng and Mankweng and other rural areas not covered by Perskebult/Polokwane Town Scheme, 2016 in order to regulate land uses through the whole municipal area. The Municipality must compile the wall-to-wall Land Use Scheme for the entire Municipal area of jurisdiction to comply with SPLUMA Act and Municipal Planning Bylaws. The process is at Draft Land Use for the entire Municipal Jurisdiction.</li> </ul>

Source: PLK Town planning SBU

## 2.15. SPATIAL INTERPRETATION OF THE POLOKWANE MUNICIPALITY

### 2.15.1 Key guiding policies and municipal By-laws

- a. SDF
- b. EGD
- c. URS/CBD Development Plan
- d. Density policies
- e. Rural Settlement Strategy
- f. Telecommunication mast policy
- g. Spaza and Tavern Policy
- h. IUDF

### 2.15.2 Economic opportunities and growth

- 1) Polokwane Municipality is a gate way to Africa
- 2) SEZ/Industrial park development
- 3) Post incubation hub at Polokwane extension 26
- 4) Cargo Hub/Agro-processing HUB
- 5) Truck-Inn/Logistic HUB
- 6) Development of Science Park
- 7) Eco-estate around the Bakoni Malapa
- 8) Arts and Cultural Hub
- 9) Urban Renewal projects (development of the High-rise office and residential accommodation)



## 2.16. RURAL DEVELOPMENT

In terms of the Rural settlement development challenges, the Municipality must comply with section 3-8 of the SPLUMA.

Approximately 70% of the area in Polokwane Municipality is Rural and need to be careful considered. Through public participation on the Draft Rural Settlement Strategy, it was discovered that, rural areas have potential in Nodal development and those areas close to our Sub-urban areas. This tends to have major development along the main roads and attract people to seek residential properties, business etc. in the assessment, it was found that there are:

- Informal settlement within road reserve and flood lines
- Uncoordinated spatial settlement
- Poor streets and roads in informal settlement
- Un-planned desired land use types
- Unclear determination of the property's sizes
- Poor Cemetery planning and maintenance
- Land allocation disputes
- Poor monitoring and evaluation on the registered servitudes, flood lines, road reserves.

This goes beyond to old settlement as they extend. In this regards, Spatial Planning has developed the **Rural Settlement Strategy, 2017** with the aim of addressing this spatial pattern. Once the document has presented, the Traditional Local Authority has seen the potential and realize to partner with the Municipality through development of those area. Letters of request was received and need urgent attention.

Our Land Use Scheme survey conducted in 2012/2013 has data that portray zoning of that area and captures in the system. The following challenges have to be addressed:

- a. Development of the proper integrated human settlement that will be sustainable: this are the benefit
  - Building Plans approval fees
  - Rezoning
  - Managing land use since we have two land use Scheme and Town Planning Scheme that covers the wall-to-wall scheme.
  - Proper planning for other services such as Roads, Water and sanitation etc.
- b. Land survey for all settlement in Polokwane municipal Jurisdiction:
  - Proper stand numbers and streets
  - Land dispute resolution
  - Proper stats
  - Proper maintenance etc.
- c. Land Use Survey for the whole Municipality
  - Proper zoning and
  - conflict resolution
  - Business Registration and management
  - Adhere to SPLUMA



## 2.17. URBAN DEVELOPMENT

### 2.17.1 Integrated Urban Development Framework Plan

The future of the Polokwane City, we tend to develop policies that demand integration of all resources and different directorate to interact with one another. Looking at the directionless, the Municipality tends to shift away from purpose built (Future planning) and concentrate on basic services rather advance proactive Plans that aim at advancing service delivery mechanism looking at the 2030-2050 urbanization challenges. Government policies are being development with a long terms vision, but it is left with the planners to properly re-shape the city toward the future needs. Advance skills and commitment of the planners is required. The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs.

The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. In this case, The CBD and parts of the Industrial area and some neighbourhoods were left without being guided by any of those SDA's. In terms of Table 66 of the current Spatial Development Framework, 2010, it was noted that the IUDF must be developed. Therefore, the proposed development strategy seeks to incorporate those SDA's in to an Integrated Urban Framework Plan that details the Future and Integrated plan for the Provincial growth point.

The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is a response to our urbanisation trends and the directive by the National Development Plan (NDP) to develop an urban development policy that will cater for the increasing numbers by ensuring proper planning and necessary infrastructure to support this growth. Polokwane Municipality has to develop its own Integrated Urban Framework Plan that will propose a detail plan on the City Development Strategy looking towards on a sustainable urbanisation model at the following key policy levers:

- Integrated urban planning and management
- Integrated transport and mobility
- Integrated sustainable human settlements
- Integrated urban infrastructure
- Efficient land governance and management
- Inclusive economic development
- Empowered active communities.
- Effective urban governance.
- Sustainable finances

Polokwane Municipality has developed a series of policies to deal with the development of the city but in a narrow view. Part of the current project within the Directorate is to have a comprehensive **City Development Strategy** that will underpin the key policy levers looking at the promoting the city through long terms development goals and models. This will enable to address the following:

- **A CDS is a potential trend breaker:** - motivating key decision-makers to think and operate differently so as to break the negative trends faced by a city.

- **Guiding short-term implementation within a long-term logic:** - A CDS informs the 5- year integrated development planning (IDP) process and shape term-of-office delivery objectives.
- **Pulling in the same direction:** - It allows multiple government agencies, communities and business to rally, act and invest along a similar logic; creating a common focus.
- **Identifying interventions with the highest leverage potential:** - A CDS serve to prioritise and direct resources effectively into those identified interventions that holds the best potential.
- **Anticipating future shocks and contextual changes:** - Through a CDS anticipated long term future changes can be identified and anticipated.
- **Assist in guiding growth:** - A CDS can influence how a city approaches infrastructure creation and physical growth; and
- **(Re)Positioning:** -A CDS serve to reposition the city in terms of national policies and public funding, place-marketing and also the confidence with which ordinary people view the potential of their city.

The budget was allocated for the development of the said document but is subject to the finalisation of the Draft SDF in order to be aligned. All the project within the Municipality must be in accordance to the approved CEF that will assist in the plotting of the various directorate project that will enable proper recording of the projects spatially.



## 2.18 ECONOMIC SPIN-OFF DEVELOPMENTS

### 2.18.1 Baobab Gardens Motor City

Baobab Boulevard township is surrounded by existing township developments on three sides. On the north eastern side is Bendor X87 (i.e., **Thornhill shopping centre**, an area approved for an office development with the rest being a residential development consisting of both single and sectional title residential development). Next to the Munnik road on the northern side are townships such as Bendor X32 and 44 (i.e. mostly residential development consisting of both single and sectional title residential development and a filling station). Adjacent to De Wet Drive to the south west of the application site is a township for up market single residential development known as Polokwane extension 11 (Sterpark). The area to the south is vacant and part of the Remaining Extent the Farm Krugersburg 993 LS. The site occupies an important location in relation to other significant features of the City. The site is close to the newly completed N1 ring road and therefore has excellent and direct connections to the south and north-east.

The location advantages are amongst other, the following:

- i. The eastern area has a large concentration of middle to higher income housing at Polokwane extension 138 that will include the botanical gardens and Bendor 126 for mixed land uses.
- ii. The huge volume of existing “older” motor industry/motor dealership rights in Polokwane city, and similar rights approved in recent years elsewhere outside the CBD such as along the N1 (now R101) south impact negatively on the development of Polokwane X124 for motor and motor related businesses. Most of the motor dealerships are “established” in their current locations and the remaining motor dealerships are currently being established in new locations such as MGM Group at Polokwane X124 (Baobab Boulevard) and others at the southern N1/R101 entrance such as Jeep/Mercedes/Mitsubishi/Dodge (pre-owned on Erf 141 Ivypark) and Audi (on Erven 2 and 3 Ivypark). Westvaal dealership (Chevrolet/Opel/Isuzu) will relocate to Erf 2506 Ivypark X52.
- iii. Mall of the north is a secondary activity node with Munnik road an activity spine/corridor and mixed-use development is allowed in this development area. The area is close to the Mall of the North regional shopping centre and therefore also close to the N1 ring road. Baobab Boulevard therefore has excellent and direct connections to the south and north-east.
- iv. Baobab Boulevard is part of the Mall of the North secondary activity node/Munnik road corridor and far enough from Polokwane CBD to functionally service a huge surrounding residential community. In conjunction with Thornhill shopping centre which is opposite the road on the most north eastern side of Baobab Boulevard the “combined Mall of the North node” is even more functional, without compromising the operations of the CBD.
- v. The north-eastern part of the city has been rapidly expanding in recent years, and the quality and nature of Baobab Boulevard once fully developed will be a huge attribute to the area and also to Polokwane City.
- vi. Secondary nodes and activity corridors are part of the urban structure, particularly in a rapidly growing city. The CBD is the central, economic heart of the city with a role to serve the high order retail and general business needs of the community. Activity nodes and corridors that lead into the city provide complementary economic opportunities and speciality functions, such as Mall of the North and Baobab Boulevard. Multi-nodal cities such as Polokwane are function-oriented, and these uses need not to be located in the CBD because they have specific space needs and operational requirements.

### **Motor City Baobab Boulevard Development**





Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

### 2.18.2 Eskom Regional Offices

Eskom has recently completed a process of aligning their 7 regions into 9 provinces. They have identified a need to put their Provincial Headquarters in Polokwane as the Capital City of Limpopo Province. This initiative is aimed at catering the Eskom Northern Region employees amounting to 2000 employees and at the same time merging the Eskom Distribution, Transmission and Generation. The proposed development will require approximately **40 Hectares** of land for the purposes of Construction of an 8 Ha regional Head

Office (Main Building). The engagement with the regional Director is underway in order to either maximise the use of the land at Polokwane X 108 industrial Township in order to open up the Seshego Precinct Plan.

Establishment of a 10 Ha Training Academy to accommodate:

- Electrical Training Simulator
- Substation Yard (1 Ha)
- Line Yard (4 Ha)
- Dead-condition Construction Yard (4 Ha)
- Technical Training and Non-Technical Training requirements (0.3 Ha)

Establishment of the 4 Ha Engineering Block to accommodate:

- TSG,
- EDFs,
- MEW,
- Live Work And
- Technical Support

Further to that, Eskom has the intention to establish a high-quality commercial office building with a minimum 4-Star Green Star Rating certified with the Green Building Council of South Africa. This initiative is in line with the principles of sustainable development, and land use planning. The land is located on the **remainder of the farm Krugersburg 993 LS**. The land is zoned agricultural and vacant at this point. Locality map is indicated below. The total size as requested by Eskom is approximately 40 hectares

#### **Benefits of the proposed development**

The proposed development will act as landmark in Polokwane; it will enhance development within Polokwane and bring about job creation for local communities. Apart from the benefits directly linked to Eskom, this kind of development is important for the landscaping of the city. The development will furthermore stimulate economic growth for the city and promote investment in Polokwane. Below are the summarized benefits as motivated by Eskom.

- Adequate office accommodation for current and future Eskom employees
- Adequate parking space
- Improved Security
- Monetary savings
- Enhanced Eskom identity and public image
- Enriched worker morale
- Educational and training opportunities

Eskom is currently experiencing some challenges with their current offices scattered throughout the City. The shortage of parking for their employees' together with other reasons already mentioned has motivated for the need to establish Provincial Headquarters. Below is a snapshot of the current ESKOM offices.

Although there is a policy guiding the development of offices in Polokwane area, "CBD Development Plan" which encourages office development within the CBD, Eskom offices are not located within the CBD in other provinces. Given the non-availability of land to cater for such magnitude of office space within the CBD, it is argued that the proposed development has special merits therefore requires a special consideration in line with other development principles and regulations. The area falls within the Strategic Development Area 3 of

Polokwane municipality, and it is within the Urban Edge according to the Spatial Development Framework, 2011.

“That a portion not exceeding 78 Hectares of the Remainder of the farm Krugersburg 993 LS leased with a sale option to Eskom for the purposes of developing their Provincial Headquarters”.

Eskom appointed a consulting team to investigate the feasibility of the site in 2013 and it was established that the site had severe shortcomings for Eskom’s intended use. The impact of the restrictions imposed by Civil Aviation on the adjoining municipal landing strip and the provision of power to the site render the site inadequate to meet the initial objectives of Eskom. The height restrictions for the overhead power lines to the substation of the proposed Simulator and Training centre cannot be accommodated on Krugersburg 995 LS. Therefore, an alternative land was identified, **which is a portion of Remainder of Farm Weltevreden 746 LS**, this request is currently being processed.

### **2.18.3 Polokwane International Convention Centre (PICC)**

The Polokwane International Convention Centre will be located at Southern Gateway Extension 1 Township on Portions 407, 408, 409, 410, 411 and 412 of the farm Sterkloop 688 LS Limpopo Province. The property is situated on the corner of the N1 southbound (Pretoria road) and Lawton Road, in the south-western corner of Polokwane City adjacent to the Nirvana suburb and Ivydale Agricultural Holdings. Southern Gateway Extension 1 is a Municipal township located on portion 83, 84, 85, 86, 87 and 77 of the holding Ivydale, see attached map. As part of the township establishment process, an EIA scoping was conducted, a Geo-technical report was prepared, a flood line certificate prepared, and a Traffic Impact Assessment conducted.

The following uses were approved as part of the conditions of establishment of the township. The “Special” zoned Erf for a Convention Centre consisting of the following components:

- Tunnel Level
- Basement Level,
- Ground Floor
- First Floor
- Second Floor

#### **The “Special” zoned Erf for a Hotel**

The “Public Open Space” zoned Erf will be used as a Green Belt Buffer.

There is a need for such a facility in Polokwane, The Township is proclaimed and registered with the registrar of deeds, proclamation notice and approved general plan. The proposed PICC will subject to the funding availability since the feasibility studies concluded. There are several engagements between the Municipality, appointed panel of consultant to source the funding through a long term’s development leases with the use of the other properties adjacent to complement the development.



### 2.18.4 Urban Renewal projects

Polokwane Municipality has adopted the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBD Development Plan 2016. This policy has set the key principles that support the current Program of “Re a ga” Polokwane that highlight the following:

The City of Polokwane has launched programme called "Re aga Polokwane", that is geared towards ensuring that the City and its citizens are working together to build the city of Polokwane. The "Re aga Polokwane" programme – strengthening the partnership in **building a smart city by 2030 and beyond**. Polokwane is the Capital city of the Limpopo Province-opportunity for economic growth and experience rural urban migration. Polokwane is likely to face urbanisation challenges as the signs have already surfaced such as engineering capacity and high demand of housing typologies. Major projects being embarked by the City of Polokwane:

- ✓ the **replacement of 177km of AC (asbestos cement) pipes** in the municipality's jurisdiction.
- ✓ **to replace conventional water and electricity meters** with smart meters in a number of areas in the City.
- ✓ the introduction of a **rapid bus service**;
- ✓ a **waste management project**.
- ✓ as well as a major **student accommodation** drive to support the growing number of students in the city.
- ✓ Other **Public Private Partnership on Mixed use development** through a Long-term development
- ✓ Water Master Plans
- ✓ Urban Renewal projects
- ✓ etc.

Key strategic/Catalytic development projects on the Long Terms Development leases and other Municipal initiative includes:

- Development of the Polokwane Towers (office accommodation and other SOE)
- Development of the Eco-estate on the part of the Game reserve or theme park
- Proposed Sasol Depot at the proposed Polokwane Extension 136
- Support initiatives for SEZ:

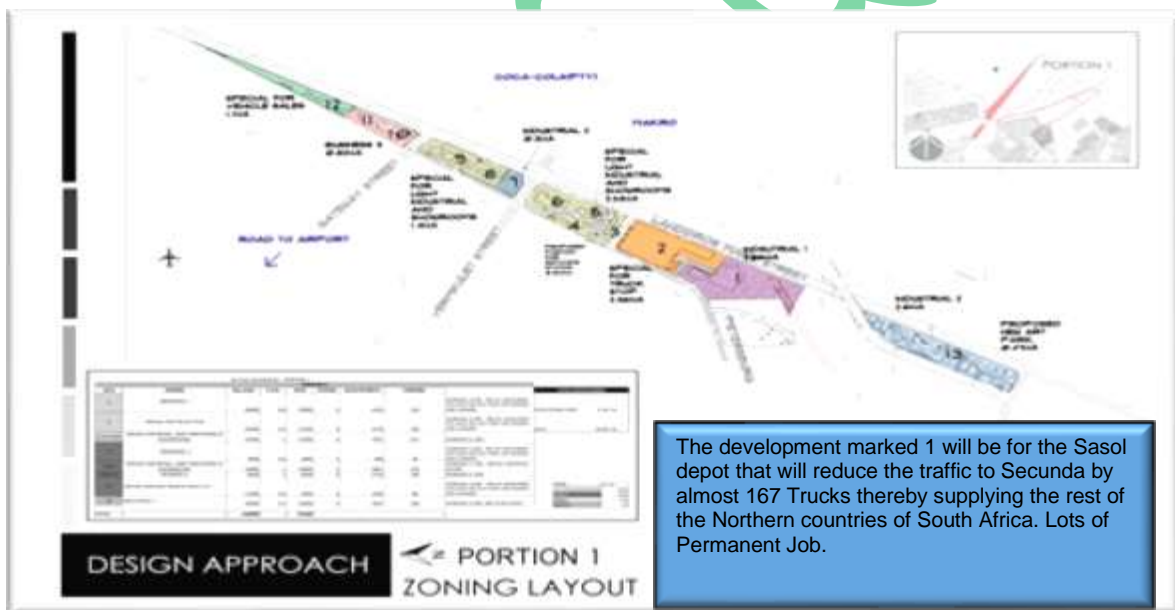
#### i. Cargo and Logistic Hub

The State of Province Address 2019, the Limpopo Premier Honorable Mathabatha has highlighted the progress made with regard to the proposed SEZ in the province and the district and provincial SDF identified Polokwane for SEZ base on the Agro-processing and Logistics.

Polokwane was identified and has positive factors that in terms of the regional logistics hub and business travel centre that will see the construction of an International Convention Centre being complemented to attract the events, conference and exhibition industry. The Municipality has begun with the process of the developing the feasibility study in order to determine if the SEZ looking at the key analyses and the use of the airport will suffice which was approved by the Council and Submitted to the Premier for implementation. Defining the spatial location becomes the key spatial issue for consideration by looking at the main economic centre such as the CBD, Industrial areas and the transportation linkages within and around the area. Polokwane position itself well since it intends to use its land parcels through a long-term development lease to address the need of the Municipality.

**ii. Truck-inn and Cargo HUB (Polokwane extension 136 as approved)**

The Figure below illustrates the proposed Township with the uses as highlighted. The **Long-term development leases** were awarded in line with the development of the Cargo and Logistic Hub concept. An **Industrial Township** with the following uses:



- Industrial zone properties for Sasol depot, Tanker’s park-inn, cargo truck-inn, Vehicle sales lot.
- Public Garage
- Special for other uses.

**iii. Agro-Processing.**

Agro-processing industry is a subset of manufacturing that processes raw materials and intermediate products derived from the agricultural sector. Agro processing means

transforming products that originate from agriculture, forestry and fisheries. The Standard Industrial Classification also categorises the following eleven divisions under the agro-processing industry: food, beverages, paper and paper products, wood and wood products, textiles, wearing apparel, furniture, tobacco, rubber products, footwear and leather and leather products. Polokwane has a strong Logistic support from different part of the region and can be able to take that advantage.

Part of the development of the Agro-Processing, the Industrial development becomes that the key, since three modes of transport (Air, Rail and Road) are integrated within the identified area. The Agro-processing industry is among the sectors identified by the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), the New Growth Path and the National Development Plan for its potential to spur growth and create jobs because of its strong backward linkage with the primary agricultural sector. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) has established a Directorate: Agro-processing Support to complement the interventions undertaken by several governmental departments, notably, the Department of Trade and Industry, by focusing on supporting the establishment and growth of Small and Medium Enterprises (SMEs) for Agro-processing. Polokwane by far, has already earmarked the need for the Agro processing Hub to support the economic growth and development with the support of the sector Departments.

#### **iv. Industrial Development**

Polokwane Municipal Economic growth is being hampered by the less production in terms of the Manufacturing sector. The Municipality has dedicated the land on the Old N1 Road (North) now known as the Landros Mare Street as part of the Commercial and Industrial Development. In order to improve the **Airport Precinct**, all the encore development that complement the Agro-processing and Logistic Hub must be prioritised within the area. The main issue for the success of the industrial development is centered around the following key factors for the success of the industries:

- power supply.
- communications - including transport, telecommunications.
- labour supply - including workers with the right skills.
- access to market - where the goods are sold.
- grants and financial incentives - usually from governments.
- raw materials.

The DTI has collaborated with a range of institutions and stakeholders in developing strategies and policies to achieve rapid industrialisation of the country's manufacturing sectors. The institutions and stakeholders include other government departments, particularly in the Economic Sector and Employment Cluster, the National Economic Development and Labour Council, and organised business formations, such as Business Unity South Africa (BUSA) and Industry Associations.

The **DTI** has identified institutions and partners that support the implementation of its industrial development mandate which include:

- National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications (NRCS)
- National Metrology Institute of South Africa (NMISA)
- South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)
- Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)
- The South African National Accreditation System (SANAS)

In order for the Polokwane to successfully have an area that support fully the Industrial development, the SBU on economic Development and Trade must be energised in order to access funding and attract investors through the support of the DTI for betterment of the Limpopo Economy and nationally.

**NB: The projects in this regard to do a comprehensive feasibility study has commenced in order to deal with the aspects of the SEZ establishment after detail studies and approaches are dealt with.**

#### **2.18.5 City wide Development initiatives**

The Municipality has developed the Urban Renewal Strategy and the CBD Development Plan, 2016. The ideal was to rejuvenate the city to be a functional business zone with Mixed Land Use Development that will complement the cities vision of being the SMART CITY. The Urban Development Framework developed by the National Department of COGTA laid a several levers that now incorporated in the **CEF** approved by Cogta as presented above. The municipality strive to align the said Policy with the URS and CBD Plan for its identified projects. This includes re-investing in engineering for more compactable city through high density development and office and Business development. The first approach was to look at the development of the Municipal Towers with the current Municipal offices with major development such as the Hotel, restaurant, Cinema, Theatre to mention the few. Figure represents the Location and intended development within the Municipal Precinct.



The proposed idea will strengthen the attraction of the Investors and office accommodation on the scattered Municipal services points around the city. The down Town area is mostly affected by the illegal land uses. It is from the said plans that the Municipality must enable major urban regeneration through Private Public Partnership for developing the area. Land acquisition is a best tool for the Municipality to develop high density development within the area and be supported by the relaxation of the development control and introduction of the incentive on development.

Several land parcels were identified for mixed uses looking at the potential impact that the development will have in the economic growth and addressing the unemployment rate. The approach will be sent to the Council regarding establishing the Data base for the prospective developer who have financial muscle to carry any task that the Municipality intend to develop. This include following the SCM processes and national Treasury Regulations.



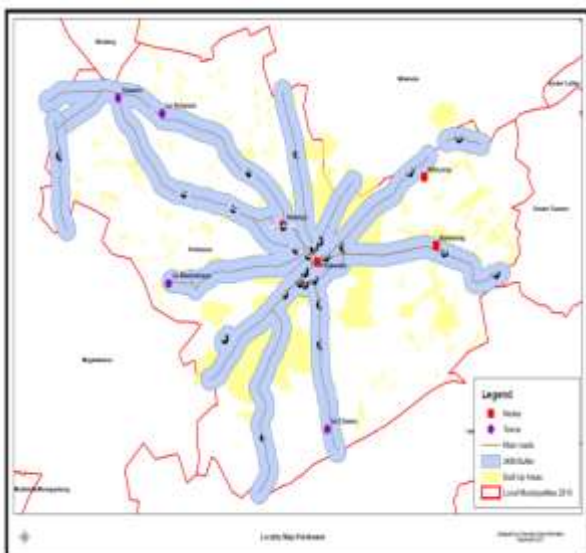
### 2.18.6 Commercialisation of Municipal Facilities/Properties

The municipality has number of the community facilities and other amenities that need urgent attention. This includes the Peter Mokaba stadium, the game reserve, Jack Botes hall Airport, Library Garden and Showground that may pose positive impact to the community if well managed. Some of these activities need expertise from the people who are specialising in such field. Learning from other cities that own such facilities, the majority are outsourced through the services of the private companies to generate more revenue and lessen the burden of expenditure by the Municipality. For example, the Game reserve may be turned in an Eco-estate that promote the men contact with the nature. The stadium for multipurpose centre Bakoni Malapa for Innovation art and cultural Hub as it is strategically located within the Corridors.

### 2.18.7 Metropolitan Municipal Requirements

It is the prerogative of the Municipality to become a metropolitan Municipality within the next 3-4 years. The basics should be laid in order to have a proper road map in achieving the Metropolitan status. The Municipal Structures Act, Section 2 provides that – Category A Municipality if that area can reasonably be regarded as-

(a) a conurbation (continuous network of urban communities) [metropolitan] featuring-

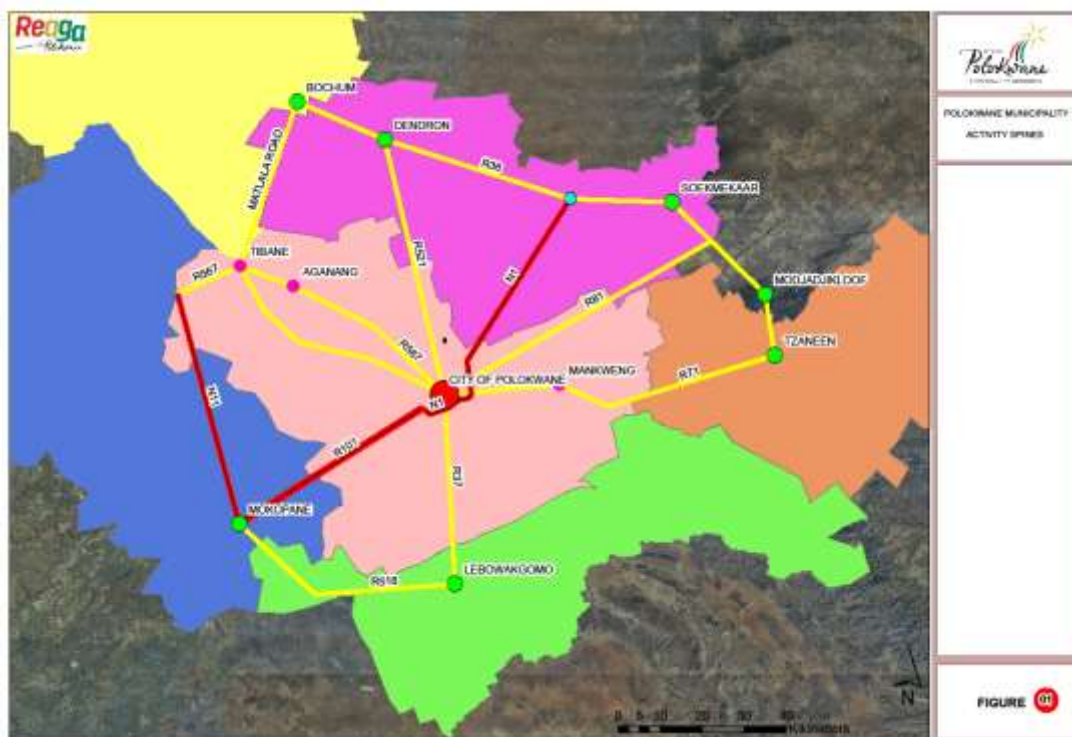
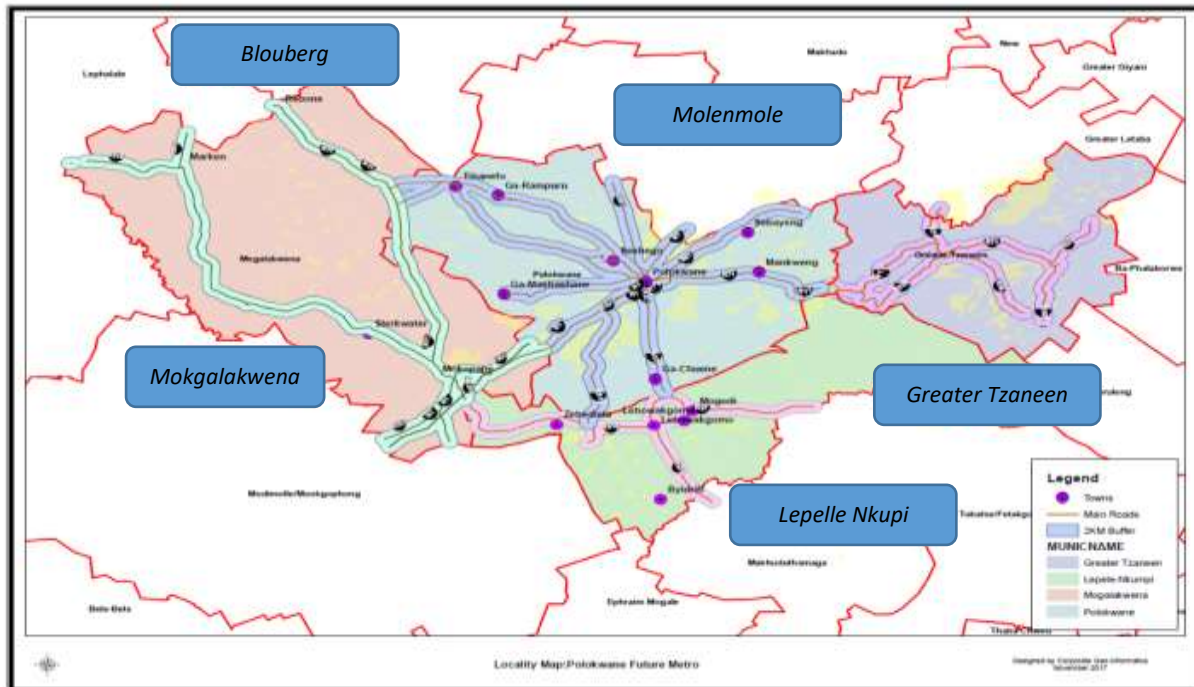


- (i) areas of high population density.
  - (ii) an intense movement of people, goods, and services.
  - (iii) extensive development; and
  - (iv) multiple business districts and industrial areas.
- (b) a centre of economic activity with a complex and diverse economy.
- (c) a single area for which integrated development planning is desirable; and



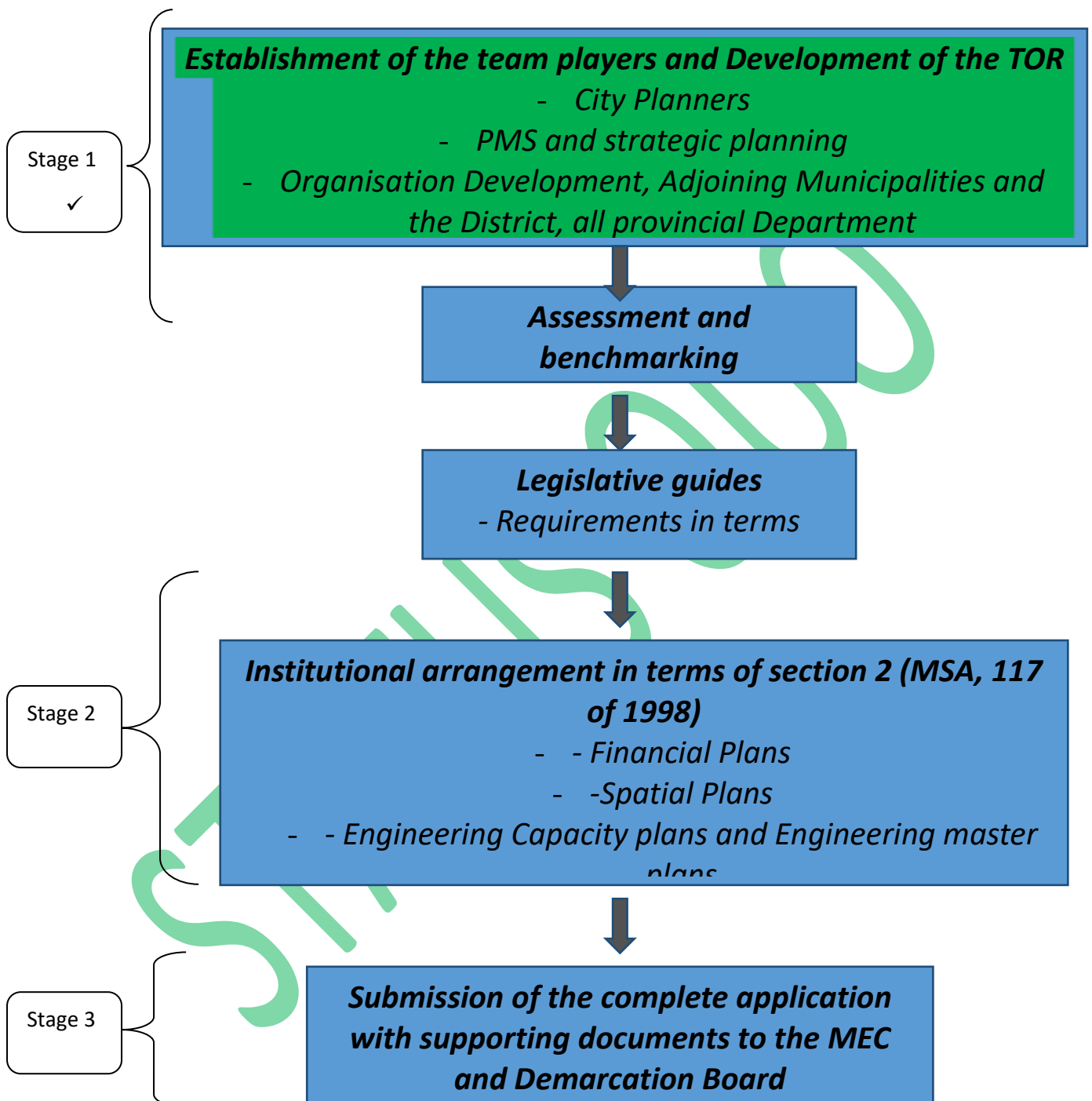
(d) having strong interdependent social and economic linkages between its constituent units. Should apply to the relevant authority for consideration and such application should be assessed looking at the above criteria and other requirement that the demarcation board may require.

### Alignment with adjacent Municipalities and road networks



The above structure will be updated and used for the purpose of identifying the key role players in preparing the Municipality in to be **Category A Municipality**

### 2.18.8. ROAD MAP TO METRO



### 2.19. IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR STUDENT ACCOMMODATION

Erf 20802 – 20815 and 20818 – 20821 Polokwane Extension 106 zoned Residential 3 have already been advertised for **student accomodation**. Some other erven in Polokwane Extension 79 also advertised for high density residential developments. Additionally Council

has adopted the CBD Urban Renewal Strategy of which one of its objectives was to identify a strategy to curb illegal accommodation and devise a means for student accommodation. The area in downtown CBD is in such a decay state, and vulnerable students are residing here in appalling state.

The list of five institutions namely the **University of Limpopo, UNISA Polokwane Campus, TUT Polokwane Campus, Capricorn FET College, Boston City Campus** and **Business College** which developers and the Municipality could partner with in order to meet the demand for student accommodation within the CBD. Only three of these institutions currently have accommodation available - **University of Limpopo located in Mankweng, TUT Polokwane Campus and Capricorn FET College** both located in Polokwane Town.

The majority of illegal land uses are located within the north-western part of the CBD as depicted (Buite, Boom, Bok, Dahl, Devenish, Excelsior and Onder Street). The majority of illegal land uses relate to student boarding accommodation and rental units, (approximately 33 properties), Some of the most serious problems associated with illegal land uses are illegal water/ electricity connections and temporary partitions within building structures. Amongst others, large numbers of people (up to 20 and more) use existing houses for informal accommodation purposes. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and or social housing. Block 1 to 6. The **Map Below** indicate the location of block 1-6.

### Strategic Land For mixed use



Number 7 to 8 can be open for the mixed use for the city main library, open market on the 2-4<sup>th</sup> floor while the ground floor can be used as City parking or taxi holding as currently being used.

## 2.20 LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY CONTEXT

The Spatial Analysis chapter and the development growth of Polokwane Municipality is guided by the following legislative and policy frameworks:

- i. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (108 of 1996)
- ii. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (16 of 2013)

- iii. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Regulations: Land Use Management and General Matters, 2015
- iv. National Development Plan, 2012
- v. Town Planning and Township Ordinance 15 of 1986 to be repealed by the
- vi. Polokwane Economic Growth and Development Plan, Vision 2030
- vii. Administration and Control of Townships Regulations R293 of 1962
- viii. Proclamation R188 of 1969 Regulations
- ix. Communal Land Rights Act (11 of 2004)
- x. Upgrading of Land Tenure Rights Act (112 of 1991)
- xi. Interim Protection of Informal Land Rights Act No 31 of 1996
- xii. Extension of Security of Tenure Act (Act no. 62 of 1997)
- xiii. Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act No 19 of 1998
- xiv. Restitution of Land Rights Act No 22 of 1994
- xv. Land Administration Act No 2 of 1995
- xvi. National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998
- xvii. Planning Profession Act No 36 of 2002
- xviii. LIBRA, Act 5 of 2003 and its regulation (Limpopo Business Registration Regulations 2015)

The next Housing Analysis will therefore be guided by the following legislative and policy frameworks:

- i. National Housing Act (107 of 1997)
- ii. Breaking New Ground, 2005
- iii. National Housing Code, 2009
- iv. Rental Housing Act (50 of 1999)
- v. Limpopo Housing Act (2 of 2006)
- vi. The Social Housing Act (16 of 2008)

### **2.21 Catalytic Land Development Programme in support of the CEF.**

Below are the **9 key catalytic projects** that will unlock economic growth in those spaces and contribute towards job creation and ultimately reduce unemployment in the City of Polokwane.



### 2.21.1 Science Park

**Science and Research Park** to be establish at Weltevreden Farm at the southern part of the new interchange at N1-By-pass. The Municipality has already **awarded the land** amount to **274ha land** for development of the Science Park of which the studies has already commenced. Limpopo connection is currently conducting **Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA)** and engineering capacity assessment. The development form part of the **Dilokong Corridor** in support of the National Development Plan (**NDP**).



### 2.21.2 Arts and Cultural Hub

**Bakoni Malapa arts and cultural hub** as proposed will support the issues of artists in terms of the **film and recording studio, theatre, incubation stall.**

This will increase tourism at the Municipal facility. That will form belt of the **sport precinct** as proposed in the **SDF**, that stretches from Peter Mokaba stadium. The Feasibility study (**DSAC**) and Township Application processes funded by the Polokwane Municipality. Bulk engineering services to be provided by Polokwane Municipality to the area and funded under the IUDG. This project is part of implementing the **CEF**.



### 2.21.3 Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor

- **Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor** site identification around the **airport** will be a key towards **application for the expansion of the Municipal Boundary further to the North** in order to cater for at least **200km<sup>2</sup>** of land.
- Since the northern part of the City border with the **Molemole Municipality** just **5-10KM** from the City, it is prudent that Polokwane Municipality start with application to request the expansion of its Boundary (land) to at least **40km** from the current boundary to includes the SEZ or Industrial Park development.
- Municipality has received Lots of proposals for Townships by private developers of which that is encouraging in the area for Facilities such as Tertiary education facility (admin block, faculty departments, on campus student housing, warden housing, recreational facilities). Public garage, convenient shopping centre and food court to be assessed based on the Spatial Development Framework of the Municipality. The revised SDF has included the extending of the urban edge for support of the proposed SEZ/Industrial Park and Development within the earmarked areas. The initiatives will support Job creation and Economic Growth.



#### 2.21.4 Agro processing

- **Agro-processing** - the support for the proposed development concept is centred on the **Logistic and Agro-processing** taking advantage of the transport modes available that includes:

- **Air network (airport).**
- **Rail network (railway Station).**
- **Road's network (Bus, taxi station).**



- The Municipality will take advantage over the identified **Musina /Makhado SEZ and Tubatse SEZ** as Logistic Hub.
- Polokwane as a Capital City of Limpopo Province is also a gateway to Africa and rest of the World.
- Several MOU were signed for trade with the African Countries and the Municipality intend to participate in the market to boost in the **Economic Growth** through Manufacturing and processing of **raw materials**.

#### 2.21.5 TOD precinct

##### Transit Oriented Development (TOD):

**TOD precinct** –will be development phases as part of supporting the **SEZ**: airport corridor or industrial parks. The TOD precinct development will include **truck inn**. All the roads from the SADC connects to Polokwane CBD. The massive industrial sites connect with the said modes of transport. Good positioning of the Land use with are compactable with each other and further be supported by the vast land available for future development. The Council has already release land for the feasibility by the Directorate Transportation to establish the **Truck inn**.



#### 2.21.6 Softball stadium

- **International Softball stadium** - Polokwane Municipality has receive funding from **SRSA** through the **UIDG** to **design and construct** an international softball stadium over the **next 3 years**.
- **30M** was budget allocated for the 2020/21 FY.
- Polokwane Municipality has made a **pocket of land available** within its **sport precinct hub** for this development.
- The Concept designs have been approved with all stakeholders.
- The municipality is engaging **DCOG** support on maximisation of this project to showcase Real-time spatial transformations,



#### 2.21.7 Post incubation Hub

- **Post incubation Hub** - the intension is to lease and develop a park with the aim of providing the alternative and opportunity to us **incubates and investors** that we attract during our Marketing.
- **Pharmaceutical company, charcoal Manufacturing Company** supported by government have already shown interest.
- The project is budgeted, and it is currently in finalisation of installation of services.





- **Engineering assessment completed** and the **taring and fencing** to be advertised for the contractor.

### 2.21.8 Academic Hospital

- **Academic Hospital** - Polokwane Local Municipality **and Edu park donated** remaining Extent of Erf 6861 Pietersburg Extension 30, measuring **19.90 Hectares**.
- The aforesaid Donation was in line with a Council Resolution as approved.
- Council Resolution contain conditions which the Done must comply with before the transfer of the ownership:
- **Rezoning** Application completed:
- Attorneys has been appointed to attend to the transfer of ownership of land.
- Land released, amended finalised for donation to the **Department of Public works**.

### 2.21.9 Eco-Estate at Game reserve

- ❖ **Eco-Estate at Game reserve** -proposal for the **Eco-estate** will boost the Polokwane Game reserve for **tourism and accommodation facilities** and attract **investors** on the South eastern part of the City as the **future expansion** of the City.
- ❖ This will be a **high marketed residential development** where man is in contact with nature.

### 2.22 Progress on priority/ Catalytic Land Development Programme.

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO DATE	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
	23 August 2021		
1. Science Park	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conveyance Notaries is appointed for the drafting of the lease agreement and negotiation (Public to Public Partnership approach)</li> <li>• The Record of Decision positive</li> <li>• Basic Township establishment studies are finalised and lodgement of the Township has been done and approved by the Municipal Planning Tribunal.</li> </ul>	LEDA- Limpopo connection	Planning <b>90 %</b> for Planning Within the Functional Area 1
2. Arts and Cultural Hub	Township application has been submitted and public participation concluded. The Municipality has	Municipal and Department of Sports Arts and Culture.	Planning and Social <b>95%</b> on Planning

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO DATE 23 August 2021	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
	<p>received objection regarding the application.</p> <p>Legal Counsel need to be appointed to represent the Municipal on hearing and possible Appeals and Court processes.</p> <p>A memo has been sent to legal department to assist with appointing legal Counsel.</p> <p>Land subdivision and zoning for a theatre has begun.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ Land zoning and donation to the department (municipal).</li> <li>❖ Development of the Provincial Theatre (Department) and will commence for construction</li> </ul>	0% Engineering and designs Within the Functional Area 1
<b>3. SEZ (Agro-processing and logistic) N1 North Corridor</b>	Feasibility study finalised and approved by Council.	Polokwane Municipality (Budgeted)	Planning and Social 100% for planning Within the Functional Area 1
<b>4. Softball stadium</b>	Planning Completed and construction has commenced	Polokwane Municipality and National Department of Sports	Planning and Economic 100% Planning done 15% in Construction
<b>5. Post incubation Hub</b>	Engineering assessment completed and contractor appointed.	Municipality but to seek funding from Department of Small Business Development	Economic and Planning 100% spent for planning 0% spent on Construction and supervision Within the Functional Area 1
<b>6. Academic hospital</b>	<p>Conveyancers finalise deed of donation to the Department of Public works. Zoning already approved</p> <p>Site Development Plans approved by Council.</p>	Department of Public Works, Health and social Development/Education.	Planning 100% for Planning 0% construction Within the Functional Area 1
<b>7. Urban renewal- Municipal Tours</b>	Planning for the project has commenced in 2021/2022 Financial Year as budgeted. (subject to Budget availability)	Polokwane Municipality	Planning For appointment of the service provider-

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO DATE	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
	23 August 2021		Within the Functional Area 1
<b>8.Housing – Mixed housing (Social, Gap and Student housing) (Municipal entity)</b>	Annandale extension 2 construction commence for provision of rental housing. Student housing at 106 and 108 underway.	Municipal entity	Planning, Social and Economic 90% Within the Functional Area 1
<b>9.Urban renewal projects- Transit Oriented Development (TOD): <u>Truck inn</u> (Municipal).</b>	Truck inn land availability approved by Council. Feasibility already approved. Incorporated in the reviewed ITPS and to be part of the freight Plan as project to be implemented in 2021/2022.	Polokwane Municipality	Planning and Economic 100% feasibility completed and 0% for implementation Within the Functional Area 1
<b>10.Urban renewal projects in the CBD - Mixed housing around Buite and Bok Streets (Municipal)</b>	Assessment of the land ownership is in progress and development of incentive for developers to be finalised. Application of UDZ underway and to be supported by Council Resolution.	Polokwane Municipality/Private Developers	Planning and Economic - Within the Functional Area 1
<b>11. Polokwane Mixed Housing Development (leased properties)</b>	Polokwane extension 136, 138 and Bendor 126, East Ridge X 3 approved for mixed use development. Only one Township is not yet finalised due to Civil Aviation Authority (CAA).	Leased properties for revenue enhancement	Planning and Economic 75% Township Planning approved

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

### 2.23 Progress with the implementation of Circular 88

Planning Indicators	Progress in Implementation
Number of hectares of land procured and suitable for Greenfields's development	None

Planning Indicators	Progress in Implementation
Number of hectares of land procured and suitable for Brownfield development	None
Number of hectares of land proclaimed (township establishment completed)	178 846ha
Number of dwelling units developed per hectare	70.5962ha
Percentage density reduction in total informal settlements	80%
Number of informal settlements targeted for upgrading	2
Number of households living in informal settlements targeted for upgrading	1000
Number of informal settlements targeted for upgrading with upgrading plans	2
Number of informal settlements upgraded (services provided): In Situ	7
Number of informal settlements targeted for formalisation (services provided): Relocated	1
Number of households living in informal backyard rental agreement	Above 1000
Number of sites serviced	Approximately 6000 (Informal settlement)
Number of Title deeds transferred to eligible beneficiaries	10 441

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

## 2.24 Intergovernmental Planning

Polokwane Municipality is part of the **provincial infrastructure committee and other committees as per the directorates** that report to HOD's forum and presented to the **Exco-Lekgotla (Province)**. All planned projects from the **SONA, SOPA**, and District are aligned to the Municipal plans for implementation and the **CEF**. The Municipality also form part of **other forums** at the **District level** such as:

- ❖ Provincial Intergovernmental Structure.
- ❖ National Planning forums (**SPLUMA, LED, Human settlement**).
- ❖ District Intergovernmental Structures: i.e.
- ❖ **Mayor Forum**
- ❖ **MM Forum and other technical forum**
- ❖ **Speaker Forum**
- ❖ **Communicators Forum**

### 2.24.1 Intergovernmental Projects in progress

The Municipality has identified a number of key spatial targeting areas that will further compliment the priority development areas and other areas within the municipality.

### Intergovernmental Projects in progress

Brownfield Development	Greenfield Development
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Urban renewal projects in the CBD- Polokwane Towers</li> <li>• Urban renewal projects in the CBD - Mixed housing around Buite and Bok Streets</li> <li>• Urban renewal projects- Transit Oriented Development (TOD) around Itsoseng, bus station, Train station and Airport.</li> <li>• Housing – Mixed housing (Social, Gap and Student housing)</li> <li>• Industrial Development - Light industries development (small scale industries) to partner with Department of Small Business</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Polokwane Mixed Housing Development (leased properties)</li> <li>▪ Science Park by LEDET (LEDA project)</li> <li>▪ Commercialisation of the Strategic Assets such as the Game reserve for mixed use</li> <li>▪ Development of the Arts and Cultural HUB (Bakoni Malapa) (Polokwane and DSAC)</li> <li>▪ Logistic or Cargo Hub and Agro-Processing Hub to support SEZ (Feasibility study)</li> <li>▪ Softball stadium (On Going) jointly with National Department of Sports and recreation</li> <li>▪ Academic Hospital (planning) land released for Department of Health and Social Development and Public works</li> </ul>

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

## 2.24.2 Pilot Projects for Inter-Governmental Planning

### (A). International softball stadium

Polokwane municipality has received funding from SRSA (National Department of Sports & Recreation South Africa) through the UIDG to design and construct an international softball stadium over the next 3 years. R24.7 M was allocated in the year 2020/21 Fy.

Council has made available a pocket of land within its sport precinct hub for this development. Concept designs have been approved with all stakeholders. The municipality is engaging DCOG support on maximisation of this project to showcase Real-time spatial transformations.

### (B). Provincial State Theatre

The National Department to design and construct provincial State Theatre. Provincial Treasury allocated approximately R20 Million; and additional allocation will be requested from National Treasury for 2021/22 Fy. Polokwane Municipality has budgeted R2 Million for 2020/21Fy-2021/22Fy for Planning process.

The Municipality has further budgeted R10 Million for short term Engineering services for 2021/22Fy. Council has made available a pocket of land within its Bakoni Malapa for feasibility study for this development. The DSAC, Public works, Treasury has already budgeted the cost associated with the project of Provincial State Theatre to be developed as

from the February 2022. Planning has commenced in order to support on maximisation of this project to **showcase Real time spatial transformations**.

## **2.25 IUDF Implementation to Date**

COGTA introduced a consolidated grant (**IUDG**) for Intermediate City Municipalities (ICM).

**Polokwane** and **uMhlathuze** were identified as the **two pilot** municipalities. The ICM program aims at supporting the Municipalities in areas of Spatial Planning, Infrastructure/Capital projects and preparing financial access to the new **IUDG grant**. As such, the municipalities were requested to develop a **Capital Expenditure Framework**, which is a **long-term infrastructure plan** that flows from a **Spatial Development Framework (SDF)**. The process of developing the Capital Expenditure Framework was approached by dividing it in **3 different CEF Modules**.

- 1) **Module 1: Planning,**
- 2) **Module 2: Infrastructure,**
- 3) **Module 3: Finance**

### **2.25.1 CEF Modules Progress Status Quo.**

- 1) **Module 1: Planning** was more focused with the Spatial Transformation Agenda, which involved dividing the municipal in functional areas, in this instance went further to priority development areas. **Development strategies for the above-mentioned areas has been developed. The Functional Area 4 developed as part of the CEF submission.**
- 2) **Module 2: Infrastructure** was more focused on technical assessments, which involves, **backlogs and capacity** being guided by development strategies completed in **Module 1 of Planning**. The module will indicate the backlogs, existing and required capacity of bulks and networks in the coming years.
- 3) **Module 3: Finance** is more focused on the long-term financial plan (**assumptions and projections**), which involves a fit on the development strategies for functional areas by **identified by planning**, together with the backlogs and need **outlined by infrastructure**. An analysis should also be provided to ensure staying within affordability margin.

### **2.25.2 Capital Expenditure Frameworks (CEF) Status Quo**

Polokwane Municipality has concluded all three modules and the CEF was approved by the Cogta and Council as a Business plan to be aligned with the IDP and Budget.

The draft revised Capital Expenditure Framework Report was planned to be ready on the 25<sup>th</sup> January 2020, but due to downward adjustment of Budget and COVID 19 affected the program. Comments and inputs were received during the budget adjustment and will be considered once Cogta guides on the revised CEF Report.

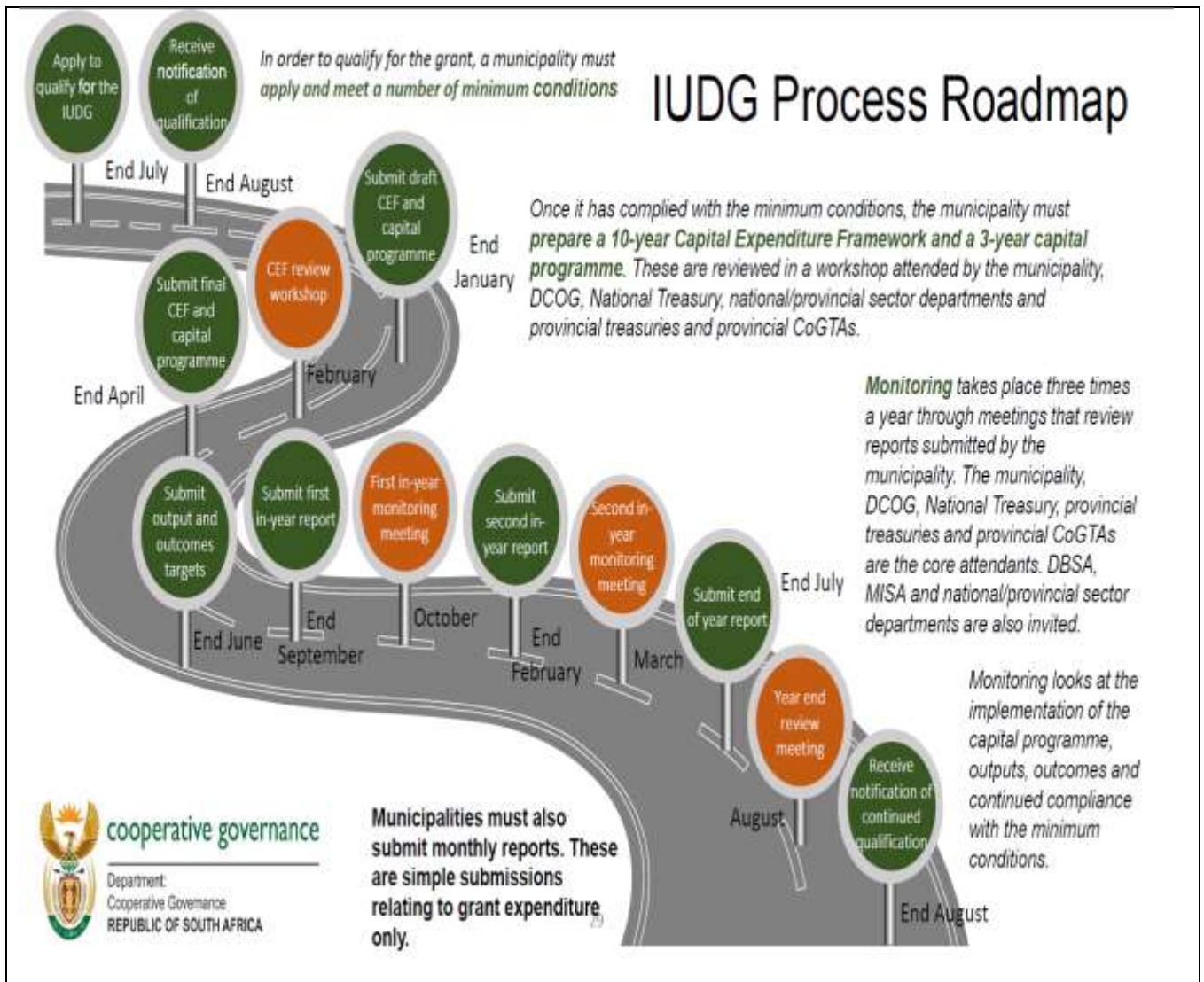
Currently, Planning SBU is concluding its section in the CEF report. The presentation on **Module 1: Planning** was presented, and all inputs and comments Received have been included.



**Module 2:** Infrastructure – under review and soon to be concluded, the different infrastructure sections to finalize their submissions

**Module 3:** Finance is currently also in a process of developing the financial plan being guided by the above 2 Modules. The revised draft CEF (Capital Expenditure Framework) report will be submitted for inputs and comments (The downward budget adjustment has affected the overall projection and planning Process of the CEF. The final submission of the Revised CEF report is planned **June 2021**).

### 2.26 IUDG Process Roadmap followed.



Source: Cogta Guide IUDG Process Roadmap

### 2.26.1 CEF Success and Challenges

Success	Challenges
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Approved CEF aligned with the IDP.</li> <li>• Well defined spatial targeted area in line with the SDF.</li> <li>• Well defined projects with funding (External and Leases).</li> <li>• Possibility of attracting investors in ideal location.</li> <li>• Driving the spatial agenda of the City.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alignment and unfunded budget due to community needs analyses.</li> <li>• Unequal Share due to Municipal community's composition (Urban 30% and Rural 70%).</li> <li>• Financial sustainability due to culture of non-payment.</li> <li>• Budget vs Community needs.</li> <li>• Prioritisation of projects and their return.</li> </ul>

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

### 2.26.2 Impact of the adjustments budget on CEF priority projects

The adjustment of the CEF and **resubmission** to National Treasury. Reducing the planned projects guided by available budget. Community redress on the planned and pronounced projects. Rescheduling of the Projects and planned program of implementation have been moved to outer **years**.

### 2.26.3 IUDF Levers

After careful consideration of the **Smart City Pillars** of the Municipal **long-term vision**, the **IUDF levers** are well presented in the projects that are to be implemented within the **CEF**. All **9 levers** as presented below has sharpens our approach when integrating the Municipal Planning and the other sphere of government and **SOE** as presented on the catalytic projects.

### 2.26.4 District Development Model (DDM) Progress

Capricorn District Municipality held a successful **launch** of the District Development Model (DDM) on **07 February 2020**, at Polokwane Aganang Cluster Sports Ground, Ceres Village in Polokwane Municipality. Polokwane Municipality **participate in** the Development of District Development Model as part of the Local Municipality within the Capricorn District (**CDM**). All plans and engagement are attended as part of alignment of the planned programme.

## 2.27 Challenges experienced in endeavor to seek integration and collaboration

### (A) Misalignment of Planning Cycle for Municipalities and Sector Departments.

The introduction of the **IUDF and DDM** in dealing with the alignment of the budget and intergovernmental projects pave the positive input to foster such relationship. Alignment of the Spatial Planning and project from the national, province, district and local municipality **SDF** as categorised by the **SPLUMA** is becoming a key in directing where investment should be prioritised.

### (B) Priority Interventions that must be addressed dealing with the community needs.

Priority should be given to Municipality Funded **mandate projects** in the IDP and Unfunded **mandate Projects** Should be referred to the Relevant Department to address the need (e.g., **Library**). **Such** projects should be addressed by the DDM. Effectiveness of the forums on the priority projects and monitoring. Grants alignment vs Priority needs on the ground.

## 2.28 Approved Land for New Leases

The Council of Polokwane has approved about **21 properties** within the established township (**Brownfield development**) and 6 portions of farms (**green field development**). Notice on intention to lease the land was released and two objections received and address since they were related to water. Notice for invitation of bids in underway as per the resolution of Council

## 2.29 Sales of sites –City Planning and Properties

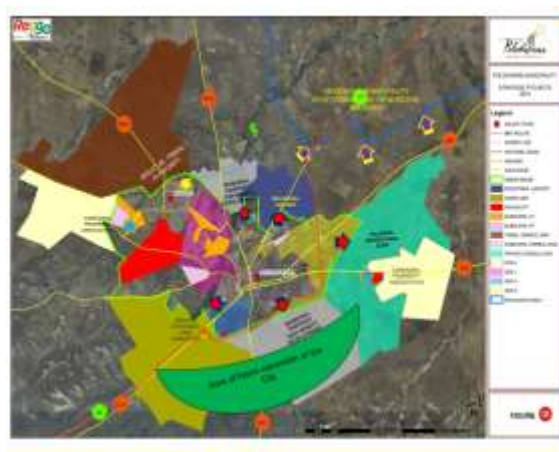
### Progress with the sales of sites:

- ✓ Polokwane X 72
- ✓ Polokwane X 79
- ✓ Bendor
- ✓ Nirvana X 3
- ✓ Flora park

**ESTABLISHED TOWNSHIP SERVICES COST: Water and Sanitation**

MUNICIPAL OWNED TOWNSHIP NAME	Equivalent stands	Water			Sanitation		
		Reticulation	Bulk	Total	Reticulation	Bulk	Total
1 Polokwane 72	800		9 631 230	9 631 230		5 201 153	5 201 153
2 Polokwane 79	300		6 019 519	6 019 519		3 250 721	3 250 721
3 Polokwane 78	900	9 236 509	10 835 134	20 071 643	12 128 180	3 661 296	17 979 477
4 Polokwane 108							
5 Johnson 25 Industrial Park	1048	10 724 614	12 580 794	23 305 408	14 082 164	6 794 007	20 876 171
6 Polokwane X125	300	5 131 384	6 019 519	11 150 913	6 737 678	3 250 721	9 988 399
7 Polokwane X127	900	5 131 384	6 019 519	11 150 913	6 737 678	3 250 721	9 988 399
8 Polokwane X100	190		2 287 417	2 287 417		1 235 274	1 235 274
9 Polokwane X107	142	1 457 370	1 739 543	3 196 913	1 913 557	623 205	2 836 762
10 Polokwane X133	3000	33 788 364	36 117 112	69 905 476	49 427 266	19 504 329	68 931 591
11 Nirvana X05	200	2 062 558	2 407 807	4 470 365	2 695 151	1 300 298	3 995 439
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>7 777</b>	<b>64 522 148</b>	<b>93 627 593</b>	<b>158 149 742</b>	<b>84 722 073</b>	<b>50 561 713</b>	<b>135 283 786</b>

Township servicing



Land Ownership & Future needs

### 2.30 Progress Report on Aganang Township Land

City Planning and Property management SBU has initial prepared the report for submission to the Council. The land was having the suspensive condition that the Municipality has failed to conclude on the following basis. The Department of Agriculture and Rural Development has to releases the land. To date, the Municipality has managed to achieve all outstanding issues that are within the Municipal Control such as the Approval of the Surveyor General Diagram for the initial Township and land for extension. After several letters sent and requested, that delay by the Department has cause the delays and still awaiting the land released. Community resolution was provided with the SG diagram but no response by the Department.

This project was dated back in 1995 and 2005, but with no success of land release. The Traditional Authority has alternatively request for the withdrawal in order to finalise the township using the private developer. The report was considered by the Council as requested by the Traditional Local Authority.

### 2.31 CORPORATE GEO-INFORMATICS

The City of Polokwane has established the Corporate Geo-informatics SBU under the Planning and Economic Directorate in order to handle all GIS related Mater in the Municipality.

**GIS** is an abbreviation for '**Geographic Information System**'. It is a computer-based tool used to store, overlay and distribute spatial data of the same geographical area to be able to apply manipulation, queries, analyse and presentation of the data to enhance decision .GIS is a critical tool that supports a number of municipal legislative requirements contained in the Municipal System Act (No. 32 of 200), the Municipal Structures Act (No. 117 of 1998), and the Spatial Data Infrastructure Act (No. 54 of 2003), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (No. 2 of 2000) and the Property Rates Act (No. 6 of 2004).

Most importantly, GIS is a vital tool to support the Municipal Integrated Plans (**IDPs**), undertaken in accordance with the Polokwane Spatial Development Framework (**SDF**) and with projects have a recorded spatial location.

GIS is the only technology that will allow the City of Polokwane to manage its assets spatially in an interactive environment and thereby ensure that all municipal assets are managed electronically.

The SBU: Corporate Geo-Informatics is expected to make a significant contribution to the planning process in the municipality. Currently, the SBU is working on ensuring that **Revenue SBU** receives clean and accurate **Property data** which will enable accurate **billing** of properties.

**A spatial land audit** that is GIS based will be conducted to support the Spatial Development Framework and Land Use Management System in the municipality. GIS will play a pivotal role



in the maintenance and monitoring of these plans as they change overtime. For example, **Municipal boundary demarcation adjustment**, land subdivision and ownership transfer, amendment schemes and urbanization.

Professional Land Surveyors are not limited to preparing plot plans and placing boundary markers. In addition to being experienced in all types of land surveying and Geomatics services, they consult and incorporate the use of technological innovations and data management techniques as it relates to our communities and infrastructure.

Utilizing products like online Geographic Information Systems (GIS) that help municipalities **manage their assets**, save time and efficiently deploy resources; quickly provide the accurate spatial data, boundary definitions and geo-referenced information clients need to move their land development or infrastructure projects toward successful completion.

Surveyors always play a key role in **urban planning**, responsible for data collection and for the management of different design and engineering plans such as transportation, water system, and power system plan using proper metric standards (e.g., coordinate system, accuracy, drafting specifications, etc.).

### **2.31.1. INTEGRATED GIS SYSTEM**

The **integrated GIS system** - With this system, the City of Polokwane will have an integrated system where the majority of systems that were **running independent** of each other will be running from a federated platform underpinned by geographic information system (GIS) or spatial data. The municipality will for the first time empower all of its employees and its customers with relevant information that they'd need when carrying out their responsibilities.

The City of Polokwane being the largest business hub in the Limpopo Province and being the most strategically located City in the heart of the Limpopo, it attracts all major economic opportunities and play a significant role in the socio-economic space by providing the best services to its residents. The municipality also as a population concentration centre where people from all walks of life migrated to the City in search for a better life. In order for the City to plan better and efficiently, the use of spatial data become paramount to the City's planning and development. The municipality has since embarked on a journey to become one of the role players in the data driven institutions in the country.

The Integrated Geographic Information system has been developed to streamline and improve the institutional business process flow and to restore customer confidence in the institution by providing efficient and reliable services.

The introduction of the integrated GIS system in the municipality is aimed at transforming the organization to a point where every person or official/s who make use of the spatial data to make well informed decisions, have access to spatial data and its attributes at all times. The system integration in the municipality is designed to empower the Council decision makers such as SBU's Managers, Directors and Municipal Manager (MM) to explore data independently even if one is working with data from various sources.

The new technology (Integrated GIS System) has made it possible now than ever to capture, store and manipulate large quantities of data in a more cost-effective manner. The integrated GIS system gives decision makers a competitive edge in the sense that it does not only prove them with reports on what had happened but rather report on what is happening, e.g., **Town Planning Application Management Module System (TPAMS)** provide town planners and management a real time feed on those applications that are being processed by the municipality. Similar protocol is being followed with **Building Plans Application Management System (BPAMS)** and **Cemetery Management System (CMS)**.

The integrated GIS system function as a tool through which the various databases or systems that were running independent of each other will now be accessed and managed from a **single central point** with map enabled functionalities.

The advantages of using such a system are that end users need not be academically trained to navigate through the various platforms. The following application modules form part of the integrated GIS System:

### **2.31.2 Modules that form part of the integrated GIS System**

- a) Land Information Management System (**LIMS**)
- b) Town Planning Application Management System (**TPAMS**)
- c) Building Plans Application Management System (**BPAMS**)
- d) Cemetery Management System (**CMS**)
- e) Billing Information Management
- f) Document Management System
- g) Infrastructure Asset Management
- h) Valuation Roll



For quick access to any of the above listed module please click the link below and you will be taken to the Polokwane Integrated GIS System landing page.  
<http://gis.polokwane.gov.za/polokwanewebpage/>

### 2.31.3 Challenges and Intervention of GIS

Challenges	Intervention
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Lack of both GIS and Land survey technicians.</li> <li>▪ Illegal land subdivision and consolidation leads to spatial data inaccuracies and may affect municipal billing system.</li> <li>▪ Lack of cadastral data from rural areas leads to poor and improper forward planning.</li> <li>▪ Lack of a GIS strategy to guide the municipality with regards to the use and maintenance of spatial data.</li> <li>▪ Inadequate budget allocation.</li> <li>▪ Lack of update imagery to assist in supplementary valuation.</li> <li>▪ Difficulty in tracking development pattern/city growth due to lack of updated imagery.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The integrated GIS model is being updated</li> <li>• The upgrade of the system will be integrated with the financial system (<b>Munsoft</b>) to ensure accurate billing at all times. It will further assist the municipality in visualising all IDP projects spatially.</li> <li>• In order for the City to plan better and efficiently, the use of spatial data become paramount to the City's planning and development.</li> <li>• The Integrated Geographic Information system has been developed to streamline and improve the institutional business process flow and to restore customer confidence in the institution by providing efficient and reliable services.</li> </ul>

Source: PLK GIS SBU

### 2.31.4 Successes of Corporate Geo-Informatics SBU

Despite all the challenges mentioned above the SBU: corporate Geo-Informatics had brought in the following successes within the Directorate. Below is the list of **Success** for the SBU.

- Successfully implemented seven (7) of the eight (8) modules.
- Through the full implementation of the integrated GIS system, the municipal authority will be able to track all land development applications right from the moment the application is lodged with the municipality to the decision stage.
- Revenue SBU will receive accurate property information for accurate billing.

- The system will make it easy for authorities and municipal officials to draw statistical reports from the system which will pass the audit master's test.
- Continues with the support for site identification across the municipality.
- The SBU plays an important role in revenue data, IDP project spatial presentation and correct presentation of the valuation roll.
- Assisted service providers who are carrying out municipal duties by rendering its technical services such as land surveying and spatial data dissemination to minimise errors and save Council its resources.
- The collaborative work between GIS and Revenue unit has resulted in the billing having accurate data which reduced the amount of dispute from members of the community. However, the process of updating and correcting the data on both the Billing and GIS system is continuous.
- The SBU is currently engaging with other relevant departments streamline the flow of spatial data in the municipality.
- The municipality has successfully entered into an enterprise license agreement (ELA) with ESRI South Africa for a period of three years. This will enable the municipality to improve in its service delivery as mandated by municipal structures act.
- The SBU has successfully resolved all the boundary dispute that were lodged with the municipality during the period under review.
- The relocation informal settlement residence from Polokwane Extension 106 and Freedom Park to Polokwane Ext 126 and 127 was made possible with the help of Land survey unit.
- Mapping of all municipal strategic capital projects as reflected in the IDP.

### **2.31.5 Role of GIS in the City of Polokwane**

The City of Polokwane has been using GIS technology for over **10 years**, and this technology has proven to be a catalytic tool when it comes to decision making relating to land development and other related activities. Therefore, various SBU's either directly or indirectly make use GIS in carrying out their functions. But even though the tool has been in the City of Polokwane for many years, the system has not been fully utilised.

With the Introduction of **Integrated GIS System**, this means that the use of spatial data ought to be placed right in the hands of the people who are taking decisions on land development

matters. The consolidation of various systems into GIS platform is one way of allowing for automatic updating of information that can be seen by everyone at the same time and this will eliminate the duplication of work by different SBUs and will ultimately lead to efficient productivity and save municipal resources. This merely shows that the Corporate Geoinformatics SBU has a major role to play in realising the municipality's **Smart City 2030** vision.

## **2.32 Economic Development and Tourism**

### **2.32.1 Introduction**

The SBU has four (4) sections: i.e.

- 1) Investment Promotion and Tourism
- 2) Enterprise Development.
- 3) Business Compliance and Regulation.
- 4) Economic Research and Development.

### **2.32.2 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy**

Polokwane Local Municipality's (PLM) 2020-2024 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy. The strategy advocates for the strengthening of the multi-sectoral response against the rising levels of unemployment, inequality and poverty facing PLM. The strategy was launched at a time when the local economy is facing one of its worst crises in history. The pace at which the economy is growing is not sufficient enough to take care of the mounting socio-economic needs of the local population.

The strategy provides a "package of game changing solutions" to some of the socio-economic challenges. In partnership with other stakeholders Provincially and Nationally, Economic Development and Tourism Unit leads efforts in ushering the local economy on the path of a turnaround. With the unwavering support of all social partners (labour, private sector and all spheres of government), the idea to create an inclusive local economy with a high job absorption capacity (as cherished in the National Development Plan (NDP, the Limpopo Development Plan (LDP) and the Integrated Development Plan (IDP)) is still feasible.

This strategy gives effect to objective No 3 of section 152 of the constitution. Objective No 3 underscores the need for PLM to design and implement impactful strategies that improve the socio-economic conditions of local communities. Due to changes in the local economy over the past 10 years because of shifting global, national and provincial contexts, PLM took a decision to review its 2008 LED strategy in order to realign it with its **2030 Economic Growth**

**and Development Plan (EGDP).** The triple crisis of poverty, unemployment and inequality remain the Municipality's unresolved developmental challenges. This strategy outlines some of the measures PLM intends to implement in the next five years (2020/2024) to address some of these developmental concerns.

### **2.32.3 Highlights of the Local Economic Development Strategy:**

#### **1. VISION 2024**

"Towards a job absorbing economy"

#### **2. GOALS**

- i. Reduction of unemployment rate
- ii. Report a steady GVA growth rate
- iii. Improve ease-of-doing business
- iv. Promote economic inclusion and social cohesion
- v. Enhance development coordination capabilities

#### **3. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES**

- i. Prioritization of high job creation investments
- ii. Unleash sectoral potential and growth
- iii. Enhance investment competitiveness
- iv. Widen access to economic opportunities and choices
- v. Strengthen multi-sectoral response

## **2.33 Status Quo of Programs and Projects of Economic Development**

### **2.33.1 Investment Promotion and Tourism**

The objective of the section is to market Polokwane as a tourists and investment destination. The Municipality has a potential of high growth and development potential for the economy to grow sustainably. The strategic location of Polokwane also offers opportunities and in addition businesses that trade, transport and conduct business across the border should need a space of their own in Polokwane and this can only be achieved by promoting Polokwane and the advantages it offers.

Polokwane should be known for its advantageous business policies that incentivise development of desired uses in the municipality while offering a distinct competitive advantage when seeking access to the rest of the continent and providing great opportunities for businesses to grow and prosper. Marketing is a tool ever increasing in necessity for any

industry and sphere. It also helps shape perceptions that dictate the emotions associated with the subject being advertised.

As part of a marketing strategy to attract, retain and promote investments and tourism within the Municipality, Polokwane needs tools in order to reach out and grab the attention of potential investors and businesses by bringing them to Polokwane to stay and invest. These tools include the use of media as well as structures present in Polokwane that offer growth potential and prospects for economic development; by highlighting the vision and goals Polokwane has and the plans being made to achieve these goals, it becomes increasingly attractive, and the goals become more achievable.

### **2.33.2 Types of Tourism industries found in Polokwane**

1. Transportation e.g., car rentals
2. Accommodation
3. Food and Beverages
4. Recreation and entertainment
5. Travel agents
6. Tour operators
7. Tourist guides
8. Event Organisers
9. Health and Wellness

A number of strategies and platforms are utilised to market the Municipality, locally, nationally and Internationally.

### **2.34 Strategies used to promote Polokwane Municipality**

Below are the Strategies that are used to promote the Municipality i.e.

- 1) Information Centre
- 2) Stakeholder relation
- 3) Tourism development
- 4) Marketing

#### **2.34.1 Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC)**

The Municipality in partnership with Limpopo Tourism Agency operates a Visitor Information Centre that was built and donated to the Municipality by the **National Department of Tourism**. The centre provides tourism and investment information to the residents of the



Municipality, National and International visitors. This is done through walk ins, telephone, email and other social media platforms.

Business is encouraged to partner with the Municipality and ensure that their information is available at the centre and the Municipality also has a database of all businesses operating within the Municipality which is revised often to ensure accuracy.

### Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC)



### 2.34.2 Stakeholder relations

The Municipality has assisted the tourism industry to establish a Tourism Association which the Municipality supports through the following:

- Secretariat services for the Association
- Venue for its meetings
- Procurement of marketing platforms
- Accommodation for the Executive members when they attend trade shows outside the Municipal boundaries

The Municipality also established a Local Economic Development Forum that comprises of business representatives and other Government Departments and Parastatals within the Economic cluster. The Municipality provides support by providing the following to the Forum:



### **2.34.3 Tourism Development**

The Municipality in partnership with other institutions provides support to the tourism industry in order to develop tourism within the Municipality. This is done through the following activities:

- Training based on the skills gaps that are identified within the sector
- Provision of marketing opportunities such as hosting of exhibitions
- Workshops
- Networking sessions for industry to collaborate

Due to the limitations of COVID-19 pandemic the workshops and networking sessions have been impacted but new ways and platforms are being explored. The industry will have to adjust to the new ways of doing business.

### **2.35 Marketing**

A number of platforms are identified to market the Municipality as an investment and tourist destination. The Municipality has been utilising the following platforms although COVID-19 has posed a challenge for some of the platforms. However, the Municipality is busy exploring new channels to be used in response the global challenge.

- Trade shows
- Exhibitions
- Adverts in identified platforms
- Social media
- Investor's Guide (Hard and E-Copy)
- Visitor's Guide (Hard and E-Copy)

### **2.36 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT**

Enterprise Development is one of the key focus areas within Economic Development and Tourism in Polokwane Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and is a provincial priority as stated in the provincial growth and development strategy. It is therefore essential that Polokwane Municipality support entrepreneurs not only through selected programmes but to be incorporated in the implementation of all projects geared towards providing service delivery to the communities. Services offered by Enterprise Development to all SMMEs and Cooperatives:

- SMMEs Database
- Skills Audit
- Business Profiling
- Capacity building and skills development
- Provision of access to market through flea markets and exhibitions.
- Conducting effective monitoring of projects/co-operatives /and SMME
- Provision of access to finance from other institutions

- Facilitate business to business linkages big or small

The Municipality has also provided Infra-structure in a form of facilities to promote enterprise development initiatives as described below:

### **2.36.1 Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre**

Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre is an SMME Incubation Centre that was founded by Polokwane Municipality's Local Economic Development SBU.

Primarily, this manufacturing incubator was founded upon the need to provide development support services to SMME's involved in the strategic sectors of the local economy, especially manufacturing.

This initiative ties in with the targets of ASGISA and LDP, which among others, are employment creation and poverty alleviation.

In order to achieve this, LED SBU is conducts **Business Incubation Programme** aimed at providing intensive business counselling to SMME's that have a potential to grow into a successful business.

### **2.36.2 INCUBATION PROGRAMME AND ITS BENEFITS**

Incubation programme is a three-year programme whereby SMME's will receive the following services:

- Business management advice
- Facilitation of access to finance
- Accounting/Bookkeeping systems advice
- Regular visits by Business Development Officer to ensure progress
- Trainings on specific skills needed by the SMME
- Linkages to markets
- Linkages to industry experts
- Assistance in marketing their business
- Access to key business information

#### **ELIGIBLE CRITERIA AND ENTRY REQUIREMENTS:**

To participate in this programme, SMME's need to complete and submit an application form at Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre 's office. The applicant must also meet the following criteria:

- The business must be located within the boundaries of Polokwane Municipality
- The business must be a manufacturing enterprise.
- The owner must be prepared to sign a three (3) year lease agreement with Polokwane Municipality and should also demonstrate intent to abide by all rules.
- The business must have been trading for at least 1 year or more.
- Business owners must be South African citizens
- Women and Disabled will be given first preference.
- Owners must submit proof of residence.

## **ITSOSENG ENTREPRENEURIAL CENTRE**

Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre provide incubation program for SMMEs for a period of 3 years. Developmental support services to SMMEs is offered in different sectors of the economy with focus on manufacturing sector of the local economy. Our services include the following:

- Provision of subsidized rental services to SMME and Co-operatives
- Facilitation of access to market/market linkages.
- Facilitation of capacity building with other stakeholders
- Facilitations of access to finance to SMME and Co-op.
- Provision of other non-financial support services to SMME and co-op

The sectors that the center was designed to incubate 41 SMMEs who are doing mainly the following:

- Art & Crafts - Includes bead work, paintings, crafted products etc.
- Steelwork Includes welding, aluminum products, steel pipes, others steel products such as readily made shacks, toilets etc.
- Woodwork – Includes furniture, or any other wood products
- Upholstery – includes furniture, car seats, leather work etc.
- Textile – include bags, shoes
- Clothing – includes all types of clothes such as traditional, wedding, uniforms, evening wear and casual wear.

The center is established to provide SMME with incubation programme which offers services such as access to market, commercial and technical training, monitoring and evaluation, subsidized cubicles and other related enterprise developmental programmes. The facility has thus by far been very instrumental in promoting the plight of SMME and continues to play a critical role in advancing SMME development support.

### **2.36.3 BUSINESS SUPPORT CENTRES**

The municipality has constructed stalls in some clusters in an attempt to offer support to emerging entrepreneurs. This forms part of the municipality initiative to provide business Centre development support programme. The following is the list:

#### **i. Mankweng University gate 1 Center**

The facility is located closed to University of Limpopo gates .... Offering various products to the student community and the general public around Mankweng The center has 86 Entrepreneurs provided with subsidies infrastructure by municipality. The main activity of SMMEs in the center is trading / selling of products and services such as fruit and vegetables, Pap and vleis, Fast food, shoe repair, IT, hair dressing general merchandise etc.

**ii. Mankweng hospital gate Center**

The facility is able to accommodate at least 58 SMME offering different types of ranging from food, veggies, etc.

**iii. Limpopo cooks Center**

The municipality has allocated 24 units to SMME involved in cooking targeting taxi commuters and many other customers in town. Entrepreneurs undergo developmental training which focuses on aspect of health and safety and other commercial training to improve on their business.

**iv. Knobel business center**

The municipality has constructed 12 stalls to enterprises offering variety of services including among others, cooked food, fruit and vegetables, shoe repair etc. The facility assists patients who visits the hospital and also community members in an around the area.

**V. Aganang business center**

The facility is located at Aganang cluster office and has become instrumental in servicing the communities in the area. The municipality has allocated 12 stalls to SMME who sells food, maize, shoe repair etc.

**2.36.4 Business Compliance and Regulation**

Informal trade economy plays a large and vital role in the overall economy of Polokwane, Limpopo and South Africa as a whole as it forms the very livelihood for thousands of people. Informal Trade consists of economic activity outside the influence and control of institutions. The livelihoods of many people across the country are dependent on the informal economy, especially in rural areas and therefore it is vital to support and sustain this sector of the economy as well.

The objective of the section is to demarcate special areas for informal trade to take place, to regularize the informal economy and to have more efficient transformation from informal to formal economy.

Strategic Interventions The value of the informal trade sector should not be underestimated and/or discredited but should rather be harnessed and employed to stimulate growth in the economy of Polokwane. However, negative perceptions towards informal traders often exist in Polokwane as this sector is regarded as caused excess pollution and chaos in the inner city. This notion is premised on the fact that no proper structures and trading spaces exist for entrepreneurs, and they therefore occupy any available area.

By implementing viable and manageable interventions for the informal trade economy, the benefits of this economic activity can be felt and sustainable economic growth and development be supported. The management of these interventions and processes becomes an institutional function supported by the infrastructure developed to assist and cater for the needs of both the informal traders and the Municipality. The economic activities generated by informal trade can be improved by regulation of informal trade without going as far as

formalizing the sector. The reason being that formalizing the sector can make advantages offered be lost and the efforts fruitless. Rather opportunity should be created that assist and support the informal trade economy and, in the process, create a better image of Polokwane.

### **Interventions are implemented for the development of informal trade in Polokwane.**

The following interventions are implemented for the development of informal trade in Polokwane.

#### **1. Management of Street Trading Permits:**

Permits are issued for different categories/ sectors within the Municipality, and they are renewed monthly. There are **1031 permits issued** across different areas within the Municipality - City cluster, Seshego cluster, Mankweng cluster, Aganang cluster.

We have currently opened for applications for street trading permits in this 2022/23 financial year. The invitation was issued on the 07th of July 2022 to 15th August 2022 We anticipate to issue over 500 permits to complying traders under the following categories:

- 1) Fruits and Vegetables
- 2) Meat and Porridge
- 3) Bunny Chow
- 4) Accessories
- 5) Shoe repair
- 6) Home utensils
- 7) Photography

#### **2. Developmental Support:**

The street traders that have permits are offered developmental support through trainings and workshops. The Municipality conducts workshops and trainings to empower street traders to run successful business and comply with Municipal by-laws and policies. There are some workshops conducted in partnership with parastatals, and private sector.

#### **1. Trading Opportunities:**

The communities are given trading opportunities during events hosted in Municipal Infrastructures such as stadium. The events such as soccer matches, festivals and church gatherings. These events offer economic spin-offs through trading. However, this project has been put on hold due to the compliance of the Covid-19 Lockdown Regulations protocols.

## **2. Trading Stalls constructed by the Municipality:**

- (i) Bok Street Traders Stalls next to the Taxi Rank – accommodates 25 traders.
- (ii) Church Street Traders Stalls next to the Taxi Rank – accommodates 19 traders.

## **3. Future Plans:**

### **(1) Infrastructure Development through NDPG Project**

The Municipality through NDPG programs for infrastructure development, has got plans for construction of informal trading stalls. The infrastructure development will assist informal traders within Seshego cluster to improve business operating conditions, which will in turn improve the quality of life and also contributing to the cleanliness of the Municipality.

### **(2) Implementation of the Limpopo Business Registration Act (LIBRA), 05 of 2003**

The Act provides for law regarding the registration and carrying on of businesses in the Province, establishment of the Limpopo Directorate of Business Registration and Business Registration Centres.

The implementation of LIBRA will provide full control of the functions within the Municipal environment. The Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism will provide training related to the LIBRA functions at a Municipal level. Through the performance of the function, the Municipality will retain all the revenue generated

### **2.36.5 Economic Research and Development:**

The economic analysis as per the Performance of the Local Economy and the Investment Trends is Compiled each financial year. The 2023/24 Economic Analysis was compiled to guide the City in planning Process.



## **CHAPTER Three: Housing and Human Settlements**

### **3.1 HUMAN SETTLEMENT STATUS QUO ANALYSIS**

The right to adequate housing is enshrined in the Constitution (Act 108 of 1996) and it states that everyone has the right to have access to adequate housing and that the state must take reasonable legislative and other measures within its available resources to achieve the progressive realisation of this right. Polokwane Municipality, as the economic hub of the Province is experiencing population growth which results in the influx of people from the rural areas into the urban parts of the municipality. This influx has necessitated an increase in the provision of housing and other basic services that promote Integrated Sustainable Human Settlement.

The Municipal housing environment comprise of formal and informal dwellings. A number of households are in poor housing conditions including informal settlements, backyard rental shacks, overcrowded in formal urban houses, and rural areas without proper access to basic services. In addition to this, urbanization rate continues to increase put much pressure on the Municipality for delivery of housing.

The SBU is still operating with an old organogram which consists of two Sub division:

1. Building Inspectorate
2. Housing

### **3.2 NEW DIRECTORATE: HUMAN SETTLEMENT**

Council adopted the New Organisational Structure in January 2019 which resulted in the Split of Planning and Economic Directorate, creating a new Directorate Human Settlement,

The new Human Settlement Directorate consist of two SBU:

- 1) Planning, Policy and Administration
- 2) Programme Implementation and Quality Assurance

#### **3.2.1. Housing Challenges**

Housing:

- Growing housing demand in relation to supply
- Unplanned/unsustainable human settlements on the urban edge – defeating the objective of integrated and sustainable human settlements
- Reduction of allocated Housing and delays of appointment of contractors by COGHSTA
- Funding of PHA by Municipality
- Staffing
- Blocked projects
- Provincial Department not engaging with the Municipality on crucial issues
- Stagnant housing database
- No long-Term Housing Master Plan

### **3.3 HUMAN SETTLEMENT STRATEGIC OVERVIEW**

#### **1. BACKGROUND**

Regardless of all challenges, the City remains committed to creating environments that enables the creation of integrated sustainable human settlements, i.e., settlements that meets the total social, economic and material needs of the City's populace. The strategic Human Settlement objective remains relevant and sound for driving the City towards the achievement of national and provincial policy objective, which includes:

- Improving the spatial planning patterns by planning and integrating or locating of new housing developments closer to major transport nodes and corridors, economic opportunities and social facilities to ensure the building of an economically and socially integrated and sustainable space.
- Improving spatial efficiency by increasing the densities of new housing developments.
- Increasing the development of housing in the gap market by developing partnerships with the private sector.
- Diversifying housing products with greater investment in rental housing stocks.
- Providing municipal engineering services consistently and at a higher level.
- Using housing as a major job creation strategy and breaking down barriers between the first-economy residential property boom and the second-economy slump

#### **3.3.1 HUMAN SETTLEMENT PLAN**

In the financial year 2016/2017, the City adopted the Five-Year Human Settlement Plan for the period 2016/2017 until 2020/2021. The Plan presented the housing realities of the City and set out strategies for addressing prevalent housing policy gaps. Each year, the plan was reviewed in line with the IDP to ensure that its strategies are relevant to the changing municipal environment. This financial year, the five-year term of the Plan is lapsing and therefore, a new five-year HSP is been developed following the procedures of the IDP.

This Plan, in line with the IDP of the City, is based on the reassessed housing environment of the City. The main aim of the Plan is to guide the City to deliver human settlements in a planned and coordinated manner. The Plan is developed to assist the Municipality to stimulate the local economy, create an environment for job creation and address the housing needs of the people, also it helps the Municipality to correct the spatial disparities and ensure that integration and coordination happens between housing and other service providing sectors such as Water and Sanitation, Roads, Electricity, etc.

The strategic housing programmes of the Plan are not only relevant to responding to the housing conditions, aligned with the programmes of the Limpopo Provincial Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements, and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA). The proposed human settlement and housing delivery projects are within the framework of the spatial development plans of the City.

#### **3.3.2 DEMAND VS SUPPLY**

Since 2004 the Municipality has developed a Municipal housing demand database which was upgraded in 2008 and in 2011/12 financial years. Currently the Municipality is migrating its

housing data to the new National Housing Needs Register (NHNR). With the migration still in process and new registration, the overall municipal housing backlog is estimated at 57 000 including informal settlements households, households in rural areas, blocked housing backlog, gap housing, and greenfield housing development. The overwhelming majority of these households have a monthly income of less than R3 500 and are living in overcrowded conditions and in informal houses, in the backyards accessed through family members and any others willing to provide them with an informal rental opportunity.

A majority of households are in overcrowded situations, informal settlements, and backyard shacks without any tenure.

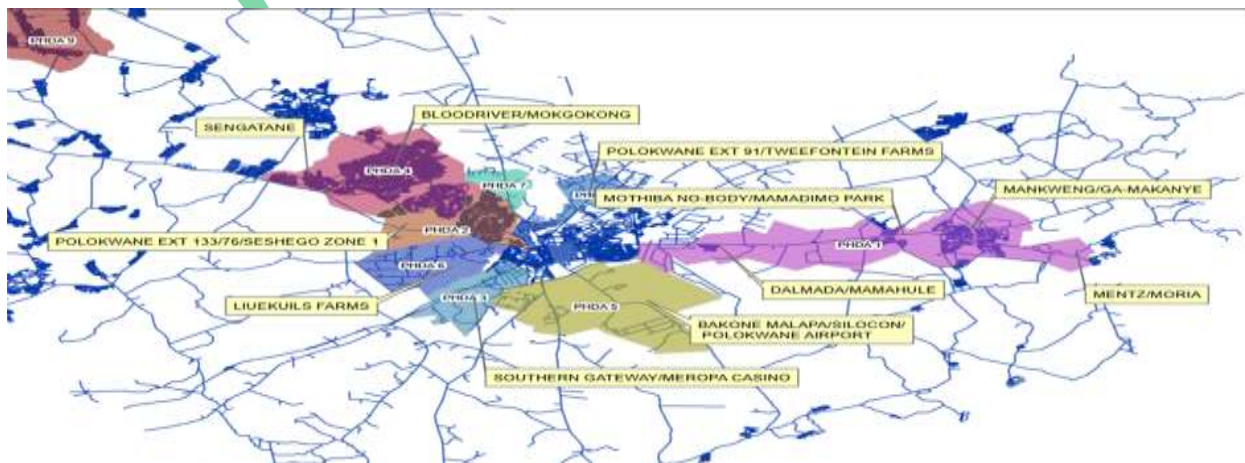
Over the past four years (2016 – 2020) the City delivered well over 5 000 housing opportunities including serviced land. However, the rate of new housing need is overwhelming in relation to the supply.

### 3.3.3 Priority Human Settlement Developments and Housing Development Areas (PHSDA)

The housing problem in Polokwane is not confined to the City/Seshego cluster and surrounding areas only due to urbanization that led to migration. Other areas outside the urban edge; at the rapidly growing area of Mankweng and Moletjie the need for housing development has reached crisis proportions while the provision of the basic services is manageable in other areas. To deal with this challenge, following the National spatial transformation and consolidation framework, the City has identified and demarcated locations as Priority Housing Development Areas (PHDA's).

This should enable the City to consolidate and access funding to deal, in an integrated manner for the Human Settlement needs of such identified communities, the identified PHDAs of the City include the Polokwane CBD and surrounding – extending from the South-western gateway of Polokwane covering Polokwane Extensions, the Polokwane R71 corridor extending from the eastern Polokwane along the R71, covering Dalmada AH, **Mamahule**, Nobody, running through to Boyne, , Leeukuil farm, and the Sengatane-Bloodriver. These Priority Housing Development Areas are experiencing fast growth and somewhat unplanned development. Transforming these regions is crucial in overall objective of creating integrated and sustainable human settlements

Map 1 Priority Housing Development Areas of the City.



To deal with greenfield housing, the Municipality adopted an incremental approach to human settlement delivery. The rationale behind this approach is to curtail the problem of untraceable beneficiaries, unoccupied houses, illegal occupation of State funded houses. Further, to curb land sterilization in a situation where the need is higher than the rate of land development and housing delivery.

### **3.4 legislative and policy frameworks**

The Housing Analysis will therefore be guided by the following legislative and policy frameworks:

- 1) Constitution of RSA**
- 2) Housing Act (107 of 1997)**
- 3) Breaking New Ground, 2005**
- 4) National Housing Code, 2009**
- 5) National Development Plan (NDP)**
- 6) Rental Housing Act (50 of 1999)**
- 7) Limpopo Housing Act (2 of 2006)**
- 8) The Social Housing Act (16 of 2008)**

The right to adequate housing is enshrined in the Constitution (Act 108 of 1996) and it states that everyone has the right to have access to adequate housing and that the state must take reasonable legislative and other measures within its available resources to achieve the progressive realisation of this right. Polokwane Municipality, as the economic hub of Limpopo Province is experiencing population growth which results in the influx of people from the rural areas into the urban parts of the municipality. This influx has necessitated an increase in the demand for housing and other basic services that promote Integrated Sustainable Human Settlement.

The Municipal housing environment comprise of formal and informal dwellings. A number of households are in poor housing conditions including informal settlements, backyard rental shacks, overcrowded in formal urban houses, and rural areas without proper access to basic services. In addition to this, urbanization rate continues to increase put much pressure on the Municipality for delivery of housing.

Polokwane Municipality has obtained Level 2 housing accreditation (the subject will be elaborated in detail below). In collaboration with the department (COGHSTA), the Municipality to facilitate the development of integrated human settlement in accordance with the City's vision. The Municipality normally receives annual allocation of housing units from the Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs

(COGHSTA). For 2018/19 Financial Year, 1 425 housing units were allocated to upgrade the informal settlement in Ext 78 (previously known as Disteneng). The construction work is complete.

The Municipality adopted an incremental approach to human settlement development. The rationale behind this approach is to curtail the problem of untraceable beneficiaries, unoccupied houses, illegal use of State funded houses. The case in point, includes Polokwane Extension 133, 126, 127, and 134. The mixed income Township of Extension 133 is proclaimed, sites allocated and currently engineering services (water and sanitation) are installed. Overtime, top structures will be built. Extension 126 & 127 are planned for relocation of the last SDA 1 informal settlements (Freedom Park and Extension 106), while the mixed income Township of Extension 134 establishment process is at an advanced stage.

The delivery of subsidised houses has expanded access to secure shelter for many poor households, and there has been growth in property markets in townships and broadening of home ownership. But progress up the property ladder for many is hindered by steep price cliffs for residential properties and construction on the other hand.

### **3.5 Challenges confronting sustainable human settlement**

There are formidable challenges confronting sustainable human settlement development.

- Settlement patterns are dysfunctional,
- well-located land is expensive; and
- urban planning and approval processes are slow and frustrating.
- Insufficient bulk infrastructure
- Limited middle-income housing stock and credit constraints contribute to the so-called “gap market” – households with incomes that are above the thresholds for subsidized housing but insufficient to be able to access commercial bank home loans.
- Establishment of settlements by Traditional Authorities without following proper Township establishment processes and engagement with the Municipality (uncoordinated land release by Traditional Authorities)

### **3.6 Housing Backlogs**

The municipal housing backlog is distributed between households in informal settlements, rural housing, rental, blocked housing, and Greenfield housing.

The ensuing Tables provide the status quo of the municipal housing backlog per housing category.

**Table: Categorical analysis of the Municipal housing need**

Housing Category/Area	TYPE OF NEED AND BACKLOG				
	Informal Settlement	Greenfield	Rental	Rural	Blocked
Urban Data Base		±57 000			
Polokwane Ext 78	Relocated 1690				
Seshego					±100
Freedom Park	300				
Polokwane Ext 40					107
Mankweng Unit F					100

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.7 Status of rental housing

The Municipality established an entity called Thabatshweu Housing Company Pty, t/a Polokwane Housing Association (PHA), with a mandate of developing and managing rental housing within its jurisdictional area. The company is accredited by the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) as required by the Social Housing Act (16 of 2008).

The Municipality, in support of the rental housing initiatives avail land to PHA and has designated Restructuring Zones to enable PHA to access the Restructuring Capital Grant (RCG) administered by SHRA for social housing development.

The most common type of rental accommodation that is available for new and particularly low-income urban lodgers is backyard rooms.

Polokwane Housing Association is currently managing 697 rental units of which 508 are social housing and 189 are Community Residential Units (CRU).

Additional Social Housing projects have been initiated by Polokwane Housing Association for example, Ext 76 to yield 240 units. Site is expected to be handed over to the developer October/November 2019. Another social project called Annadale Extension 2 planned to yield 494 units is under construction, started in May 2019 for a period of 18 months.



Negotiations are in progress between the entity and COGHSTA regarding the release of land earmarked for Social Housing to PHA in Bendor Ext 100 township. On the other hand, two Student Accommodation projects; one in Ext 108 and the other one in Ext 106 have been initiated. The two projects are projected to yield over 5000 student beds. Procurement for these projects is concluded.

### 3.8 Urban Housing Developments

The Municipality encourages the Brownfield development and discourages Greenfield developments. This initiative of brownfield development encourages densifying the existing land available for various use. Through spatial planning policies analyses, the development of the land will help alleviate the increase demand for housing, including the gap market and student accommodation around the City.

There are other land portions which have been identified. The Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs, together with the Municipality, and the Housing Development Agency are working together to establish more Townships for human settlement. Some of the developments are close to completions while other recently commenced.

The Table below provides a summary development and their status

Table: summary of developments

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROGRAMMES	TARGET	STATUS
Polokwane Ext 72	GAP housing FLISP	800	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Township complete</li> <li>•Services installed</li> </ul> <p>RISIMA which is an entity of Economic Development is appointed to spearhead the marketing and sale of properties including building packages.</p>
Polokwane Ext 78	Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)	2 906 (all land uses)	<p>Township complete, services installed, housing construction underway and sites allocated</p> <p>Only sites earmarked for middle income are yet to be sold.</p>

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROGRAMMES	TARGET	STATUS
Polokwane Ext 79	GAP housing Finance Link Subsidy Programme (FLISP)	500	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Township complete</li> <li>• Services installed</li> </ul> RISIMA which is an entity of Economic Development is appointed to spearhead the marketing and sale of properties including building packages.
Ext 133	Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)	2 969 Res 1	proclaimed, sites allocated and currently engineering services (water and sanitation) are installed
Polokwane Ext 126	BNG housing	500	Township proclaimed, contractor for installation of engineering services appointed
Polokwane Ext 127	BNG housing	500	Township proclaimed, contractor for installation of engineering services appointed
Polokwane Ext 76 (Erf 40206)	Social Housing	240	Developer is appointed, site is expected to be handed over around October/November 2019.
Annadale Ext 2	Social Housing	494	Contractor on site, started with the construction.
Polokwane Ext 108 and 106	Student beds	+5000	Procurement processes at an advanced stage.
Ext 134	Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)	±3 000	Township establishment at an advanced stage

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.9 Land availability and acquisition strategies

The City's Five-Year Human Settlement Plan recorded the following pieces of land as the one suitable for Human Settlement development. The Municipality has adopted Land Acquisition and Disposal Policy.

Property Description	Extent	Ownership	Proclamation Status	Proposed Development
Ptn 151 to 160 Sterkloop 688 LS	215 Ha	Municipality	Farm Land	Mixed Housing Development
Ptn 76 of Ivydale Agricultural Holdings	4.96112 Ha	Municipality	Farm Land	Mixed Housing Development

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.10 Informal Settlements Profile

This section provides a summary of informal settlements within the jurisdiction of the municipality. By far, the Seshego/City Cluster has the highest number of structures; Informal settlement upgrading is a priority programme for the Municipality. Since 2005 the Municipality has successfully upgraded 07 informal settlements. Currently there are two remaining informal settlements namely, Freedom Park and Ext 106 (recently relocated (as a holding land) people from former Disteneng)

This section provides a summary of informal settlements within the jurisdiction of the municipality. By far, the Seshego/City Cluster has the highest number of structures; Informal settlement upgrading is a priority programme for the Municipality. Since 2005 the Municipality has successfully upgraded 06 informal settlements, eradicated and prevented the formation of new informal settlements. The Municipality has adopted a simple approach to the Management of Informal settlement by:

- a) Identify and recognise the settlement
- b) Profile the settlement
- c) Mark each shack and develop a database for the settlement
- d) Develop a buffer to protect expansion of shack
- e) Conduct regular monitoring of the settlement

#### 3.10.1 Summary of informal settlements within the jurisdiction of the municipality.

The City has **three (3) informal Settlements** which are as follows:

##### 1. Freedom Park

This is an informal Settlement situated in Seshego F, and it has ± 300 shacks. Occupancy has been verified during the month of July 2018 in preparation for the relocation to the new established township. The households will be relocated to Polokwane Ext 126/127. 45 of the households will be re-settled where they are since their settlement is on an approved township (45 residential sites).

## 2. Ext 106 (Holding Area)

The holding area is in Ext 106, next to Luthuli 9G. The area is in a proclaimed Township, the land occupied is zoned for Res 3 (medium to High density developments). The land is earmarked for development of Student Accommodation.

± 700 households were relocated from Disteneng to Ext 106 as holding area. They were relocated because they could not be allocated sites during re-settlement process due to insufficient sites earmarked for BnG income earners. These people will be relocated to Ext 126/127 together with Freedom Park informal settlement

### Challenges or Delays in the process of relocation

- Removal of Cattle kraals and farmers are delaying the process of relocation
- Burning of tires and submission of memorandums to the Municipality by angry and inpatients communities

## 3. Mankweng unit F

### 3.10.2 Juju Valley

In 2015 - 2017 the municipality was alerted of the land invasion on the private property known as **Juju Valley** within the established townships known as **Polokwane Extension 118 and 119**. The property is a well-established township, engagement with the municipality was never materialised. The action, thereafter, tends the activity being illegal land use. It should be acknowledged that the invasion may results in informal settlement unless the property owner finalises and install all services and settle the community accordingly. Various options may be explored of which the owner may engage with the Municipality. The Municipality may not spend the Public funds to the private development unless the land may be transferred to the Municipality

### 3.10.3 Mamahule Settlement

Illegal & uncontrolled settlement on fringe of the City. Some residents of **Mamahule, Maboi, Mothapo and Mothiba** have lodged **land claims** on Kalkfontein 1001 LS farm portions. Some Kalkfontein farm portions are **privately owned** while other portions are owned by the state (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform).

A task team was appointed comprising of various stakeholders (Polokwane Municipality, SAPS, COGSHTA, Office of the Premier, Limpopo Department of Agriculture and Rural

Development), with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform in the leading front to deal with land disputes in and around Mamahule areas.

There have been discussions between Department of Rural Development and Land Reform and Polokwane Municipality to check feasibility of transferring the land to the Municipality and formalize the settlements.

The Department is also expediting the **land claim process** for the affected claimants and determine whether the remaining land is sufficient for settlement of the remaining claimants and if not, to look for alternative land.

As part of planning coordinated settlements, particularly in the area of concern, the Municipality is intending of developing a Precinct Plan (**Dalmada and Kalkfontein Precinct Plan**) to curb invasions, promote coordinated settlements and compatibility of land uses. This will result in establishing new Nodes and encourage development which is in line with the provision of the Polokwane/Perskebult towns Planning Scheme, 2016.

Polokwane Municipality has adopted and gazetted Polokwane Land Use Scheme for Mankweng, Sebayeng, Aganang and Rural Areas on the 8 November 2019. The aim of the above-mentioned scheme is to regulate land uses on areas outside of the Polokwane /Perskebult Town Planning Scheme, 2016 and most importantly to control and promote coordinated settlement patterns

The tender was advertised, proposals submitted, and the process of appointment was at evaluation stage at the time of National Lockdown. The process of appointment was delayed by the lockdown and will be re-advertised.

#### **3.10.4 Polokwane Extension 78**

The current Polokwane extension 78 has already accommodated almost approximately 1690 and only 1425 were Low-income beneficiaries qualifying for the low-income housing. + 109 were on flood line due to roads and storm water the sites were left not to be suitable for housing as of now but will be dealt with once the storm water is installed. Additional housing units will soon be accommodated in the new approach of walk-ups RDP that will be built through densification of some of the High-density properties. The proposal will enable the Municipality to deal extensively with the housing backlog and RDP provision close to the Public transport in order to support the BRT. For example: typical low-income residence (RDP)



Polokwane Extension 78 previously known as Disteneng informal settlement was the biggest Informal settlement of them all. A new Township layout is approved, and 1690 households are settled and 29 households still to be resettled in Ext 78 from ext. 106 whereby they were settled temporarily. The Progress of Relocating and Resettling beneficiaries to their rightful stands, is recorded as 100%.

Settlement Name	Classification	Est. no of structures	Services Status			
			Water	Sanitation	Electricity	Roads
<b>Disteneng</b>	Urban	2000	Services are installed	Services are installed	Services are installed	Gravelled, access routes, no internal routes
<b>Freedom Park</b>	Urban	275	4 communal taps	8 VIP Toilets	None	Gravelled, access routes, no internal routes
<b>Mankweng F</b>	Urban	61	Illegal connections	Pit latrines	None	Informal gravelled internal routes
<b>Mankweng G Ext</b>	Urban	255	Illegal connections	Pit latrines	None	No proper roads
<b>Ext 106</b>	Urban	138	Services are installed	Services are installed	Services are installed	Properly graded roads

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.10.5 Response plan and project Prioritisation

Settlement Name	Priority	Land Ownership	Readiness	Land Condition	Service and Budget Estimate
<b>Disteneng</b>	1	Municipal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Beneficiaries relocated and resettled 1 690</b></li> </ul>	Suitable for Human Settlement	Services are installed



Settlement Name	Priority	Land Ownership	Readiness	Land Condition	Service and Budget Estimate
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ 29 still to be relocated</li> <li>▪ The area is serviced</li> <li>▪ Plan to allocate 1500 RDP houses</li> </ul>		
<b>Freedom Park</b>	2	Settlement in a State Land	Preparations are underway to relocate beneficiaries to new Townships that are established.	Not Suitable for Human settlement	Interim Basic Services are in place -
<b>Mankweng F</b>	4	State Land	Settlement is on a land earmarked for school, proposed to be relocated to an alternative land/ formalized	Suitable for HS, although very small	Decision yet to be taken whether to relocate or formalize
<b>Mankweng G Ext</b>	3	State Land	Settlement is on a flood line and waterlog area, relocation proposed	Not suitable for HS	Interim services are required, while alternative land is sought -
<b>Ext 106</b>	2	Municipal Land	RDP Houses completed with services  The Township is also being used as a holding land for Disteneng residents	Suitable for Human Settlement	Services are installed

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.10.6 Progress with the implementation of informal settlement upgrading.

**City/Seshego Cluster** has the highest number of structures. Informal settlement upgrading is a priority programme for the Municipality. Since **2005**, Polokwane Municipality has successfully upgraded **06 informal settlements, eradicated and prevented** the formation of new informal settlements. Council has adopted a **simple approach/Steps** to the Management of Informal settlement by:

- 1) **Identify and recognise the settlement.**
- 2) **Profile the settlement.**
- 3) **Mark each shack and develop a database for the settlement.**
- 4) **Develop a buffer to protect expansion of shack.**
- 5) **Conduct regular monitoring of the settlement.**

The Municipality is addressing the issues of finalisation of the **last two** informal settlements through **relocation** of the people who were **temporarily provided site** while planning for new Township at **Polokwane X 126, X127, X133 and X134** to be relocated. Once installation of engineering services is finalised, the Municipality will be free of informal settlement.

The current **Polokwane X 118 and 119** (private township) was occupied illegally and the Municipality through **court process** were turn down by the **developer** who claimed to have an agreement with the people. In this case, only when the land owner or land expropriation may be approached in order to address the current occupation since, the Townships are approved by the Municipality.

### 3.10.7 Good Story to tell for Council (EXT 78 Houses under Ward 08)

Previously known as **Disteneng** informal settlement). – Good Story to tell for Council EXT 78 Houses under Ward 08 Previously known as **Disteneng** informal settlement). –





**EXT 78 Houses under Ward 08**

**Electrification Project in Progress at EXT 78 (18 January 2022)**





### 3.10.8 Top 3 Priorities for the City of Polokwane in engaging informal settlements

- 1) Finalisation of **installation of engineering** services (126, 127, 134 and 133) in order to eradicate informal settlements.
- 2) Finalisation of the **relocation for 106** and Freedom park to 126 and 127.
- 3) **Allocation of BNG** for 134 and Applying for more **Top structure** to all extension for BNG.

### 3.11 Social/Rental Housing

NO.	PROJECT AREA	PROGRAMME
1	Ga-Rena Phase 2	Social housing
2	Polokwane X76	CRU
3	Polokwane X78	Social housing CRU
4	Polokwane X106	Social housing
5	Polokwane X107	Social housing
6	Ivydale X35	Social housing
7	Bendor X100	Social housing CRU
8	Polokwane X86	Social housing CRU



NO.	PROJECT AREA	PROGRAMME
9	Polokwane X121	Social housing CRU

**Source: PLK Housing SBU**

In line with regulations of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority, the entity is provisionally accredited as a Social Housing Institution. A full accreditation will enable the entity to access additional funding for the development of social housing units within designated restructuring zones of the Municipality.

### **3.12 Tenure Upgrading**

Secure tenure is a central part of the housing development process. The municipality in collaboration with CoGHSTA is running a programme of Township upgrading, Title Deed restoration and registration. Incomplete Township in the areas of Seshego and Mankweng are currently finalised and proclaimed. Over 6 000 subsidized housing units in the areas of Polokwane Ext; 40, 44, 71, 73, 75, 76, Seshego; E, F, 9F, 9G, 9L, 9H, Seshego A Ext 1, and Sebayeng B are registered and transferred into the names of the beneficiaries.

### **3.13 Housing Accreditation**

Housing Accreditation is a progressive process of building Government capacity thereby transferring housing functions from the Provincial to the Local Government sphere. The aim is to provide an opportunity for Polokwane Municipality to plan, execute and expedite housing service delivery. The process unfolds in three stages, where each stage is linked to institutional capacity of the municipality to undertake specified housing functions. Thus, municipalities should demonstrate capacity to undertake housing functions attached to the level of accreditation.

Polokwane is accredited to perform level 2 housing functions which are amongst others:

- ✓ Project evaluation and approval,
- ✓ contract administration,
- ✓ subsidy registration,
- ✓ programme management including cash flow projection and management
- ✓ and technical (construction) quality assurance.

The Municipal Council approved a new Human Settlement Directorate in support of the additional delegated functions for level 2. An Implementation Protocol (IP) to be signed by the MEC for CoGHSTA and the Executive Mayor has been finalised.

### 3.14 Priority Housing Development Areas (PHDA's)

Polokwane is one of the Municipalities identified by the National Department of Human Settlements as a growth municipality to identify PHDAs. In accordance with the National call for spatial transformation and consolidation in human settlement development, the Municipality in conjunction with the National Department of Human Settlements has identified and is currently in the process of adopting two Priority Housing Development Areas (PHDAs), namely:

- ✓ Polokwane R71 corridor (starting from Ramahlodi Park to Boyne)
- ✓ South-western Gateway corridor (starting RBA taking Matlala road up to Sengatane, including Bloodriver)

The identified PHDA's were designated using the following national criteria:

- a) High demand for housing and related services e.g., basic engineering services.
- b) Large enough to accommodate economic, social infrastructure and housing needs.
- c) Support sustainable environmental management and the integration of land uses and amenities.
- d) Would grant reasonable access or progressive realization of such access to bulk infrastructure, social amenities, economic activities and transport.

#### 3.14.1 Purpose and objectives of Priority Housing Development Areas

The purpose and objectives of Priority Housing Development Areas are:

- 1) To **target and prioritize areas** for integrated housing and human settlements development to ensure the delivery of housing for a broad range of income groups within an integrated mixed-use development. To this end, the following is considered as circumstances of priority:
  - Areas of urgent housing need where there is an established high demand and low supply of housing opportunities.
  - Areas requiring upgrading and/or redevelopment for purposes of delivering housing choices including subsidized housing; and
  - Areas requiring improved access to infrastructure, amenities and services
  - Areas that supports the integration of different housing typologies, land uses and economic development.



2) To **transform entrenched spatial patterns** which have historically exacerbated social inequality and economic inefficiency.

- Achieve a balance between spatial equity, economic competitiveness and environmental sustainability
- Implement spatially targeted projects to achieve spatial transformation – Develop new post-apartheid cities and city patterns that ensure urban access.

The identified PHDAs are not in conflict with any of the City's development plans. It should however be emphasized, given the spatial context of the City, that the PHDAs should not mean that housing delivery would be limited to the identified PHDAs, but only specific housing programmes will be implemented in the areas. The National department indicated that the programme will be funded by the department.

Polokwane extension 133 and 134 is an Integrated Sustainable Human Settlement that aims at addressing the Housing backlog since 2004 there was no movement as people continue to apply for different housing typologies. The Municipality was faced with land invasion crisis. In order to mitigate the land invasion risk, the settlement of the beneficiaries on demarcated sites was beneficial to the Municipality by safeguarding the Municipal properties while preparing for the installation of permanent basic engineering services. Based on the above information, the Municipality allocated beneficiary for RDP section and proceeded to allocate on the Gap market as per the Municipal Housing Data base as guided by several Council resolutions in order to cater for different housing codes since the settlement is for the integrated sustainable Human settlement and piloted by the national and provincial department. The COGHSTA has played an important role in provision of the services for the different housing program to support of the PHDA.

The Polokwane Extension 133 is a proclaimed Township established on farm Klipfontein 670 LS. Located in Ward 1, adjacent Seshego Zone 8, this new Township comprise of 2 969 stands of different sizes (<200x<350 m<sup>2</sup>), objectively demarcated to ensure integration of different income households within the settlement. Notwithstanding this, the Township provides other land uses including Educational, Institutional, Business, and Public Open Space. Polokwane extension 34 has approximately 2090 sites for different housing guided by the Integrated Sustainable Humane settlement concept. The Municipality will deal with the housing backlog as per the Council resolution addressing the 2004-2009.

In terms of the data base migration to the national is at 60% since the issues request attention of the Municipality and the national housing that was also affected by COVID-19.

### **3.15 Building Inspection**

The challenging factor within the directorate is deeply on the records management of the Building plans approved hence, the Municipal records management SBU does not have control over the building Plans that are approved. Several cases were observed where the majority of the Building Plans found to be missing. A proper plan should be considered to locate the building plan within the records management. This may pose negatively since; the coming operation of the Spatial Planning and Land use management Acts demand the wall-to-wall Scheme and Planning By-law.

#### **3.15.1 Building Inspection Key challenges**

- Record management of the Building Plans
- Electronic Filing and submission of the Building Plans
- Staffing for key positions such as plan examiner and Building inspectors
- Incompetency for the Building inspectors due to limited training on the following:
  - ✓ Sewerage inspection
  - ✓ Structural and Concrete engineering
  - ✓ Plumbing (including trading)

#### **3.15.2 Building Inspection Required intervention**

- Records management to deal with the recoding of building plans
- Purchase of the relevant equipment's for the electronic filling
- Re-structuring of the Building inspection and creation of the Building inspection SBU
- Filling of the vacancies.

#### **3.15.3 Legislation and Policy Perspective for Building Inspection**

The following legislative requirements are used by the SBU on a daily basis in the application and enforcement of the Act on National Building Regulations and Building Standards (Act 103 of 1977) as well as in the evaluation and approval of building plans, hoarding, demolition and other applications in terms of the following:

- The National Building Regulations Act (Act 103 of 1977).
- Act on architects (Act 35 of 1970).
- The Polokwane/Perskebult Town Planning Scheme, 2016.

### 3.15.4 Services Rendered by building Inspections sub-unit

- 1) Building plan evaluation and approval
- 2) Minor works permit approval (for work such as swimming pools, small 'Wendy' houses)
- 3) Extension of the validity of an approved building plan
- 4) Temporary structures permit
- 5) Hoarding permits
- 6) Demolitions permits
- 7) Copies of approved building plans

**In additions, other responsibilities are:**

- a) Building Inspection during the construction period
- b) Issuing of Occupation Certificates
- c) General enforcement of building Regulations
- d) Investigation and resolving building complaints, contraventions and illegal building work
- e) Maintaining statistics on building construction activities

### 3.16 Housing Allocation Status Quo from 2016-2021 Status Quo

#### 3.16.1 2016/17 Financial Year allocation, Completed and Outstanding

Contractor	Allocation	Completed	Outstanding	Type of Allocation
Rheinland	140	137	3	Rural
Kabo ya rena	110	109	1	Rural
Indlovu	110	110	0	Rural
GPMVR	110	99	11	Rural
Somandla	140	140	0	Rural
Ga borena	35	Terminated	35	Rural
Manekwane	94	94	0	Rural
Zadek	94	94	0	Rural
<b>Total</b>	<b>833</b>	<b>783</b>	<b>50</b>	

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.16.2 Rectification of 2016/17 Financial Year

Contractor	Allocation	Completed	Outstanding	Type of Allocation
Mantoa	90	90	0	Rural
<b>Total</b>	<b>90</b>	<b>90</b>	<b>0</b>	

Source: PLK Housing SBU (2021)

### 3.16.3 Additional allocation during 2016/17 financial year

Contractor	Allocation	Completed	Outstanding	Type of Allocation
Mantoa	210	186	24	Rural + Urban
Maletsane	190	160	30	Rural + Urban
<b>Total</b>	<b>400</b>	<b>346</b>	<b>54</b>	

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.16.4 2017/18 allocation, Completed and Outstanding

Contractor	Allocation	Completed	Outstanding	Type of Allocation
Tshwaraganag	92	86	6	Rural
Thodi	92	46	46	Rural
Mokgolokwane	92	92	0	Rural
Mmaeshibe	92	71	21	Rural
Somandla	154	154	0	Rural
Deep space	86	77	9	Rural
Malk	86	86	0	Rural + Urban
Snotsile	86	86	0	Rural
Vharanani	500	58	442	Rural
Mamonde	84	0	84	Rural
<b>Total</b>	<b>1364</b>	<b>756</b>	<b>608</b>	

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.16.5 Challenges Experienced During 2017/18 Housing Backlog and Allocations

Most of the wards were allocated to Vharanani Properties and HAD appointed Zhora Khan, Mamondo Developers and Aventino to rectify 442 units in 2020/2021

Ward 1 - Bergnek - Never allocated Contractor

**Most of the wards were allocated to Vharanani Properties and HAD appointed Zhora Khan, Mamondo Developers and Aventino to rectify 442 units in 2020/2021**

Ward 2 – Ga-Phiri – Never allocated Contractor
Ward 5 – Mamondo was appointed but could'nt built
Ward 18 – Mamondo was appointed but couldn't built Moshung, Mmakgabo, Mahibitswane, Mashishi, Madikoti and Leokama - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 24 - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 27 - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 28 - Thabakgone - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 29 - Moduwane, Kgwareng, Potse, Segopje, Ga-Mogashoa, Maokgobeng, Dipalaneng - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 30 - Segopje, Masealama, Makeketela - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 35 and 36 - Thodi was appointed as a contractor, but the houses were not completed, his contract was terminated
Ward 36 - Mabotja and Ramphele - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 37 – Thakgalang – Thodi was appointed as a contractor but didn't built the houses
Ward 40 - Mandela, Gernane, Sekgwahleng - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 43 - Debeng - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 44 - Chloe, Hwibi - Never allocated Contractor
Ward 45 - Never Allocated Contractor

Source: PLK Housing SBU

**3.16.6 2018/19 allocation, Completed and Outstanding (Urban Allocation)**

Contractor	Allocation	Completed	Outstanding	Type of Allocation
Ixplore	450	450	0	Urban
YBG	200	200	0	Urban
Catch 22	175	175	0	Urban
Ramkol	200	200	0	Urban
Asima	200	200	0	Urban
Somandla	200	200	0	Urban
Vharanani	500	0	500	Urban
<b>Total</b>	<b>1425</b>	<b>1425</b>	<b>0</b>	

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.16.7 2020/21 allocation, Completed and Outstanding (COGHSTA)

Contractor	Allocation	Completed	Outstanding	Type of Allocation
Tsa Tshidi	36	35	1	Rural
Veeking	37	29	8	Rural
Mamondo	165	165	0	Urban
Khumo	37	35	2	Rural
Mabu	36	25	11	Rural
Mampje	36	26	10	Rural
<b>Total</b>	<b>347</b>	<b>315</b>	<b>32</b>	

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.16.8 2020/21 (HDA) Replacement of Vharanani Projects for 2017/2018 Housing Backlog

2020/21 Financial Year (HDA) Replacement of Vharanani Projects for 2017/2018 Housing Backlog

Contractor	Allocation	Completed	Outstanding	Type of Allocation
Zorha Khan	146	129	17	Rural
Aventino	148	124	24	Rural
Mamondo	148	137	11	Rural
<b>Total</b>	<b>442</b>	<b>390</b>	<b>52</b>	

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.16.9 Summary of Allocation, completed and Outstanding

FINANCIAL YEAR	ALLOCATION	COMPLETED	OUTSTANDING
2016/2017	833	783	50
2016/2017 RECTIFICATION	90	90	0
2016/2017 ADDITIONAL	400	346	54
2017/2018	1364	756	608
2018/2019	1425	1425	0
2020/2021 COGHSTA	347	315	32
2020/21 HAD Rectification	442	390	52

Source: PLK Housing SBU



### 3.16.10 Challenges of projects started but not completed

The below contractors were appointed to build houses in different areas of the municipality but did not complete or touch their projects

CONTRACTOR	WARD	STATUS	VILLAGE	FIN YEAR	TOTAL
Rheiland	32	<b>Slab</b>	Mantheding	2015/2016	1
	45	<b>Slab</b>	Ga-Mabiloane		1
Tshwaraganang	40	Untouched	Madinyane	2017/2018	2
		Untouched	Boetse		2
		Untouched	Sebora		2
Malk	10	Untouched	Dairing	2017/2018	6
		Untouched	Madihorong		1
Thodi	37	Untouched	Thakgalang	2017/2018	20
		Untouched	Seshego zone 6		1
		Untouched	Seshego zone 3		1
	35	Untouched	Monywaneng	2017/2018	6
	35	<b>Houses Not Completed</b> Roof Level, No windows and Doors, Slab	Helena 3; Mphela 3; Ditengteng 4; Thantsha 3; Manamela 3	2017/2018	16
Mmaeshibe	31	<b>Slab</b>	Nchichane	2017/2018	1
	31	Untouched	Ntsima		2
	32	Untouched	Solomondale		3
	33	Untouched	Kholetsheng		15
Snotsile	6	Untouched	Nobody block 1	2017/2018	1
Deep space	29	Untouched	Madiga	2017/2018	9
<b>GRAND TOTAL</b>					<b>71 +3+16 = 90</b>

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.17 Overall Housing Challenges

- Shortage of beneficiaries to be approved (Ward Councillors not responding on time)
- Approved beneficiaries at development area while residing at non development areas
- Councillors not returning forms on time after rectifications
- The client (COGHSTA) took units from service Provider (Contractor) due to non-performance and took time to replace them.
- Slow approval of beneficiaries which caused delay to Service Provider
- Slow NHBRC enrolment approval
- Sites affected by flood line
- Delay in water connections by beneficiaries which affect testing of water & sewer
- Community unrest due to 2017/18 allocation not being attended to while new beneficiaries are getting houses
- Contractors not working with councillors and tribal authorities.
- Contractors not paying CLO
- Untraceable beneficiaries and councillors taking time to replace
- Differences in Tribal Authorities and community where councillor didn't follow the agreement between two indunas' when allocations where being made.

### **3.18 Military Veteran Housing Projects**

The Department of Military Veterans (DMV) and The National Department of Human Settlements (NHDS) signed Memorandum of understanding in 2012. The MOU's objective was to ensure the effective delivery of houses for Military Veterans. Military Veterans database is maintained by DMV.

Housing Development Agency (HDA) is appointed by CoGHSTA as implementing Agency on the Programme and they Appointed Vharanani Properties to build houses in different areas of the Municipality. A total number of 50 beneficiaries were approved on HSS for Polokwane Municipality Fourteen (14) of the approved beneficiaries have indicated that they do not own stands for construction of their houses. Missing/untraceable Beneficiaries. Fourteen (14) MV Beneficiaries requires sites within Urban Areas. Beneficiaries complains about the sizes of their houses.

### **3.19 City of Polokwane housing success over 25 years**

Over the past 25 years of democratic governance, the municipality has achieved great success in implementing national housing policy.

- Over 20 000 housing opportunities were provided in rural and urban areas of the Municipality.
- More than 10 000 households have secure tenure over their accommodation (Title Deeds).
- Adding to this, the social/rental housing environment is progressively stabilizing, following the establishment of a Municipal rental housing entity (Polokwane Housing Association) which is currently managing over 500 rental units
- The municipality has Conditionally obtained **Level 2 Housing Accreditation**

- The number of informal settlements is currently reduced from 7 to 2, with an estimated household below 1 200
- Adding to this, over 13 low-income Townships have been development and some occupied. These Township has a combined residential capacity of over 10 000 units.
  - Currently 5 Townships, with over 3 000 units, are unoccupied and due for servicing.

### **3.20 Proposal for the walk-up RDP at extension Pietersburg 40**

The proposed solution was identified on the bases that, by densifying the land available will provides enough walk-RDP houses than individual stand. The provision of the houses through a sectional title scheme was identified as the best model that will house people closer to work, in a walkable distance from the city and neighbouring industries. This will enable the Municipality to address the abandoned RDP and rental of RDP houses whereas other community needs such housing. By supporting the densification, the Municipality have noted that the Pietersburg extension 40 Township has approximately 8 Erven with the following extent:

- Erf 11981/1= 7068m<sup>2</sup>
- Erf 11981/2 = 2.3ha (23000m<sup>2</sup>)
- Erf 11981/3 = 1.3ha (13000m<sup>2</sup>)
- Erf 11981/4 = 1600m<sup>2</sup>
- Erf 11981/5 = 1509m<sup>2</sup>
- Erf 11981/6 = 1509m<sup>2</sup>
- Erf 11981/7 = 1509m<sup>2</sup>
- Erf 11981/8 = 1509m<sup>2</sup>

In total, the Erven will have 50704 m<sup>2</sup>. This can be utilised for the following zoning if Rezoned to Residential 3 with the density of 50 or 74 or 84 Dwelling Units per Ha or higher. The following are the number of units for the double storey building from each density.

- For 50 Dwelling units, approximately 253 dwelling units can be developed.
- For 74 Dwelling units, approximately 375 dwelling units can be developed.
- For 84 Dwelling units, approximately 426 dwelling units can be developed.

### **3.21 Relocation plan for 126 and 127**

Housing section has already developed the relocation plan for 126 and 127 subject that the timeline will be implemented once the City planning, and property management execute the Council resolution. Corporate Geo-Informatics has already surveyed the area for relocation. EM's office facilitates the engagement with the community for meeting to deal with the relocation process.

### **3.22 TITLE DEED REGISTRATIONS STATUS QUO**

#### **3.22.1 TITLE DEEDS RESTORATION**

The Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs Department and Polokwane Municipality are in the process of registering and transferring Low-Cost Houses to the approved beneficiaries through the **Title Deed Restoration and Post 2014 Subsidy Market PROGRAMME**. These are National Programme that were implemented to ensure that all approved beneficiaries (rightful occupiers) of state housing receive their legal proof of property ownership (in the form of a title deed) in a timely and affordable manner; with the state playing a direct enabling role to ensure that this is achieved.

Polokwane Municipality has a backlog in **Seshego; Mankweng and Westernburg** which will be addressed through these programmes in the 2018/20 financial years. **Popela Make Incorporated** has been appointed to register and transfer 1000 houses in Ext. 78. Since the properties are State funded; The Municipality is therefore requesting exemption from the issuing of clearance certificates as outlined in the MSA which reads as follows:

#### **3.22.2 TITLE DEEDS RESTORATION LEGISLATION**

##### **Section 118 Restraint on transfer of property**

(1) A registrar of deeds may not register the transfer of property except on Production to that registrar of deeds of a prescribed certificate:

- issued by the municipality or municipalities in which that property is situated; and
- which certifies that all amounts that became due in connection with
- that property for municipal service fees, surcharges on fees, property rates and other
- Municipal taxes, levies and duties during the two years preceding the date of application for the certificate have been fully paid.

1A) A prescribed certificate issued by a municipality in terms of subsection (1) is Valid for a period of **120 days** from the date it has been issued.

(2) In the case of the transfer of property by a trustee of an insolvent estate, the provisions of this section are subject to section 89 of the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936).

(3) An amount due for municipal service fees, surcharges on fees, property rates and other municipal taxes, levies and duties is a charge upon the property in connection with which the amount is owing and enjoys preference over any mortgage bond registered against the property

Subsection (1) does not apply to-

- a transfer from the national government, a provincial government
- or a municipality of a residential property which was financed with funds or loans made available by the national government, a provincial government or a municipality; and the vesting of ownership as a result of a conversion of land tenure rights into ownership in terms of Chapter 1 of the Upgrading of Land Tenure Rights Act, 1991 (Act 112 of 1991):
- Provided that nothing in this subsection precludes the subsequent collection by a Municipality of any amounts owed to it in respect of such a property at the time of such transfer or conversion.

(5) Subsection (3) does not apply to any amount referred to in that subsection that became due before a transfer of a residential property or a conversion of land tenure Rights into ownership contemplated in subsection (4) took place.  
[S. 118 substituted by s. 44 of Act 51 of 2002.].

### **3.22.3 Title Deed Status Quo for (Seshego; Westernburg; Ladanna; Mankweng and Sebayeng).**

#### **AREA TO FOCUS ARE**

The focus areas are: **Polokwane; Seshego; Westernburg; Annadale (Ladanna); Mankweng and Sebayeng.**

<b>Area (Polokwane)</b>	<b>Number of units allocated</b>	<b>Number of units transferred</b>	<b>Number of units remaining</b>
<b>Polokwane</b>			
Ext.40	393	393	0
Ext.44	1500	1471	29
Ext.78	1425	900	525
Ext.71	1109	1067	42
Ext.73	569	561	8
Ext.75	492	487	5
Ext.76	1327	1324	3

Source: PLK Housing SBU

#### **Challenges**

Area	Challenges
Ext. 44	Waiting for appointment of service provider for the new financial year
Ext. 78	Service provider was appointed to transfer 1000 units; he transferred 900. He could not reach people during hard lockdown and Deeds offices were closed hence he has 100 remaining. His contract has expired hence he cannot lodge the remaining 100.
Ext.71	Waiting for appointment of service provider for the new financial year Incorrectly transferred properties to be de-registered. A letter was sent to CoGHSTA.
Ext .73;75;76	Waiting for appointment of service provider for the new financial year

Source: PLK Housing SBU

#### AREA TO FOCUS ON AND CHALLENGES

Area	Number of units allocated	Number of units transferred	Number of units remaining
Westernburg			
Low-cost housing	968	959	9
EEDBS (Extended Enhanced Discount Benefit System) (Old Municipal houses) - Nirvana - Seshego - Ladanna/ Annadale - Westernburg	263	197	66
Challenges	<p>Untraceable beneficiaries: people are approved but they were not residents of Polokwane.</p> <p>A service provider has to be appointed to register the erf/subdivision and to transfer the properties.</p>		

Source: PLK Housing SBU

#### AREA TO FOCUS ON



Area	Number of units allocated	Number of units transferred	Number of units remaining
Annadale	18	18	0
<b>Seshego</b>			
Seshego Ax1	738	647	91
Seshego H	21	0	21
Zone 5	861	617	244
Zone 6a	243	128	115
Zone 6b	50	31	19
Lepakeng	119	0	119
Mphonegele	12	0	12
Zone 6 (Mohlakaneng)	133	90	43
Mokabapark	50	47	3
Molepo-park	32	8	24
Samuel Thema	101	0	101
EXT.133	165	0	165

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### Challenges

Area	Challenges
<b>Seshego Ax1</b>	Appointed service provider did not complete the transfers, waiting for the appointment of a new service provider
<b>Seshego H</b>	Appointed service provider requested the original Title Deed of the Erf from Property Management.
<b>Zone 5</b>	Appointed service provider did not complete the transfers, waiting for the appointment of a new service provider
<b>Zone 6a -8148</b>	Beneficiaries to submit outstanding documents in order to finalize their transfers Some have not registered Other properties have been sold
<b>Zone 6b -8147</b>	Beneficiaries to submit outstanding documents in order to finalize their transfers Some have not registered Other properties have been sold
<b>Lepakeng</b>	Waiting for the appointment of a service provider
<b>Mphonegele</b>	Waiting for the appointment of a service provider

Area	Challenges
<b>Zone 6 (Mohlakaneng)</b>	Erf 8172 has to be transferred from the owner SA breweries to Polokwane municipality before the registration of the properties.
<b>Mokabapark</b>	Appointed service provider did not complete the transfers, waiting for the appointment of a new service provider
<b>Molepo-park</b>	Appointed service provider did not complete the transfers, waiting for the appointment of a new service provider
<b>Samuel Thema</b>	Waiting for the appointment of a service provider
<b>EXT.133</b>	Waiting for the appointment of a service provider

Source: PLK Housing SBU

#### AREA TO FOCUS ON AND CHALLENGES- Area (Luthuli)

Area (Luthuli)	Number of units allocated	Number of units transferred	Number of units remaining
<b>9A</b>	517	512	5
<b>9F</b>	240	227	13
<b>9G</b>	302	302	0
<b>9H</b>	212	201	11
<b>9L</b>	1030	966	72
<b>EXT.106</b>	130	0	130
<b>Challenges</b>			
<b>9A-F-H</b>	Waiting for the appointment of a service provider		
<b>9L</b>	A few houses have not been claimed by the approved beneficiary (Illegal occupation) Some houses are not allocated.		

Source: PLK Housing SBU

#### AREA TO FOCUS ON AND CHALLENGES

Area ( <u>Sebayeng</u> )	Number of units allocated	Number of units transferred	Number of units remaining
<b>Unit B</b>	500	451	49
<b>Challenges</b>	Houses not occupied by the approved beneficiary		
<b>Mankweng</b>			
<b>Mankweng E</b>	94	6	88

<b>Mankweng G</b>	377	0	377
<b>Mankweng Gx1</b>	503	0	503
<b>Mankweng F</b>	297	0	297
<b>Challenges</b>			
<b>Mankweng E</b>	Waiting for the appointment of a service provider		
<b>Mankweng G and Mankweng Gx1</b>	Section 82 Certificate required. HDA appointed service providers; we are still for their report.		
<b>Mankweng F</b>	The Layout map was changed twice hence a physical verification has to be done to align the layout map site; municipal account and HSS approval.		

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### AREA TO FOCUS ON AND CHALLENGES

<b>Townships that still need to be transferred or donated to Polokwane Municipality</b>			
<b>Hospital View</b>	477	0	477
<b>Bikopark</b>	170	0	170
<b>Challenges</b>	Deed of Donation still needs to be signed by the Minister of Rural Development. The application was submitted in 2017/18		

Source: PLK Housing SBU (2021)

### 3.23 Low-cost housing (RDP) Summary

- Number of houses built: = 15 166
- Number of houses transferred= 11 087
- Number of houses to be transferred= 4079

### 3.24 Extended Enhanced Discount Benefit System (EEDBS)

This are old Municipal houses (**Pre-1994**) that were transferred to Beneficiaries

- Number of houses= 281
- Number of houses transferred= 215
- Number of houses remaining =66
- Number of sites on flood-line =107 at Ext. 40a – Beneficiaries were reallocated to Hospital View and Ext. 71

### 3.25 Challenges and Intervention for Human Settlement

<b>CHALLENGES</b>	<b>INTERVENTION</b>
Access to Deeds Search	HDA linked 5 Human Settlement staff to Lapsis
Untraceable beneficiaries	Identified, advertised, letter sent to Province to de-register/re-allocate
Double allocations	Allocate in current projects if alternative sites are available
Incorrectly registered properties	To be rectified e.g., Westernburg Ext. 3/Mankweng
Illegally occupied sites/houses	Owner to give them notice/apply for an eviction
Illegal sale of municipal sites/houses	Refer matter to legal services and properties e.g., Ext40 and Zone 5
Townships not proclaimed	Properties to submit the list to HAD
Outstanding Deed of Donation	Finalize with DOW, CoGHSTA and properties (Hospital View; Bikopark & Zone 6 8172
Tribal Authority Interference	Political intervention
General plans provisionally approved	Properties to submit list to HDA to assist
Township register not opened	Properties to submit to HDA to assist
Family disputes (Deceased Estate)	Advise them on the laws of succession
Lost title deeds	Compile list and submit to CoGHSTA/advise clients to apply for a lost copy
Incorrectly linked information between HSS, layout map and municipal rates	Verify and rectify e.g., Mankweng unit F
EEDBS	Engage with Town Planners and GIS
(Beneficiaries who have benefited before or are registered property owners)	Compile a report to council to sell properties to non-qualifying beneficiaries.
Subdivisions that are not registered at Deeds office	Town planners, GIS and HDA to assist with the registrations

CHALLENGES	INTERVENTION
Collection of title deeds Houses built but not approved on HSS	Door to door visitation was done and a list was also submitted to councillors

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.26 List of Building Plans Received (2016 to date)

#### BUILDING PLANS RECEIVED (2016 to DATE)

	JAN	FEB	MAR	APRIL	MAY	JUNE	JULY	AUG	SEP	OCT	NOV	DEC	TOTAL
2016	102	112	124	102	139	107	123	121	157	125	157	84	1 453
2017	114	111	80	82	122	108	141	125	114	100	151	59	1 307
2018	90	96	110	97	168	73	96	137	110	106	112	52	1 247
2019	82	99	85	92	108	101	116	92	109	147	89	52	1 172
2020	68	117	64	0	0	71	127	117	109	141	143	92	1 049
2021	51	80	130	96	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	357
Total													6 585

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.27 List of Building Plans Approved (2016 to date)

#### BUILDING PLANS APPROVED (2016 to DATE)

	JAN	FEB	MAR	APRIL	MAY	JUNE	JULY	AUG	SEP	OCT	NOV	DEC	TOTAL
2016	77	116	80	102	139	122	108	110	132	141	93	79	1 299
2017	94	95	99	55	116	90	82	130	85	114	116	60	1 136
2018	64	68	77	82	112	83	91	101	95	81	116	48	1 018
2019	80	74	67	81	65	85	103	89	68	133	83	58	986
2020	51	83	90	0	0	26	90	75	87	147	136	110	895
2021	18	82	120	64	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	284
Total													5 618

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.28 EXT 133 Allocation of Stands Status Quo

Polokwane Extension 133 is a proclaimed Township established on farm Klipfontein 670 LS. Located in Ward 1, adjacent Seshego Zone 8, this new Township comprise of 2 969 stands of different sizes (<200x<350 m<sup>2</sup>), Objectively demarcated to ensure integration of different income households within the settlement. Notwithstanding this, the Township provides other land uses including Educational, Institutional, Business, and Public Open Space.

Polokwane Ext 133 is a township established to accommodate people of various income categories (integrate various income categories) for sustainability purposes. The township was invaded before the Municipality could embark on a formal process of allocation of sites as per housing demand database. In order to mitigate the land invasion risk, the settlement of the beneficiaries on demarcated sites was beneficial to the Municipality by safeguarding the Municipal properties while preparing for the installation of permanent basic Engineering Services.

The invaders **were removed** through the private security company which was contracted by the Municipality to deal with land invasion, for these reasons, it prompted the municipality to immediately secure the land; swiftly allocate the sites to curb the invasion and ultimately requested the Council **to approve the allocation as guided by the CR/62/11/18.**

Following Proclamation of the Township and Council Resolution CR/62/11/18, the report that served before the Council resolved to allocate stands to families that are registered on the Municipal Housing Demand Database, also resolved as per resolution number 4 of the Council report: **60% of site allocation in Ext 133 be favored forward 11 and the remaining 40% be shared by other urban wards of Seshego i.e. 12, 13, 14, 17, and 37.**

Based on the above information, the allocation started with reserved sites for low-income earners and when the sites were exhausted, then allocation continued to the reserved sites for middle income earners (Gap Market).

The reserved sites for middle income earners (Gap Market) **was done with the intention to prepare a report to Council to alienate which are 200m<sup>2</sup> to non-qualifying RDP beneficiaries** due to various reasons and to sell sites to prospective beneficiaries This oversight of allocation of these sites randomly resulted in people who are in the category of low-income earners allocated sites in these category (and they will not afford to purchase the sites).

those who falls within the middle-income earners allocated these sites, were informed during allocation that they will be expected to purchase these sites after Valuation of sites is done. Majority have now built permanent structures. Municipalities intents to start engaging these people its intention to sell the sites to them, and also those who are in the low-income categories to be relocated to the appropriate sites even if they are to be moved out of the township (relocated to new sites),



### 3.28.1 Scenarios suggested to address the Gap Markets Beneficiaries

The affected occupants (Gap Markets) of sites in Ext. 133, particularly those who are earning salaries exceeding R3 500 and those who do not qualify due to cases ranging from not being first-time property owners or had received state subsidized housing, be treated in accordance with principle laid in the housing code for dealing with similar cases under the “Informal Settlement Upgrading Programme”, being that:

**“This category of people, who wish to acquire the individual stands in ownership, be required to pay a purchase price equal to the cost of the development of the stand. This cost will comprise a land acquisition component, component equal to the cost of provision of the Municipal Engineering Services and the transfer costs”.**

The calculations of costs will be done by calculating the cost of development of each site taking into considerations Land Acquisition, Engineering Services Being Water and Sanitation, Roads and Storm Water, Electrification and transfer costs. In this view, during the allocation of the sites, there were no Engineering Services installed hence the intension was to counter the land invasion and safeguard the sites as elaborated above. It was noted that, since the services were not installed, valuation at that time was not possible.

To appoint a Municipal Valuer to evaluate the properties and determine the market value of properties for the various categories of incumbents to pay the purchased price in terms of valued prices as mostly is the case. Upon obtaining the valuation report, a deed of sale shall be conducted between the occupants and the Municipality. The deeds of sale shall outline the terms and condition of the sale, including the purchased price payable and payment due date. The township is an Integrated Sustainable Human Settlement, the beneficiaries within the GAP housing sites will subject to valuation and the relevant cost associated with Housing programs will be followed in order to recover the cost associated with the land from qualifying beneficiaries to fairly benefit from the housing programmes since the data base was used

Polokwane Extension 133 is a mixed income human settlement established on Farm Klipfontein with a residential capacity of 2 968 sites. The process of site allocation began in November 2018 and to date 2 403 sites are allocated. A breakdown of the allocation is presented in the Table below:

No	Ward No	Allocation
1.	11	1172
2.	12	333
3.	13	155
4.	14	333
5.	17	274
6.	37	136
GRAND		2 403

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.28.2 Summary of sequence of event in respect of relocation of Ext 133 Beneficiaries

Date	Description of events
August 2018	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Council Resolution <b>CR/62/11/18</b> – The Council resolved to allocate stands to families registered on the municipal housing database in ext. 133 from Ward 11,12,13,14,17 and 37</li> </ul>
October 2019	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Preparation of allocation and pegging of sites</li> </ul>
12 November 2018 to 04 March 2019	<p>The process of allocating sites underway,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Beneficiaries from Wards 11, 12 and 17 were the first one to be allocated sites.</li> <li>▪ Later in 2019, Beneficiaries for Wards 13, 14 and 37 were allocated sites;</li> <li>▪ Beneficiaries were called through SMSs to fill in the forms.</li> </ul>
19 October 2018	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Series of Technical Meetings were held with Steering Committee including the affected Ward Councillors on the progress of relocation:</li> </ul>
October 2020	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Meeting – Challenges pertaining to allocation of sites in ext. 133.Resolutions from the meeting was to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Determine the number of sites for RDP's and Middle (Gap Market) and High Incomers.</li> <li>➤ Middle (Gap Markets) and High-income sites to be valued and determine the fair market value of the subject properties.</li> <li>➤ Legal Unit to assist in drafting an Agreement/Acknowledgement letter to the beneficiaries informing them of the sites/erven that will be sold based on the Valuation report.</li> <li>➤ Arrange a meeting with Councillors to inform them about the new developments in terms of finalising the disposal/selling of sites in Ext 133.</li> <li>➤ Negotiate or engage the affected Beneficiaries on the Middle (Gap Markets) and High Incomers about the signing of an Agreement/Acknowledgement letter.</li> <li>➤ Beneficiaries who are allocated on the middle (Gap Market) and high-income sites but qualify for Low-cost categories (RDP) to be relocated to the appropriate sites or moved to new established township.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
03 November 2020  To  01 December 2020	<p>Series of Meetings with the task team including Legal Team were held and the following were presented and discussed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Valuer appointed by Property Management.</li> <li>▪ Valuation Report presented.</li> <li>▪ 1306 site have been valued.</li> </ul>

Date	Description of events
26 March 2021	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Memo to Legal Unit about the drafting of an Agreement/Acknowledgement</li> </ul>
08 April 2021	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Feedback</li> </ul>
08 April 2021	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Proposed meeting with Ward Councillors for Ward 1, 11, 12, 13, 14, 17 and 37 to in order to enable to lead with the consultation with the affected parties.</li> </ul>
12 – 23 April 2021	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Consultation with the affected beneficiaries</li> <li>▪ Signing of Agreements and the deeds of sale</li> </ul>
28 April 2021	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Report back</li> </ul>
01 June 2021	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Preparing a report to Council</li> </ul>

Source: PLK Housing SBU

### 3.28.3 Challenges and intervention caused by delays in selling of site at Ext 133

Challenges	Interventions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Long awaited Pro-Forma Agreement</li> <li>▪ Most beneficiaries are erecting structures without submission of building plans</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Final meeting to be arranged between the ext. 133 Internal Task Team: i.e. City Planning, Property Management, Legal Unit and Human Settlement Unit officials</li> <li>▪ Notice of intensions was issued from the high Court to stop erecting without proper documentations</li> </ul>

Source: PLK Housing SBU (2021)

### 3.28.4 State of Engineering Services within Ext 133

To obtain Security Tenure (Title Deeds), the Township should first be serviced by installation of permanent basic Engineering Services – being Water and Sanitation, Roads and Storm Water, Electrification. CoGHSTA appointed a Service Provider to install Engineering Services. (Water and sanitation). The project is not yet completed; the delay was due to the Covid 19 Lock down Regulation.

### 3.28.5 Building Plans Submission

A fee as Legislated in Government Gazette for the submission of Building Plan will have to be paid on submission Building Plans to the Local Authority

### **3.28.6 Encroachment that affect the development controls (coverage, FAR, Height, and building lines**

Those properties that may not have encroachment to the engineering network and the other site should be subject to the process of the Polokwane/Perskebult Town Planning Scheme 2016 for either clause 32 or 33 for relaxation

### **3.28.7 Encroachment that effect the adjacent properties**

In case where the development has encroached to the adjacent properties, they are subjects to demolition since; all sites are allocated to different people as per Housing Database

### **3.29 Construction of RDP Houses to Ext. 133 – Top Structures**

The Construction of 165 RDP Houses that were allocated to Ext. 133, the project is complete, and the Contractor was **Mamondo Developers**. Furthermore, Housing Development Agency HDA- appointed by CoGHSTA as Implementing Agency allocated 350 units for the construction of RDP houses in Ext. 133.

### **3.30 FLISP Programme**

The beneficiaries that are within the GAP program will be assisted in the application of the FLISP that will assist them to cover the cost of the land and their building. As per discussion with the CoGHSTA, the GAP housing, Extension 133 will be the pilot for the program MOA/MOU is signed by the Municipality and CoGHSTA as part reimbursement for the cost on engineering services installed.

#### **3.30.1 About FLISP program**

The subsidy rates were amended in 2018, so If you earn R15,000 a month, you can now qualify for a subsidy of R62,304, compared to the previous amount of R20,000. If you earn R22,000 a month you can qualify for a subsidy of R27,960. Since the 2018 changes to the FLISP programme, if you are a public servant getting housing assistance through the Government Employees Housing Subsidy Scheme (GEHS), you can still qualify for a FLISP subsidy.

as described for RDP houses above. FLISP grants can be used for both existing houses and to build a new one. It used to be the case that you could not sell a FLISP house before eight years, like an RDP house, but that no longer applies. However, if you sell your house, you may not apply for a second FLISP grant. Besides getting approval for a home loan and earning between R3,500 and R22,000 per month, you must meet the same criteria

#### **3.30.2 How to apply for a FLISP Grant**

- a) To apply for a FLISP grant, you must first go to your bank or financial institution and apply for a home loan. For that you will need:
- b) Certified copy of your South African ID or passport/permanent residence permit
- c) Copy of your signed Offer to Purchase the house or property
- d) Proof of your current residential address

- e) Official salary slip or stamped bank statement showing the last three months of income
- f) To qualify for a home loan, you have to be over 21, have been employed for a minimum of six months, have no defaults on your credit profile and earn above the minimum salary requirement as decided by your chosen bank. If your home loan application is denied, your FLISP application will not be considered.
- g) Once this has been completed:
- h) Ask for an "Approval in Principle" letter from the bank.
- i) Register on the FLISP website: [www.flisp.co.za](http://www.flisp.co.za) or go to your municipal offices to register for a FLISP grant.

**Compile the following certified documents for your application:**

- 1) Home Loan Approval in Principle letter from your bank
- 2) Completed FLISP application form available from National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC) website
- 3) RSA ID document or permanent residence permit
- 4) Certified copies of birth certificates/RSA IDs of all your dependents, and proof of foster children guardianship (where applicable)
- 5) Proof of marriage, civil union or partnership (an affidavit can be done for the latter)
- 6) Divorce settlement (where applicable)
- 7) Spouse's death certificate (where applicable)
- 8) Proof of monthly income
- 9) Agreement of sale for the property or building contract and approved building plan (where applicable)
- 10) Once this is done, your completed FLISP application will be sent to the National Housing Finance Corporation to be processed.

**3.30.3 Recommendation to be submitted to Council to deal with the Disposal of land**

- That the Council request for the 50% discount on the market value of the property like other Township for the qualified beneficiaries of the GAP housing
- That the Beneficiaries above the threshold to pay the market value of the property
- That the qualified beneficiaries on the FLISP program be exhausted guided by the CoGHSTA or Housing SBU.
- That the qualified beneficiaries be engaged on the program of FLISP
- That the duration for the beneficiary's payment as detailed above be paid within 24 months
- That the title deeds be registered for the BNG or RDP sites as soon as possible with the assistance with CoGHSTA.
- That the Title deeds for the GAP and High income once the settlement amount is paid
- That the encroachment and illegal building be attended by the Municipality relevant SBU.
- That pro-forma kind of ownership be provided for the verified beneficiaries in order to submit AS-BUILT building plans.
- That no exchange of land through sales by beneficiaries should be entertained, but only beneficiaries as per the data base once verifies be provided with the pro-forma ownership of land.
- That the remaining sites for GAP and High Income be disposed through the Municipal Land Policy.
- That the BNG beneficiaries within the GAP housing sites be allocated sites to either Polokwane Extension 134 or extension 40 as analysed.

- That legal services deal with all legal matter that may arise as a result of executing this resolution

### **3.31 Polokwane Housing Association – PHA**

The City of Polokwane is a leader within the province as it has an established housing entity (***Thabatshweu Housing Company PTY LTD***) – trading as Polokwane Housing Association - PHA), but the responsibilities that come with the fully and effective functioning of the PHA need to be addressed during the next five-year period to ensure that a sound base is established for building sustainable **integrated human settlements**. The focus should be on identification of mechanisms to fast-track delivery of social housing and therefore the level 2 accreditation of the PHA becomes critical and essential. This will also result that the Service Delivery Agreement (SDA) should be reviewed to incorporate these aspects. This will improve the property portfolio of the PHA and assist towards the establishment thereof as a viable municipal entity.

Critical for the operational requirements of the PHA will be the adherence and compliance of all integrated settlement establishment (spatial plans) with the Spatial Development Framework of the City of Polokwane. The PHA must also develop mechanisms to effectively deal with the conclusion and finalisation of the Garena housing project and to review and update the housing chapter. The development of a communication plan will assist the PHA to create awareness and obtain buy-in from the private sector with regards to planned developments. Human settlement demand database and other forms of pieces of information required need to be updated regularly and communicated to all various stakeholders as means to obtain buy-in. The PHA is also responsible for effective co-ordinated and regulated building and development within the municipal area.

PHA is currently managing **508 units** located in the City of Polokwane, **Ladanna** with an estimated **1,524** residents and **201** Community Residential Units. Seshego **CRU** with an estimated 567 residents. The projects are known as the **Ga-rena Hosing Village and Seshego CRU** and both projects and consists of a mixture of one-, two- and three-bedroom units and shops, shops, Live and work units for the CRU project. Both are within a radius of 5km from the CBD provides housing with easy access to transport and social amenities / places of interest.

#### **3.31.1 Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna**

##### **Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna**





Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

### 3.31.2 Seshego CRU

#### Seshego CRU

- Seshego CRU with an estimated **567** residents.
- **Project type:** Conversion of Seshego hostel into Community Residential Units.
- **Project history:** Approved 2008/2009, for occupation by existing hostel dwellers.

#### Seshego CRU



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

### 3.32 New Project under Development

#### 3.32.1 Ga-Rena Phase 2

Ga-Rena Phase 2 to deliver **494** social housing units. Construction has started. This development project includes the **Design and Construction** of 494 Social Housing units at Annadale Ext 2 Township, which is situated within the City (Ladanna Area).

Annadale Extension 2 is located on the Corner of Railway and Market streets and consists of Erf 513, 514, 515 and 516. Erven 514 and 515 have been consolidated to enable the project development. Construction of 494 High Density (Residential 3) Units / Flats comprising of:

No. of units	Size of the units	Description
77	21m <sup>2</sup>	Bachelor Flats
155	31m <sup>2</sup>	One Bedroom Flats
183	51m <sup>2</sup>	Two Bedroom Flats
77	58m <sup>2</sup>	Two Bedroom Flats

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:2021

### 3.32.2 Ga-Rena Phase 2 Completed at Ladanna

#### Ga-Rena Phase 2

## GA-RENA PHASE 2







© Polokwane Housing Association



© Polokwane Housing Association

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

### 3.33 PHA Projects and Year of Implementation

**Table A: Project Types**

No	Project Types	Units	Year of Implementation
1.	Social Housing	494	2019-2021
2.	GAP Market Housing	754	2023/2025
3.	Social Housing	406	2023/2025
4.	Student Beds	456	2023/2025
5.	Student beds	5660	2024/2028

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

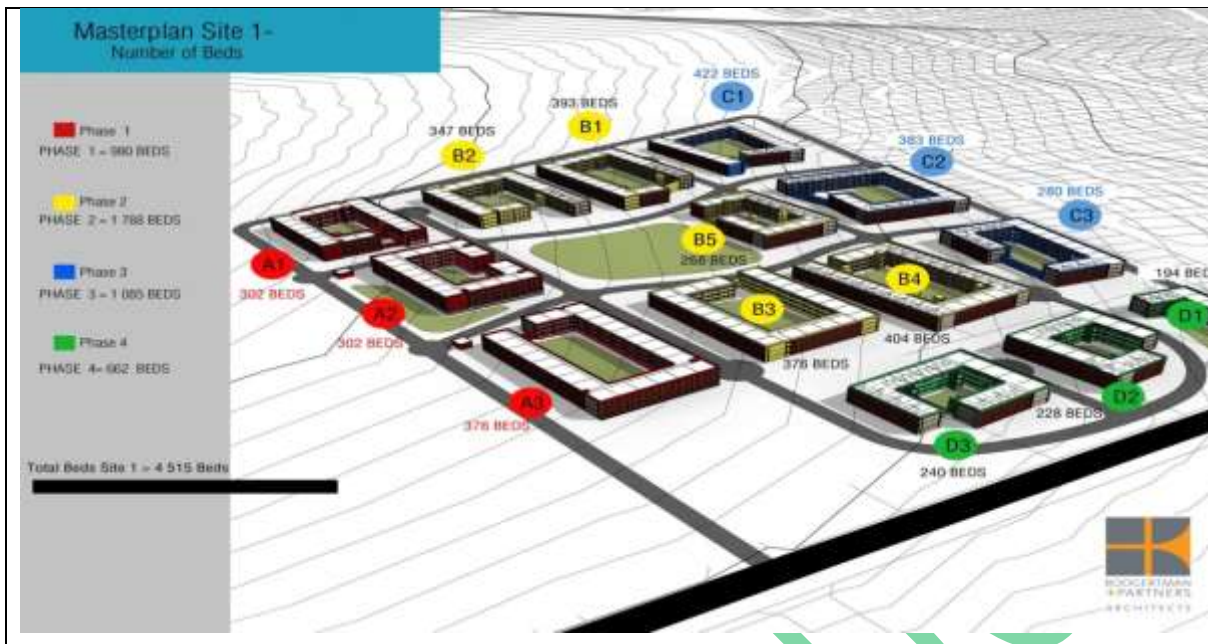
**Table B: Projects Names**

No	Project Name	Units	Year of Implementation
A.	Ga-Rena Phase 2 Gov. Employee	494	2019-2021
B.	Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing	208	2023- 2025
C.	Polokwane Ext 107 GAP Market	754	2023-2025
D.	Bendor Ext 100 Gov. Employee	198	2023-2025
E.	Polokwane Ext 79 Student beds	500	2024- 2026
F.	Polokwane Ext 106 Students beds	5116	2025-2028

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

### 3.34 Designs of upcoming PHA key Projects

#### 3.34.1 Phase 1-4 Student Accommodation Designs



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

### 3.34.2 Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing Designs



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:



### **3.35 Land parcels earmarked for Development of New Projects**

Planned Development Start date from 2023-2025, The land parcels earmarked for development are the following: i.e.

- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 106 to deliver 546 student bed housing units. Planned construction**
- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 107 to deliver 754 GAP market rental housing units. Planned construction**
- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 76 to deliver 240 social housing units. Planned construction**
- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 79 to deliver 100 social housing units.**
- ✓ **Construction Total number of housing units = 1 952 housing units**

All these land parcels are situated within the development zone of Polokwane Municipality with vibrant development activities around them. Townships have been established on these land parcels and there are no bulk requirements.

### **3.36 Proposed Development Options**

The following will be the development options that PHA will consider:

#### **(a) Delivering housing on a development lease approach**

- The developer takes the risks of developing and managing housing units over an agreed period of time. At the end of the period the facility is transferred to PHA

#### **(b) Delivering housing as a developer**

- PHA raises the funding required and provide management services like the Ga- Rena model.

#### **(c) Acquiring CRU housing stock to provide property management services.**

- PHA acquires these projects from CoGHSTA in an effort to grow its property portfolio.

#### **(d) Providing student accommodation.**

- The entity has Investigated the possibility of providing student accommodation. Each stream makes clear the following:
  - ❖ Type of development,
  - ❖ unit numbers,

- ❖ facilities/amenities etc.
- ❖ Status of land – town planning processes
- ❖ Funding options and envisaged budget
- ❖ Target market

(e) **Project development agreement** – i.e.,

PHA as developer vs developmental lease and all that which goes with either option.

- The **development lease** seems to be the preferred model to follow as PHA will not have any risk at all. At the end of the lease, the properties will be transferred to PHA. This approach is similar to the one the municipality has with developers on the **Motor City development**.
- The **developer approach model** will expose PHA to all kinds of risks that PHA is not ready to deal with.

PHA manages social housing stock in close cooperation with the residents through tenant committees and tenant meetings. It wants to provide **quality accommodation** in affordable ways, also working against slum conditions and promoting civic pride. PHA management product aims at being participatory and integrative of physical, social and human aspects.

**a. Housing development**

Polokwane Housing Association continues to identify possibilities for new housing development in the inner City, through Greenfield development, refurbishment or conversion of buildings and offices for residential uses. It wants to develop housing in response to unnecessary dislocation of people that are sometimes caused by so-called urban renewal processes.

**b. Housing Information**

A housing information desk provides information and advice on how to access various affordable housing options and housing subsidies, as well as information on housing policy, rights and responsibilities.

**C, community Empowerment**

PHA wants to support its tenant community through linkages to other social support services and empowerment programmes. It also wants to ensure that low-income housing, social and non-social housing in the inner city is on the agenda of relevant

role players—local and provincial government, financial institutional, etc.—through an active advocacy programme. In conjunction with its partners, it advocates inner city residential opportunities for those previously excluded and without access. This is done through local community forums, participation in discussions on urban renewal, and so forth.

### **3.37 PHA Key Success over the past 5 years**

- Maintain unqualified audit opinion for 8 years
- Maintain level 2 accreditation for 8 years
- Settling the NHFC Loan
- Successfully implementing 494 social housing units in Annadale Ext 2 which is 90% complete

## **CHAPTER Four – Economic Analysis**

### **4. INTRODUCTION**

The following statistical overview report aims to quantify the economic, demographic and socio-economic environment of Polokwane Local Municipality in context of its neighbouring regions, the district, the province and South Africa. A better understanding of the demographic, economic and socio-economic environment could inform stakeholders to implement and monitor plans and policies that will allow for a healthy, growing and inclusive economy and society.

Understanding the changes in the composition of the population with respect to population group, age and gender is vital in the face of growing pressure on food, energy, water, jobs and social support on the country's citizens. An understanding of how the total fertility rates, age-specific fertility rates, sex ratios at birth, life expectancies and international migration affect the respective population groups, ages and genders is essential for effective planning on a spatial level. The first section of the Statistical Overview Report will aim to disentangle the changes in the Polokwane Local Municipality demographics in context of other locals of the region, the districts, the Province and South Africa.

The second section will provide insights into the economic environment of Polokwane Local Municipality in relation to the other local municipality in the region, the district, the province and South Africa's performance. The changing economic environment subsequently has an effect on the ability of the economy to create jobs. This section will therefore also include

analysis on the employment and subsequent income dynamics of Polokwane Local Municipality.

The third component of the Statistical Overview will investigate issues pertaining to the socio-economic environment of residents in Polokwane Local Municipality. Analysis will include a review of the Human Development Index (HDI), Gini, poverty, education, population density, crime, bulk infrastructure, international trade and tourism indicators relative to that of the other locals of the region, the districts, the Province and South Africa.

#### 4.1. DEMOGRAPHY

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Polokwane Local Municipality and all its neighbouring regions, Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa as a whole.

##### 4.1.1 Total Population

Population statistics is important when analysing an economy, as the population growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income.

TABLE 1. TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021[NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

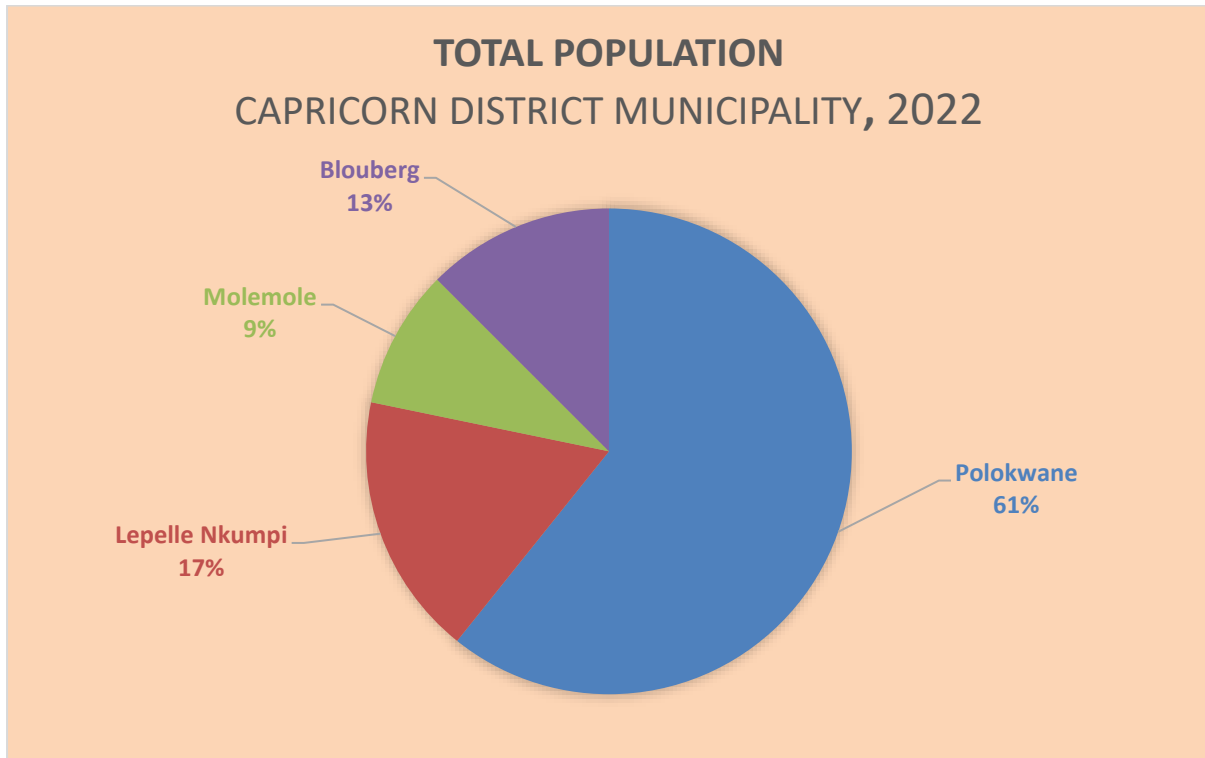
Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2011	739,370	1,276,875	5,483,449	52,002,949	57.9%	13.5%	1.42%
2012	751,184	1,286,941	5,525,419	52,828,832	58.4%	13.6%	1.42%
2013	763,411	1,298,641	5,574,923	53,653,787	58.8%	13.7%	1.42%
2014	776,023	1,311,783	5,631,036	54,483,679	59.2%	13.8%	1.42%
2015	789,010	1,326,204	5,693,046	55,322,524	59.5%	13.9%	1.43%
2016	801,573	1,340,635	5,755,650	56,163,092	59.8%	13.9%	1.43%
2017	814,036	1,355,633	5,820,850	57,034,929	60.0%	14.0%	1.43%
2018	826,161	1,370,927	5,886,950	57,910,332	60.3%	14.0%	1.43%
2019	838,161	1,386,463	5,953,566	58,780,511	60.5%	14.1%	1.43%
2020	849,937	1,402,137	6,020,136	59,646,053	60.6%	14.1%	1.42%
2021	859,671	1,415,045	6,075,222	60,324,819	60.8%	14.2%	1.43%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>							
<b>2011-2021</b>	<b>1.52%</b>	<b>1.03%</b>	<b>1.03%</b>	<b>1.50%</b>			

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

With 859 649 people, the Polokwane Local Municipality housed 1.43% of South Africa's total population in 2021. Between 2011 and 2021 the population growth averaged 1.52% per

annum which is slightly higher than the growth rate of South Africa as a whole (1.50%). Compared to Capricorn's average annual growth rate (1.03%), the growth rate in Polokwane's population at 1.52% was close to double than that of the district municipality.

**CHART 1. TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2021  
[PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

When compared to other regions, the Polokwane Local Municipality accounts for a total population of 859 671, or 60.75% of the total population in the Capricorn District Municipality, which is the most populous region in the Capricorn District Municipality for 2021. The ranking in terms of the size of Polokwane compared to the other regions remained the same between 2011 and 2021. In terms of its share the Polokwane Local Municipality was significantly larger in 2021 (60.75%) compared to what it was in 2011 (57.90%). When looking at the average annual growth rate, it is noted that Polokwane ranked highest (relative to its peers in terms of growth) with an average annual growth rate of 1.52% between 2011 and 2021.

### 2.1.1 Population projections

Based on the present age-gender structure and the present fertility, mortality and migration rates, Polokwane's population is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 1.52% from 859 671 in 2021 to 922 151 in 2026.

TABLE 2. **POPULATION PROJECTIONS - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2021-2026 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2021	859,671	1,415,045	6,075,222	60,324,819	60.8%	14.2%	1.43%
2022	874,112	1,426,992	6,127,027	61,208,477	61.3%	14.3%	1.43%
2023	886,275	1,442,291	6,193,080	62,055,961	61.4%	14.3%	1.43%
2024	898,307	1,457,236	6,257,498	62,898,069	61.6%	14.4%	1.43%
2025	910,247	1,471,885	6,320,538	63,735,866	61.8%	14.4%	1.43%
2026	922,151	1,486,318	6,382,540	64,569,690	62.0%	14.4%	1.43%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>							
<b>2021-2026</b>	<b>1.42%</b>	<b>1.01%</b>	<b>1.01%</b>	<b>1.39%</b>			

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

The population projection of Polokwane Local Municipality shows an estimated average annual growth rate of 1.42% between 2021 and 2026. The average annual growth rate in the population over the projection period for Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa is 1.01%, 1.01% and 1.39% respectively and is lower than the average annual growth in the Polokwane Local Municipality.

#### 4.1.2 Population by population group, Gender and Age

Total population can be categorized according to the population group, as well as the sub-categories of age and gender. The population groups include African, White, Coloured and Asian, where the Asian group includes all people originating from Asia, India and China. The age subcategory divides the population into 5-year cohorts, e.g., 0-4, 5-9, 10-13, etc.

TABLE 3. **POPULATION BY GENDER - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [NUMBER].**

Municipality Name	Male	Female	Total
Polokwane	417,940	441,730	859,671
Blouberg	79,900	97,080	176,980
Molemole	59,930	70,953	130,883
Lepele-Nkumpi	113,210	134,301	247,511
<b>Capricorn</b>	<b>670,981</b>	<b>744,064</b>	<b>1,415,045</b>

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

Polokwane Local Municipality's male/female split in population was 94.6 males per 100 females in 2021. The Polokwane Local Municipality appears to be a fairly stable population



with the share of female population (51.38%) being very similar to the national average of (51.10%). In total there were 441 730 (51.38%) females and 417 940 (48.62%) males. This is different from the Capricorn District Municipality as a whole where the female population counted 744 064 which constitutes 52.58% of the total population of 1.41 million.

**TABLE 4. POPULATION BY POPULATION GROUP, GENDER AND AGE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [NUMBER].**

Age	African		White		Coloured		Asian	
	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female
00-04	40,792	39,832	1,122	1,048	322	328	215	236
05-09	39,564	39,768	1,216	1,152	388	414	209	142
10-14	40,714	41,368	1,404	1,339	385	305	217	152
15-19	36,668	37,584	1,097	1,031	283	272	147	146
20-24	41,213	40,030	1,162	1,085	320	319	165	143
25-29	47,810	43,661	1,065	1,124	392	398	183	170
30-34	45,549	39,577	1,188	1,116	345	369	261	267
35-39	31,628	31,345	1,245	1,346	267	346	320	227
40-44	19,790	21,537	1,381	1,250	241	285	327	211
45-49	13,484	15,506	1,067	1,065	164	222	287	173
50-54	9,939	13,929	950	924	151	214	196	132
55-59	8,701	14,396	973	913	143	198	155	134
60-64	6,587	13,431	861	904	62	136	110	98
65-69	5,120	10,432	607	716	67	117	63	64
70-74	3,992	7,961	503	722	29	58	51	48
75+	3,400	8,195	613	961	35	68	33	90
Total	394,950	418,551	16,455	16,697	3,594	4,050	2,940	2,433

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2021, the Polokwane Local Municipality's population consisted of 94.63% African (813 501), 3.86% White (33 152), 0.89% Coloured (7 644) and 0.63% Asian (5 373) people.

The largest share of population is within the young working age (25-44 years) age category with a total number of 295 221 or 34.34% of the total population. The age category with the second largest number of people is the babies and kids (0-14 years) age category with a total share of (252 634) 29.39%, followed by the teenagers and youth (15-24 years) age category with 161 666 people. The age category with the least number of people is the retired / old age (65 years and older) age category with only 43946 people.

#### 4.1.3 Number of Households by Population Group

If the number of households is growing at a faster rate than that of the population it means that the average household size is decreasing, and vice versa. In 2021, the Polokwane Local Municipality comprised of 245 963 households. This equates to an average annual growth rate of 1.86% in the number of households from 2011 to 2021. With an average annual growth rate of 1.52% in the total population, the average household size in the Polokwane Local Municipality is by implication decreasing.

**TABLE 5. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]**

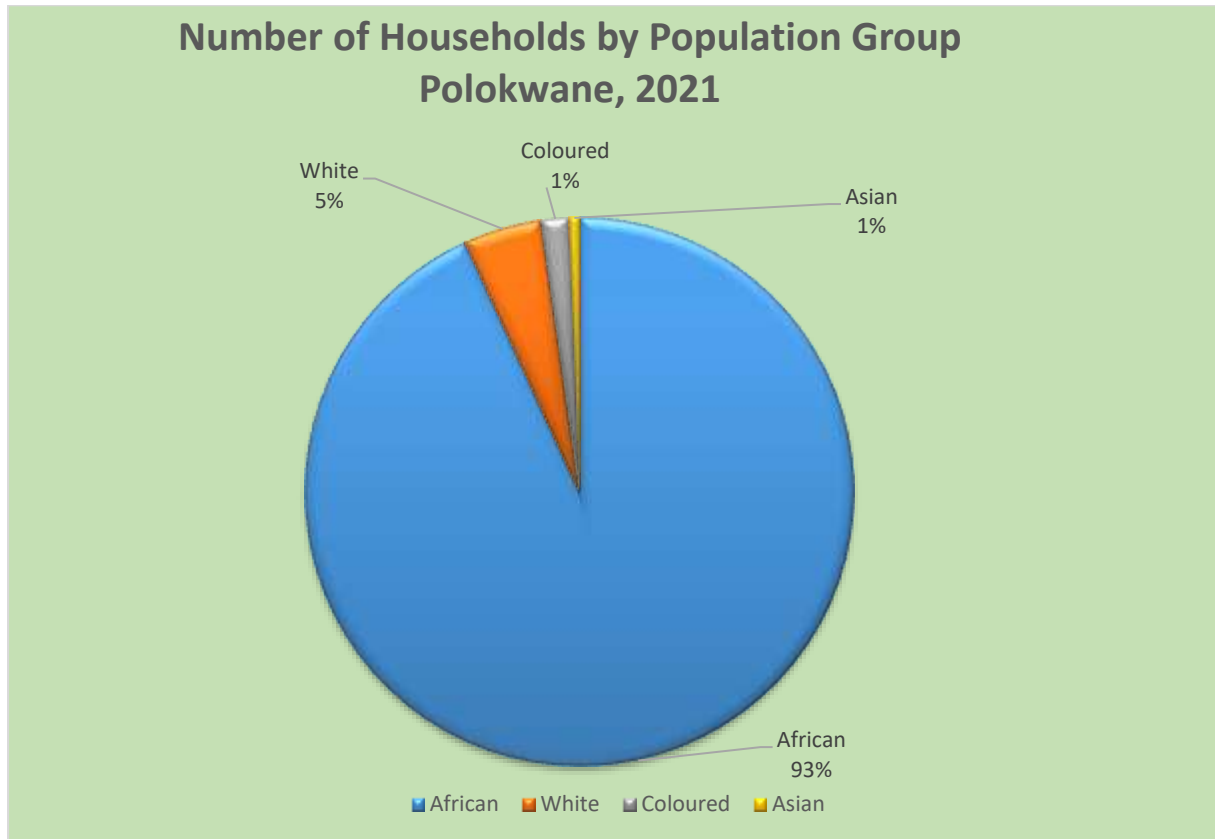
Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2011	204,605	338,119	1,402,888	14,328,269	60.51%	14.58%	1.43%
2012	209,651	343,818	1,425,535	14,645,492	60.98%	14.71%	1.43%
2013	214,475	349,176	1,447,282	14,926,188	61.42%	14.82%	1.44%
2014	219,534	355,003	1,471,581	15,196,029	61.84%	14.92%	1.44%
2015	228,463	367,088	1,522,587	15,598,064	62.24%	15.00%	1.46%
2016	235,365	376,134	1,561,493	15,970,063	62.57%	15.07%	1.47%
2017	240,216	381,998	1,586,960	16,256,581	62.88%	15.14%	1.48%
2018	242,775	384,257	1,597,185	16,410,325	63.18%	15.20%	1.48%
2019	242,806	382,552	1,590,206	16,434,113	63.47%	15.27%	1.48%
2020	242,018	379,621	1,577,058	16,392,242	63.75%	15.35%	1.48%
2021	245,963	384,389	1,596,890	16,639,102	63.99%	15.40%	1.48%
<b>Average Annual growth</b>							
2011-2021	1.86%	1.29%	1.30%	1.51%			

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Relative to the district municipality, the Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher average annual growth rate of 1.86% from 2011 to 2021. In contrast, the province had an average annual growth rate of 1.30% from 2011. South Africa as a whole had a total of 16.6 million households, with a growth rate of 1.51%, thus growing at a lower rate than the Polokwane.

The composition of the households by population group consists of 93.16% which is ascribed to the African population group with the largest number of households by population group. The White population group had a total composition of 4.62% (ranking second). The Coloured population group had a total composition of 1.60% of the total households. The smallest population group by households is the Asian population group with only 0.62% in 2021.

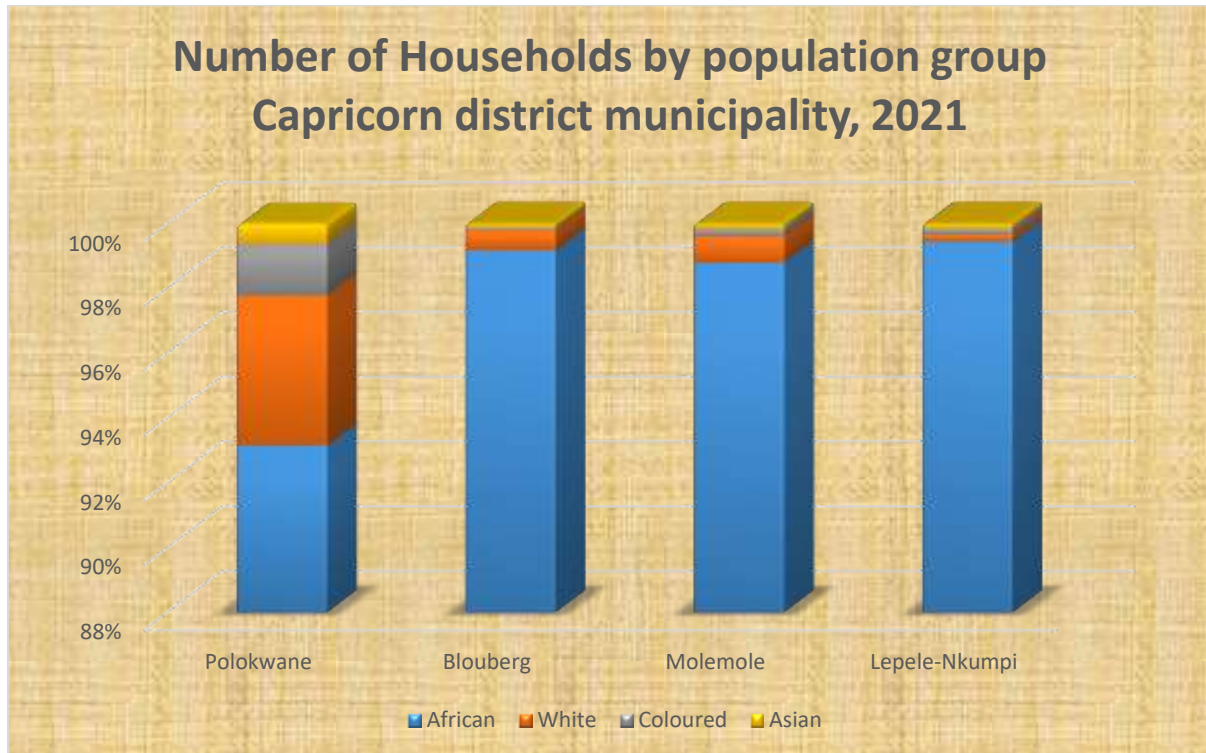
**CHART 2. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The growth in the number of African headed households was on average 1.79% per annum between 2011 and 2021, which translates in the number of households increasing by 41358 in the period. Although the Coloured population group is not the biggest in size, it was however the fastest growing population group between 2011 and 2021 at 11%. The average annual growth rate in the number of households for all the other population groups has increased with 1.86%.

**TABLE 6. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

#### 4.1.4 HIV+ and AIDS estimates

HIV and AIDS can have a substantial impact on the growth of a particular population. However, there are many factors affecting the impact of the HIV virus on population progression: adult HIV prevalence rates; the speed at which the virus progresses; age distribution of the virus; the mother-to-child transmission; child treatment; adult treatment; and the percentage by which the virus decreases total fertility. ARV treatment can also prolong the lifespan of people that are HIV+. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV live for approximately 10 years before reaching the final stage of the disease (called AIDS). When patients reach this stage, recovery is highly unlikely.

HIV+ and AIDS estimates are defined as follows:

The HIV+ estimates are calculated by using the prevalence rates from the HIV/AIDS model built by the Actuarial Society of Southern Africa (ASSA-2008). These rates are used as base rates on a provincial level. IHS slightly adjusted the provincial ASSA-2010 data to reflect the national HIV Prevalence rate more accurately per population group as used in the national demographic models. The ASSA model in turn uses the prevalence rates from various primary

data sets, in particular the HIV/AIDS surveys conducted by the Department of Health and the Antenatal clinic surveys. Their rates are further adjusted for over-reporting and then smoothed.

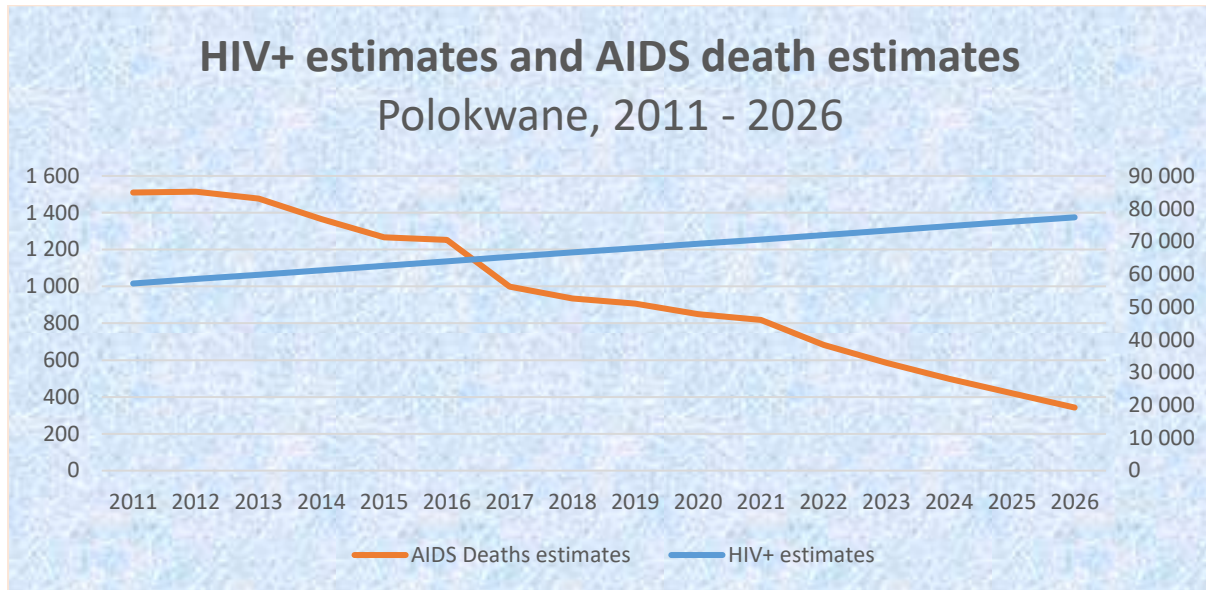
**TABLE 7. NUMBER OF HIV+ PEOPLE - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011 -2021 [NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2011	57,139	94,046	409,217	6,475,368	60.76%	13.96%	0.88%
2012	58,500	95,650	415,518	6,630,030	61.16%	14.08%	0.88%
2013	59,825	97,265	421,944	6,769,648	61.51%	14.18%	0.88%
2014	61,184	98,997	428,948	6,908,129	61.80%	14.26%	0.89%
2015	62,586	100,859	436,555	7,053,897	62.05%	14.34%	0.89%
2016	63,878	102,608	443,662	7,195,964	62.25%	14.40%	0.89%
2017	65,245	104,541	451,526	7,360,690	62.41%	14.45%	0.89%
2018	66,629	106,556	459,640	7,534,474	62.53%	14.50%	0.88%
2019	67,940	108,507	467,377	7,712,743	62.61%	14.54%	0.88%
2020	69,270	110,535	475,323	7,899,820	62.67%	14.57%	0.88%
2021	70,581	112,582	483,413	8,085,077	62.69%	14.60%	0.87%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>							
2011-2021	<b>2.14%</b>	<b>1.82%</b>	<b>1.68%</b>	<b>2.24%</b>			

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2021, 70581 people in the Polokwane Local Municipality were infected with HIV. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 2.14% since 2011, and in 2021 represented 8.21% of the local municipality's total population. The Capricorn District Municipality had an average annual growth rate of 1.82% from 2011 to 2021 in the number of people infected with HIV, which is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality. The number of infections in the Limpopo Province increased from 409217 in 2011 to 483413 in 2021. When looking at the South Africa as a whole it can be seen that the number of people that are infected increased from 2011 to 2021 with an average annual growth rate of 2.24%.

**CHART 3. AIDS PROFILE AND FORECAST - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2026 [NUMBERS]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Presenting the number of HIV+ people against the number of people living with AIDS, the people with AIDS added up to 1511 in 2011 and 818 for 2021. This number denotes a decrease from 2011 to 2021 with a high average annual rate of 5.95% (or -693 people). For the year 2021, they represented 0.10% of the total population of the entire local municipality.



### 3. Economy

The economic state of Polokwane Local Municipality is put in perspective by comparing it on a spatial level with its neighbouring locals, Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa.

The Polokwane Local Municipality does not function in isolation from Capricorn, Limpopo Province, South Africa and the world and now, more than ever, it is crucial to have reliable information on its economy for effective planning. Information is needed that will empower the municipality to plan and implement policies that will encourage the social development and economic growth of the people and industries in the municipality respectively.

#### 4.2 Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R)

The Gross Domestic Product (GDP), an important indicator of economic performance, is used to compare economies and economic states.

GDP-R can be measured using either current or constant prices, where the current prices measure the economy in actual Rand, and constant prices measures the economy by removing the effect of inflation, and therefore captures the real growth in volumes, as if prices were fixed in a given base year.

**TABLE 8. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of district	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2011	54,3	71,4	229,2	3,327,0	76.08%	23.72%	1.63%
2012	59,4	77,8	245,4	3,566,3	76.36%	24.20%	1.67%
2013	64,9	84,7	265,5	3,868,6	76.63%	24.47%	1.68%
2014	69,9	91,1	281,6	4,133,8	76.81%	24.85%	1.69%
2015	75,7	98,4	298,7	4,420,7	77.01%	25.37%	1.71%
2016	83,3	107,9	324,4	4,759,5	77.13%	25.67%	1.75%
2017	89,4	115,9	348,5	5,078,1	77.19%	25.68%	1.76%
2018	95,5	123,7	372,7	5,348,6	77.22%	25.64%	1.79%
2019	99,1	128,4	390,1	5,613,6	77.22%	25.42%	1.77%
2020	99,7	129,2	397,0	5,556,9	77.19%	25.12%	1.79%
2021	115,1	149,3	471,5	6,225,4	77.10%	24.41%	1.85%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

With a GDP of R 115.1 billion in 2021 (up from R 54.3 billion in 2011); the Polokwane Local Municipality contributed 77.10% to the Capricorn District Municipality GDP of R 149.3 billion

in 2021 increasing in the share of the Capricorn from 76.1% in 2011. The Polokwane Local Municipality contributes 24.41% to the GDP of Limpopo Province and 1.85% of the GDP of South Africa which had a total GDP of R 6.2 trillion in 2020 (as measured in nominal or current prices). It's contribution to the national economy stayed similar in importance from 2011 when it contributed 1.63% to South Africa, but it is lower than the peak of 1.85% in 2021.

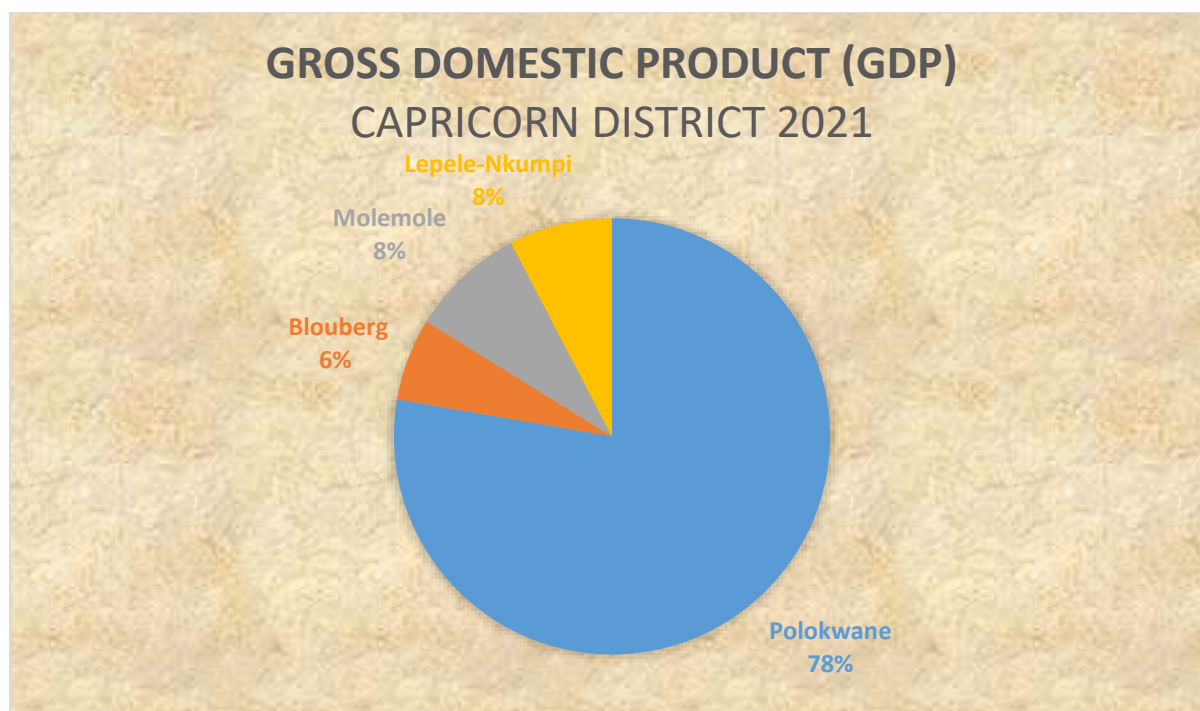
**TABLE 9. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2011	7.5%	6.4%	2.5%	3.2%
2012	3.0%	2.6%	1.3%	2.4%
2013	3.3%	2.9%	2.5%	2.5%
2014	2.0%	1.8%	1.0%	1.4%
2015	2.2%	2.0%	1.9%	1.3%
2016	3.1%	2.8%	0.1%	0.7%
2017	0.9%	0.9%	1.4%	1.2%
2018	1.5%	1.4%	1.2%	1.5%
2019	0.0%	0.0%	0.1%	0.3%
2020	-5.9%	-5.9%	-7.2%	-6.3%
2021	7.1%	6.9%	7.0%	4.9%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>				
2011-2021	2.3%	2.0%	1.1%	1.2%

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2021, the Polokwane Local Municipality achieved an annual growth rate of 7.1% which is a significant increase in GDP growth than the Limpopo Province's 7.0%, but is higher to that of South Africa, where the 2021 GDP growth rate was 4.9%. Contrary to the short-term growth rate of 2020, the longer-term average growth rate for Polokwane (2.3%) is significantly higher than that of South Africa (1.2%). The economic growth in Polokwane peaked in 2011 at 7.5%.

**CHART 4. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The Polokwane Local Municipality had a total GDP of R 81.9 billion and in terms of total contribution towards Capricorn District Municipality the Polokwane Local Municipality ranked highest relative to all the regional economies to total Capricorn District Municipality GDP. This ranking in terms of size compared to other regions of Polokwane remained the same since 2011. In terms of its share, it was in 2021 (77.72%) significantly higher compared to what it was in 2011 (76%). For the period 2011 to 2021, the average annual growth rate of 1.50% of Polokwane was the highest relative to its peers in terms of growth in constant 2015 prices.

**TABLE 10. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - REGIONS WITHIN CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2010 TO 2020, SHARE AND GROWTH**

Municipality Name	2021 (Current Prices)	Share of District Municipality	2015 (Constant Prices)	2021 (Constant Prices)	Average Annual growth
Polokwane	115,1	77,10%	69,3	81,9	2,25%
Blouberg	9,1	6,10%	5,7	6,4	1,18%
Molemole	13,0	8,73%	8,3	8,9	1,01%
Lepele-Nkumpi	12,1	8,07%	7,3	8,0	1,17%

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

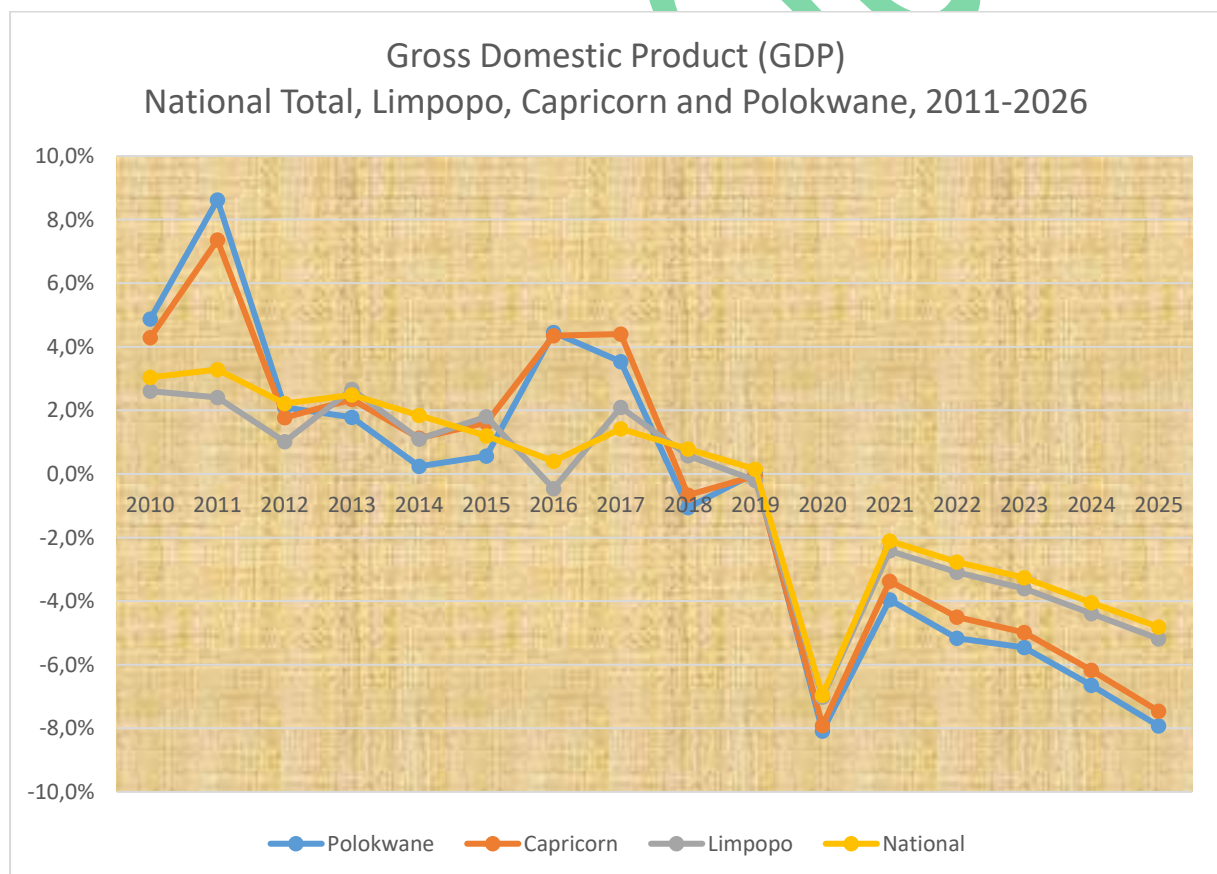
Polokwane had the highest average annual economic growth, averaging 2.25% between 2011 and 2021, when compared to the rest of the regions within Capricorn District Municipality. The

Molemole Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of 1.01%. Blouberg Local Municipality had the second highest average annual growth rate of 1.18% between 2011 and 2021.

### 3.1.1 Economic Growth Forecast

It is expected that Polokwane Local Municipality will grow at an average annual rate of 0.7% from 2021 to 2026. The average annual growth rate in the GDP of Capricorn District Municipality and Limpopo Province is expected to be 0.6% and 0.1% respectively. South Africa is forecasted to grow at an average annual growth rate of 0.1%, which is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.

**TABLE 11. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2026 [AVERAGE ANNUAL GROWTH RATE, CONSTANT 2011 PRICES]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2026, Polokwane's forecasted GDP will be an estimated R 82.5 billion (constant 2015 prices) or 77.65% of the total GDP of Capricorn District Municipality. The ranking in terms of size of the Polokwane Local Municipality will remain the same between 2021 and 2026, with

a contribution to the Capricorn District Municipality GDP of 77.7% in 2026 compared to the 77.7% in 2021. At 1.76% average annual GDP growth rate between 2021 and 2026, Polokwane ranked the highest compared to the other regional economies.

**TABLE 12. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - REGIONS WITHIN CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2011 TO 2026, SHARE AND GROWTH**

Municipality Name	2026 (Current Prices)	Share of District Municipality	2011 (Constant Prices)	2026 (Constant Prices)	Average Annual Growth
Polokwane	140,1	77,44%	69,3	85,7	1,4%
Blouberg	10,9	6,6%	5,7	6,4	0,6%
Molemole	15,5	8.6%	8,3	9,3	0,3%
Lepelle-Nkumpi	14,4	8.0%	7,3	8.4	0.5%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

### 4.3 Gross Value Added by Region (GVA-R)

The Polokwane Local Municipality's economy is made up of various industries. The GVA-R variable provides a sector breakdown, where each sector is measured in terms of its *value added* produced in the local economy.

The summary table below puts the Gross Value Added (GVA) of all the regions in perspective to that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.

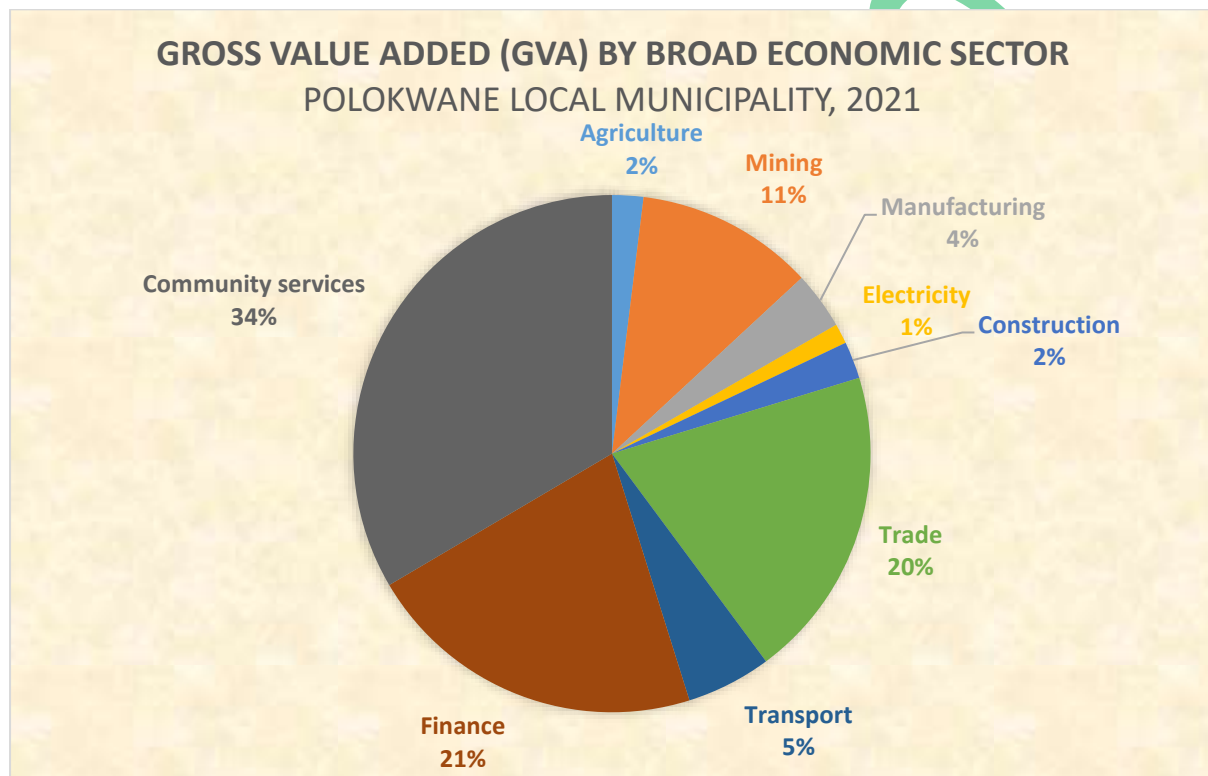
**TABLE 13. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]**

SECTOR	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of district	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
1 Agriculture	2,0	2,9	12,9	152,8	67.57%	15.47%	1.32%
2 Mining	11,4	16,9	132,3	474,9	67.50%	8.67%	2.41%
3 Manufacturing	3,6	4,5	10,4	729,8	81.70%	35.53%	0.51%
4 Electricity	1,2	1,8	14,6	171,6	70.26%	8.78%	0.75%
5 Construction	2,3	3,0	7,7	141,0	78.51%	30.55%	1.69%
6 Trade	20,1	24,9	56,4	751,3	80.58%	35.64%	2.68%
7 Transport	5,4	6,6	15,1	397,7	81.98%	36.13%	1.37%
8 Finance	21,9	27,4	71,4	1,320,4	79.94%	30.73%	1.66%
9Community services	34,4	44,5	103,5	1,432,8	77.37%	33.26%	2.40%
<b>Total Industries</b>	<b>102.80</b>	<b>132.90</b>	<b>424.70</b>	<b>5,572.60</b>	<b>77.35%</b>	<b>24.21%</b>	<b>1.84%</b>

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2021, the community services sector is the largest contributor within Polokwane Local Municipality accounting for R 34.4 billion of the total GVA in the local municipality's economy. The sector that contributes the second most to the GVA of the Polokwane Local Municipality is the finance sector with R21.9 billion, followed by the trade sector with R20.1 billion. The sector that contributes the least to the economy of Polokwane Local Municipality is the electricity sector with a contribution of R 1.2 billion of the total GVA.

**CHART 5. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]**

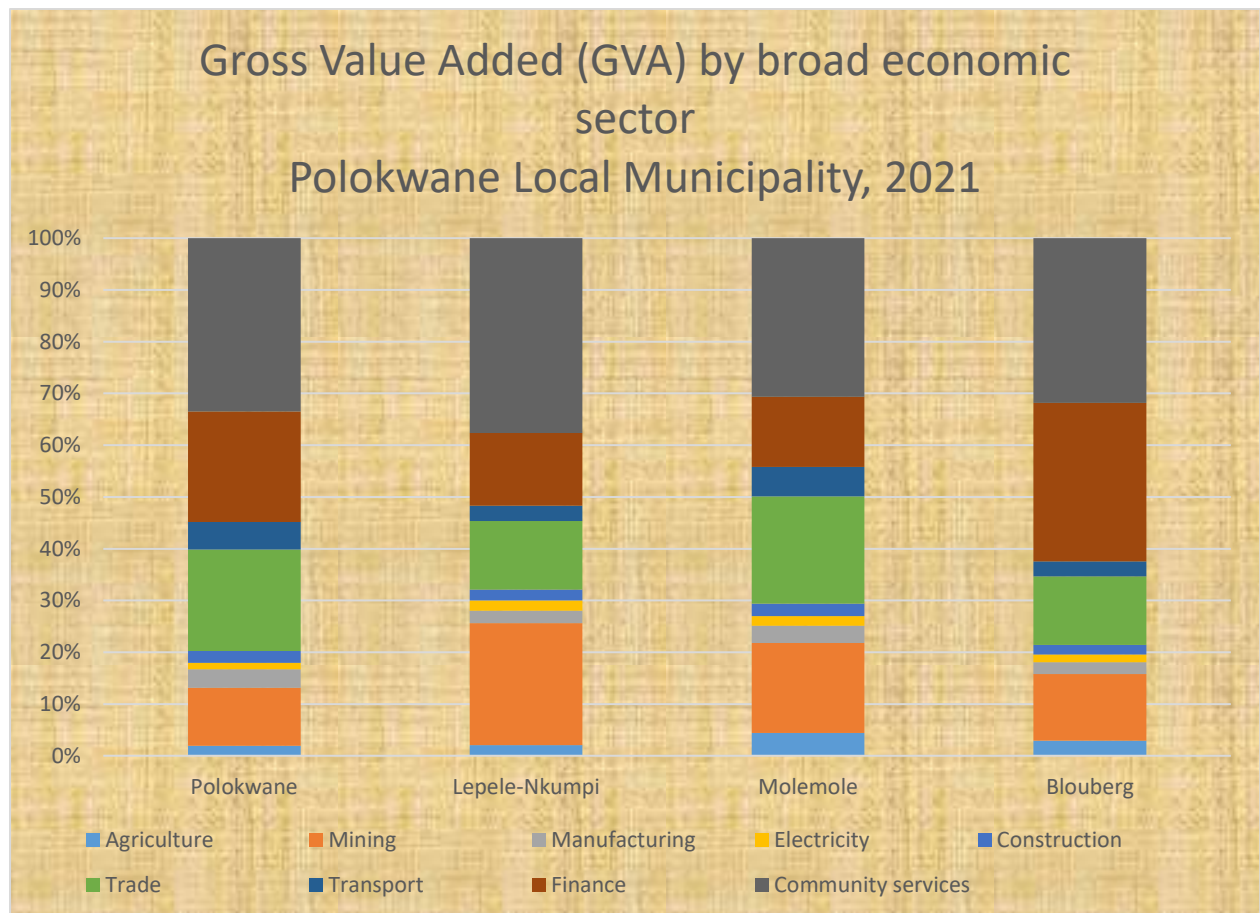


**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The community sector, which includes the government services, is generally a large contributor towards GVA. When looking at all the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, it is clear that Polokwane contributes the most community services towards its own GVA, with 77.37%, relative to the other regions within Capricorn District Municipality. The Polokwane municipality contributed R 102.8 billion or 77.35% to the GVA of Capricorn District Municipality. The Polokwane economy also contributes the most out of the overall GVA of Capricorn District Municipality of R132.9 billion.



**CHART 6. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2021 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

### 3.2.1 Historical Economic Growth

For the period 2011 to 2021, the GVA in the agriculture sector had the highest average annual growth rate in Polokwane at 6.75%. The industry with the second highest average annual growth rate is the mining sector averaging at 6.73% per year. The construction sector had an average annual growth rate of -0.72%, while the electricity sector had the lowest average annual growth of -2.77%. Overall, a positive growth existed for all the industries in 2021 with an annual growth rate of 2.33% since 2011.

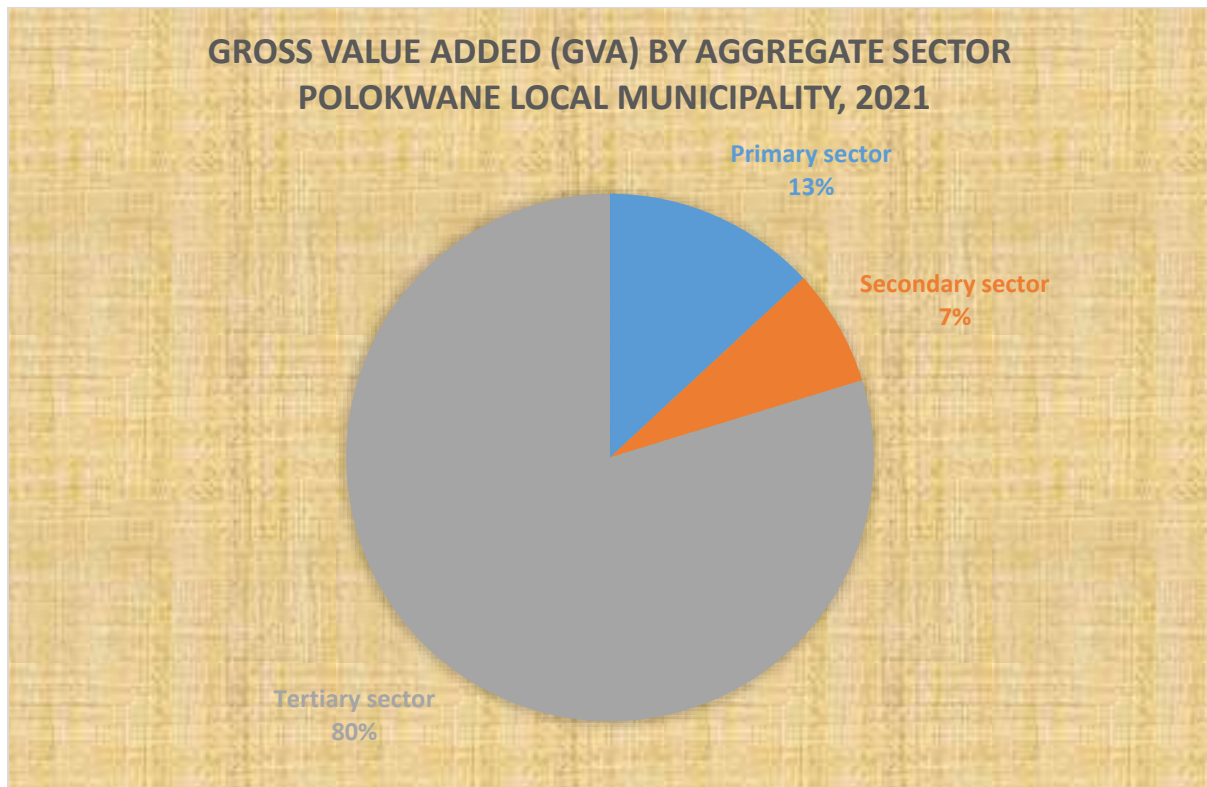
**TABLE 14. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011, 2016 AND 2021[R BILLIONS, 2015 CONSTANT PRICES]**

Sector	2011	2016	2021	Average Annual Growth
Agriculture	1.0	1.20	1.8	6.75%
Mining	3.1	3.90	5.5	6.73%
Manufacturing	2.6	2.90	2.7	1.16%
Electricity	1.1	0.80	0.7	-2.77%
Construction	2.9	3.30	2.4	-0.72%
Trade	12.9	14.50	13.5	1.08%
Transport	3.8	4.60	4.3	1.95%
Finance	12.8	14.00	15.9	2.30%
Community Services	21.3	25.30	26.6	2.98%
<b>Total Industries</b>	<b>61.4</b>	<b>70.50</b>	<b>73.4</b>	<b>2.33%</b>

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The tertiary sector contributes the most to the Gross Value Added within the Polokwane Local Municipality at 79.7%. This is significantly higher than the national economy (70.0%). The secondary sector contributed a total of 7.2% (ranking second), while the primary sector contributed the least at 13.1%.

**CHART 7. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY AGGREGATE ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



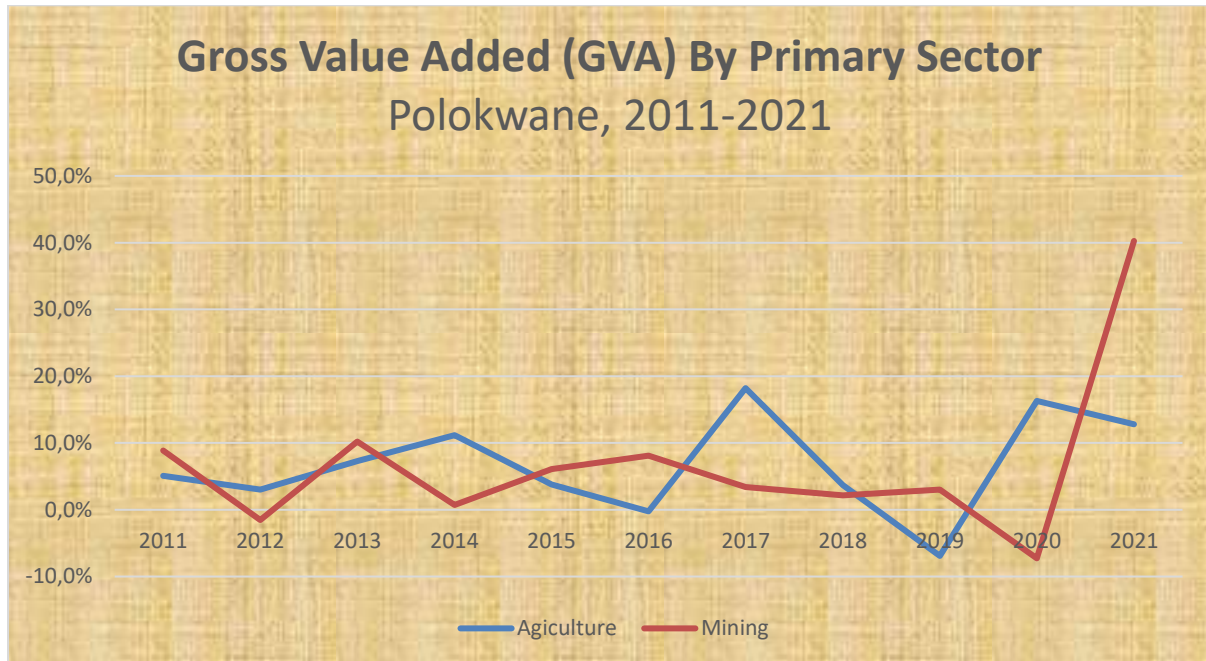
Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

The following is a breakdown of the Gross Value Added (GVA) by aggregated sector:

### **3.2.1.1 Primary Sector**

The primary sector consists of two broad economic sectors namely the mining and the agricultural sector. The following chart represents the average growth rate in the GVA for both of these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2011 to 2021.

**CHART 8. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY PRIMARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2011-2021 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE] 2015 CONSTANT PRICES**



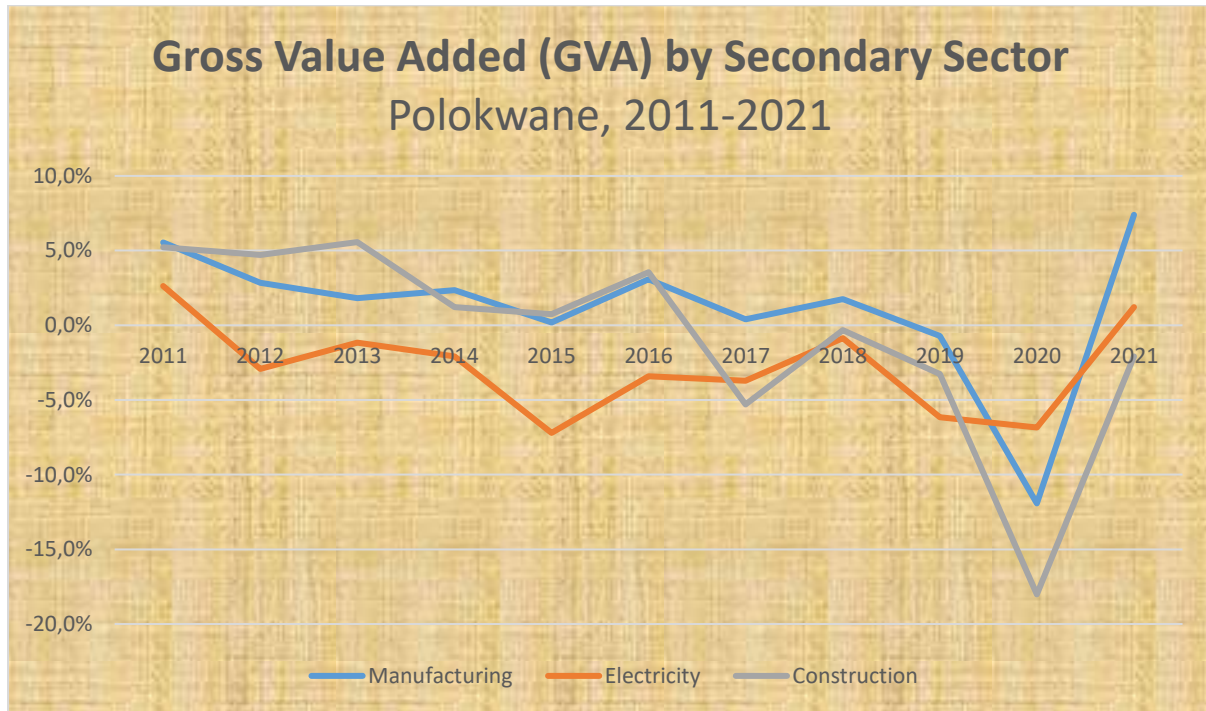
**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Between 2011 and 2021, the agriculture sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2017 with an average growth rate of 18.2%. The mining sector reached its highest point of growth of 40.3% in 2021. The agricultural sector experienced the lowest growth for the period during 2019 at -6.9%, while the mining sector reaching its lowest point of growth in 2020 at -7.3%. Both the agriculture and mining sectors are generally characterised by volatility in growth over the period.

### **3.2.1.2 Secondary Sector**

The secondary sector consists of three broad economic sectors namely the manufacturing, electricity and the construction sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2011 to 2021.

**CHART 9. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY SECONDARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2011-2021 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE]**



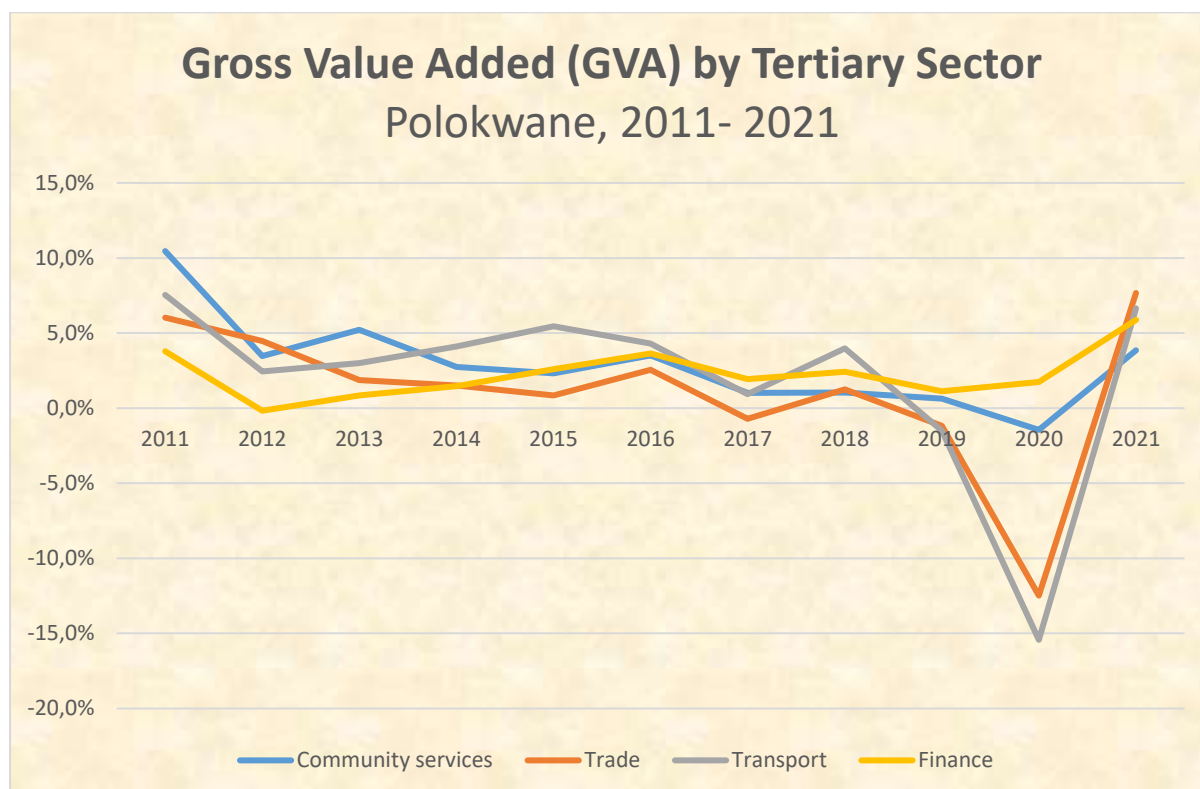
**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Between 2011 and 2021, the manufacturing sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2021 with a growth rate of 7.4%. The construction sector reached its highest growth in 2013 at 5.6%. The manufacturing sector experienced its lowest growth in 2020 of -11.20%, while construction sector reached its lowest point of growth in 2020 as with -18.0% growth rate. The electricity sector experienced the highest growth in 2011 at 2.6%, while it recorded the lowest growth of -6.8% in 2020.

### 3.2.1.3 Tertiary Sector

The tertiary sector consists of four broad economic sectors namely the trade, transport, finance and the community services sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2011 to 2021.

**CHART 10. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY TERTIARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2011-2021 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The trade sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2011 with a growth rate of 7.5%. The transport sector reached its highest point of growth in 2011 at 7.5%. The finance sector experienced the highest growth rate in 2021 when it grew by 5.9% and recorded the lowest growth rate in 2012 at -0.2%. The Trade sector also had the lowest growth rate in 2020 at -12.5%. The community services sector, which largely consists of government, experienced its highest positive growth in 2011 with 10.5% and the lowest growth rate in 2020 with -1.4%.

### 3.2.2 Sector Growth forecast

The GVA forecasts are based on forecasted growth rates derived from two sources: historical growth rate estimates and national level industry forecasts. The projections are therefore partly based on the notion that regions that have performed well in the recent past are likely to continue performing well (and vice versa) and partly on the notion that those regions that have prominent sectors that are forecast to grow rapidly in the national economy (e.g. finance and telecommunications) are likely to perform well (and vice versa). As the target year moves further from the base year (2010) so the emphasis moves from historical growth rates to national-level industry growth rates.



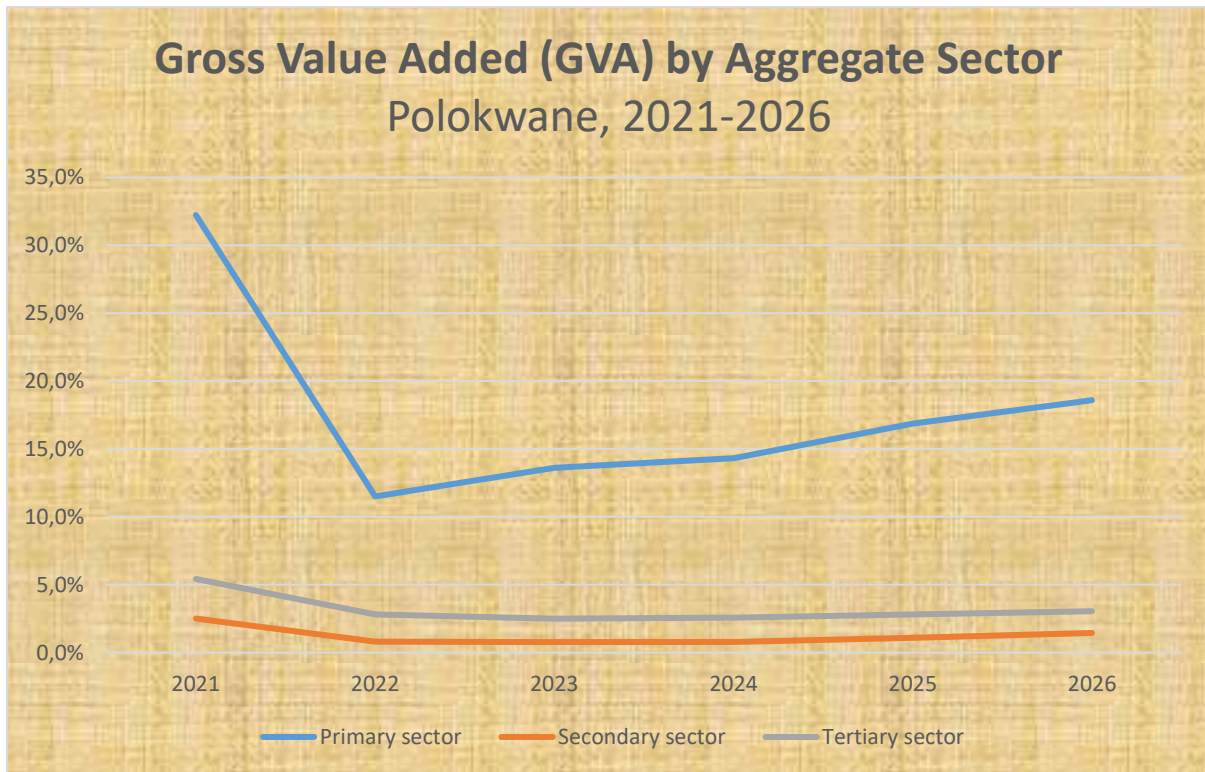
**TABLE 15. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2022-2027 [R BILLIONS, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]**

	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	Average
Agriculture	1.84	1.84	1.91	2.14	2.19	2.13	2.9%
Mining	5.20	5.29	5.51	5.80	6.07	6.32	3.9%
Manufacturing	2.81	2.79	2.77	2.75	2.72	2.70	-0.8%
Electricity	0.72	0.66	0.62	0.60	0.59	0.53	-5.8%
Construction	2.36	2.23	2.19	2.04	1.87	1.68	-6.6%
Trade	13.62	13.61	13.53	13.24	13.04	12.92	-1.0%
Transport	4.67	4.68	4.71	4.66	4.58	4.57	-0.4%
Finance	16.49	16.82	17.05	17.48	17.89	18.31	2.1%
Community services	27.13	27.56	27.97	28.20	28.44	28.78	1.2%
<b>Total Industries</b>	<b>74.88</b>	<b>75.48</b>	<b>76.34</b>	<b>76.63</b>	<b>77.12</b>	<b>77.99</b>	<b>0.8%</b>

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The Agricultural sector is expected to grow faster at an average of 2.9% annually from R 1.84 billion in Polokwane Local Municipality to R 2.13 billion in 2027. The community services sector is estimated to be the largest sector within the Polokwane Local Municipality in 2027, with a total share of 36.90% of the total GVA (as measured in constant 2015 prices), growing at an average annual rate of 1.2%. The sector that is estimated to grow the slowest is the construction sector with an average annual growth rate of -6.6%.

**TABLE 16. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY AGGREGATE ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021-2026 [ANNUAL GROWTH RATE, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]**

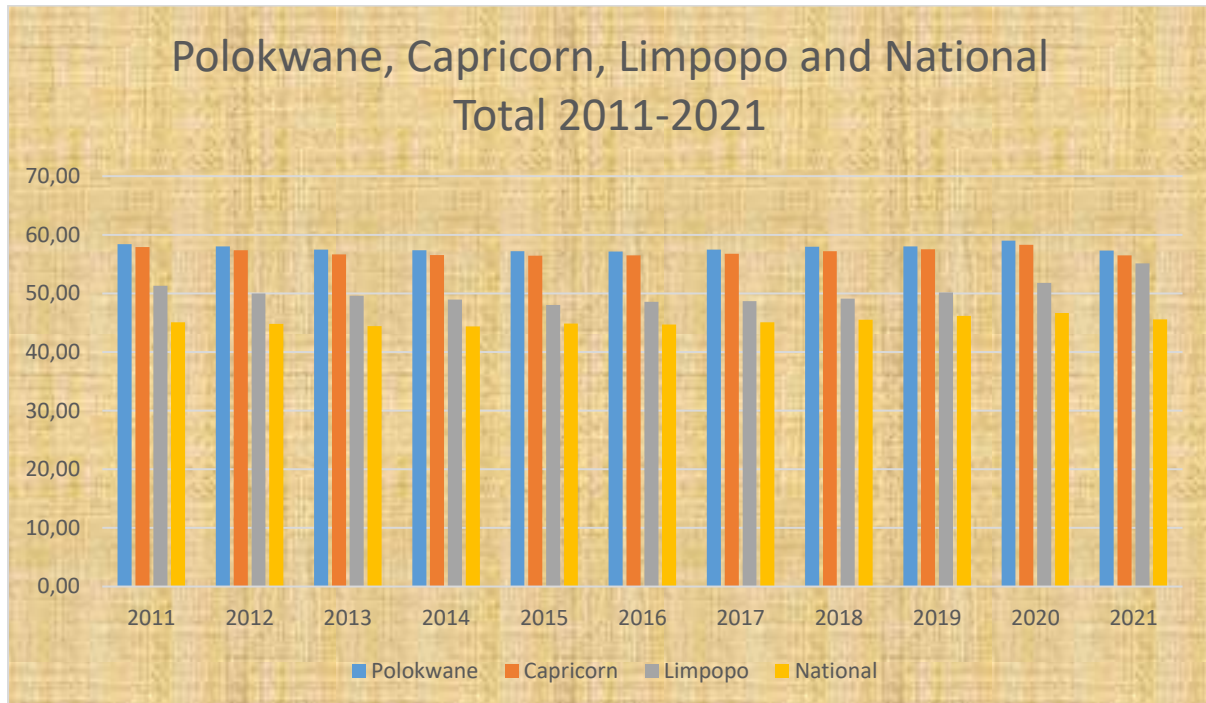


**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The Primary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 17.9% between 2021 and 2026, with the Secondary sector growing at 1.2% on average annually. The Tertiary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 3.2% for the same period.

#### 4.4 Tress Index

CHART 11. TRESS INDEX - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [NUMBER]



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

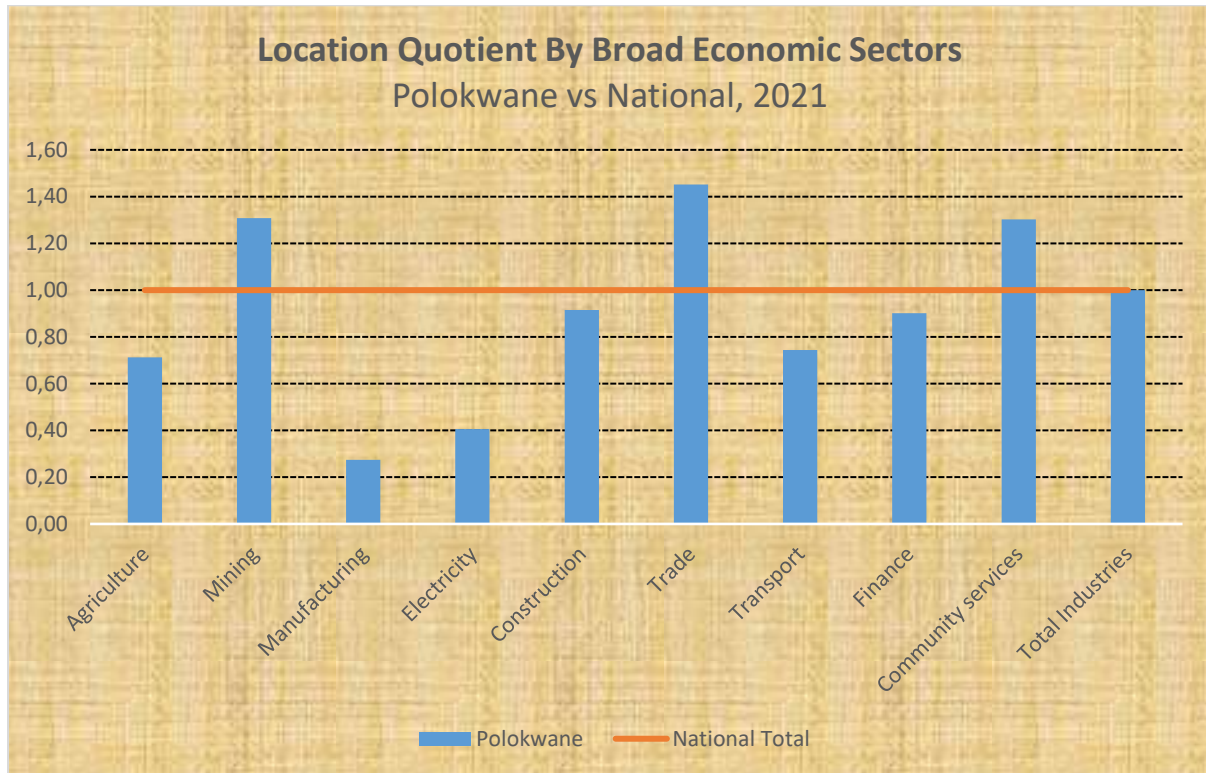
In 2021, Polokwane's Tress Index was estimated at 57.31 which are higher than the 56.51 of the district municipality and higher than the 55.11 of the Limpopo province. This implies that - on average - Polokwane Local Municipality is less diversified in terms of its economic activity spread than the province's economy as a whole.

The Polokwane Local Municipality has a concentrated trade sector.

#### 4.5 Location Quotient

If the location quotient is larger than one for a specified sector within a region, then that region has a comparative advantage in that sector. This is because the share of that sector of the specified regional economy is greater than the same sector in the national economy. The location quotient is usually computed by taking the percentage share of the sector in the regional economy divided by the percentage share of that same sector in the national economy.

**CHART 12. LOCATION QUOTIENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTORS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND SOUTH AFRICA, 2021 [NUMBER]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

For 2020 Polokwane Local Municipality has a comparative advantage in the trade sector. The community services sector has a comparative advantage. The finance also has a comparative advantage when comparing it to the South African economy as a whole, although less prominent. The Polokwane Local Municipality has a comparative disadvantage when it comes to the manufacturing and agriculture sector which has a large comparative disadvantage. In general, mining is a very concentrated economic sector. The Polokwane Local Municipality area does have some mining, but this is very limited and fairly unimportant.

## 4.6. Labour

The labour force of a country consists of everyone of working age (above a certain age and below retirement) that are participating as workers, i.e., people who are actively employed or seeking employment. This is also called the economically active population (EAP). People not included are students, retired people, stay-at-home parents, people in prisons or similar institutions, people employed in jobs or professions with unreported income, as well as discouraged workers who cannot find work.

**TABLE 17. WORKING AGE POPULATION IN POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011 AND 2021 [NUMBER]**

Age	Polokwane		Capricorn		Limpopo		National	
	2011	2021	2011	2021	2011	2021	2010	2021
15-19	86,558	77,228	159,179	135,963	675,488	574,237	5,122,453	4,876,170
20-24	98,931	84,438	159,044	128,136	685,755	538,393	5,407,309	4,652,035
25-29	79,274	94,802	120,556	137,765	530,586	594,393	5,018,104	5,327,719
30-34	52,707	88,672	80,059	128,575	357,749	580,637	4,045,662	5,605,214
35-39	36,911	66,725	57,238	99,624	251,002	442,243	3,420,584	5,009,886
40-44	30,388	45,022	48,259	68,664	203,887	285,805	2,871,802	3,873,396
45-49	28,407	31,967	46,770	49,995	197,076	207,433	2,552,110	3,174,147
50-54	24,214	26,436	41,209	42,777	174,457	182,675	2,197,346	2,626,685
55-59	21,020	25,612	36,337	42,849	148,134	178,392	1,795,919	2,294,202
60-64	17,216	22,190	31,594	39,943	123,531	155,800	1,447,737	1,932,254
65-69	12,704	17,186	24,171	31,683	97,258	126,988	1,073,765	1,511,354
<b>Total</b>	<b>488,331</b>	<b>580,278</b>	<b>804,416</b>	<b>905,973</b>	<b>3,444,924</b>	<b>3,866,996</b>	<b>34,952,791</b>	<b>40,883,062</b>

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

The working age population in Polokwane in 2021 was 580 278, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.71% since 2011. For the same period the working age population for Capricorn District Municipality increased at 1.18% annually, while that of Limpopo Province increased at 1.15% annually. South Africa's working age population has increased annually by 1.55% from 34.9 million in 2011 to 40.8 million in 2021.

### 4.6.1 Economically Active Population (EAP)

The economically active population (EAP) is a good indicator of how many of the total working age population are in reality participating in the labour market of a region. If a person is economically active, he or she forms part of the labour force.

**TABLE 18. ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE POPULATION (EAP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011- 2021 [NUMBER, PERCENTAGE]**

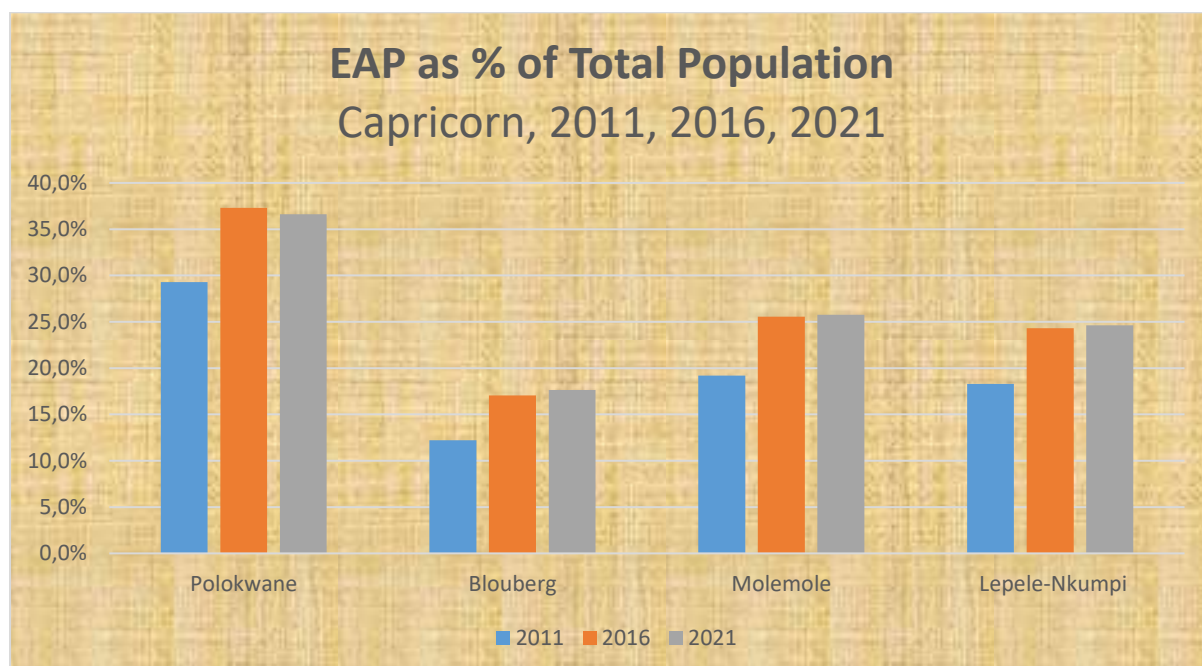
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as a % of district	Polokwane as a % of province	Polokwane as a % of national
2011	216,487	305,271	1,221,960	18,261,812	70.92%	17.72%	1.19%
2012	225,637	316,719	1,255,845	18,696,935	71.24%	17.97%	1.21%
2013	239,089	334,487	1,314,791	19,296,680	71.48%	18.18%	1.24%
2014	258,423	361,149	1,412,500	20,087,855	71.56%	18.30%	1.29%
2015	278,693	390,111	1,525,223	20,797,627	71.44%	18.27%	1.34%
2016	299,075	419,136	1,630,978	21,456,477	71.36%	18.34%	1.39%
2017	310,797	435,655	1,698,706	22,025,124	71.34%	18.30%	1.41%
2018	316,390	442,748	1,719,856	22,301,192	71.46%	18.40%	1.42%
2019	321,486	450,143	1,749,688	22,671,163	71.42%	18.37%	1.42%
2020	314,842	439,830	1,707,904	22,127,497	71.58%	18.43%	1.42%
2021	314,881	440,761	1,714,923	22,176,568	71.44%	18.36%	1.42%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>							
	<b>3.82%</b>	<b>3.74%</b>	<b>3.45%</b>	<b>1.96%</b>			

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Polokwane Local Municipality's EAP was 314 881 in 2021, which is 36.63% of its total population of 859 671, and roughly 71.44% of the total EAP of the Capricorn District Municipality. From 2011 to 2021, the average annual increase in the EAP in the Polokwane Local Municipality was 3.82%, which is -0.08 percentage points lower than the growth in the EAP of Capricorn's for the same period.



**CHART 13. EAP AS % OF TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2011, 2016, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2011, 29.3% of the total population in Polokwane Local Municipality were classified as economically active which increased to 36.6% in 2021. Compared to the other regions in Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest EAP as a percentage of the total population within its own region relative to the other regions. On the other hand, Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest EAP with 17.6% people classified as economically active population in 2021.

#### **4.6.2 Labour Force participation rate**

The following is the labour participation rate of the Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total as a whole.

**TABLE 19. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**

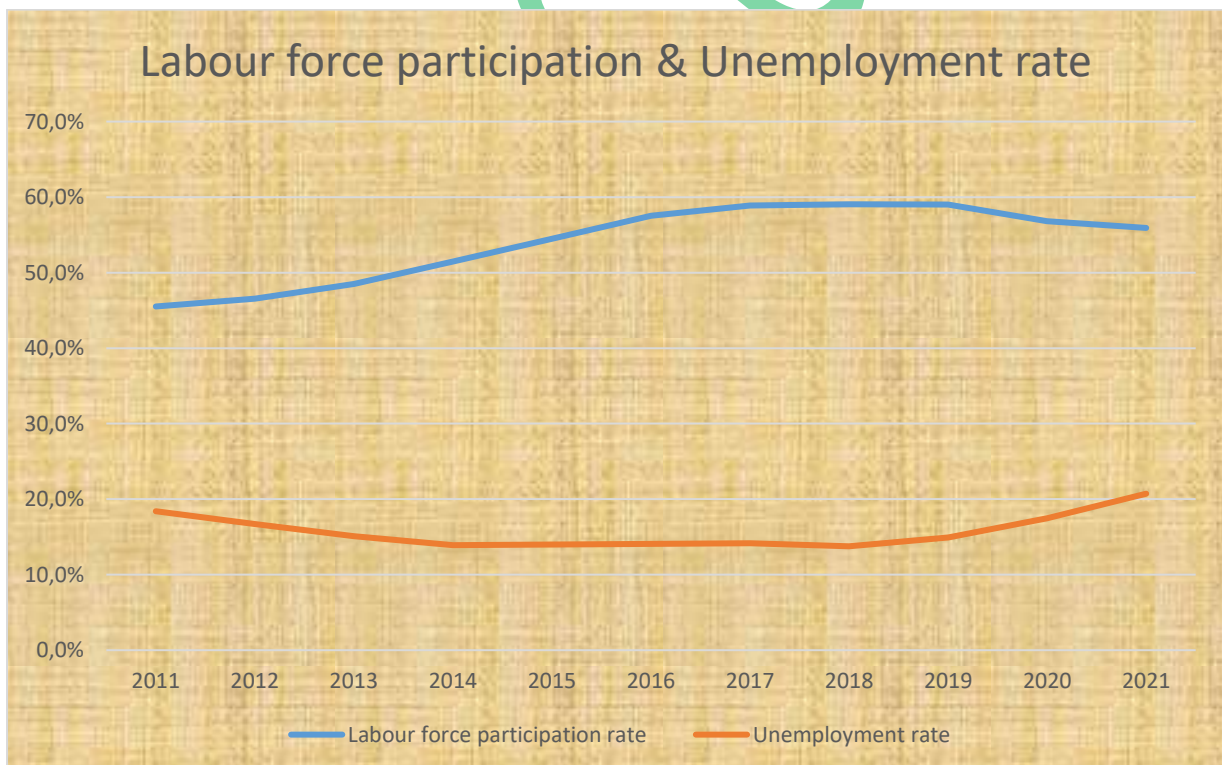
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2011	45.5%	39.1%	36.5%	53.9%
2012	46.6%	40.2%	37.2%	54.3%
2013	48.5%	42.1%	38.6%	55.2%
2014	51.5%	45.0%	41.1%	56.6%
2015	54.5%	48.0%	43.8%	57.7%
2016	57.5%	51.0%	46.4%	58.8%
2017	58.9%	52.5%	47.9%	59.5%

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2018	59.0%	52.8%	47.9%	59.4%
2019	59.0%	53.0%	48.1%	59.4%
2020	56.8%	51.0%	46.3%	57.0%
2021	55.9%	50.4%	45.9%	56.3%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

The Polokwane Local Municipality's labour force participation rate increased from 45.5% in 2011 to 55.9% in 2021 which is an increase of 10.40 percentage points. The Capricorn District Municipality increased from 39.1% to 50.1%, Limpopo Province increased from 36.5% to 45.9% and South Africa increased from 53.9% to 56.3% from 2011 to 2021. The Polokwane Local Municipality labour force participation rate exhibited a higher percentage point change compared to the Limpopo Province from 2011 to 2021. The Polokwane Local Municipality had a lower labour force participation rate when compared to South Africa in 2021.

**CHART 14. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**

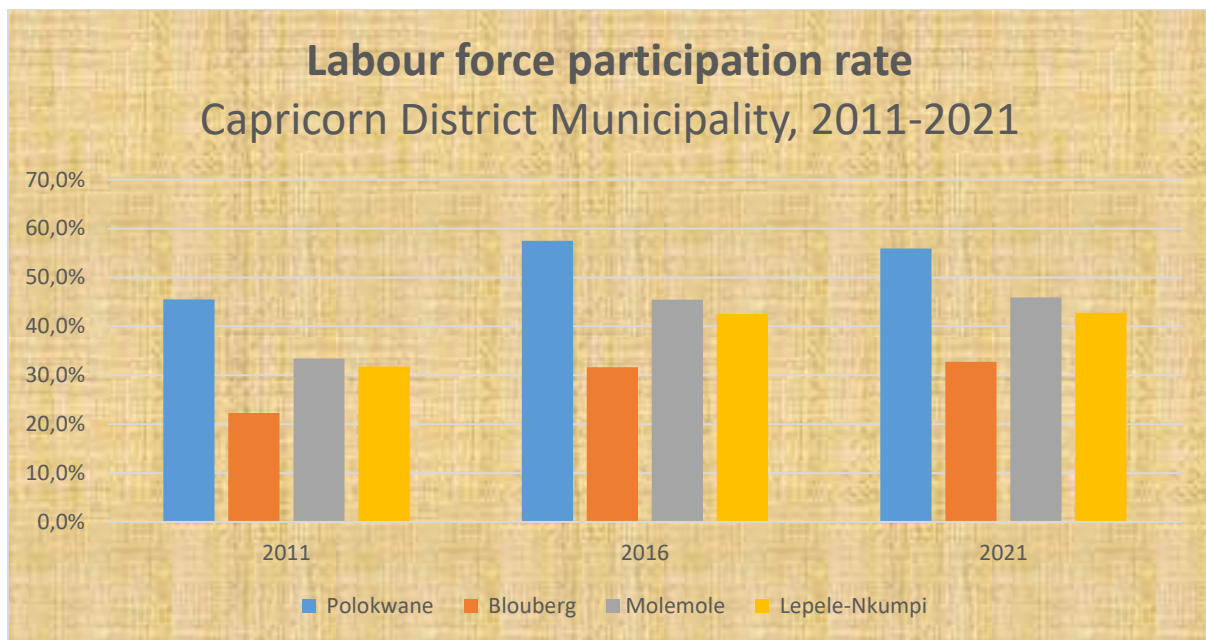


Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2021 the labour force participation rate for Polokwane was at 55.9% which is significantly higher when compared to the 45.5% in 2011. The unemployment rate is an efficient indicator that measures the success rate of the labour force relative to employment. In 2011, the

unemployment rate for Polokwane was 18.4% and increased overtime to 20.7% in 2021. The gap between the labour force participation rate and the unemployment rate decreased which indicates a negative outlook for the employment within Polokwane Local Municipality.

**CHART 15. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2011, 2016 AND 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest labour force participation rate with 55.9% in 2021 increasing from 45.5% in 2011. Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest labour force participation rate of 32.8% in 2021, this increased from 22.3% in 2011.

#### **4.6.3 Total Employment**

Employment data is a key element in the estimation of unemployment. In addition, trends in employment within different sectors and industries normally indicate significant structural changes in the economy. Employment data is also used in the calculation of productivity, earnings per worker, and other economic indicators.

**TABLE 20. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [NUMBERS]**

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2011	171,489	241,114	898,443	13,682,557	71.12%	19.09%	1.25%
2012	182,846	256,615	955,054	13,995,488	71.25%	19.15%	1.31%
2013	197,295	276,531	1,018,462	14,443,237	71.35%	19.37%	1.37%
2014	215,958	302,599	1,107,614	15,030,411	71.37%	19.50%	1.44%
2015	232,523	325,868	1,189,740	15,497,776	71.35%	19.54%	1.50%
2016	248,796	348,357	1,255,937	15,785,399	71.42%	19.81%	1.58%
2017	258,113	361,293	1,302,796	16,030,782	71.44%	19.81%	1.61%
2018	263,755	368,774	1,322,737	16,201,043	71.52%	19.94%	1.63%
2019	264,192	368,803	1,319,746	16,225,383	71.63%	20.02%	1.63%
2020	250,310	347,009	1,229,163	15,419,068	72.13%	20.36%	1.62%
2021	239,808	330,575	1,154,660	14,730,052	72.54%	20.77%	1.63%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>							
<b>2011-2021</b>	<b>3.41%</b>	<b>3.21%</b>	<b>2.54%</b>	<b>0.74%</b>			

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2021, Polokwane employed 239 808 people which is 72.54% of the total employment in Capricorn District Municipality (330 575), 20.77% of total employment in Limpopo Province (1.154 660), and 1.63% of the total employment of 14.7 million in South Africa. Employment within Polokwane increased annually at an average rate of 3.41% from 2011 to 2021. The Polokwane Local Municipality average annual employment growth rate of 3.41% is less than the average annual labour force growth rate of 3.82% resulting in unemployment increasing from 18.4% in 2011 to 20.7% in 2021 in the local municipality.

**TABLE 21. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2021 [NUMBERS]**

Sector	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
Agriculture	12,472	3,019	6,734	3,369
Mining	4,543	347	766	1,471
Manufacturing	16,643	688	1,770	2,727
Electricity	1,523	137	190	232
Construction	22,252	1,982	3,245	3,144
Trade	58,493	3,833	7,931	6,698
Transport	11,317	682	1,489	1,555
Finance	30,146	1,296	2,887	2,623
Community services	66,605	4,574	8,830	11,181
Households	15,815	1,663	3,960	1,744

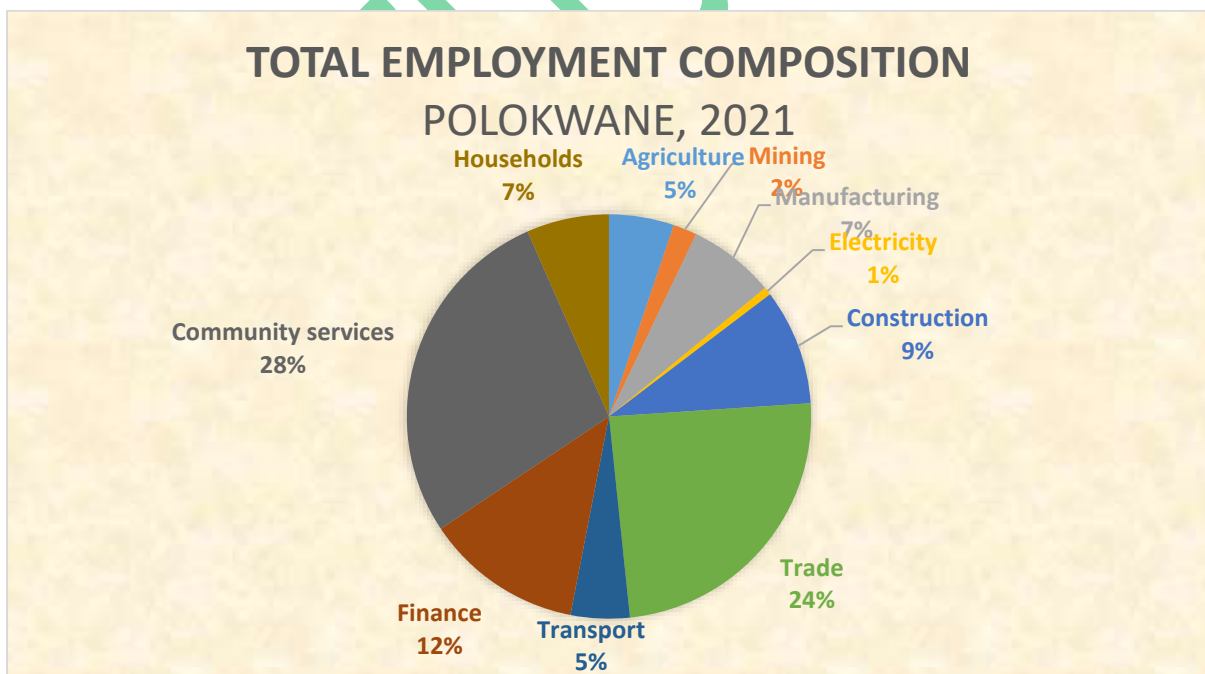
Sector	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
Total	239,808	18,220	37,802	34,745

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

Polokwane Local Municipality employs a total number of 239 808 people within its local municipality. Polokwane Local Municipality also employs the highest number of people within Capricorn District Municipality. The local municipality that employs the lowest number of people relative to the other regions within Capricorn District Municipality is Blouberg local municipality with a total number of 18 220 employed people.

In Polokwane Local Municipality the economic sectors that recorded the largest number of employments in 2021 were the community services sector with a total of 66 605 employed people or 27.77% of total employment in the local municipality. The trade sector with a total of 58 493 (24.39%) employs the second highest number of people relative to the rest of the sectors. The electricity sector with 1 523 (0.64%) is the sector that employs the least number of people in Polokwane Local Municipality, followed by the mining sector with 4 543 (0.64%) people employed.

**CHART 16. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 20

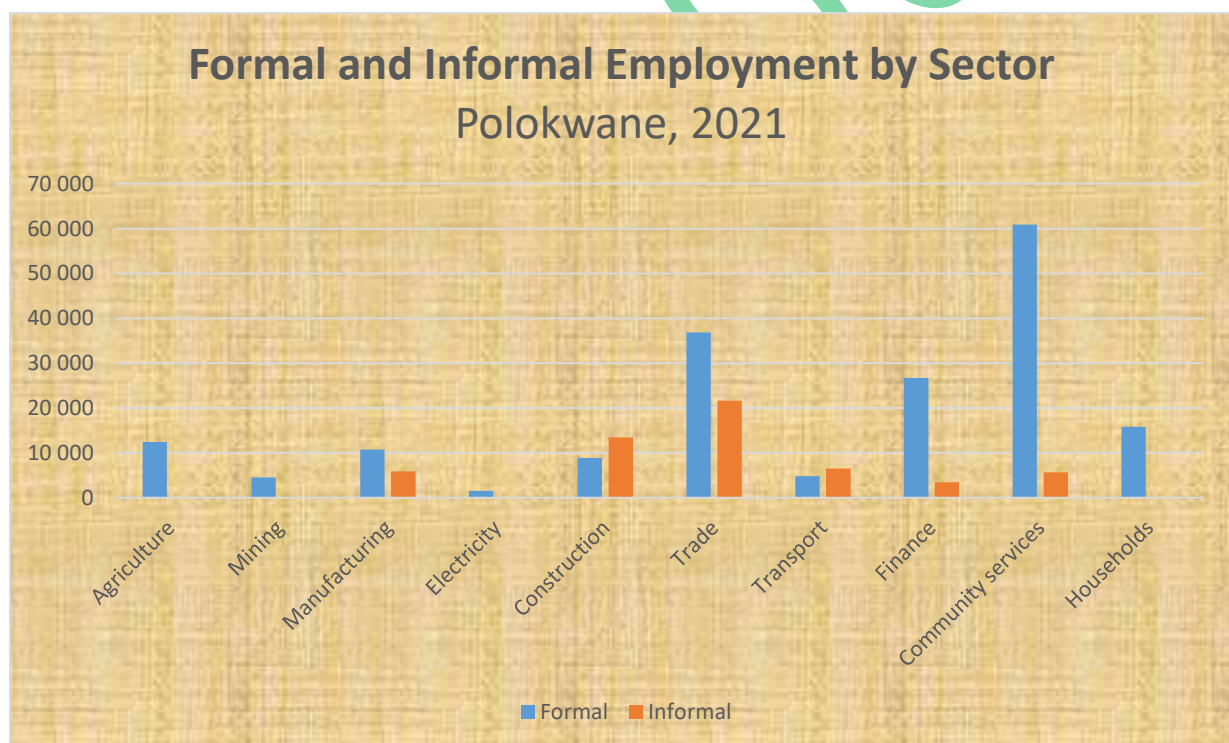
#### 4.6.4 Formal and Informal employment

Total employment can be broken down into formal and informal sector employment. Formal sector employment is measured from the formal business side, and the informal employment is measured from the household side where formal businesses have not been established.

Formal employment is much more stable than informal employment. Informal employment is much harder to measure and manage, simply because it cannot be tracked through the formal business side of the economy. Informal employment is however a reality in South Africa and cannot be ignored.

The number of formally employed people in Polokwane Local Municipality counted 183 209 in 2021, which is about 76.40% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 56 599 or 23.60 % of the total employment. Informal employment in Polokwane increased from 44 143 in 2011 to an estimated 56 599 in 2021.

**CHART 17. FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [NUMBERS]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2021 the Trade sector recorded the highest number of informally employed, with a total of 21 649 employees or 38.25% of the total informal employment. This can be expected as the barriers to enter the Trade sector in terms of capital and skills required is less than with most of the other sectors. The Finance sector has the lowest informal employment with 3 441 and only contributes 6.08% to total informal employment.



TABLE 22. FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR  
- POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [NUMBERS]

Sector	Formal	Informal
Agriculture	12,472	
Mining	4,543	
Manufacturing	10,733	5,910
Electricity	1,523	
Construction	8,840	13,412
Trade	36,844	21,649
Transport	4,820	6,497
Finance	26,704	3,441
Community services	60,915	5,690
Households	15,815	
Total	183,209	56,599

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

#### 4.6.5 Unemployment

The choice of definition for what constitutes being unemployed has a large impact on the final estimates for all measured labour force variables. The following definition was adopted by the Thirteenth International Conference of Labour Statisticians (Geneva, 1982): The "unemployed" comprise all persons above a specified age who during the reference period were:

- "Without work", i.e., not in paid employment or self-employment.
- "Currently available for work", i.e., were available for paid employment or self-employment during the reference period; and
- "Seeking work", i.e., had taken specific steps in a specified reference period to seek paid employment or self-employment. The specific steps may include registration at a public or private employment exchange; application to employers; checking at worksites, farms, factory gates, market or other assembly places; placing or answering newspaper advertisements; seeking assistance of friends or relatives; looking for land.

**TABLE 23. UNEMPLOYMENT (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]**

Financial year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of district municipality	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
2011	39,810	64,872	271,849	4,579,255	61.37%	14.64%	0.87%
2012	37,740	61,606	260,736	4,701,448	61.26%	14.47%	0.80%
2013	36,048	59,109	253,379	4,853,443	60.99%	14.23%	0.74%
2014	35,937	59,395	257,452	5,057,445	60.50%	13.96%	0.71%
2015	38,969	64,844	283,816	5,299,851	60.10%	13.73%	0.74%
2016	42,110	70,631	320,686	5,671,078	59.62%	13.13%	0.74%
2017	44,032	74,001	339,110	5,994,341	59.50%	12.98%	0.73%
2018	43,536	73,279	339,666	6,100,149	59.41%	12.82%	0.71%
2019	47,959	80,486	373,262	6,445,780	59.59%	12.85%	0.74%
2020	55,010	91,452	427,087	6,708,429	60.15%	12.88%	0.82%
2021	65,254	108,165	512,967	7,446,516	60.33%	12.72%	0.88%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>							
<b>2011-2021</b>	<b>5.07%</b>	<b>5.25%</b>	<b>6.56%</b>	<b>4.98%</b>			

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2021, there were a total number of 65 254 people unemployed in Polokwane, which is an increase of 25 444 from 39 810 in 2011. The total number of unemployed people within Polokwane constitutes 60.33% of the total number of unemployed people in Capricorn District Municipality. The Polokwane Local Municipality experienced an average annual increase of 5.07% in the number of unemployed people, which is better than that of the Capricorn District Municipality which had an average annual increase in unemployment of 5.25%.

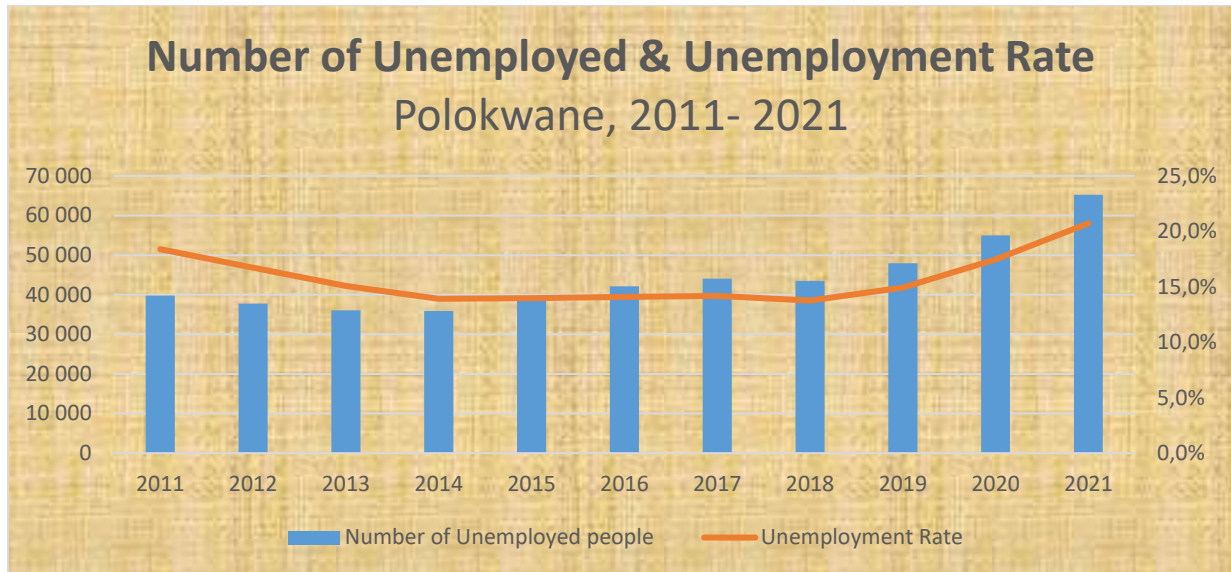
**TABLE 24. UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2011	18.4%	21.3%	22.2%	25.1%
2012	16.7%	19.5%	20.8%	25.1%
2013	15.1%	17.7%	19.3%	25.2%
2014	13.9%	16.4%	18.2%	25.2%
2015	14.0%	16.6%	18.6%	25.5%
2016	14.1%	16.9%	19.7%	26.4%
2017	14.2%	17.0%	20.0%	27.2%
2018	13.8%	16.6%	19.7%	27.4%
2019	14.9%	17.9%	21.3%	28.4%
2020	17.5%	20.8%	25.0%	30.3%
2021	20.7%	24.5%	29.9%	33.6%

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2021, the unemployment rate in Polokwane Local Municipality (based on the official definition of unemployment) was 20.70%, which is an increase of 2.30 percentage points. The unemployment rate in Polokwane Local Municipality is lower than that of Capricorn. Comparing to the Limpopo Province it can be seen that the unemployment rate for Polokwane Local Municipality was lower than that of Limpopo which was 29.90%. The unemployment rate for South Africa was 33.60% in 2021, which is an increase of 8.50 percentage points from 25.10% in 2011.

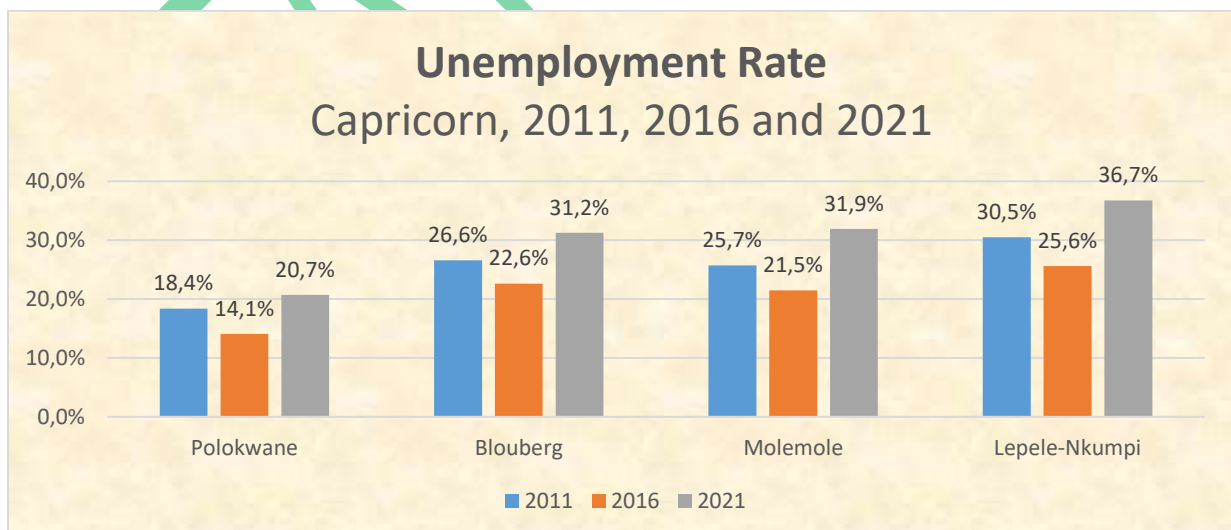
**CHART 18. UNEMPLOYMENT AND UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION)  
- POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

When comparing unemployment rates among regions within Capricorn District Municipality, Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality has indicated the highest unemployment rate of 36.7%, which has increased from 30.5% in 2011. It can be seen that the Polokwane Local Municipality had the lowest unemployment rate of 20.7% in 2021, this decreased from 18.4% in 2011.

**CHART 19. UNEMPLOYMENT RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2011, 2016 AND 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2021**

## 4.7 Income and Expenditure

In a growing economy among which production factors are increasing, most of the household incomes are spent on purchasing goods and services. Therefore, the measuring of the income and expenditure of households is a major indicator of a number of economic trends. It is also a good marker of growth as well as consumer tendencies.

### 4.7.1 Number of Households by Income category

The number of households is grouped according to predefined income categories or brackets, where income is calculated as the sum of all household gross disposable income: payments in kind, gifts, homemade goods sold, old age pensions, income from informal sector activities, subsistence income, etc.). Note that income tax is included in the income distribution.

Income categories start at R0 - R2,400 per annum and go up to R2,400,000+ per annum. A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. These income brackets do not consider inflation creep: over time, movement of households "up" the brackets is natural, even if they are not earning any more in real terms.

Households by income category - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total, 2021  
[NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

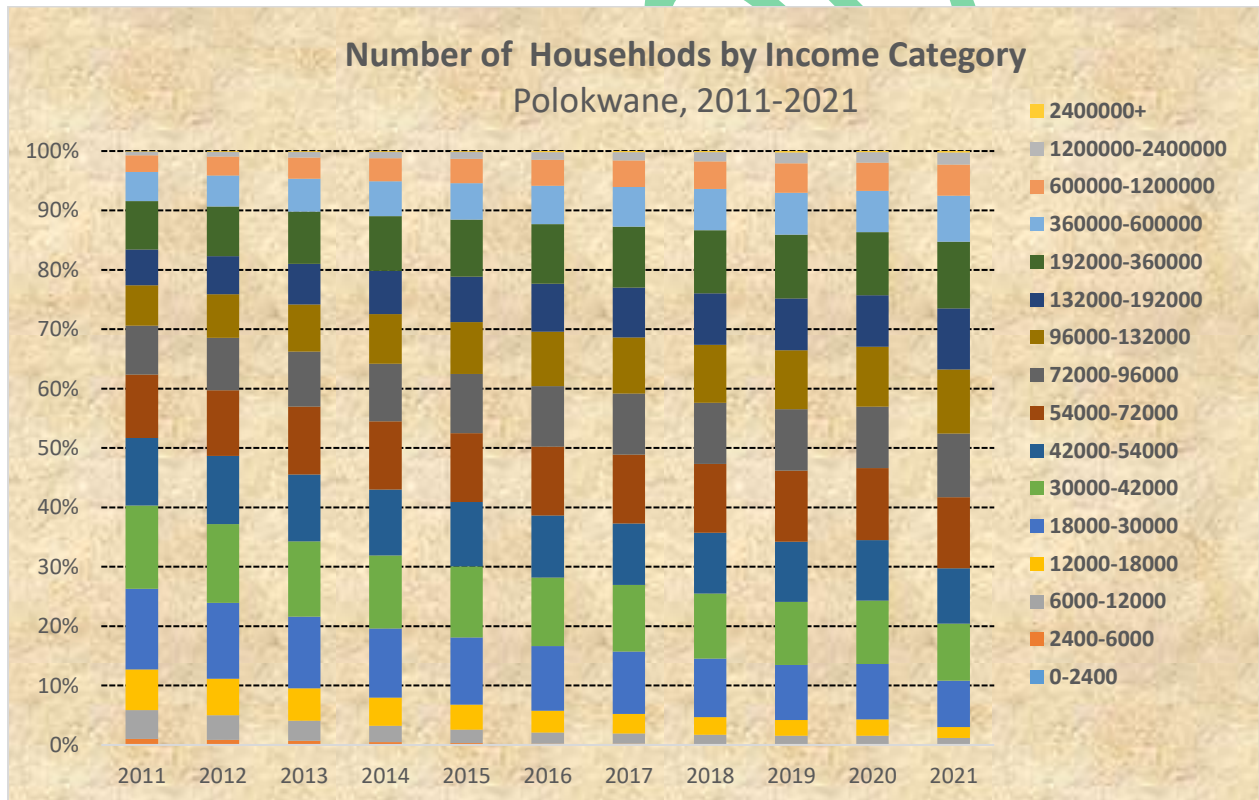
Income category	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of district	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
0-2400	19	30	128	1,253	64.19%	14.81%	1.52%
2400-6000	302	479	2,056	20,550	63.13%	14.70%	1.47%
6000-12000	2,520	4,048	17,455	167,150	62.26%	14.44%	1.51%
12000-18000	4,511	7,300	31,516	289,824	61.79%	14.31%	1.56%
18000-30000	18,977	31,534	140,530	1,202,941	60.18%	13.50%	1.58%
30000-42000	23,349	39,252	175,563	1,430,425	59.49%	13.30%	1.63%
42000-54000	22,713	38,295	168,968	1,373,990	59.31%	13.44%	1.65%
54000-72000	29,088	48,533	209,199	1,816,079	59.93%	13.90%	1.60%
72000-96000	26,166	43,233	186,199	1,714,296	60.52%	14.05%	1.53%
96000-132000	26,193	42,024	178,415	1,743,101	62.33%	14.68%	1.50%
132000-192000	24,991	38,885	159,232	1,718,577	64.27%	15.69%	1.45%
192000-360000	27,302	40,264	153,845	1,950,899	67.81%	17.75%	1.40%
360000-600000	18,968	26,303	92,570	1,437,461	72.11%	20.49%	1.32%
600000-1200000	12,695	16,538	56,001	1,135,200	76.76%	22.67%	1.12%
1200000-2400000	4,899	6,422	22,234	535,537	76.28%	22.03%	0.91%
2400000+	631	782	2,980	101,820	80.69%	21.17%	0.62%

Income category	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of district	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
Total	243,323	383,921	1,596,890	16,639,102	63.38%	15.24%	1.46%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

It was estimated that in 2021 7.80% of all the households in the Polokwane Local Municipality, were living on R30,000 or less per annum. In comparison with 2011's 13.60%, the percentage has decreased by almost half. The 54000-72000 income category has the highest number of households with a total number of 29 088, followed by the 192000-360000 income category with 27 302 households. Only 19 households fall within the 0-2400 income category.

**CHART 20. HOUSEHOLDS BY INCOME BRACKET - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

For the period 2011 to 2021 the number of households earning more than R30,000 per annum has increased from 79.04% to 90.18%. It can be seen that the number of households with income equal to or lower than R6,000 per year has decreased by a significant amount.



#### 4.7.2 Annual total Personal Income

Personal income is an even broader concept than labour remuneration. Personal income includes profits, income from property, net current transfers and net social benefits.

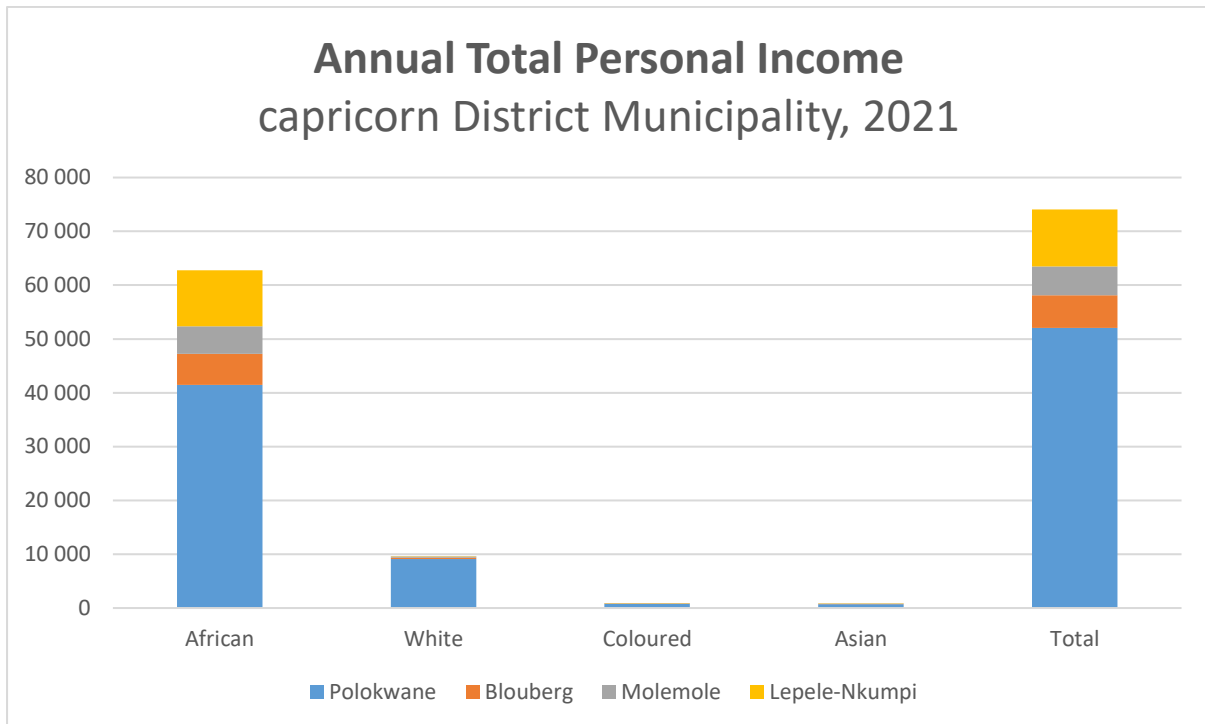
**TABLE 25. ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL [CURRENT PRICES, R BILLIONS]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2011	26.63	2.9	2.58	4.97
2012	29.45	3.22	2.84	5.54
2013	32.1	3.48	3.09	6.07
2014	34.57	3.73	3.33	6.59
2015	37.39	4.02	3.61	7.2
2016	40.82	4.38	3.95	7.93
2017	43.48	4.78	4.28	8.52
2018	46.17	5.17	4.62	9.32
2019	48.13	5.44	4.84	9.73
2020	46.88	5.36	4.75	9.46
2021	52.05	6.07	5.34	10.56
Average Annual Growth				
2011-2021	6.93%	7.67%	7.55%	7.83%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

When looking at the annual total personal income for the regions within Capricorn District Municipality it can be seen that the Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest total personal income with R 52.05 billion which increased from R 26.63 billion recorded in 2011. It can be seen that the Molemole Local Municipality had the lowest total personal income of R 5.34 billion in 2021, this increased from R 2.58 billion in 2011.

**TABLE 26. ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN [CURRENT PRICES, R BILLIONS]**



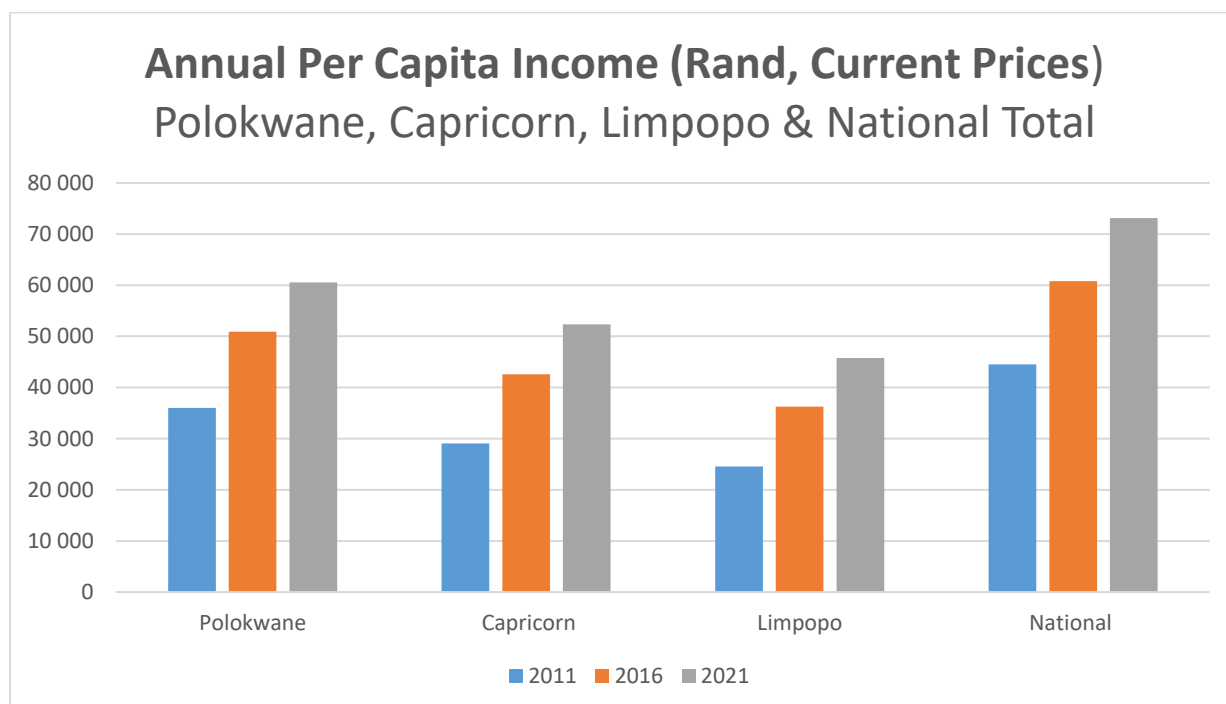
**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The total personal income of Polokwane Local Municipality amounted to approximately R 52.05 billion in 2021. The African population group earned R 41.44 billion, or 79.62% of total personal income, while the White population group earned R 9.1 billion, or 17.51% of the total. The Asian and the Coloured population groups only had a share of 1.40% and 1.47% of total personal income respectively.

### **4.7.3 Annual per Capita Income**

Per capita income is often used as a measure of wealth particularly when comparing economies or population groups. Rising per capita income usually indicates a likely swell in demand for consumption.

**CHART 21. PER CAPITA INCOME - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2021 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The per capita income in Polokwane Local Municipality in 2021 is R 60, 552 which is higher than both the Limpopo (R 45,789) and of the Capricorn District Municipality (R 52, 325) per capita income. The per capita income for Polokwane Local Municipality (R 60, 552) is lower than that of the South Africa as a whole which is R 73, 130.

**CHART 22. PER CAPITA INCOME BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]**

population group	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
African	50,948	33,044	39,136	42,302
White	274,919	-	-	-
Coloured	100,030	-	-	-
Asian	135,702	-	-	-

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In Polokwane Local Municipality, the White population group has the highest per capita income, with R 274,919, relative to the other population groups. The population group with the second highest per capita income within Polokwane Local Municipality is the Asian

population group (R 135,702), whereas the Coloured and the African population groups had a per capita income of R 100,030 and R 50,948 respectively.

#### 4.7.4 Index of Buying Power

The Index of Buying Power (IBP) is a measure of a region's overall capacity to absorb products and/or services. The index is useful when comparing two regions in terms of their capacity to buy products. Values range from 0 to 1 (where the national index equals 1), and can be interpreted as the percentage of national buying power attributable to the specific region. Regions' buying power usually depends on three factors: the size of the population; the ability of the population to spend (measured by total income); and the willingness of the population to spend (measured by total retail sales).

**TABLE 27. INDEX OF BUYING POWER - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2021 [NUMBER]**

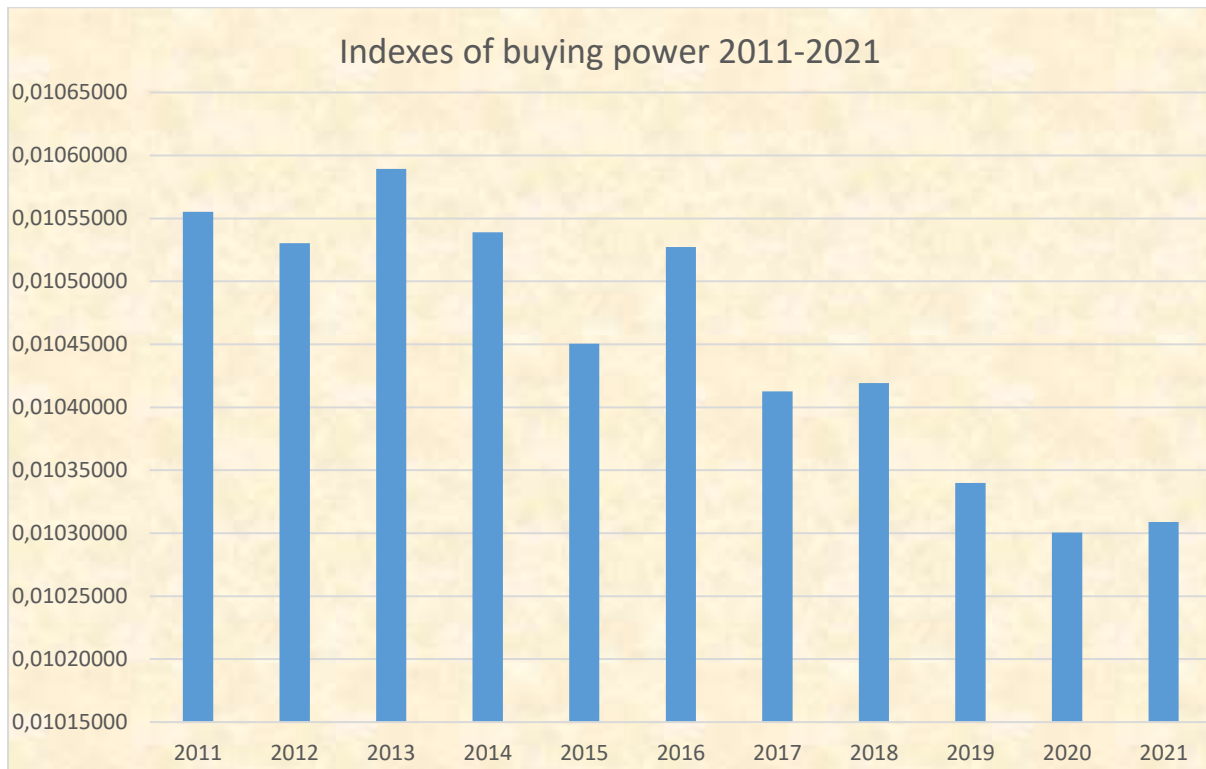
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
Population	859,671	1,415,045	6,075,222	60,324,819
Population - share of national total	1.4%	2.3%	10.1%	100.0%
Income	52,055	74,042	278,180	4,411,524
Income - share of national total	1.2%	1.7%	6.3%	100.0%
Retail	7,012,380	10,065,861	38,487,415	1,166,202,000
Retail - share of national total	0.6%	0.9%	3.3%	100.0%
Index	0.01	0.02	0.06	1.00

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Polokwane Local Municipality has a 1.4% share of the national population, 1.2% share of the total national income and a 0.6% share in the total national retail, this all equates to an IBP index value of 0.01 relative to South Africa as a whole. Capricorn has an IBP of 0.02, were Limpopo Province has an IBP index value of 0.06 and South Africa a value of 1 relative to South Africa as a whole.

The considerable low index of buying power of the Polokwane Local Municipality suggests that the local municipality has access to only a small percentage of the goods and services available in all of the Capricorn District Municipality. Its residents are most likely spending some of their income in neighbouring areas.

**CHART 23. INDEX OF BUYING POWER POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [INDEX VALUE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2021**

Between 2011 and 2021, the index of buying power within Polokwane Local Municipality increased to its highest level in 2013 (0.01058934).

The buying power within Polokwane Local Municipality is relatively small compared to other regions and increased at an average annual growth rate of -0.24%.

## 4.8 Indicators of Development

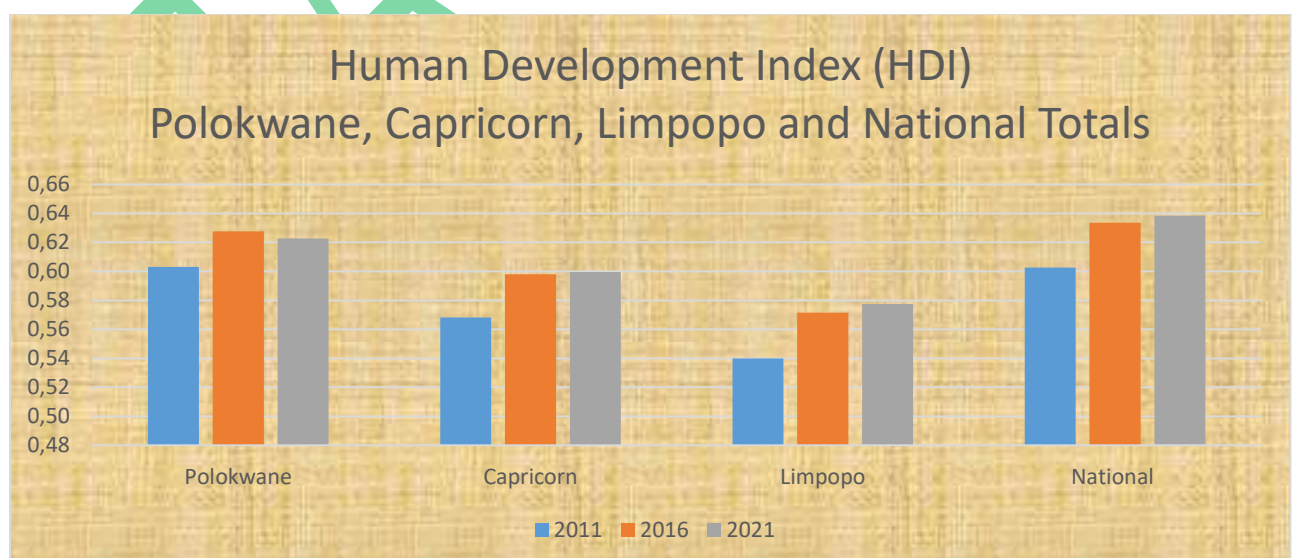
Indicators of development, like the Human Development Index (HDI), Gini Coefficient (income inequality), poverty and the poverty gap, and education, are used to estimate the level of development of a given region in South Africa relative to the rest of the country.

Another indicator that is widely used is the number (or percentage) of people living in poverty. Poverty is defined as the deprivation of those things that determine the quality of life, including food, clothing, shelter and safe drinking water. More than that, other "intangibles" is also included such as the opportunity to learn, and the privilege to enjoy the respect of fellow citizens. Curbing poverty and alleviating the effects thereof should be a premise in the compilation of all policies that aspire towards a better life for all.

### 4.8.1 Human Development Index (HDI)

HDI is the combination of three basic dimensions of human development: A long and healthy life, knowledge and a decent standard of living. A long and healthy life is typically measured using life expectancy at birth. Knowledge is normally based on adult literacy and / or the combination of enrolment in primary, secondary and tertiary schools. In order to gauge a decent standard of living, we make use of GDP per capita. On a technical note, the HDI can have a maximum value of 1, indicating a very high level of human development, while the minimum value is 0, indicating no human development.

**CHART 24. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011, 2016, 2021 [NUMBER]**

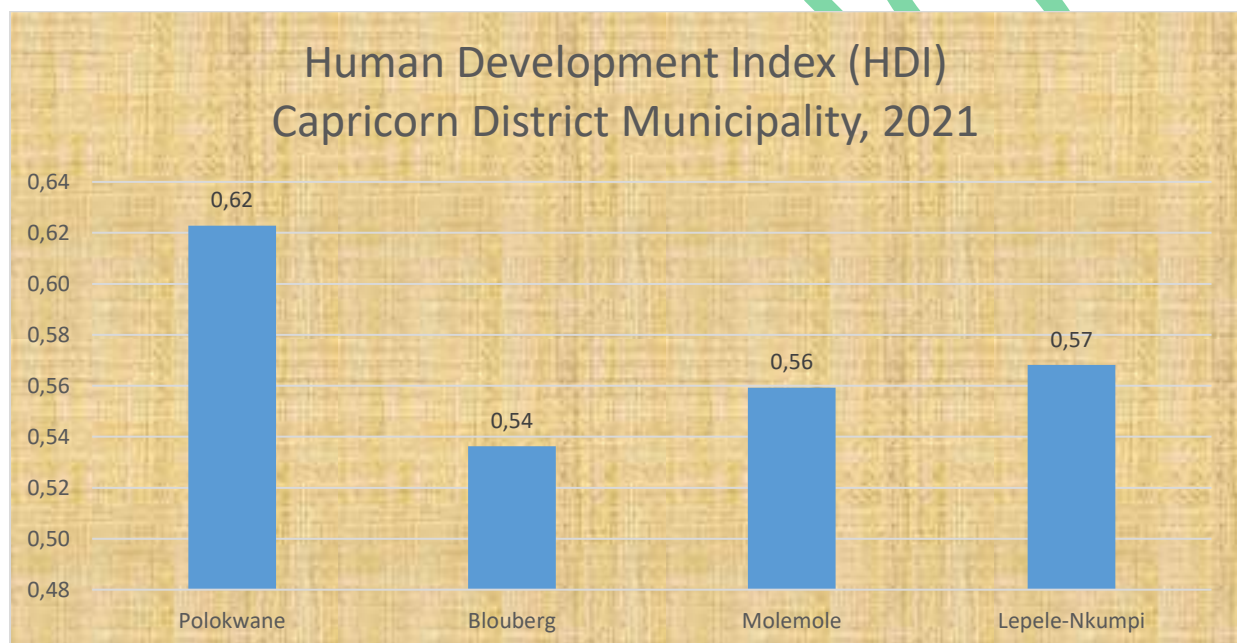


Source: IHS Global Insight 2022



In 2021 Polokwane Local Municipality had an HDI of 0.62 compared to the Capricorn with a HDI of 0.60, 0.58 of Limpopo and 0.64 of National Total as a whole. Seeing that South Africa recorded a higher HDI in 2021 when compared to Polokwane Local Municipality which translates to a lower human development for Polokwane Local Municipality compared to South Africa. South Africa's HDI increased at an average annual growth rate of 0.58% and this increase is higher than that of Polokwane Local Municipality (0.32%).

**CHART 25. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2021 [NUMBER]**



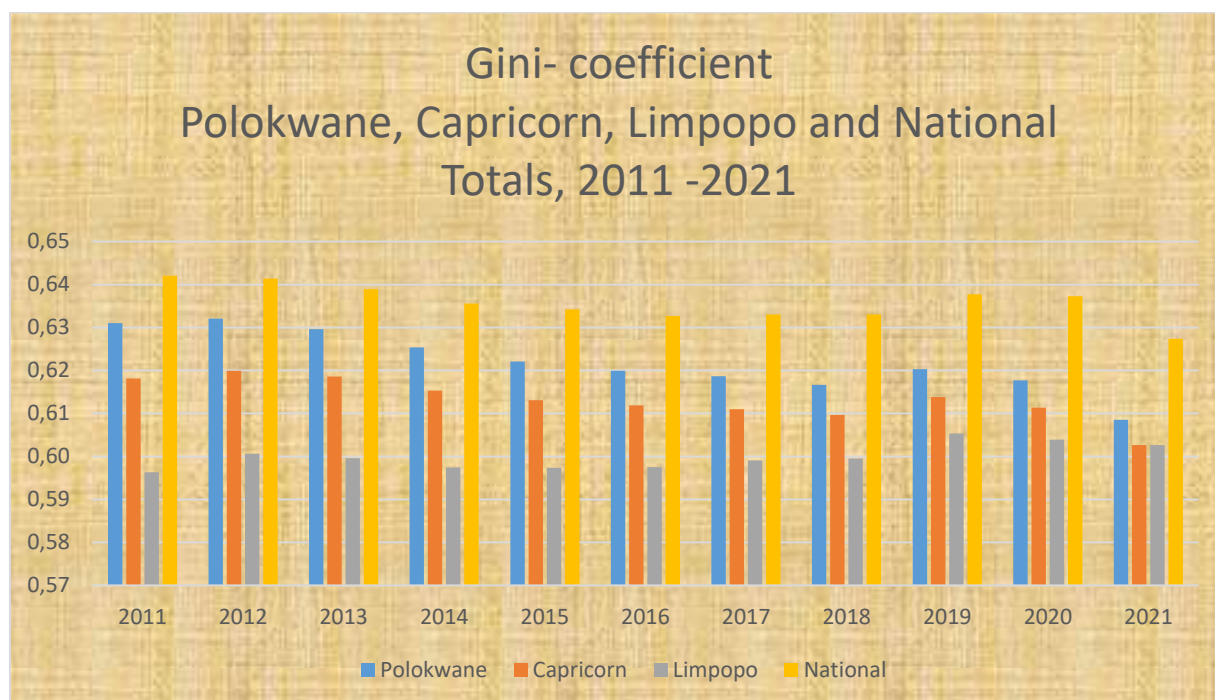
**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In terms of the HDI for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest HDI, with an index value of 0.62. The lowest can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with an index value of 0.54.

#### **4.8.2 Gini Coefficient**

If the Gini coefficient is equal to zero, income is distributed in a perfectly equal manner, in other words there is no variance between the high- and low-income earners within the population. In contrast, if the Gini coefficient equals 1, income is completely inequitable, i.e., one individual in the population is earning all the income and the rest has no income. Generally, this coefficient lies in the range between 0.25 and 0.70.

**CHART 26. GINI COEFFICIENT - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [NUMBER]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2021, the Gini coefficient in Polokwane Local Municipality was at 0.61, which reflects a decrease in the number over the ten-year period from 2011 to 2021. The Capricorn District Municipality and the Limpopo Province had a Gini coefficient of 0.60 and 0.60 respectively. When Polokwane Local Municipality is contrasted against the entire South Africa, it can be seen that Polokwane has a more equal income distribution with a lower Gini coefficient compared to the South African coefficient of 0.63 in 2021. This has been the case for the entire 10-year history.

**TABLE 28. GINI COEFFICIENT BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE, 2011, 2021 [NUMBER]**

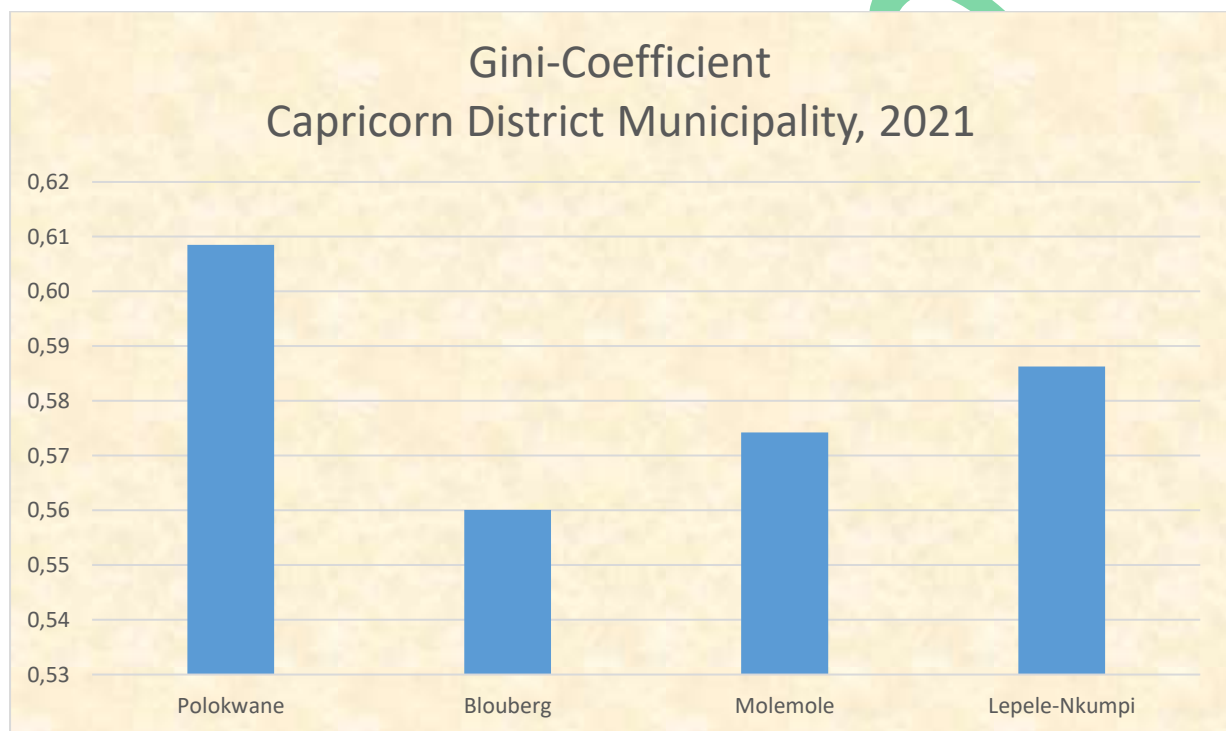
Financial Year	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2011	0.60	0.41	0.56	0.50
2021	0.59	0.42	0.52	0.48
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>				
2011-2021	<b>-0.25%</b>	<b>0.14%</b>	<b>-0.65%</b>	<b>-0.36%</b>

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

When segmenting the Polokwane Local Municipality into population groups, it can be seen that the Gini coefficient for the African population group decreased the least amongst the population groups with an average annual growth rate of -0.25%. The White population group

had the highest average annual growth of 0.14% from 2011 to 2021. The Gini coefficient for the Coloured population group decreased the most with an average annual growth rate of -0.65%. This implies that the African and Coloured population groups have not improved in terms of income equality within its own population group over the period. The Asian population group has seen no change in terms of income equality and the White population group has seen an improvement in income equality from 2011 to 2021.

**CHART 27. GINI COEFFICIENT - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2021 [NUMBER]**

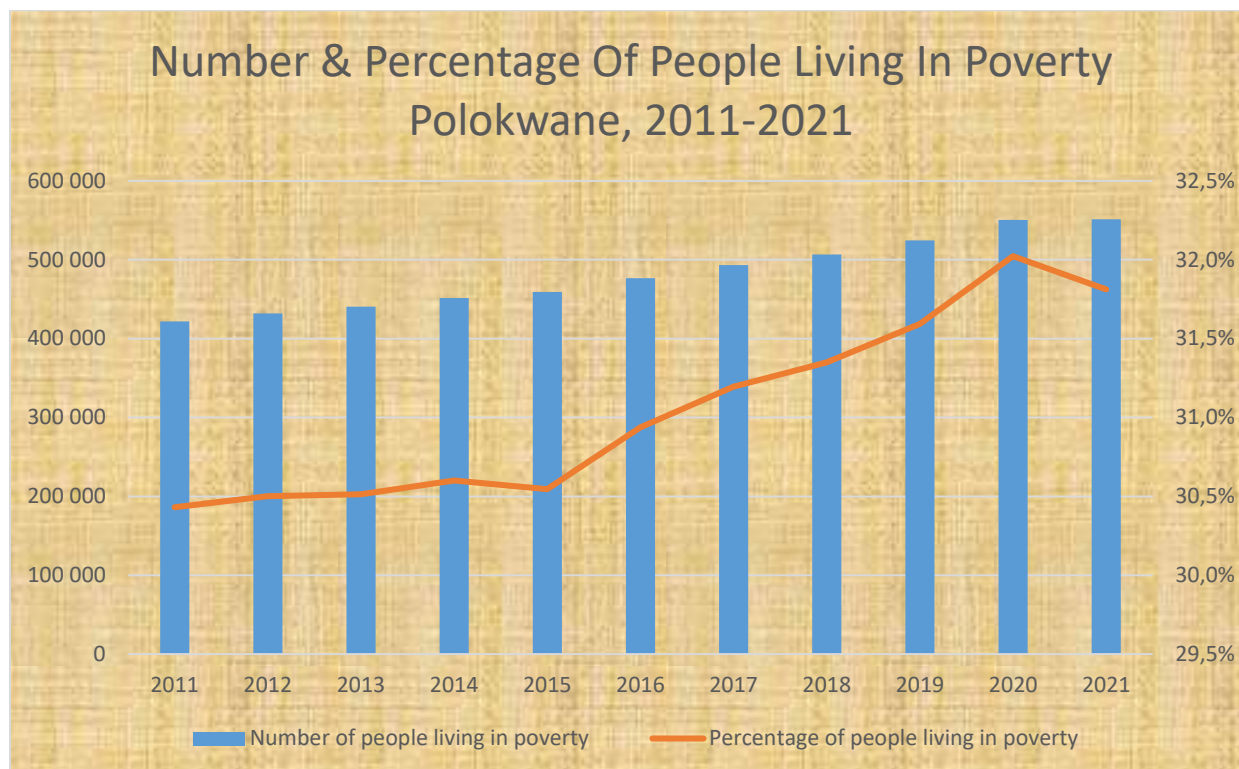


**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In terms of the Gini coefficient for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest Gini coefficient, with an index value of 0.61. The lowest Gini coefficient can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with an index value of 0.56.

#### **4.8.3 Poverty**

**CHART 28. NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2021, there were 514 477 people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition, across Polokwane Local Municipality - this is 129 422 higher than the 454 943 in 2011. The percentage of people living in poverty has increased from 30.4% in 2011 to 31.8% in 2021, which indicates an increase of 1.40 percentage points.

**TABLE 29. PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**

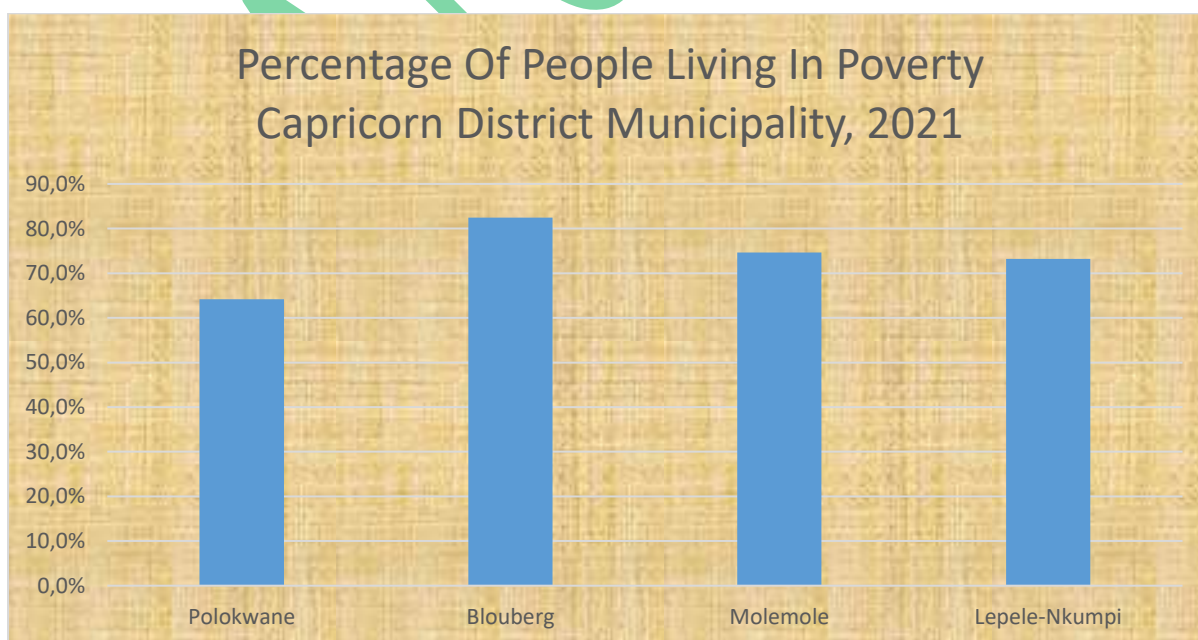
Financial year	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2011	60.3%	1.1%	28.0%	7.1%
2012	60.7%	1.1%	30.1%	7.3%
2013	60.8%	1.2%	31.6%	7.3%
2014	61.3%	1.3%	33.2%	7.3%
2015	61.2%	1.3%	35.2%	7.1%

Financial year	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2016	62.5%	1.6%	38.0%	8.8%
2017	63.7%	1.7%	38.1%	10.8%
2018	64.4%	1.9%	36.5%	13.6%
2019	65.6%	2.3%	34.2%	18.8%
2020	67.9%	3.0%	33.0%	23.0%
2021	67.2%	3.0%	30.1%	20.6%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2021

In 2021, the population group with the highest percentage of people living in poverty was the African population group with a total of 67.2% people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition. The proportion of the African population group, living in poverty, increased by 6.90 percentage points, as can be seen by the change from 60.3% in 2011 to 67.2% in 2021. In 2021 30.1% of the Coloured population group lived in poverty, as compared to the 28.0% in 2011. The White and the Asian population group saw an increase in the percentage of people living in poverty, with an increase of 1.90 and an increase of 13.5 percentage points respectively.

**TABLE 30. PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

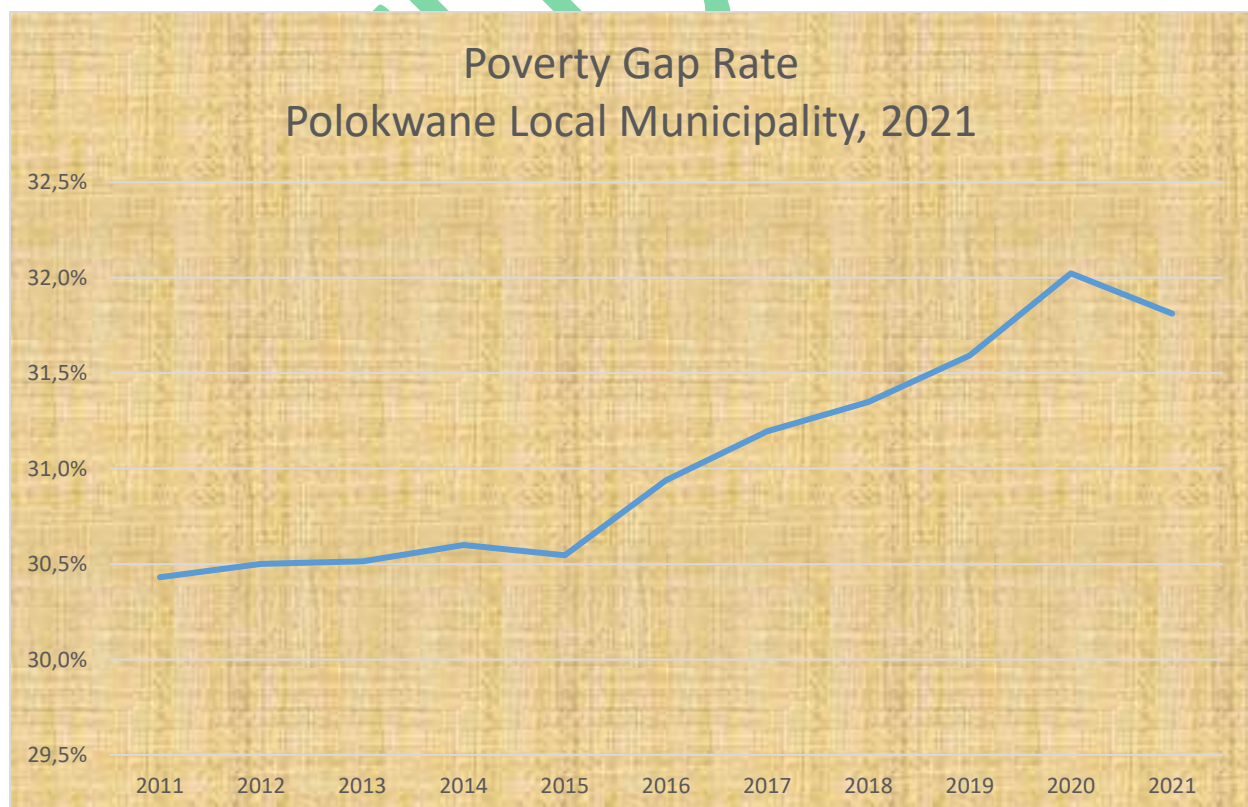
In terms of the percentage of people living in poverty for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Blouberg Local Municipality has the highest percentage of people living in poverty, with a total of 82.5%. The lowest percentage of people living in poverty can be observed in the Polokwane Local Municipality with a total of 64.1% living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition

#### 4.8.3 Poverty Gap Rate

The poverty gap is used as an indicator to measure the depth of poverty. The gap measures the average distance of the population from the poverty line and is expressed as a percentage of the upper bound poverty line, as defined by StatsSA. The Poverty Gap deals with a major shortcoming of the poverty rate, which does not give any indication of the depth, of poverty. The upper poverty line is defined by StatsSA as the level of consumption at which individuals are able to purchase both sufficient food and non-food items without sacrificing one for the other.

It is estimated that the poverty gap rate in Polokwane Local Municipality amounted to 31.8% in 2021 - the rate needed to bring all poor households up to the poverty line and out of poverty.

**TABLE 31. POVERTY GAP RATE BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**

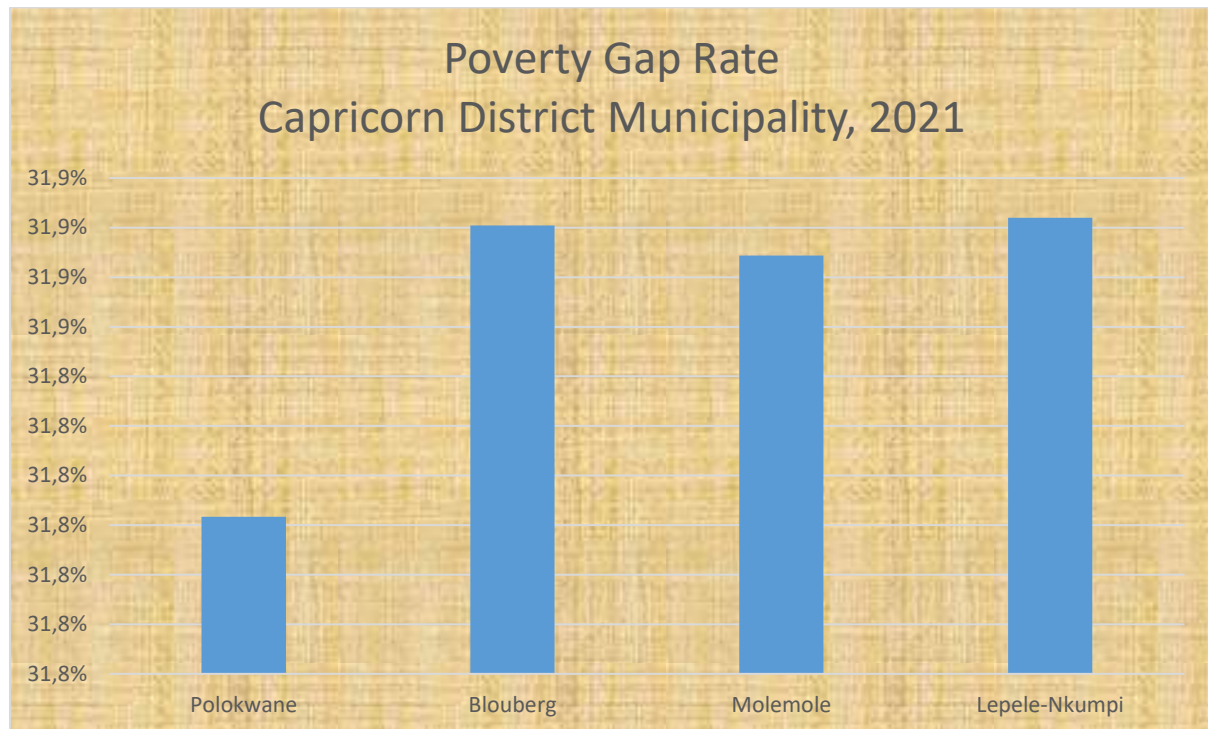


Source: IHS Global Insight 2022



In 2021, the poverty gap rate was 31.8% and in 2011 the poverty gap rate was 30.4%. It can be seen that the poverty gap rate increased from 2011 to 2021, which means that there was an increase in terms of the depth of the poverty within Polokwane Local Municipality.

**TABLE 32. POVERTY GAP RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In terms of the poverty gap rate for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Blouberg Local Municipality and Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality share the highest poverty gap rate, with a rate value of 31.9% and 31.9% respectively. The lowest poverty gap rate can be observed in the Polokwane Local Municipality with a total of 31.8%.

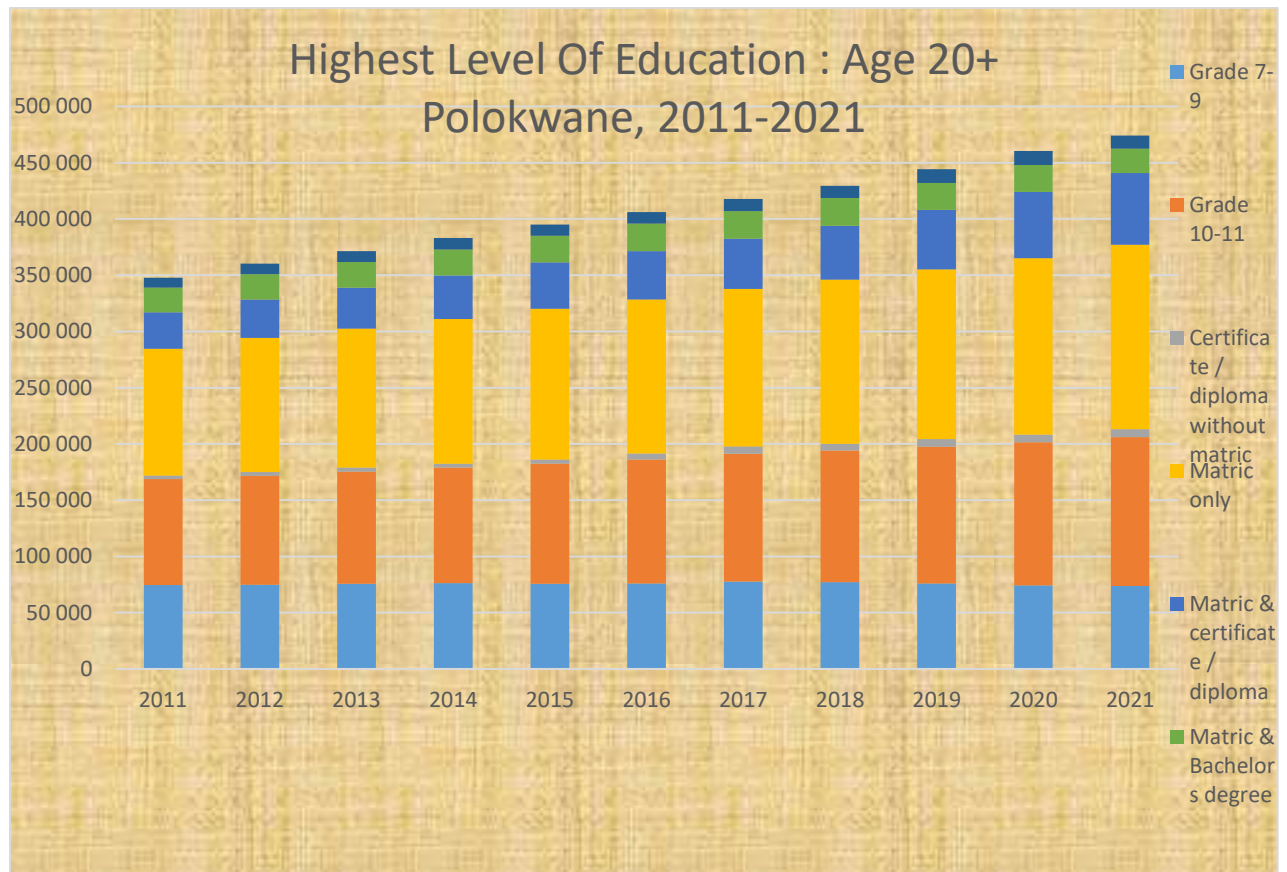
#### **4.8.4 Education**

Educating is important to the economic growth in a country and the development of its industries, providing a trained workforce and skilled professionals required.

The education measure represents the highest level of education of an individual, using the 15 years and older age category. (According to the United Nations definition of education, one is an adult when 15 years or older. IHS uses this cut-off point to allow for cross-country

comparisons. Furthermore, the age of 15 is also the legal age at which children may leave school in South Africa).

**CHART 29. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 20+ - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Within Polokwane Local Municipality, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2011 to 2021 with an average annual rate of -3.82%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 112 759 to 163 908. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 7.00%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of -0.13%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

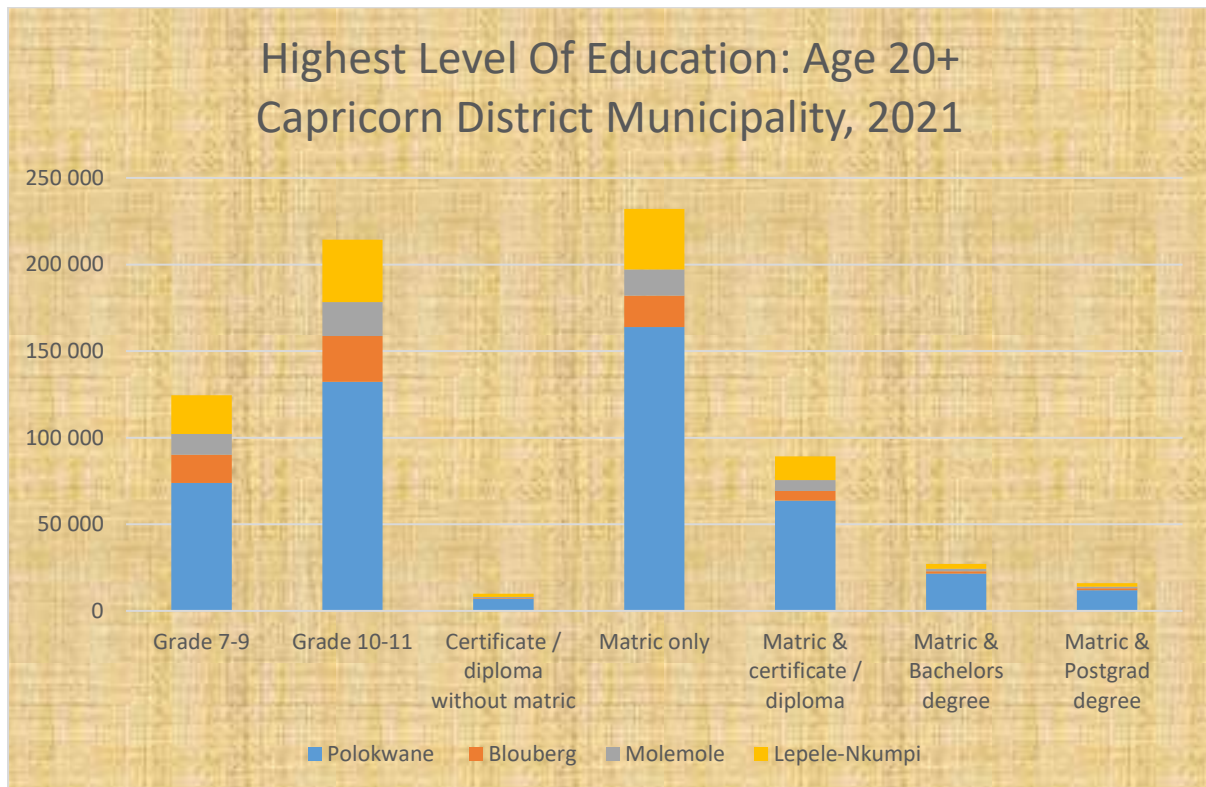
**TABLE 33. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2021 [NUMBERS]**

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of district	Polokwane as % of province	Polokwane as % of national
<b>No schooling</b>	20,455	48,529	256,016	1,444,565	42.15%	7.99%	1.42%
<b>Grade 0-2</b>	5,285	9,443	50,024	432,804	55.97%	10.57%	1.22%
<b>Grade 3-6</b>	28,473	50,938	241,425	2,598,612	55.90%	11.79%	1.10%
<b>Grade 7-9</b>	73,818	124,583	583,919	5,783,491	59.25%	12.64%	1.28%
<b>Grade 10-11</b>	132,332	214,438	1,015,843	9,785,628	61.71%	13.03%	1.35%
<b>Certificate / diploma without matric</b>	6,892	9,895	33,081	169,179	69.64%	20.83%	4.07%
<b>Matric only</b>	163,908	232,100	892,454	12,974,900	70.62%	18.37%	1.26%
<b>Matric &amp; certificate / diploma</b>	63,726	89,155	302,954	2,705,345	71.48%	21.03%	2.36%
<b>Matric &amp; Bachelors degree</b>	21,657	27,063	80,388	1,558,606	80.02%	26.94%	1.39%
<b>Matric &amp; Postgrad degree</b>	11,887	16,071	49,909	956,828	73.97%	23.82%	1.24%

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The number of people without any schooling in Polokwane Local Municipality accounts for 42.15% of the number of people without schooling in the district municipality, 7.99% of the province and 1.42% of the national. In 2021, the number of people in Polokwane Local Municipality with a matric only was 163,908 which is a share of 70.62% of the district municipality's total number of people that has obtained a matric. The number of people with a matric and a Postgrad degree constitutes 73.97% of the district municipality, 23.82% of the province and 1.24% of the national.

**TABLE 34. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+, POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

#### 4.8.5 Functional literacy

Functional literacy describes the reading and writing skills that are adequate for an individual to cope with the demands of everyday life - including the demands posed in the workplace. This is contrasted with illiteracy in the strictest sense, meaning the inability to read or write. Functional literacy enables individuals to enter the labour market and contribute towards economic growth thereby reducing poverty.

**TABLE 35. FUNCTIONAL LITERACY: AGE 20+, COMPLETED GRADE 7 OR HIGHER - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]**

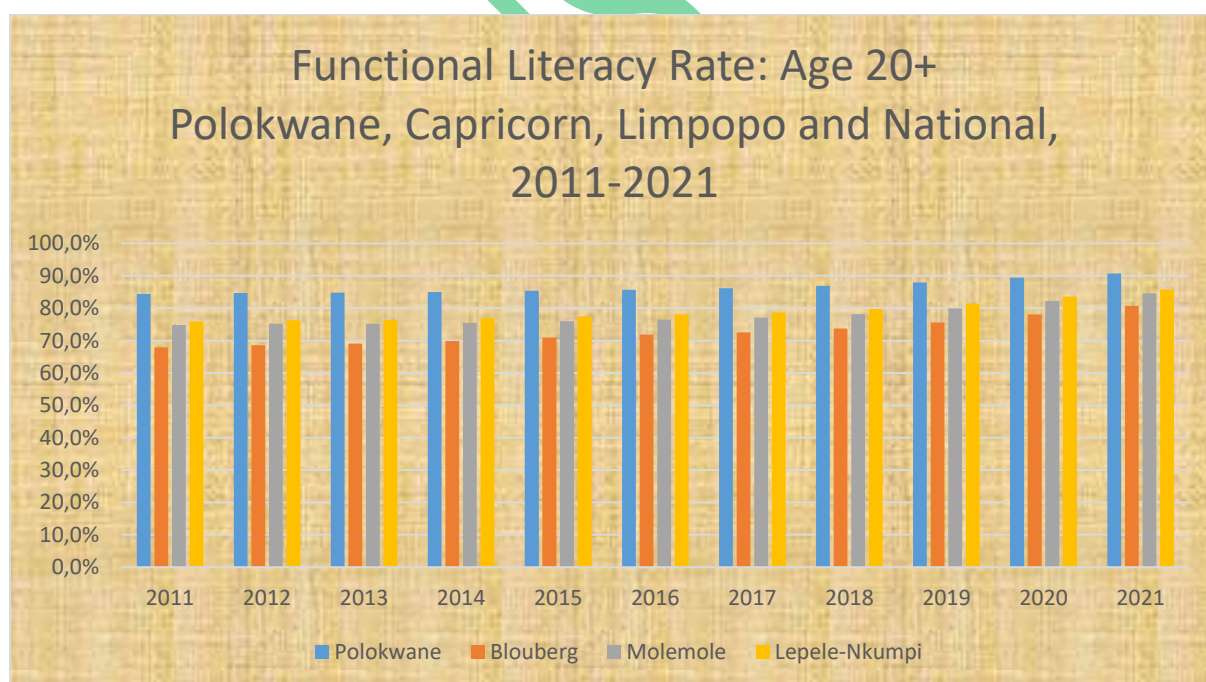
Financial Year	Illiterate	Literate	%
2011	79,686	430,475	84.4%
2012	79,538	440,223	84.7%
2013	80,501	448,377	84.8%
2014	80,630	458,180	85.0%
2015	80,187	468,762	85.4%
2016	79,727	478,442	85.7%

Financial Year	Illiterate	Literate	%
2017	78,428	488,361	86.2%
2018	75,790	499,961	86.8%
2019	70,461	515,139	88.0%
2020	63,225	532,896	89.4%
2021	55,958	549,723	90.8%
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>			
<b>2011-2021</b>	<b>-3.47%</b>	<b>2.48%</b>	<b>0.73%</b>

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2021**

A total of 549 723 individuals in Polokwane Local Municipality were considered functionally literate in 2021, while 55 958 people were considered to be illiterate. Expressed as a rate, this amounts to 90.8% of the population, which is an increase of 6.40 percentage points since 2011 (84.4%). The percentage of illiterate individuals decreased on average by -3.47% annually from 2011 to 2021, with the percentage of functional literate people increasing at 2.48% annually.

**CHART 30. FUNCTIONAL LITERACY: AGE 20+, COMPLETED GRADE 7 OR HIGHER - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2010-2020 [PERCENTAGE]**

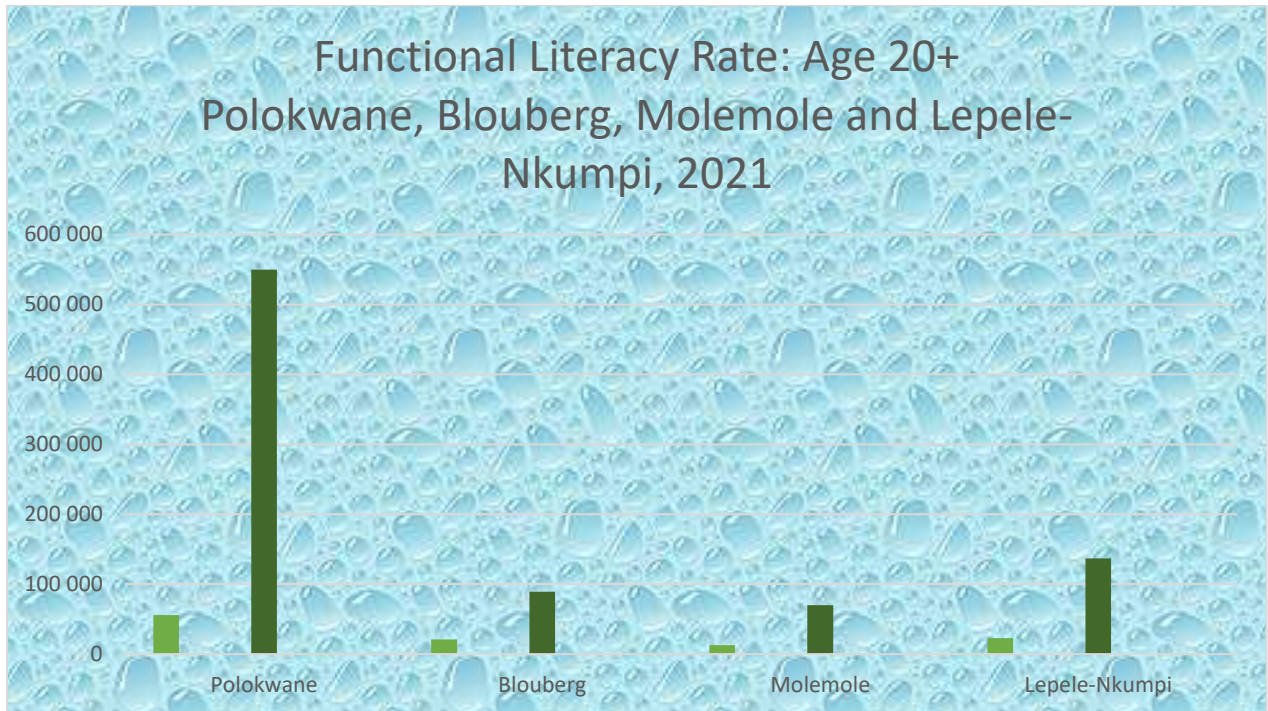


**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Polokwane Local Municipality's functional literacy rate of 90.8% in 2021 is higher than that of Capricorn at 88.2% and is higher than the province rate of 86.0%. When comparing to National Total as whole, which has a functional literacy rate of 89.1%, it can be seen that the functional literacy rate is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.



**CHART 31. LITERACY RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**

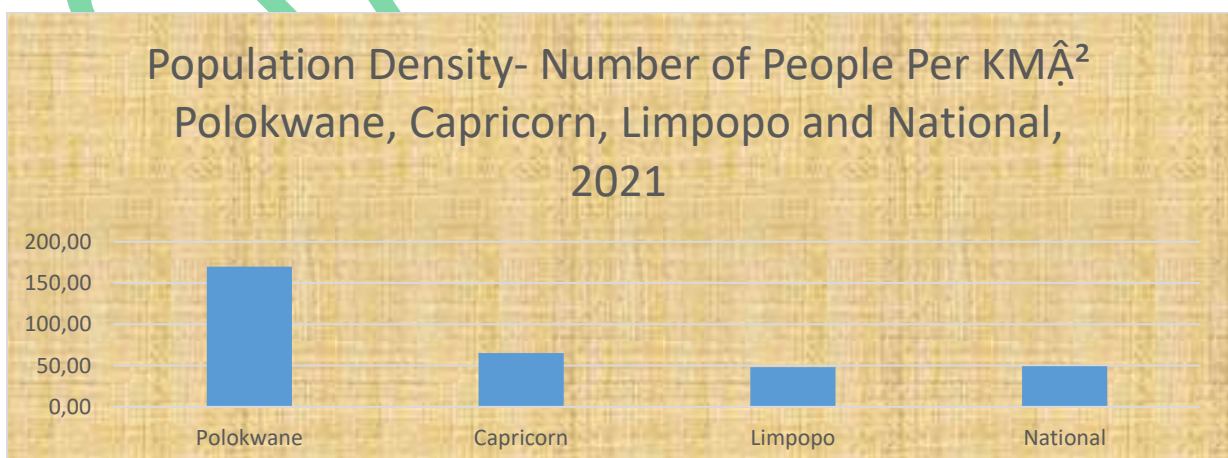


**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In terms of the literacy rate for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest literacy rate, with a total of 90.8%. The lowest literacy rate can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with a total of 80.8%.

#### 4.8.6 Population Density

**CHART 32. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2021 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM<sup>2</sup>]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**



In 2021, with an average of 170.11 people per square kilometer, Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher population density than Capricorn (65.19 people per square kilometer). Compared to Limpopo Province (48.31 per square kilometer) it can be seen that there are more people living per square kilometer in Polokwane Local Municipality than in Limpopo Province.

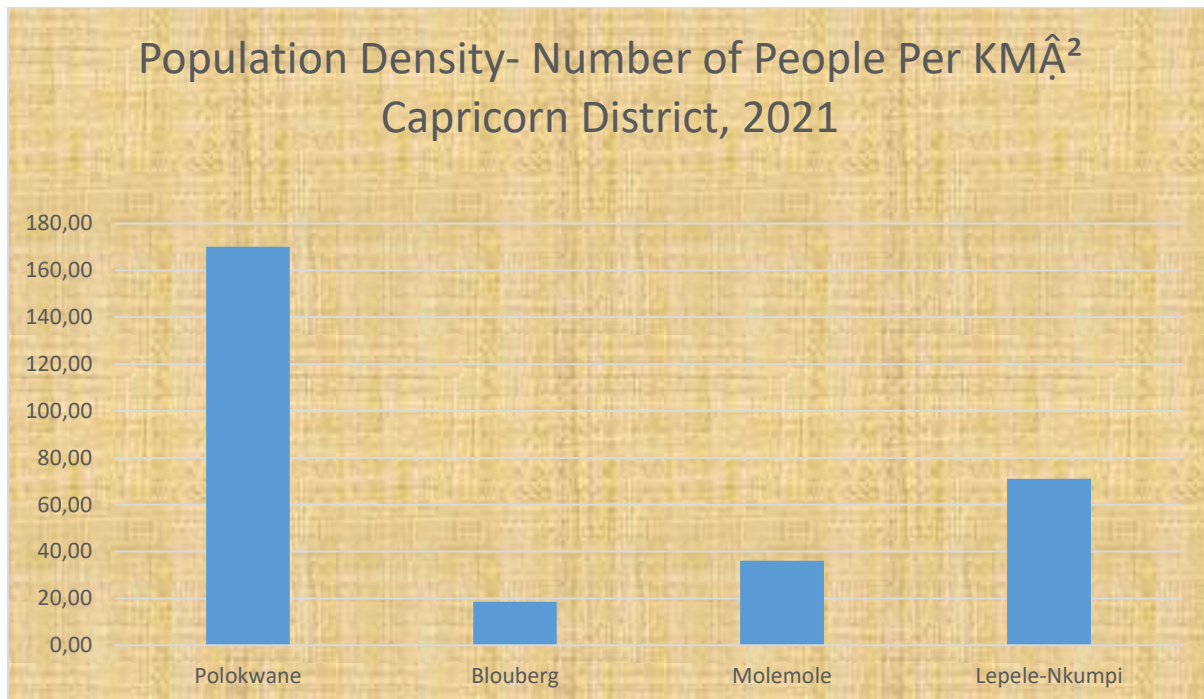
**CHART 33. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2011-2021 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2011	146.30	18.56	35.14	66.86
2012	148.64	18.41	34.99	66.93
2013	151.06	18.31	34.92	67.12
2014	153.55	18.25	34.93	67.43
2015	156.12	18.23	34.99	67.84
2016	158.61	18.22	35.10	68.28
2017	161.08	18.25	35.24	68.79
2018	163.48	18.30	35.43	69.35
2019	165.85	18.38	35.65	69.93
2020	168.18	18.48	35.89	70.53
2021	170.11	18.55	36.08	71.04
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>				
<b>2011-2021</b>	<b>1.52%</b>	<b>0.00%</b>	<b>0.26%</b>	<b>0.61%</b>

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2021, Polokwane Local Municipality had a population density of 170.11 per square kilometre and it ranked the highest amongst its peers. In terms of growth, Polokwane Local Municipality had an average annual growth in its population density of 1.52% per square kilometre annually. It was also the region that had the highest average annual growth rate. In 2021, the region with the lowest population density within Capricorn District Municipality was Blouberg with 18.55 people per square kilometre; it was also the region with the lowest average annual growth rate of 0.00% people per square kilometre over the period under discussion.

**CHART 34. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In terms of the population density for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest density, with 170.11 people per square kilometre. The lowest population density can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with a total of 18.55 people per square kilometre.

#### **4.9 Crime Rate**

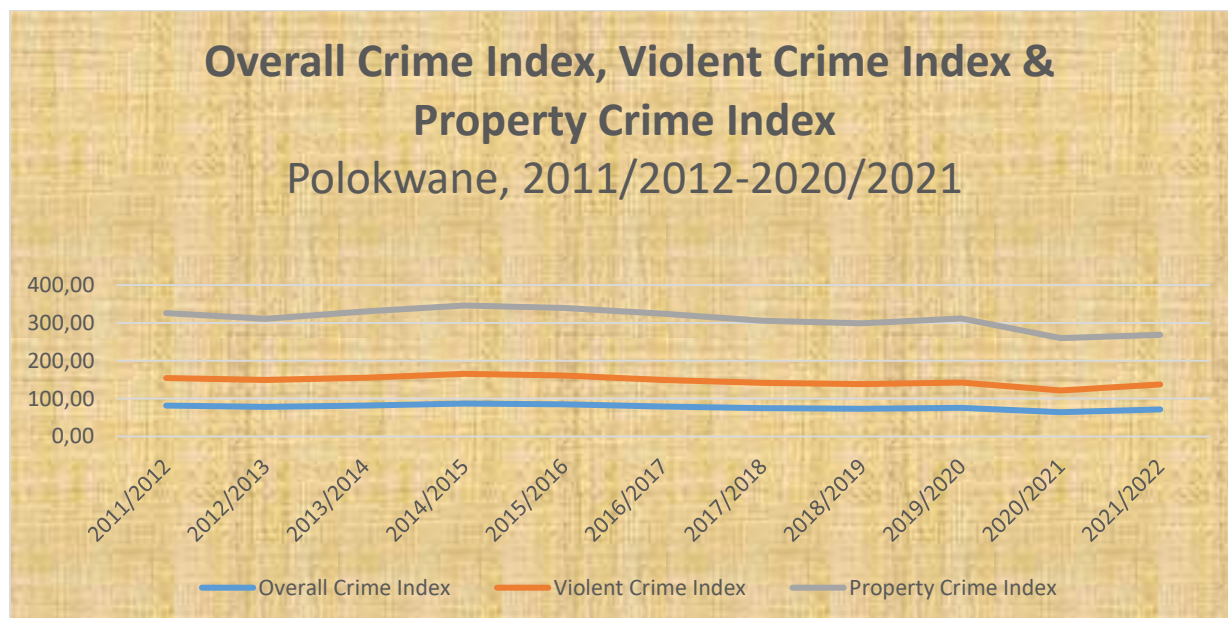
The state of crime in South Africa has been the topic of many media articles and papers in the past years, and although many would acknowledge that the country has a crime problem, very little research has been done on the relative level of crime. The media often tend to focus on more negative or sensational information, while the progress made in combating crime is neglected.

##### **4.9.1 IHS Composite Crime Index**

The IHS Composite Crime Index makes use of the official SAPS data, which is reported in 27 crime categories (ranging from murder to crime injuries). These 27 categories are divided into two groups according to the nature of the crime: i.e. violent crimes and property crimes. IHS uses the (a) Length-of-sentence and the (b) Cost-of-crime in order to apply a weight to each category.

#### 4.9.2 Overall crime index

**CHART 35. IHS CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011/2012-2020/2021 [INDEX VALUE]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

For the period 2011/2012 to 2021/2022 overall crime has decreased at an average annual rate of -1.29% within the Polokwane Local Municipality. Violent crime increased by -1.02% since 2020/2022, while property crimes increased by -2.64% between the 2011/2012 and 2021/2022 financial years.

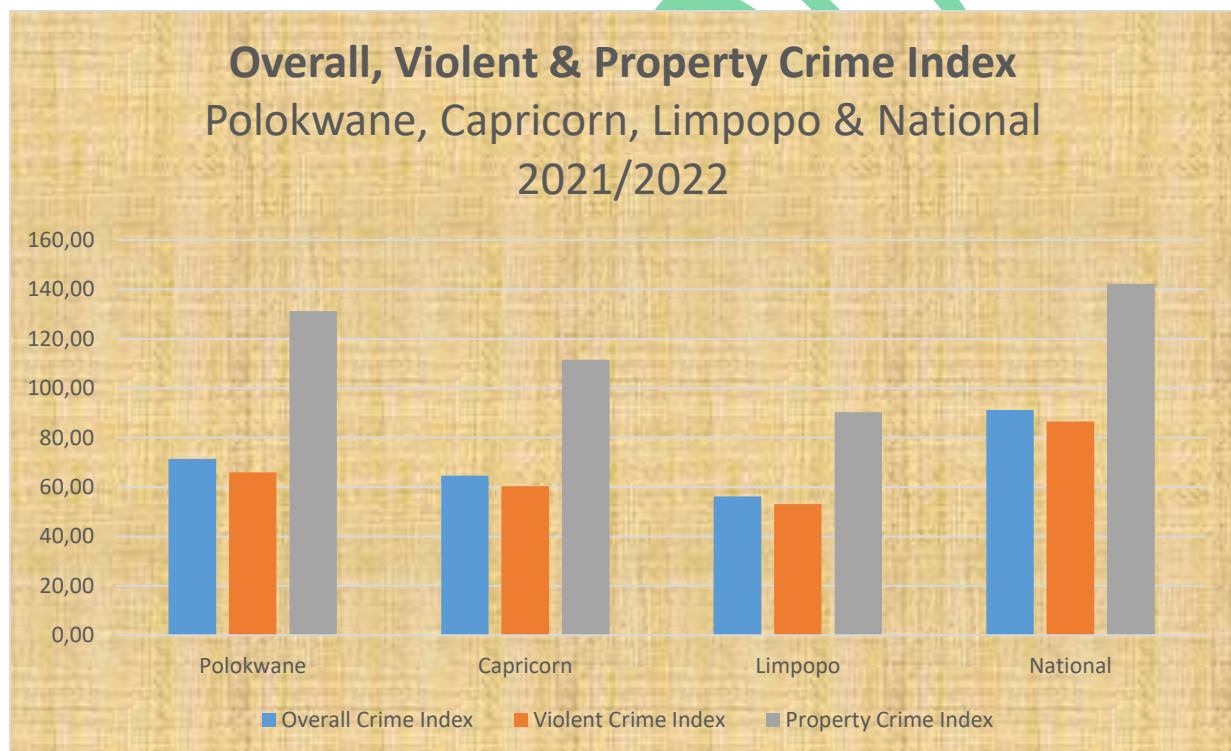
**TABLE 36. OVERALL CRIME INDEX - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2011/2012-2021/2022 [INDEX VALUE]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2011/2012	81.27	35.70	66.81	56.23
2012/2013	78.59	31.78	64.42	49.86
2013/2014	81.71	28.65	64.55	48.76
2014/2015	87.00	30.61	66.27	53.06
2015/2016	84.72	33.60	73.09	60.36
2016/2017	79.03	31.73	69.33	52.16
2017/2018	74.87	35.86	68.73	52.95
2018/2019	73.02	37.59	77.13	54.72
2019/2020	75.49	36.06	78.95	53.86
2020/2021	64.15	30.79	65.15	53.82
2021/2022	71.40	39.06	73.38	54.67
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>				
2011-2022	-1.29%	0.90%	0.94%	-0.28%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In 2021/2022, the Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest overall crime rate of the sub-regions within the overall Capricorn District Municipality with an index value of 71.40. Molemole Local Municipality has the second highest overall crime index at 73.38, with Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality having the third highest overall crime index of 54.67. Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality has the second lowest overall crime index of 54.67 and the Blouberg Local Municipality has the lowest overall crime rate of 39.06. The region that increased slightly in overall crime since 2011/2012 was Molemole Local Municipality with an average annual increase of 0.94% followed by Blouberg Local Municipality with a moderate average annual increase of 0.90%.

**CHART 36. IHS CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2021/2022 [INDEX VALUE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

From the chart above it is evident that property crime is a major problem for all the regions relative to violent crime.

#### **4.10 Tourism**

Tourism can be defined as the non-commercial organisation plus operation of vacations and visits to a place of interest. Whether you visit a relative or friend, travel for business purposes, go on holiday or on medical and religious trips - these are all included in tourism.

#### 4.10.1 Trips by purpose of trips

The main purpose for an overnight trip is grouped into these categories:

- Leisure / Holiday
- Business
- Visits to friends and relatives
- Other (Medical, Religious, etc.)

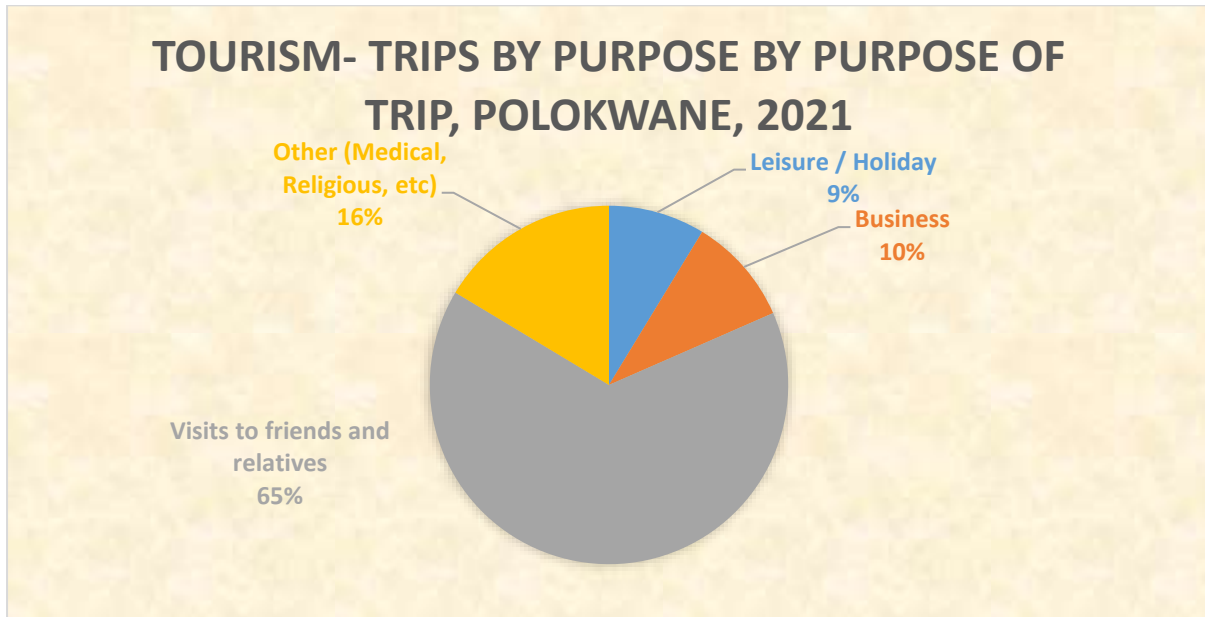
TABLE 37. NUMBER OF TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIPS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2010-2020 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Leisure / Holiday	Business	Visits to friends and relatives	Other (Medical, Religious, etc)	Total
2011	131,262	93,926	730,462	315,655	1,271,304
2012	124,754	103,902	755,191	346,235	1,330,083
2013	110,189	104,969	781,840	390,124	1,387,122
2014	96,179	102,310	819,454	413,796	1,431,740
2015	83,912	100,539	835,095	420,339	1,439,885
2016	83,765	106,986	849,670	433,715	1,474,136
2017	91,243	106,516	829,804	421,762	1,449,324
2018	103,377	105,524	814,047	374,568	1,397,516
2019	119,237	98,725	808,760	318,668	1,345,389
2020	73,147	67,785	402,661	129,309	672,901
2021	52,605	58,759	393,772	98,986	604,122
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>					
2011-2021	<b>-8.74%</b>	<b>-4.58%</b>	<b>-5.99%</b>	<b>-10.95%</b>	<b>-7.17%</b>

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In Polokwane Local Municipality, the Visits to friends and relatives, relative to the other tourism, recorded the highest average annual growth rate from 2011 (730 462) to 2021 (393 772) at -5.99%. Business recorded the lowest number of visits in 2021 at 58 759, with an average annual growth rate of -4.58%. The tourism type that recorded the lowest growth was Leisure/ holiday tourism with an average annual growth rate of -8.74% from 2011 (131 262) to 2021 (52 605). Other (Medical, Religion, etc.) recorded 604 122 visits in 2021 with an average annual growth of -7.17 from 2011 (127 1304).

**CHART 37. TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The Visits to friends and relatives at 65% have largest share of the total tourism within Polokwane Local Municipality. Other (Medical, Religious, etc.) tourism had the second highest share at 16%, followed by Leisure / Holiday tourism at 9% and the Business tourism with the smallest share of 10% of the total tourism within Polokwane Local Municipality.

#### **4.10.2 Origin of Tourists**

In the following table, the number of tourists that visited Polokwane Local Municipality from both domestic origins, as well as those coming from international places, are listed.



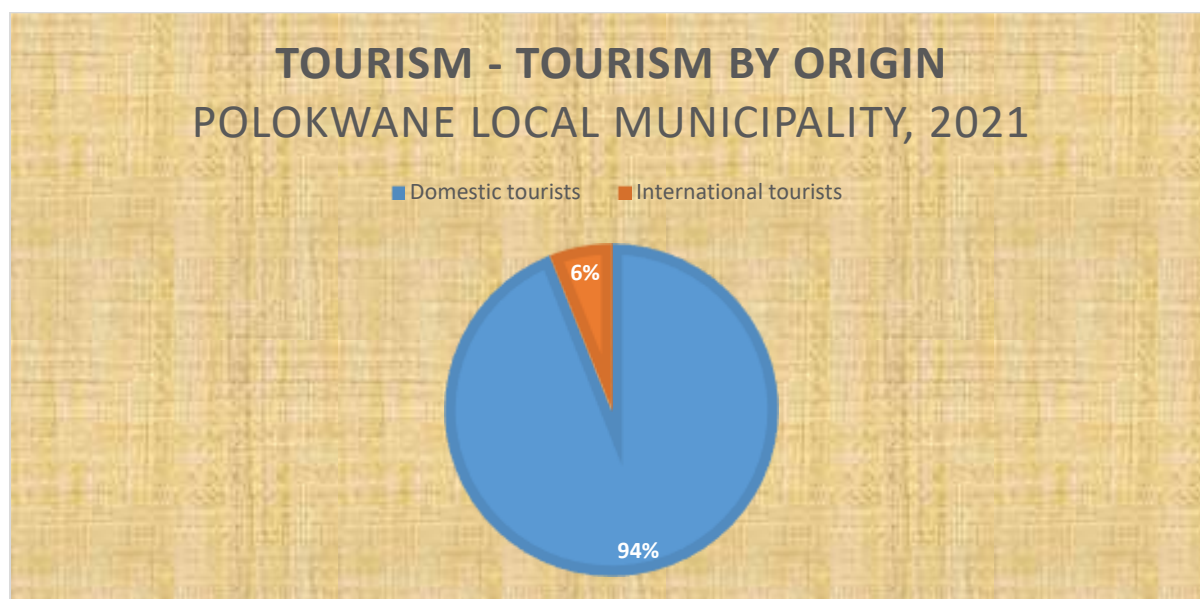
**TABLE 38. TOTAL NUMBER OF TRIPS BY ORIGIN TOURISTS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [NUMBER]**

Financial Year	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2011	1,152,329	118,975	1,271,304
2012	1,196,518	133,565	1,330,083
2013	1,249,492	137,630	1,387,122
2014	1,293,322	138,418	1,431,740
2015	1,312,390	127,494	1,439,885
2016	1,328,736	145,400	1,474,136
2017	1,297,444	151,880	1,449,324
2018	1,240,081	157,436	1,397,516
2019	1,191,197	154,192	1,345,389
2020	622,618	50,283	672,901
2021	567,783	36,339	604,122
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>			
2011-2021	-6.83%	-11.18%	-7.17%

**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

The number of trips by tourists visiting Polokwane Local Municipality from other regions in South Africa has decreased at a very low average annual rate of -6.83% from 2011 (1 152 329) to 2021 (567 783). The tourists visiting from other countries decreased at a relatively high average annual growth rate of -11.18% (from 118 975 in 2011 to 36 339 in 2021). In 2021 International tourists constitute -7.17% of the total number of trips, with domestic tourism representing the balance of 93.98%.

**CHART 38. TOURISTS BY ORIGIN - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2021  
[PERCENTAGE]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

#### 4.10.3 Bed nights by origin of tourist

A bed night is the tourism industry measurement of one night away from home on a single person trip. The following is a summary of the number of bed nights spent by domestic and international tourist within Polokwane Local Municipality between 2011 and 2021.

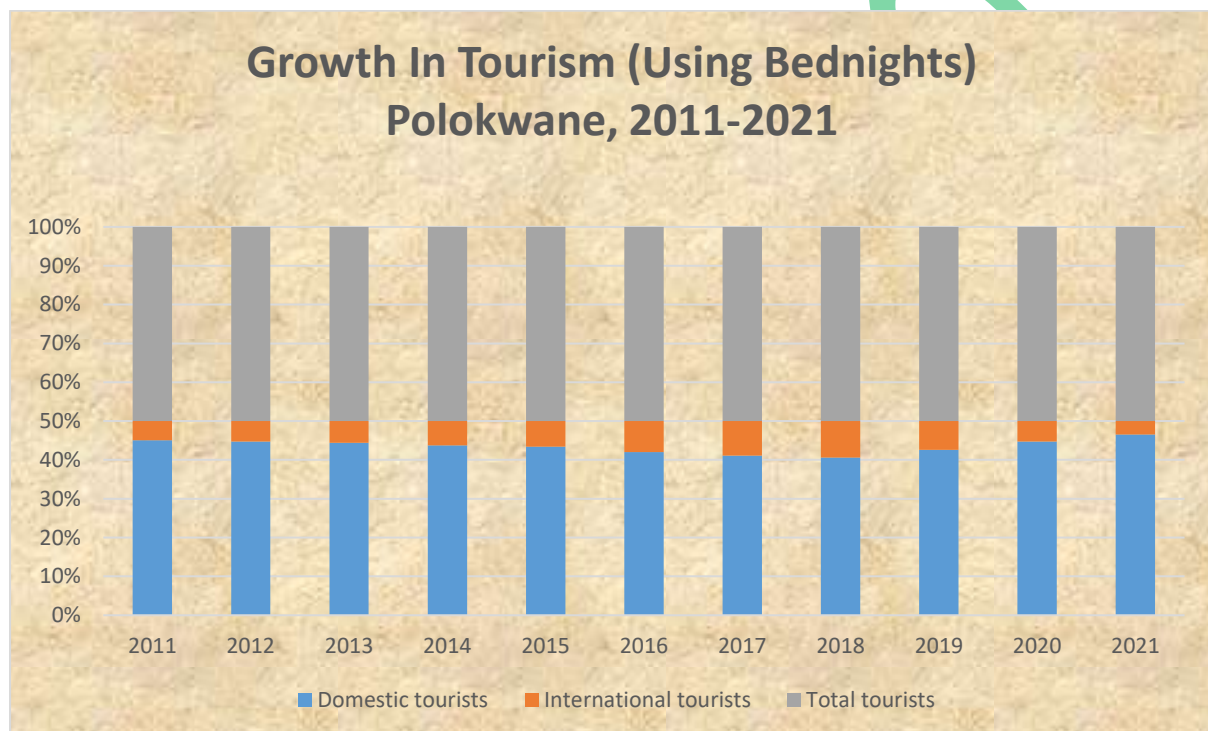
**TABLE 39. BEDNIGHTS BY ORIGIN OF TOURIST - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [NUMBER]**

Financial Year	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2011	3,524,057	388,786	3,912,843
2012	3,368,901	395,991	3,764,892
2013	3,238,707	408,699	3,647,406
2014	3,147,686	452,777	3,600,464
2015	3,108,847	471,163	3,580,011
2016	3,128,670	596,687	3,725,356
2017	3,073,118	663,889	3,737,008
2018	2,915,951	670,073	3,586,025
2019	3,436,861	596,003	4,032,864
2020	1,455,949	169,853	1,625,801
2021	1,575,150	115,773	1,690,923
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>			
2011-2021	-7.74%	-11.41%	-8.05%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

From 2011 to 2021, the number of bed nights spent by domestic tourists has decreased by an average annual rate of -7.74%, while in the same period the international tourists had an average annual decrease of -11.41%. The total number of bed nights spent by tourists decreased at an average annual growth rate of -8.05% from 3.9 million in 2011 to 1.6 million in 2021.

**CHART 39. GROWTH IN TOURISM (USING BEDNIGHTS) BY ORIGIN - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [NUMBER]**



Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

#### 4.10.4 Tourism spending

It is important to note that this type of spending differs from the concept of contribution to GDP. Tourism spending merely represents a nominal spend of trips made to each region.

**TABLE 40. TOTAL TOURISM SPENDING - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2011	3,929,630	4,808,487	13,534,637	205,797,354
2012	4,682,549	5,707,770	15,848,157	229,814,599
2013	5,261,693	6,385,143	17,428,230	253,328,244
2014	5,821,866	7,212,210	19,109,439	275,442,708
2015	5,245,171	6,491,405	17,487,001	253,885,070
2016	5,894,171	7,266,702	19,162,056	277,552,316
2017	5,505,982	6,755,917	18,111,414	264,008,625
2018	6,394,670	7,673,197	20,530,050	291,131,895
2019	9,857,762	11,648,121	30,429,835	406,184,692
2020	1,975,235	2,459,623	9,039,028	131,051,777
2021	4,294,484	5,314,661	18,774,244	296,534,867
<b>Average Annual Growth</b>				
2011-2021	<b>0.89%</b>	<b>1.01%</b>	<b>3.33%</b>	<b>3.72%</b>

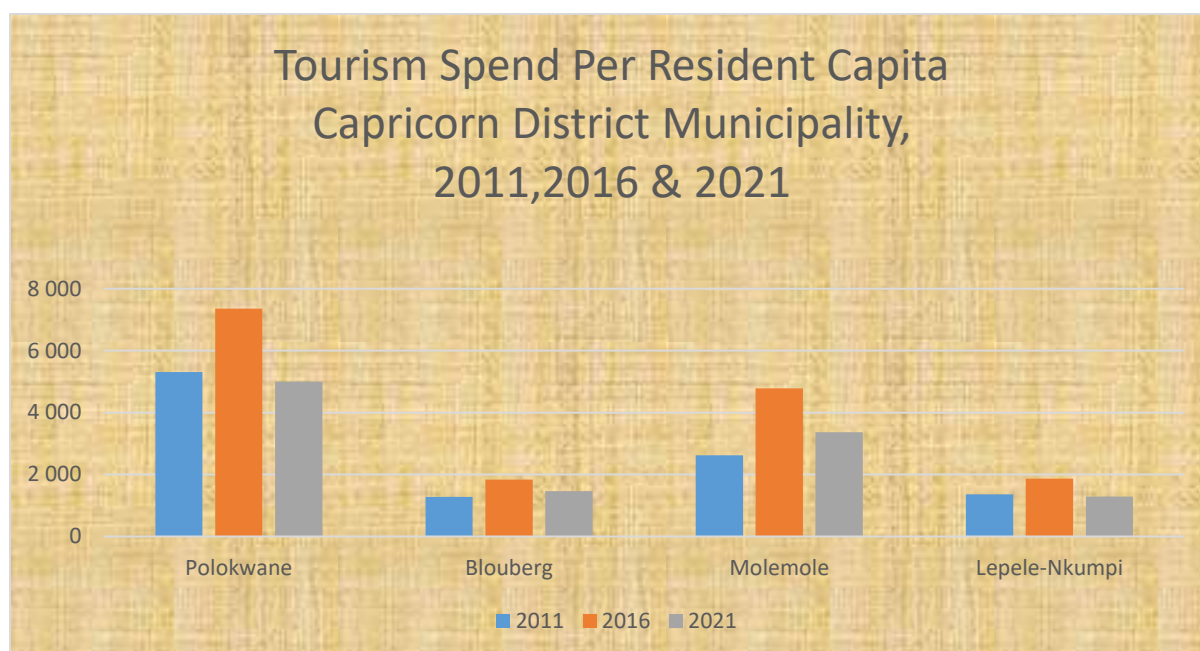
Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

Polokwane Local Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 4.2 billion in 2021 with an increase in average annual growth rate of 0.89% since 2011 (R 3.9 billion). Capricorn District Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 5.3 billion in 2021 and an average annual growth rate of 1.01% over the period. Total spending in Limpopo Province increased from R 13.5 billion in 2011 to R 18.7 billion in 2021 at an average annual rate of 3.33%. South Africa as whole had an average annual rate of 3.72% and increased from R 205.7 billion in 2011 to R 296.5 billion in 2021.

#### 4.10.5 Tourism Spend Per Resident Capita

Another interesting topic to look at is tourism spending per resident capita. To calculate this, the total amount of tourism spending in the region is divided by the number of residents living within that region. This gives a relative indication of how important tourism is for a particular area.

**CHART 40. TOURISM SPEND PER RESIDENT CAPITA - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2011,2016 AND 2021 [R THOUSANDS]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

In 2021, Polokwane Local Municipality had a tourism spend per capita of R 4995 and an average annual growth rate of -0.62%, Polokwane Local Municipality ranked highest amongst all the regions within Capricorn in terms of tourism spend per capita. The local municipality that ranked lowest in terms of tourism spend per capita is Lepele-Nkumpi with a total of R 1292 which reflects a decrease at an average annual rate of -0.55% from 2011.

#### **4.10.6 Tourism Spend as a Share of GDP**

This measure presents tourism spending as a percentage of the GDP of a region. It provides a gauge of how important tourism is to the local economy. An important note about this variable is that it does not reflect what is spent in the tourism industry of that region, but only what is spent by tourists visiting that region as their main destination.

**TABLE 41. TOTAL SPENDING AS % SHARE OF GDP - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2021 [PERCENTAGE]**

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2011	7.2%	6.7%	5.9%	6.2%
2012	7.9%	7.3%	6.5%	6.4%
2013	8.1%	7.5%	6.6%	6.5%
2014	8.3%	7.9%	6.8%	6.7%
2015	6.9%	6.6%	5.9%	5.7%

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
2016	7.1%	6.7%	5.9%	5.8%
2017	6.2%	5.8%	5.2%	5.2%
2018	6.7%	6.2%	5.5%	5.4%
2019	9.9%	9.1%	7.8%	7.2%
2020	2.0%	1.9%	2.3%	2.4%
2021	3.7%	3.6%	4.0%	4.8%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022

In Polokwane Local Municipality the tourism spending as a percentage of GDP in 2021 was 3.7%. Tourism spending as a percentage of GDP for 2021 was 3.6% in Capricorn District Municipality, 4.0% in Limpopo Province. Looking at South Africa as a whole, it can be seen that total tourism spending had a total percentage share of GDP of 4.8%.

#### 4.11 International Trade

Trade is defined as the act of buying and selling, with international trade referring to buying and selling across international border, more generally called importing and exporting. The Trade Balance is calculated by subtracting imports from exports.

##### 4.11.1 Relative Importance of international Trade

In the table below, the Polokwane Local Municipality is compared to Capricorn, Limpopo Province and South Africa, in terms of actual imports and exports, the Trade Balance, as well the contribution to GDP and the region's contribution to total national exports and imports.

**TABLE 42. MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2021 [R 1000, CURRENT PRICES]**

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total
Exports (R 1000)	1,631,442	1,760,072	32,068,104	1,810,179,453
Imports (R 1000)	425,612	464,155	2,383,400	1,328,526,000
Total Trade (R 1000)	2,057,053	2,224,227	34,451,504	3,138,705,453
Trade Balance (R 1000)	1,205,830	1,295,918	29,684,704	481,653,453
Exports as % of GDP	1.4%	1.2%	6.8%	29.1%
Total trade as % of GDP	1.8%	1.5%	7.3%	50.4%
Regional share - Exports	0.1%	0.1%	1.8%	100.0%
Regional share - Imports	0.0%	0.0%	0.2%	100.0%
Regional share - Total Trade	0.1%	0.1%	1.1%	100.0%

Source: IHS Global Insight 2022



The merchandise export from Polokwane Local Municipality amounts to R 1.6 billion and as a percentage of total national exports constitutes about 0.1%. The exports from Polokwane Local Municipality constitute 1.4% of total Polokwane Local Municipality's GDP. Merchandise imports of R 425 million constitute about 0.00% of the national imports. Total trade within Polokwane is about 1.8% of total national trade. Polokwane Local Municipality had a positive trade balance in 2021 to the value of R 1.2 million.

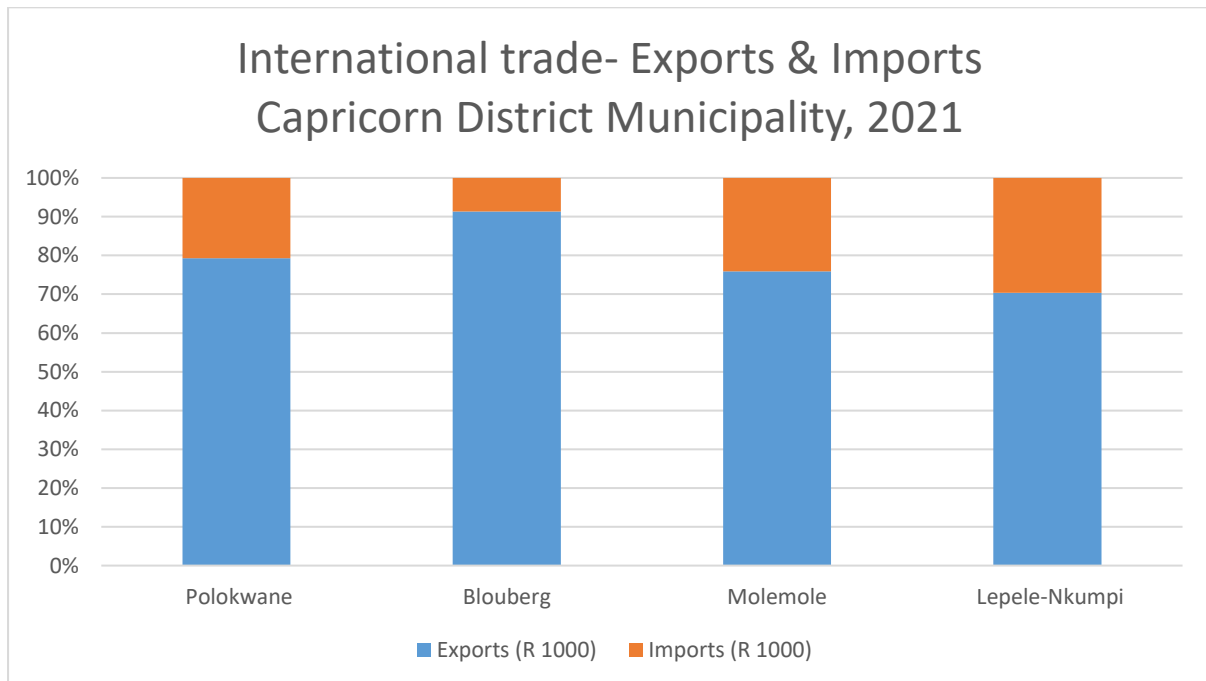
**CHART 41. IMPORT AND EXPORTS IN POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2011-2021 [R 1000]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2022**

Analysing the trade movements over time, total trade decreased from 2011 to 2021 at an average annual growth rate of -0.33%. Merchandise exports decreased at an average annual rate of -1.16%, with the highest level of exports of R 2.99 billion experienced in 2015. Merchandise imports increased at an average annual growth rate of 3.79% between 2011 and 2021, with the lowest level of imports experienced in 2011.

**CHART 42. MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2021 [PERCENTAGE]**



**Source: IHS Global Insight 2021**

When comparing the Polokwane Local Municipality with the other regions in the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane has the biggest amount of international trade (when aggregating imports and exports, in absolute terms) with a total of R 425. million. This is also true for exports - with a total of R 1.63 billion in 2021. Lepele-Nkumpi had the lowest total trade figure at R 5.8 million. The Lepele-Nkumpi also had the lowest exports in terms of currency value with a total of R 1.7 million exports.

## CHAPTER Five: Water and Sanitation

### 5.1 Water and Sanitation Directorate Overview

The Water and Sanitation Directorate consist of 3 SBU's: i.e.

- 1) Infrastructure Development Planning and Reticulation Design.
- 2) Reticulation, Distribution and Maintenance, Water Demand and Conservation.
- 3) Operations: Water and Wastewater, Quality Management and Laboratory Services.

#### 5.1.1 Water Provision

Provision of water in accordance with the obligations of the municipality as Water Services Authority is a high priority.

To meet Polokwane Municipality's strategic vision, an Integrated Water Master Plan(IWMP) has been developed in phases, to ultimately address the full water distribution cycle i.e. from Source-to-Tap-to-Effluent discharge for all areas, and all water supply infrastructure within Polokwane Municipality. **(Approved by council)**

The supply areas consist of the City and urban areas as well as an extensive rural area, and both urban and rural areas are facing severe challenges in terms of water services.

Polokwane Municipality complies with the **sans 241 standards** on provision of portable water – PREP assessment is underway for the next Green Drop Audit.

#### 5.1.2 Reliability of Water Supply in Polokwane

Residents of Polokwane are not getting reliable water supply due to identified water supply challenges i.e.

- 1) **Water abstraction restrictions** on the Polokwane System by Lepelle Northern Water Board
- 2) **Infrastructure challenges** on both the Ebenezer and Olifantspoort Bulk Water Schemes.
- 3) **Lack of backup power** at both Ebenezer and Olifantspoort plants to act as an alternative when there are power outages and load shedding.
- 4) **Theft and vandalism** of Eskom Transformers and Borehole Pumping Equipment in rural areas.
- 5) **Illegal connections in RWS** that are designed to cater for RDP standards leaving some residents without water because of excessive water use.

#### 5.1.3 Water Provision – Short Term Interventions

The Municipality has identified the water supply shortfall in the Urban Complex as a threat to the growth of the city and a threat to the Economy and implemented measures to turn the situation around:

- Polokwane Municipality took an initiative to engage in intensive **ground water development** to augment the supply with 34 MI/d at peak operation
- **Three (3) Contractors** are on site with 3 key projects to deliver the water at two water purification sites from wellfields developed around the City and Seshego
- We are constructing **2 new Water Treatment Plants** with bigger capacity to purify the ground water from the projects above.

#### 5.1.4 Progress of Groundwater Developments projects

CONTRACT NAME	PROJECT VALUE	% PHYSICAL PROGRESS	START DATE	STATUS AND ESTIMATED COMPLETION DATE
Sandriver North Water Treatment Works	R 151 643 977	78.0%	4 July 2019	30 Dec 2022.
Seshego Water Treatment Works	R 190 391 610	67%	18 Nov 2019	30 Oct 2022.
Sterkloop and Sandriver South Wellfield Development and distribution	R 88 959 047	98.0%	25 June 2019	30 Dec 2022.
Sandriver North Wellfield and Polokwane boreholes development and distribution	R 108 569 468	93.0%	25 June 2019	30 Dec 2022.
Bloodriver Wellfield and Seshego boreholes development and distribution	R 75 390 102	98%	18 Nov 2019	31 Oct 2022.

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

#### 5.1.5 Water Provision – Long Term Interventions

- Upgrading of Dap Naude pipeline to provide an additional 4 MI/d to Dalmada – Planning completed awaiting approval of BWS IRS.
- Exploration of the Dieprivier Wellfield to deliver an additional 7 MI/d into the system. This will relieve the supply from Ebenezer and more water can therefore be delivered in the City – Planning completed awaiting approval of BWS IRS.

- Implementation of the pressure management and Hydraulic re-modelling of the City network (put pressure zones in place) – Planning completed awaiting approval of BWS IRS.
- Continuation of the exploration of the **Malmani Dolomites** for an access to additional 21 MI/d – Pre-Feasibility conducted and requires funds for further planning.
- Finalize water reclamation at the new Polokwane Regional Wastewater Treatment Works (50% of the effluent discharged) – Pre-Feasibility conducted and requires funds for further planning.

## 5.2 Powers and Function of Polokwane Municipality

In terms of the Constitution, Municipal Structures Act and other policy frameworks Polokwane Municipality is responsible for the following functions:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Water and Sanitation (Both portable and bulk supply system and domestic wastewater and sewage disposal system)</li> <li>▪ Air Pollution</li> <li>▪ Building regulations</li> <li>▪ Childcare facilities</li> <li>▪ Electricity and Alternative energy</li> <li>▪ Firefighting services</li> <li>▪ Municipal planning</li> <li>▪ Municipal public works</li> <li>▪ Storm water management</li> <li>▪ Trading regulations</li> <li>▪ Billboards and the display of advertisements in public places</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Cemeteries</li> <li>▪ Cleansing</li> <li>▪ Control of public nuisances</li> <li>▪ Local sport facilities</li> <li>▪ Municipal parks and recreation</li> <li>▪ Roads</li> <li>▪ Noise pollution</li> <li>▪ Pounds</li> <li>▪ Public places</li> <li>▪ Waste Management (refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal)</li> <li>▪ Street trading</li> <li>▪ Street lighting</li> <li>▪ Traffic and parking</li> </ul>
--	---

## 5.3. WATER

Polokwane Municipality is a **Water Service Authority (WSA)** and also a **Water Service Provider (WSP)**. Every Water Service Authority has a duty to all customers or potential customers in its area of jurisdiction to progressively ensure efficient, affordable, economical and sustainable access to Water Services [Water Services Act of 1997 Section 11]. Thus, a Water Service Authority has the duty to provide water services with the focus on: Ensure, Efficient, Affordable, Economical and Sustainable deliverables.

### 5.3.1 Principles of Water Service Provision

- To ensure: effectiveness, efficiency, viability, sustainability.  
Requires: proactive approach, pre-thinking, deliberation, understanding, thus coordinated planning.

- Therefore: Every Water Services Authority must prepare a Water Services Development Plan for its area of jurisdiction [Water Service Act of 1997 Section 12].

**Water is life** – it is the most important resource to encourage both social and economic development within communities. There has been tremendous improvement in the provision of the basic service in the municipal area at and above RDP standard.

### 5.3.2 16 Regional Water Schemes (RWS)

Municipal water provision is divided into Regional Water Schemes. **Polokwane Municipality** has been sub-divided into **16 RWS** and each scheme is allocated **budget** for water reticulation:

1. Mothapo RWS,
2. Moletjie East RWS
3. Moletjie North RWS,
4. Moletjie South RWS,
5. Houtriver RWS,
6. Chuene/Maja RWS,
7. Molepo RWS,
8. Laastehoop RWS,
9. Mankweng RWS,
10. Boyne RWS,
11. Segwasi RWS,
12. Badimong RWS,
13. Sebayeng/ Dikgale RWS,
14. Olifantspoort Sand RWS.
15. Aganang East RWS
16. Bakone RWS

The municipal Regional Water Schemes depends on the following **water sources**:

### 5.3.3 Water Scheme Sources

Water source	RWS supplied	Average Daily Supply	Source Capacity
<b>Ebenezer</b>	Mankweng RWS	23 MI/Day	<b>21 MI/day</b>
	Rural (Mothapo RWS, Molepo RWS, Segwasi RWS, Boyne RWS, Badimong RWS, Sebayeng Dikgale RWS)	7.7 MI/Day	
<b>Olifants Sand</b>	Chuene/Maja RWS, Olifants Sand RWS (Seshego, some portion of City and Mmotong wa Perekisi)	27.3 MI/day	<b>27 MI/d</b>



Water source	RWS supplied	Average Daily Supply	Source Capacity
Dap Naude Dam	Olifants Sand RWS (Polokwane City)	12 MI/Day	18 MI/d
Seshego Dam	Olifants Sand RWS (Seshego)	1,6 MI/day	3,9 MI/d
Seshego Borehole	Olifants Sand RWS (Seshego)	1,2 MI/day	2.0MI/d
<b>Ebenezer</b>	City	16 MI/Day	<b>11 MI/Day</b>
Boreholes	Augment water from dams	5,5 MI/Day	<b>25,33 MI/d</b>
<b>Rural dams</b>			
Houtriver Dam	Houtriver RWS	2,0 MI/day	<b>3,9 MI/d</b>
Chuene/Maja Dam	Chuene Maja RWS	1.2 MI/day	<b>2,7 MI/d</b>
Molepo Dam	Molepo RWS	1.2 MI/day	<b>6 MI/d</b>
Mashashane (Utjane) Dam	Moletjie south RWS	0.6 MI/day	<b>1.5 MI/d</b>
<b>Total</b>		<b>99.3 MI/day</b>	<b>122.33 MI/d</b>
<b>Peak flow demand</b>		<b>163 MI/day</b>	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

It is the responsibility of local government to make sure that adequate and appropriate investments are made to ensure the progressive realization of the right of all people in its area of jurisdiction to receive at least a basic level of services.

Polokwane Municipality is a water scarce City with more than 60% of its water sourced outside the boundary of the Municipality. To ensure the sustainability of water sources the municipality undertakes water conservation awareness campaign.

On annual basis funds are made available to improve the water accessibility to all **16 various Regional Water Schemes**. The first priority is to develop the sustainable bulk water sources and then develop or extend the internal infrastructure. The biggest problem to keep water sources sustainable is theft and vandalism on boreholes and reliable surface water.

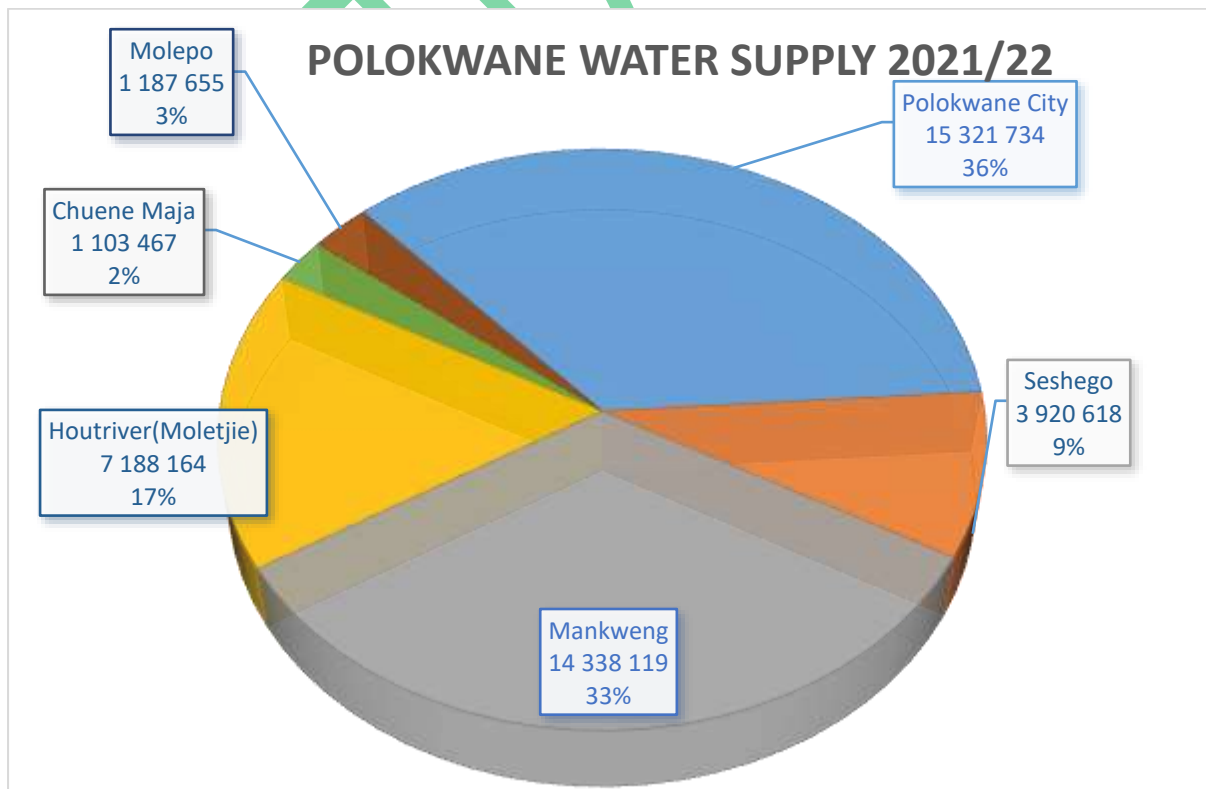
As a part of water provision, the municipality provides free basic water to communities. Free Basic Water is offered to all rural Regional Water Schemes, for the Urban Regional Water Scheme the free basic water is only given to the registered indigent people. According to the FBW policy, implemented by Local Government, households are entitled up to 6000 litres (6kl) of potable water every month at no cost. Households that use more than 6kl of free basic water must be responsible for the payments of further consumption.

Most of municipal Regional Water Schemes are 100% reticulated with metered yard connections. The rural households with yard connections do not pay for the service. The municipality has intentions to recover costs in Regional Water Schemes or villages that are fully reticulated with metered yard connections.

### 5.3.4 Lepelle Northern Water supplied Schemes

		Total 21/22	
Polokwane City	LNW	15 321 734	Ebenezer + Olifantspoort
	Own Source		Masharl & Sand River North Boreholes + Dalmada Plant
Seshego	LNW	3 920 618	Olifantspoort
	Own Source		Seshego Plant & Sand River South Boreholes
Mankweng	LNW	14 338 119	Ebenezer
	Own Source		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Houtriver (Moletjie)	LNW + P - Hoop	7 188 164	Olifantspoort + Pilgrimshoop
	Own Source		Houtriver Plant + Mashashane
	Own Source		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Chuene Maja	LNW	1 103 467	Olifantspoort
	Own Source		Chuenespoort Dam
	Own Source		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Molepo	LNW	1 187 655	Ebenezer
	Own Source		Molepo Dam
	Own Source		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area

### 5.3.5 Polokwane Water Supply



### 5.3.6. Polokwane Groundwater Development

#### Output of the Groundwater Projects

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM131/2018**: Construction of Sandriver North Water Treatment Works - (18ML/day) to treat Polokwane boreholes (Sterkloop, Sandriver South, Sandriver North) – to be completed by **December 2022**

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM132/2018**: Construction of Borehole Infrastructure and Pumping Mains for the Sterkloop and Sandriver South Wellfields. Equip 18 boreholes in Sterkloop WF and Sandriver South WF (6,3ML/d average supply; 12,6ML/d peak supply); Pump to new Sandriver North Water treatment works and distribute to existing Doornkraal reservoir – to be completed by **December 2022**

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM133/2018**: Construction of Borehole Infrastructure and Pumping Mains for the Sandriver North Wellfield and Polokwane Boreholes. Equip 32 boreholes in Sandriver North WF and Polokwane boreholes (6,4ML/d average supply; 12,8ML/d peak supply); Pump to new Sandriver North Water treatment works and distribute to existing Krugersburg and Potgieter reservoirs – to be completed by **December 2022**

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM02/2019**: Seshego Water Treatment Works - (11ML/day) to treat Seshego boreholes (Seshego, Bloodriver, Pilgrimshoop) and Seshego dam (2ML/day) – to be completed by **November 2022**

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM01/2019**: Bloodriver Wellfield and Seshego Groundwater Development and Pumping Mains - Equip 17 boreholes in Bloodriver and Seshego Wellfields; pump to new Seshego WTW (4,1ML/d average supply; 7, ML/d peak supply); pump to new Seshego Water Treatment Works and distribute to Perskebult and Seshego reservoirs. – to be completed by **November 2022**

#### 5.3.7 Setbacks in planning and implementation (Technical report approval)

The following Regional Water Schemes (RWS) have experienced setbacks in planning and implementation due to inability to obtain technical report approval from the Department of water and sanitation. One of the key limitations being **insufficient water sources** from both subsurface and surface sources.

- **Moletjie North RWS** – inadequate reticulation network, water supply security and connection to bulk surface water supply. After extensive Geo-hydrological studies 2

boreholes were identified which resulted in an acceptable water balance. The technical report was approved in March 2021.

- **Moletjie South RWS** – serviced by a network of 11 boreholes which present very low yields during dry seasons. Constant vandalism of borehole infrastructure. No reticulation in extensions and no access to any surface water sources. The technical report was approved in March 2021 on condition that operational efficiency is maintained, and the existing boreholes remain operational and vibrant.
- **Badimong RWS** – inadequate reticulation network, water supply security and connection to bulk surface water supply. Inability to obtain acceptable water balance.
- **Aganang RWS** – At the time of amalgamation of Polokwane and Aganang Municipalities, the water supply challenges were already prevalent, and no approved technical report was handed over to Polokwane Municipality. Polokwane LM started with the process of funding approval from the former MIG which resulted in late commencement of the Projects. Implementation has since started in the 2018/19 Financial year. To date 5 villages have been completed, 9 villages are under construction, 2 villages are at planning while 12 villages have been submitted to the DWS for approval.

### 5.3.8. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Water Projects)

#### 1. Refurbishment of the Dap Naude water pipeline.

- The Reduction in RBIG funding has affected the refurbishment of the pipe line from Ebenezer Dam to the City.
- This project is of strategic importance in order to secure additional potable water for Polokwane CBD.
- Supply to be increased from 14MI/day to 17,9MI/day. Water is available but needs to be conveyed to Polokwane. Increase of approximately 4MI/day.
- It is important to note that the 2022 water balance suggests a total demand of 169MI/day and a supply capacity of 153MI/day with all water supply projects commissioned and functional by the end of 2022. Even with all RBIG projects completed there will be a shortfall of 16MI/day. This deficit will increase if budgets remain as is.

#### 2. Polokwane Distribution Pressure and Flow Management:

This project is of strategic importance in order to secure additional potable water for Polokwane CBD.

Progress has been made to reduce water losses through pipe breaks by replacing old AC pipes within the CBD of Polokwane. More work is needed to reduce water losses and to fine tune water balance requirements. This project is urgent to maximise the water distribution to the CBD and Seshego.

### 5.3.9 Free Basic Water

The provision of free basic water in Polokwane Municipality is determined by the indigent policy and register updated annually for those who stays in areas where cost recovery is ongoing, and all the rural villages are receiving free basic water.

Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Rural/Urban	Number Customers
<b>Water</b>				
Free basic water.	6kl per month	50 villages received free Water monthly.  68 villages receive free Water supplied by Lepelle Water Board.  153 villages receive free water supplied by boreholes.	Rural	All households in rural areas

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

A statistical summary of the status quo assessment for water and sanitation services is provided per cluster in **Table** below:

**Table: Water Service Levels**

Service	Cluster	Service Level
Water	Mankweng/Sebayeng	67.9 % above RDP
	Moletjie	60.7 % above RDP
	Maja/Chuene/Molepo	44,3 % above RDP
	Aganang	59.0 % above RDP
	Municipal wide	82.04% access to water
	Municipal wide backlog	17.96%

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

There is still a considerable backlog that must be addressed especially in the Maja, Chuene, Molepo, followed by Moletjie and Mankweng clusters.

The elimination of backlog is challenged by limited and /or unsustainable source of water found in the rural areas and continuous increase of new settlements in some clusters in the municipal area. Funding limitations also affect the eradication of backlog on the expected rate.

### 5.3.10 Water Quality

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa everyone has the right to an environment that is not detrimental to their health or wellbeing.

To ensure that water quality does not pose any health hazards to our people, Department of Water and Sanitation as the regulator has introduced the monitoring tool for water quality. According to DWS there is certain standard which both potable and waste water must meet.

Polokwane municipality obtained Blue drop for 2011 in the Mankweng and City water systems. The outlined ratings are from 2008 until 2015 assessment.

WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM	BLUE DROP CERTIFICATION	2008/2009	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	2014/2015
Polokwane City	95%	70.5%	95.70%	95.05%	92.03%	95.08
Mankweng	95%	70.5%	n/a	95.155	80.89%	86.07
Seshego	95%	42.5%	66.38%	89.65%	87.12%	86.81
Molepo	95%	70.5%	66.38%	79.89%	82.02%	85.38
Moletjie (Houtriver)	95%	70.5%	53.63%	76.57%	73.79%	85.26
Chuene/Maja	95%	70.5%	55.10%	81.44%	87.29%	88.09

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.3.11 Surface water quality test results

Surface water quality test results are as follows:

Determinant	Unit	Dap Naude	Ebenezer	Olifantspoort	Seshego Dam
pH	pH Unit	8.34	6.82	6.73	7.42
Turbidity	NTU	0.61	0.72	0.69	0.74
Conductivity	mS/m	2.46	4.83	77.63	77.70
Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)	mg/l	15.99	31.40	504.56	505.05
NO3	mg/l	0.40	0.13	0.28	0.35
SO4	mg/l	1.81	2.79	170.00	165.16
Alkalinity (m)	mg/l	8.80	15.83	115.90	115.09
Chloride	mg/l	4.25	6.91	85.95	62.40
Tot Hardness	mg/l	21.2	58.05	319.00	354.00
Ca Hardness	mg/l	20.00	23.25	123.25	135.00
Mg Hardness	mg/l	1.20	34.80	195.75	219.00

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU



Polokwane Municipality Groundwater sources generally indicate elevated hardness levels, in excess of 300mg/l, which is defined as very hard water. Hard water is generally considered to be those waters that require considerable amounts of soap to produce foam and hard water also produces scale in water pipes, heaters, geyser and other units in which the temperature of the water is increased.

Although the South African National Standards 241:2015 do not specify a maximum limit for hardness levels the elevated hardness levels, when compared to the surface water sources, will lead to end-user complaints when the groundwater is introduced untreated into the reticulation system. It is therefore advisable to soften the groundwater sources to levels comparable to the Olifantspoort source to mitigate end-user complaints. Hard water is appropriate for human consumption similar to that of soft water. However, as hard water produces adverse actions with soap its use for cleaning purposes is unsatisfactory.

**Table: Polokwane Local Municipality: Access to Safe Drinking water**

Provision of Water	Yes	No	Unknown	Total
Households	202 107	75 714	2404	280 225
Percentage	72.1%	27.01%	1.01	100%

**Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU**

**Table: Main Water Provision**

Water provision (level of service)	2020
Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling/house	67 119
Piped water inside yard	126 846
Piped water on community stand	17 313
Borehole in the yard	14 361
Rain water Tank in Yard	2 114
Neighbour's tap	12 159
Public / Communal tap	11 027
Water Carrier / tanker	16 747
Boreholes outside the yard	6 769

Water provision (level of service)	2020
Flowing water or River / Stream	836
Well	224
Spring	142
Other	4 248
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>280 225</b>

**Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU**

From the analysis, it is evident that population has increased from 178001 to 280 225 households and the number of households with piped water inside their house have increased this figure includes 67 119 HH with water in the dwelling and 126 846 HH with water in the yard while 17 313 HH are receiving piped water on communal tap.

The municipality has **45 441** households with no access to piped water. The elimination of backlog is challenged by limited and /or unsustainable source of water found in the rural areas and continuous increase of new settlements in some clusters in the municipal area. Funding limitations also affect the eradication of backlog on the expected rate.

#### **5.3.12. Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing water.**

1. Lack of sustainable water sources for current and future demand, the municipality is currently receiving between 80 to 99MI/d and unable to meet the peak flow demand of 163MI/day. The municipality should invest in upgrading existing Dap Naude Dap water scheme to utilise its current yield to maximum capacity including possible increase of dam wall.
2. Shortage of water will have a serious impact on projects that the municipality and other sector department are planning. E.g., Polokwane extension 78 Police station, Polokwane extension 71, 108, 72, 79,106 and 107, Bendor extension 100, Ivy park extension 35. Upon completion, all these developments will have a major impact on our currently insufficient water sources.
3. Over reliance on boreholes in rural areas with risk of contaminating ground water by pit latrines.
4. Lack of cost recovery in rural areas.
5. Aging water infrastructure in the CBD, Council in partnership with Department of Water and Sanitation has started with a programme to eradicate this challenge by investing more than R420Million to remove all Asbestos pipes in the CBD and surrounding townships).
6. More than R380 million is also required to increase the capacity of water infrastructure to be able to cater for current and new developments.
7. Uncoordinated allocation of new settlement in rural areas by traditional authorities has a major impact on municipal planning and budgeting.
8. Lack of maintenance plans and AS Built drawing to indicate the existing valves for water infrastructure. Some of the valves are buried under ground by residents while

- paving their drive ways which makes it difficult to locate them when doing maintenance or replacing burst pipes and as a result contributing to huge water losses.
9. Limited operation and maintenance of infrastructure due to shortage of funds.
  10. Theft and vandalism of the existing insufficient infrastructure remains a challenge. Theft of iron manhole and valves covers is increasing and there is a need to change them to plastic and it a huge safety risk within the city.
  11. Illegal extension of houses (back yard rooms) has an impact on water demand.
  12. Lack of smart metering systems that can control water demand and supply, monitor losses (+R180Million required).
  13. Unapproved technical reports for some regional water schemes (Badimong, Mothapo, Moletji North, Moletji South, and Segwasi) due to insufficient water sources
  14. Lack of enforcement of regulations/bylaws
  15. Drought effects on surface water resources such as Molepo dam.
  16. Vast distances and scattered settlements in rural water schemes make it expensive and difficult for water resources to reach all households.

### 5.3.13. Water Supply to schools

Description	Polokwane Municipality
Total number of schools	310
Number of schools supplied with water	254
Number of schools remain to be serviced. <b>Currently they have boreholes in the schools</b>	56

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

## 5.4. SANITATION

Sanitation is about dignity. The availability of sanitation facilities not only improves the dignity of people, but also promotes their health. Areas without proper sanitation systems give rise to water borne diseases like cholera, diarrhoea, typhoid, etc. It is therefore important that the Municipality prioritise the service, particularly considering the backlog (rural sanitation) and the national target.

### 5.4.1 Sanitation Provision

Polokwane municipality sewer systems are **overloaded** due to the increase in population and economical activities in areas of **Seshego, Mankweng and Polokwane City**.

WWTW System	Design Capacity	Average Inflow
Polokwane WWTW	27 MI/Day	40 – 50 MI/day
Seshego WWTW	7.6 MI/Day	06 – 07 MI/day
Mankweng WWTW	7.6 MI/Day	06 – 08 MI/day

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

#### 5.4.2 VIP Sanitation Programs in Rural Areas

- The municipality continues to implement VIP sanitation programs in rural areas to ensure that proper sanitation is provided, and ground water is protected.
- Sludge management is still a challenge – However USAID has signed an MOU with the municipality funded a training programme on Faecal Sludge Management.
- Capacity of the sewer pipeline network is also overloaded and requires upgrades (Requires Sanitation Master Plan for the entire area with waterborne system).

#### 5.4.3 Green Drop Audit.

- Green Drop – The municipality was assessed on green drop compliance in November 2021 after the programme was halted for some few years.
- The municipality did not perform well in the outcome of the **Green Drop Audit**.

#### 5.4.4 Sanitation Provision - (Medium- & Long-Term Solutions)

- Polokwane municipality has completed and submitted the Bulk Sanitation IRS that was subsequently approved in 2021.
- The municipality has completed 2 of the 3 Outfall Sewers and the remaining project is 80% completed.
- **Phase 2A** – (Construction of Earth Works) has been completed and Phase 2B – (Construction of Civil, Mechanical, EC&I) planning is completed (Bid for Civil works has closed on 22 August 2022 and the contractor should be on site by October 2022)
- Planning for refurbishment of Seshego and Mankweng is also completed and is awaiting funding allocation for implementation.
- Phase 1 of the refurbishment at the main Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Works were completed in 2020 and planning for phase 2 is completed awaiting funds for implementation.
- Ensure that groundwater water protocol is budgeted for to ensure that the groundwater resources are monitored for possible contamination.
- Ensure that funds are budgeted/ring-fenced for implementation of the faecal sludge handling particularly in rural areas. (**Emptying of VIP Toilets**).

**Table: Toilet Facilities (Households)**

Type of toilet facility	2020
Flush toilet connected to a public sewerage system	103 180
Flush toilet connected to a septic tank or Conservancy tank	6 044
Chemical toilet	1 686
Pit latrine / toilet with ventilation	40 575
Pit latrine / toilet without ventilation	102 965
Ecological toilet (Urine diversion, enviroloo etc.)	282
Other	25 756
None	4248

**Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU**

Major progress has been made in the provision of sanitation services in Polokwane since 2001, there major improvement in the provision of this service. However, with the improvement the municipality will not meet the Millennium Development Goal that every household must have access to healthy and dignified sanitation facility.

The municipality is currently having a huge backlog of sanitation facilities (VIP) and an amount of more than R500 million is required to eradicate it. The backlog figure includes 86 132 pit latrines that are not constructed according to the approved standards and as such it poses a risk of water borne diseases.

#### **5.4.5. Free Basic Sanitation**

For Improved provision of basic and environmental services in a sustainable way to our communities, each financial year Polokwane Municipality construct the Ventilated Improved Pit latrine (**VIP**) in rural Villages according to the priority list of the ward.

#### **5.4.6. Wastewater Treatment Plants**

For the purposes of increasing the capacity of the Waste Water Treatment Plants to support current and future development, the municipality is currently in a process of building:

- 1) New Regional waste water treatment.**
- 2) Seshego Waste Water Treatment Plant.**
- 3) Mankweng Waste Water Treatment Plant.**

As well as Refurbishment of the Waste Water plants

Two of major projects on the construction of outfall sewer lines are complete while one is still under construction

#### **5.4.7. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Sanitation Projects)**

The following projects are greatly affected by the Reduction of RBIG funding:

##### **1. Polokwane Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant**

Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Plant is the biggest with 26 Ml/day capacity and the current load standing at 34 Ml/day.

Plans are in place to construct the 100 ML/day Regional Waste Water Treatment Plant for the whole Polokwane Municipal sewage load and to cater for new developments (however there is limited budget). A memorandum of agreement to refurbish and upgrade the over loaded Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Plant has been signed by the Municipality and Anglo American to upgrade the WWTP as the first phase.

The upgrade is now complete and has been commissioned. The second phase of the project has been divided into two separate contracts namely an earthworks contract and an electrical, civil, structural and mechanical (CME) contract. The earthworks contract has been completed by end of June 2021. The second contract, the CME contract is due to commence. The earthworks for this project consisted of large excavations and open platforms the earthworks should not lay open as damage to platforms and excavations will most definitely occur. The municipality is reviewing the scope of the CME contract to advertise only the scope that fits within the approved MTERF budget of R210 000 000.

##### **2. Upgrading and refurbishment of Mankweng treatment plant (intended to cater for the University of Limpopo growth).**

The Reduction in RBIG Funding has also affected the plans for the Mankweng Sewer Plant, and Mankweng is a nodal point, the University of Limpopo has applied for funding with regard to student accommodation, there is a serious need of New Sewer Plant in Mankweng.

The treatment facility is in dire need of refurbishment and upgrading in light of the growth of Mankweng area and further plans by the University to develop student accommodation. This project cannot be delayed. The current treatment capacity is under strain and the effluent quality is compromised. The projects are tender ready, and the Municipality is reviewing the scope to align with the available allocation of R15 000 000.

##### **3. Upgrading and refurbishment of the Seshego wastewater treatment plant.**

The planning is at advanced stage, the treatment facility is in dire need of refurbishment and upgrading in light of the growth of Seshego. The current treatment capacity is under strain and the effluent quality is compromised. The projects are tender ready and was advertised in March 2020 and the Municipality is re-advertising the tender with revised scope to align with available allocation of R15 000 000.

#### **5.4.8 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Sanitation.**

1. The risk of contaminating ground water in rural areas due to huge backlog of pit latrine that is not according to the approved standards.
2. Lack of funding to eradicate rural backlog (more than R500 million is required).



3. Lack of funding for construction of regional waste water treatment plant. According to master plan 1st phase was supposed to be at implementation by now, more than R1, 2 billion required). DWS has completed the feasibility study for new regional wastewater works and is co funding the project through RBIG.
4. Aging sanitation infrastructure (some of old sewer lines in Seshego are running under houses or very close to the houses and should be moved).
5. Uncoordinated allocation of new settlement in rural areas by traditional authorities has a major impact on municipal planning and budgeting (VIP).
6. Lack of maintenance plans for sewer infrastructure.
7. Limited operation and maintenance of infrastructure due to shortage of funds.
8. Theft and vandalism of the existing insufficient infrastructure remains a challenge.
9. Illegal extension of houses (back yard rooms) has an impact on sewer treatment plant. Boyne is the home of two biggest churches and proper sanitation structure is needed to avoid future water contamination.

#### 5.4.9 Sanitation in Schools

Description	Polokwane Municipality
Total number of schools	310
Number of schools supplied with water and sanitation	296
Number of schools remaining to be serviced	14

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

#### 5.4.10 Rural Household Sanitation

Polokwane municipality is constituted by a composition of households that are 65% rural and the balance being urban. There is currently no formalised sewerage collection and network in the rural areas. Sanitation in rural areas is managed through construction of VIP toilets to eradicate the backlog in access to sanitation.

Polokwane Municipality is made up of **7 Clusters and 45 wards** that should be equally provided with services guided by the community needs i.e.

Clusters	Wards No.
<b>Mankweng Cluster</b>	06,07,25,26,27,28, 34
<b>Moletjie Cluster</b>	09,10,15,16,18,35, 36,38
<b>Molepo / Chuene / Maja Cluster</b>	1,2,3,4,5
<b>Sebayeng / Dikgale Cluster</b>	24,29,32,33,30,31
<b>Aganang Cluster</b>	40,41,42,43,44,45

Clusters	Wards No.
<b>City Cluster</b> (exempted from the VIP Allocation)	08;19,20,21,22,23,39
<b>Seshego Cluster</b> (exempted from the VIP Allocation)	11,12,13, 14,17,37

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

The two urban clusters i.e., **City and Seshego** Cluster are exempted from the allocation of VIP toilets as they have sewage system in place. Council focuses on allocating VIP toilets in the rural Clusters.

During the 2016/17 to 2020/21 financial year the following number of VIP toilets were allocated:

### 5.5. BACKLOG OF BASIC SERVICES

Below is the current status of existing backlog, which without annual maintenance will escalate.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog
<b>Water</b>	<b>280 225</b>	202 107 (72.1%)	78 118
<b>Sanitation</b>		134 695 (48.1%)	145 530
<b>Electricity</b>		242 015 (87.2%)	38 210
<b>Housing</b>		160 980 (90.4%)	65 000
<b>Waste</b>		104 402 (48.1%)	175 823
<b>Roads (7 495km)</b>		1 419km (18.9%)	6 076.3km

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

#### 5.5.1 Regional Water Scheme (RWS) –Demand and Shortfall

##### RWS Analysis

Regional Water Supply Scheme (RWS)	Current ground water abstraction	Current surface water source	Demand	Surplus/Shortfall
Mothapo RWS	3 618 Kl/day	1 514 Kl/day	3 292.3 Kl/day	1 839.7 Kl/day
Laaste Hoop RWS	725.8 Kl/day	445 Kl/day	798.7 Kl/day	372.1 Kl/day

Regional Water Supply Scheme (RWS)	Current ground water abstraction	Current surface water source	Demand	Surplus/Shortfall
Mankweng RWS	320.8 Kl/day	10357 Kl/day	12 017.7 Kl/day	-1 339.9 Kl/day
Sebayeng-Dikgale RWS	6 391.4 Kl/day	224 Kl/day	5 503.3 Kl/day	1 112.1 Kl/day
Badimong RWS	827.3 Kl/day	1691 Kl/day	2 473 Kl/day	45 Kl/day
Segwasi RWS	250.6 Kl/day	394 Kl/day	265 Kl/ day	379.6 Kl/day
Boyne RWS	103.7 Kl/day	867 Kl/day	701.3 Kl/ day	269.4 Kl/day
Molepo RWS	733.7 Kl/day	1 100 Kl/day	1 537.7 Kl/day	296 Kl/day
Chuene Maja RWS	324 Kl/ day	2 700 Kl/day	2 179 Kl/day	845 Kl/day
Moletjie South RWS	3 727 Kl/day	1 000 Kl/day	2 977 Kl/day	1 750 Kl/day
Moletjie North RWS	810 Kl/day	0	611.3 Kl/	198.7 Kl/day
The Hout River RWS	1 657 Kl/day	2 000 Kl/day	2 096 Kl/day	1561 Kl/day
Moletjie East RWS	4 055 Kl/day	0	2 627 Kl/day	1 428 Kl/day
Aganang East	3 108 Kl/day	0	1 545 Kl/day	1 563 Kl/day
Bakone RWS	4 394 Kl/day	0	2 229 Kl/day	2 165 Kl/day

**Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU**

Backlogs to the access of water services are mainly attributed to:

- Availability
- Sustainability
- Proximity
- Storage Requirements
- Treatment requirements
- And affordability

## **5.6. SMART METERING**

The City of Polokwane Smart City Vision articulates the future development path. Consistent with the 2030 Smart City Vision, the City launched six pillars that will assist the municipality to work towards the realization of becoming a Smart City that embraces Smart Living and Smart People as some of its building pillars. This Smart City concept is carried within the City's vision to be the "The ultimate in innovation and sustainable development".

During the 2017 State of the City address, the City have articulated a number of initiatives that are out of the ordinary that the City will be embarking on towards attaining the goal of becoming a sustainable City that is geared towards improving service delivery.

For a couple of years, City of Polokwane have been announcing that the municipality is experiencing serious challenges with regards to water and electricity losses as a result of burst

pipes and illegal connections, among others. These losses accounted to loss of Millions of rand's annually in revenue to the municipality and distribution losses to the community.

The other challenge is around billing systems. The plan is to come up with smart solutions to these challenges. The City have come up with a programme that commissioned feasibility studies to check the technical aspect of the challenges experienced in relation to financial sustainability and concluded that in order to deal with all the underlying challenges the municipality first need to deal with the bulk infrastructure which is the replacement of AC pipes. At the same time will have to change all the meters with new technologies to address issues of human intervention (meter readers) and to improve the level of satisfaction to the consumers.

City of Polokwane have launched the **Smart Metering project** to members of the media and the community of Polokwane. The main aim was to connect with our stakeholders who are our customers so that they get to know that the project has resumed and not get surprised when people come to their homes for installation.

Prepaid smart meters are to be installed for all electricity users - both large power and small power users - making this roll-out probably the largest project to be undertaken by the City of Polokwane. The objectives of the project are to help the City overcome problems of inaccurate billing and encourage conservation of resources like water and electricity.

Furthermore, Smart Metering project will secure revenue losses for the municipality and bolster our financial position going forward. This will enable the municipality to free up resources that can be used to improve service delivery in other areas.

Most importantly, Smart Metering project aims to give power to the consumers because of its multiple benefits. Some of the benefits are as follows:

- Consumers having control over their usage or consumption, ease of access to purchases,
- Avoidance of unanticipated black-outs and disruptions.
- Customer service will be greatly improved through elimination of queries related to electricity billing, which account for the majority of customer queries.
- Earlier recognition of faults will become easier through increased data access.
- Illegal connections can also be identified quickly, reducing technical losses.
- There are also job creation and small business opportunities arising from system installation and operation of vending systems.

The new Smart Metering system also allows for remote and local reading of the meter as well as detection of any tampering with the system. The official installation of the smart meters to households has begun as a pilot project. The installation commenced at Nirvana Area and once completed, the project will move to other areas in the City, Seshego and Mankweng.

The smart meters will be rolled out in both prepaid and post-paid mode. The meters are replaced at **no cost** to the consumers. At the same time the City is embarking on a project to convert all household conventional electricity meters to prepaid. All the government Departments and other large consumers will be on smart conventional and those who are

serial defaulters will be put on prepaid immediately. Also, this will be done at no cost to the consumers. This project is a strategic focus project to ensure that the City is gearing towards the attainment of a Smart City and a Metro in the near future. The future is prepaid.

All Polokwane residents will soon get smart **electricity and water meters** installed as part of the City's Smart Meter Project which aims to improve service, monitor power consumption and reduce our residents' costs related to consumption of water and electricity. This project is a significant milestone towards the City objective to upgrade and improve the efficiency of services to our Communities.

### **Water New Pre-Paid Meters**



### **Electricity New Pre-Paid Meters**



## **5.7. AC Pipes Replacement**

### **Objectives of AC pipe replacement:**

- Renewing infrastructure assets that has reached the end of its useful life.
- Reducing water losses through burst pipes.
- Saving scarce resources - water and money.
- Improving reliability of the network and standard of service.
- Reducing maintenance costs.
- To improve revenue collection.
- Upgrading the network while replacing to address growth.

Phase 1 of the AC pipes replacement project including (Seshego, CBD and Annadale) is complete, a project to install the Scada Monitoring system will commence.

### **5.7.1 Challenges -AC Pipes Replacement**

#### **Some challenges experienced:**

- The replacement of pipes in a 'live' network in built up areas with many hidden services is in many ways a very difficult task.
- Increasing the size of pipes in areas constrained by existing storm water pipes, electricity, fibre etc. is extremely difficult.
- Higher extent of rock/ hard material encountered than expected.
- Scarce water sources added to challenges, impacting negatively on the execution of work, testing pipes and connecting users.

### **5.7.2 Phase 2 – AC Pipes Replacement**

#### **Further replacement of AC Pipes:**

- Planning for the next phase of pipe replacement has started.
- Council must consider all service and infrastructure needs and priorities because funding is limited.
- There is an urgent need for augmenting the currently inadequate water sources – this is the most critical current need.
- Council has decided to re-schedule the AC replacement program for the next two years to add funding for water source development.
- The remaining extent of AC Pipes amounts to approximately 370 km.
- Limited funds prevent replacement of all pipes, focus will be on pipes that are in very poor condition, and pipes critical for the network.

### **5.7.3 Remaining extent of AC Pipes Replacement per cluster**



The estimated remaining extent per cluster is as Reflected on the table Below:

Cluster	Total Scope (km)
City Cluster	131.0
Mankweng Cluster	103.0
Molepo/Chuene/Maja Cluster	49.0
Moletjie Cluster	1.1
Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster	10.0
Seshego Cluster	76.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>370.1 km</b>

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.8 Construction of Borehole Infrastructure for Sandriver North Wellfield

Project descriptions include:

- I. Equip 32 boreholes in Sandriver North Wellfields and Polokwane (6.4Mℓ/d average supply; 12Mℓ/d peak supply).
- II. Pump to new Sandriver North Water treatment works and.
- III. Distribute to existing Krugersburg and Potgieter reservoirs.
  - **Project is progressing well at 91% Physical progress and 67% time elapsed.**

### 5.9 Water Losses

Water loss	June - 2022		June - 2021		Jun - 2020	
	Units	Value	Units	Value	Units	Value
Loss	5 209 667.10 KL	R 30 528 649.21	7 991 916,25 KL	R 46 832 629.23	7 249 291.00 KL	R 38 203 763.57

Water loss	June - 2022		June - 2021		Jun - 2020	
	Units	Value	Units	Value	Units	Value
<b>Percentage</b>	25.3 % (difference between purchased & sold water)		19.3% (difference between purchased & sold water)		21.3 % (difference between purchased & sold water)	
<b>Technical loss</b>	8.4 % estimated** Values obtained from WCWDM report conducted by WRP on behalf of SWPN, ABInBev & Anglo		No water balance is done.		No water balance is done.	
<b>Non-technical loss</b>	5.5% estimated** Values obtained from WCWD report conducted by WRP on behalf of SWPN, ABInBev & Anglo		No water balance is done.		No water balance is done.	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.9.1 Causes of Water losses

#### Technical losses

- Revenue losses due to bulk supply breakdowns
- Pipe bursts (Mainly AC Pipes)
- Leaking Valves & Fire Hydrants

#### Non-Technical Losses

- Bridged meters
- Unread meters
- Wrong meter readings

### 5.9.1 Water losses Mitigation Strategy

#### (1) Work stream – Bulk Water Supply & Bulk Meters

##### Objective:

- Provide bulk water balances to proactively establish accurate assessment of water losses in bulk water supply system – Water balance is now monitored through newly

installed bulk meters on the inlets and outlets of the reservoirs (*Project is currently in commissioning phase*)

- Replace/upgrade old infrastructure – AC Pipes replacement phase 2 planning concluded and is awaiting funds to implement the project in areas that still have old pipes (prepare and submit plans for funding to continue with Phase 2)
- Ensure adequate working bulk meters at all required supply points - Municipality has just completed a project for installation of Bulk meters, installation of top consumer meters (SAB, Coca Cola, Enterprise, etc) and monitoring systems. (*Project was completed in June 2022*)

## **(2) Assistance to the Poor and School Leak Repairs**

### **Objective:**

Ensure that internal water losses are identified and repaired - All leaks identified on the network are continuously repaired by our internal maintenance team and appointed term contractors depending on the complexity.

### **3. Leak Repair Contractor**

### **Objective:**

To reduce water losses identified by the leak detection team by the appointment of repairs and maintenance contractor – All leaks identified on the network are continuously repaired by our internal maintenance team and appointed term contractors depending on the complexity.

## **(4) Valve & Fire Hydrant Audits**

### **Objective:**

- ✓ To ensure all valves and fire hydrants are located, working and are on the record system – All valves and fire hydrants are continuously monitored to ensure that they are on a good working condition and fire hydrants are monitored for theft of water

## **5.9.2 Longer term plan to address Water losses**

### **Longer term plan to address Water losses - distribution and revenue**

- 1) **Pipe bursts** – Phase 1 of the AC pipes replacement is completed and planning for phase 2 underway.
- 2) **Bridged meters** – continuous meter audits are conducted.
- 3) **Incorrect meter readings** – program to change all meters to prepaid to avoid wrong readings is being rolled out in phases.
- 4) **Faulty meters** – all meters are being changed to prepaid.
- 5) **Installation of bulk meters** – appointed service providers are given job cards to install Bulk Meters at reservoir outlets.

## **5.9.3 Progress in addressing water Provision Backlogs**

- Progress **to-date** in the provision of basic services is at **87%**.

- Addressing source developments for Regional Water Schemes (with or without approved Technical Reports).
- Continuing with the implementation of Capital Works Programs under **IUDG, WSIG and CRR**.

#### 5.9.4 Planned water expenditure towards new infrastructure

##### Planned new expenditure by source

Funding Source	Draft IDP Budget 2022/23	Program
IUDG	R 91 000 000	Capital
WSIG	R 77 160 000	Capital
CRR	R 80 000 000	Capital / Operations
RBIG	R 154 584 000	Capital
<b>Total</b>	<b>R 403 744 000</b>	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.10 Strategic issues facing municipal water business (Water resilience)

#### 5.10.1 Water Resource Security

The calculated daily water demand (including water losses) for Polokwane City, Seshego and Perskebult has been calculated as follows: (WMP).

Year	Supply Reservoir Demand (Ml/day GAAD)					Total (Ml/day)
	Krugersburg	Potgieter	Doornkraal	Seshego	Perskebult	
2017	28.3	34.8	8.4	23.2	5.0	99.6
2020	29.3	36.9	10.2	23.8	5.5	105.7
2025	33.3	40.9	15.4	27.7	6.0	123.4
2030	36.5	44.0	17.1	30.8	6.5	134.9
2035	38.9	47.3	18.7	35.8	7.0	147.7
2040	43.5	51.6	27.8	48.0	8.0	178.8
2045	56.9	54.6	31.4	54.6	9.0	206.4

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.10.2 Polokwane City Water Supply

Currently Ebenezer WS = 19.9 ML/day and Olifantspoort WS = 24.8ML/day. A water supply shortfall in excess of 30 MI/day was calculated if water losses are included

Resource Name	Average Supply to Polokwane City (Current)
Polokwane Boreholes	6.9 ML/day
Pelgrimshoop Boreholes	1.2 ML/day
Dap Naude Dam	10 ML/day
Seshego Dam	1 ML/day
Ebenezer Dam (LNW)*	46.7 ML/day
Olifantspoort RWS (LNW)*	27.3 ML/day
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>93.1 ML/day</b>

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.10.3 Quality of Polokwane Drinking water: (Compliance with SANS 241)

Polokwane Municipality runs its own water quality laboratory. Samples from different points are collected on a weekly basis. Compliance with SANS 241(South African National Standard drinking water) is monitored daily. Weekly reporting on the Blue Drop portal is maintained.

### 5.10.4 Network Management:

- **Pipe bursts** are the biggest contributor to **NRW**.
- **Response** is maintained on a **24/7** basis.
- Less than **5%** of the network gets replace per year in response to bursts.
- **Sewer spillages** are reported as a daily feature due to blockages of the pipes by **tree roots, objects flushed through the toilet, fats from food outlets and storm water deposited into the system** through gullies.
- **No replacements** of sewer reticulation network have been done.

### 5.10.5 Waste Water Treatment

- (Compliance with licence conditions; capacity, condition and operational performance of wastewater treatment plants)

Due to the **age of our plants**, we have challenges with **license compliance issues**. For the current water balance, **we are the peak of the design capacity**. However, as we are increasing sources, **we will run out of capacity soon**.

The construction of the **New Regional Wastewater Treatment Works** will address the capacity backlog. **Plans for refurbishment** of our plants **are concluded** and the Grant funding approved (**projects for all three plants are shovel ready**).

### 5.10.6 Water Resilience Summary Risk Assessment

In line with the provided Table **below**, the responded questions help the City of Polokwane to understand the issues pertaining to water business. The essence of this question help the City comprehend perceived risk over the next 5 years in terms of the following categories- (very low, low, moderate, high, very high).

**Table: Summary Risk Assessment**

Perceived risk (over next 5 years) of ...	v low	low	mod	high	v high
Significant <b>water restrictions</b> being imposed			<b>X</b>		
Episodes of <b>drinking water unsafe</b> to drink	<b>X</b>				
Regular <b>water supply interruptions</b> (or less frequent but lengthy interruptions)				<b>X</b>	
Significant <b>pollution</b> of rivers / inland water bodies as a result of a failing sewer network or poor performance of wastewater treatment works		<b>X</b>			
<b>Unsound technical decisions</b> compromise service as a result of critical technical skills gaps		<b>X</b>			
<b>Unsound technical decisions</b> compromise service as a result of undue political interference		<b>X</b>			
<b>Deterioration in assets and service quality</b> as a result of inadequate spending on maintenance and rehabilitation/replacement of assets				<b>X</b>	

**Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU**

### 5.10.8 HR for Water and Sanitation Directorate (Professional Engineers)

**Number of registered professional engineers in water & sanitation department.**



- **x3 are candidates of registered** professional engineers in water & sanitation department.

**Critical skills vacancies (Number of posts at Professional level or above vacant or with acting position, out of year-on-year posts**

- Professionals Level = **Level 6-4**
- Number of Positions: =**21**,
- Number Vacant =**6 and**
- Number Filled= **15**

**Number of posts at artisan level, out of year-on-year posts); Staff per 1000 customer.**

- Artisan's level = Level 9-7
- Number of Positions= **55**
- Number Vacant= **24**
- Number Filled= **31**

**Acting positions**

- Director = **1**
- Manager = **1**
- Assistant Manager Purification= **1**
- Plant Supervisors = **2**
- Plumbers = **2**
- Fitter and Turner = **2**

**5.11 Smart Meters**

**5.11.1 Smart Meters Support and Enquiries**

In order to deal with the Smart Meters challenges, the City of Polokwane has established the following Measures as a way to Support and Resolve the enquiries faced by the community regarding the new Smart Meters. Dedicated Office to handle Smart meter was established i.e., **Office No. 110 Civic Centre (Head Office)**. For:

- New connections: -**Applied through building section at Civic Centre.**
- Shifting of a water meter: -**Office No. 110 Civic Centre.**
- Damaged water meter and CIU replacement: - **Office 110 Civic Centre.**
- Stolen water meter: **Office 110 Civic Centre.**
- Smart meter request: **Support Centre 087 350 2770.**
- Leakages, Low batteries and Conversions: **Support Centre 087 350 2770.**

**5.11.2 Turnaround Time when attending Complains**

- New connections: **0-14 days.**

- Shifting of a water meter: **0-7 days**.
- Damaged water meter and CIU replacement: **24 hours**.
- Stolen water meter: **24 hours**.
- Smart meter request: **1 month**.
- Leakages and Low batteries: **24 hours**.
- Prepaid conversions: **0-7 days**

## 5.12 WATER TANKERS

In Clusters that have shortage of water, the City of Polokwane is Relying on water tankers to provide water to the community on daily and weekly basis. The table below indicates the schedule per cluster:

Cluster	Total Number of Areas Supplied by Tankers	Dates of Supply	Comments
City	4	Daily	Areas tankered in the city are due to low reservoir levels resulting in insufficient system pressures to supply high lying areas.
Seshego	1	Daily	New Development.
Moletjie	42	Weekly	Areas tankered in Moletjie are due to insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Mankweng	20	Weekly	Areas tankered in Mankweng are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes, Lepelle Northern Water and lack of a water distribution networks.
Molepo/Chuene/ Maja	16	Weekly	Areas tankered in Molepo/Chuene/Maja are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes, Lepelle Northern Water and lack of a water distribution networks.
Sebayeng Dikgale	17	Weekly	Areas tankered in Sebayeng / Dikgale are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Aganang	24	Weekly	Areas tankered in Aganang are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
<b>Total</b>	<b>124</b>		

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

## 5.13 Municipal Boreholes Status Quo

### 5.13.1 City of Polokwane Boreholes Status Quo Report

Boreholes Status Quo			
Cluster	Total No of Boreholes	Total Number of Boreholes Operating	Total Number of Boreholes Not Operating
City	41	31	10
Seshego	12	9	3
Moletjie	98	67	31
Mankweng	67	49	18
Molepo-Chuene Maja	38	31	7
Sebayeng Dikgale	53	48	5
Aganang	135	113	22
<b>Total</b>	<b>444</b>	<b>348</b>	<b>96</b>

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

## 5.14 Pump Station Status Quo

### 5.14.1 SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL PUMP STATION STATUS QUO IN ALL CLUSTERS

Municipal Pump Stations			
Cluster	Total No of Pump stations	Total Number of Pump stations Operating	Total Number of Pump stations Not Operating
City	7	7	0
Seshego	1	1	0
Moletjie	1	1	0
Mankweng	2	2	0
Molepo-Chuene Maja	7	6	1
Sebayeng Dikgale	1	1	0
Aganang	1	1	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>1</b>

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.14.2 Names of the Pump Stations and Status Quo

	Cluster	Pump Station Name	Status
1	Chuene-Maja	Chuene Maja low lift	Operating
2	Chuene-Maja	Chuene Maja high lift	Operating

	<b>Cluster</b>	<b>Pump Station Name</b>	<b>Status</b>
3	Chuene-Maja	Matabole	Operating
4	Chuene-Maja	Nare Letsoalo	<b>Stolen Transformer.</b> Reported to Eskom
5	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 2	Operating
6	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 3	Operating
7	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 1	Operating
8	Mankweng	Monakadu	Operating
9	Mankweng	Mothiba Pump Station	Operating
10	Sebayeng-Dikgale	Solomondale Pump station	Operating
11	Moletjie	Bloodriver Pump station	Operating
12	Seshego	Seshego Pump station	Operating
13	City	Sand River North	Operating
14	City	Sand River	Operating
15	City	Ivy Dale Pump station	Operating
16	City	Ext 34	Operating
17	City	Marshall Street	Operating
18	City	Dalmada Treatment	Operating
19	City	Serala View	Operating
20	Aganang	Utjane Pump station	Operating
21	Dap Naude	Dap Naude	Operating

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

### 5.15 CHALLENGES WATER SERVICES

- Lack of sustainable water sources for current and future demand, the municipality is currently receiving between **80 to 99 MI/d** and unable to meet the peak flow demand of **163 MI/day**.
- Lack of As-Built drawings for the City and Mankweng
- Eradication of water supply backlog in RWS.
- Eradication of Sanitation backlog (**+68 000 HH**).
- Refurbish components of existing sewer plant to reduce the smell.
- Electrification of boreholes in RWS by ESKOM.
- Lack of capacity at the Mankweng wastewater treatment works, which creates challenge on future developments.
- Illegal yard connections in rural areas.
- Illegal disposal of sewage in storm water drains at Mankweng (Private University Residence).

- Shortage of staff that results in excessive overtime.
- Lack of rural sanitation maintenance plan.

### **5.16 Interventions to solve the Challenges**

- two water treatment plants, in constriction, progress is 75 % anticipated project delivery **2<sup>nd</sup> quarter 2022.**
- Refurbishment of Dap Naude Pipeline and Constriction of a new booster pump station.
- Upgrading and refurbishment of Seshego and Mashashane Water Treatment Works.

#### **Water supply system 1. Water Shortage**

- Refurbishment of City boreholes and intensify security.
- Implementation of Groundwater Project – Equipping of drilled boreholes, Bulk pumping lines and modelling (to produce supply zones, pressure zones, As built drawings).

#### **2.Waste Water Treatment Works (WWTW) overloaded.**

- Upgrading of Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Works to 32MI/day (current capacity by 26 MI/day). Phase 1 completed; Phase 2 planning completed awaiting funding.
- Construction of first 20MI/day module of the Regional Wastewater Treatment Works (RWWTW).
- Enhance the current operations (Capacity building to current personnel and filling the vacant positions).

#### **3.Aging Infrastructure**

##### **Water**

- Replacement of Asbestos Cement pipes (AC).
- Remodeling the water supply system (to locate valves, have As built drawings).

##### **Sanitation**

- Modelling the sewer system / Sewer Master Plan (for upgrading and refurbishment purpose)

#### **4.Uncoordinated New Settlements**

- All land developments to be coordinated through Planning Directorate.

#### **5.Transformers, cable theft and vandalism/ Delay from Eskom to energise the boreholes.**

- Develop security plan.
- Engage Eskom on their turnaround time for energizing of new boreholes and replacing the stolen transformers.

#### **6.Private water supply by LNW to Municipal Residence**

- Dalmada water users supplied directly from LNW.
- Engage with LNW and Dalmada Water users for Municipality to take over the water supply responsibility.

#### **7.Maintenance of Rural Households Sanitation.**

- Development of rural sanitation maintenance plan.

#### **8.Over reliance to annual contractors.**

- Build capacity to the internal personnel for the specialize functions e.g., boreholes and pump stations.

### **5.16.1 WHY REGIONAL WASTE WATER TREATMENT PLANT**

The City has **three (3)** Waste Water Treatment Plants i.e.

- 1) **Polokwane,**
- 2) **Seshego and**
- 3) **Mankweng.**

Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Plant is the **biggest** with **26 MI/day** capacity and the current load standing at **34 MI/day**. Plans are in place to construct the **100 ML/day Regional Waste Water Treatment Plant** for the whole Polokwane Municipal **sewage load** and to cater for new developments (however there is limited budget).

A memorandum of agreement to **refurbish and upgrade** the **over loaded** Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Plant has been signed by the Municipality and **Anglo American**.**The upgrade is now complete and has been commissioned.**

For the purposes of increasing the capacity of the Waste Water Treatment Plants to support **current and future development, the** municipality is currently in a process of building:

- 1) **New** Regional Wastewater treatment 20MI/day.
- 2) **Seshego** Wastewater Treatment Plant (Refurb).
- 3) **Mankweng** Wastewater Treatment Plant (Refurb & Upgrade).
- 4) **Polokwane** Wastewater Treatment Plant (Refurb)

### **5.16.2 Impact of the reduction of RBIG funding**

The following projects areas are affected by Reduction of RBIG funding:

- 1) **Phase 1 of the RWWTP (phase 1 complete, earthworks) (Photo Below).**



**(Pictures of the Earthworks Already Completed )**  
**Phase 2 of Regional Waste Water Treatment Plant, - due to COVID 19 the National Treasury has cut the budget that was put in the gazette**



**Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU**

**R120 Million has been invested to the 1<sup>st</sup> phase of the project. RBIG Funding the project has been reduced and the City of Polokwane Currently needs a new regional sewer plant.**

**2, Upgrading and refurbishment of Mankweng treatment plant (intended to cater for the University of Limpopo growth).**

- The Reduction in RBIG Funding has also affected the plans for the Mankweng Sewer Plant, and Mankweng is a nodal point, the University of Limpopo has applied for funding with regard to student accommodation, there is a serious need of New Sewer Plant in Mankweng.

**3) Refurbishment of the Dap Naude water pipeline.**

- The Reduction in RBIG funding has affected the refurbishment of the pipeline from Ebenezer Dam to the City.

**4) Upgrading and refurbishment of the Seshego wastewater treatment plant. (Progress at advanced stage) (Photo below).**

## Construction of the Seshego Water Treatment Works.



Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

Construction of the Sand River North Water Treatment Works.

## Construction of the Sand River North Water Treatment Works.



## 5.17 Polokwane Water Utility - Metro Vision

Polokwane Municipality is earmarked to be the first future Metropolitan Municipality for Limpopo Province.

For the municipality to reach that status it will have to satisfy number of requirements in terms of criteria and amongst those will be the City's development growth and the crux of that development is **water**.

Sustainable bulk water supply to the city will ensure that all lined up **catalytic projects** which are also meant to boost the City's opportunity to become a metro become successful.

Other Metropolitan Municipalities have successfully established their **own water entities** which successfully supply their own water and carry out maintenance.

**Johannesburg Metro** has established its own Municipal Water Entity called Johannesburg Water (CoJ) as its sole shareholder.

On the side of Ekurhuleni Metro, they have established East Rand Water Company (ERWAT) established in 1992 as Section 21 Company.

Polokwane Municipality sources **60%** of its water from **outside** the boundary of the Municipality the majority of which is supplied by **Lepelle Northern Water (LNW)**.

Water is bought from LNW for **R9/kl**. For the **2020/21** financial year, bulk purchases for water totaled **R 191 088 675.00** according to the audited financial statements

An external mechanism of water & wastewater service provision would imply that the full responsibility for the provision of all or a ring-fenced part of water & sanitation services, which may include **repairs, maintenance, upgrading, renewal and expansion** of the works (possibly even including the development of new works) is transferred to the **proposed utility**, which is then by implication a new WSP under the WSA.

The WSP is solely and autonomously responsible for the execution of the particular ring-fenced service, held accountable by the WSA based on an output specification, and carries substantial technical, operational and financial risk.

In such instance, output specification driven, performance-based agreement will be required between the city and its Water Utility.

### 5.17.1 KEY WATER INFRASTRUCTURE

#### **Bulk Surface water abstraction system:**

- Dap Naude Dam (18 MI/day)
- Seshego Dam (2 MI/day)
- Molepo Dam (6 MI/day)
- Houtriver Dam (1.6 MI/day)
- Mashashane/Utjane Dam (0.5 MI/day)
- Chuene Maja Dam (2.7 MI/day)

#### **Bulk Ground Water System:**



Ground water is classified according to two main supply schemes or systems, namely the **Polokwane groundwater system** and the **Seshego System** (also incorporating the surface water abstraction from Seshego Dam) to bring additional **20 MI/day**.

### **Water Treatment Works**

- Dap Naude/Dalmada Water Treatment Works **(18 MI/day)**
- New Seshego Water Treatment Works **(10.4 MI/day)** \*\*
- New Sand River Nort Water Treatment Works **(18 MI/day)** \*\*
- Molepo Water Treatment Works **(6 MI/day)**
- Houtriver Water Treatment Works **(1.6 MI/day)**
- Mashashane/Utjane Water Treatment Works **(0.5 MI/day)**
- Chuene Maja Water Treatment Works **(2.7 MI/day)**

### **Wastewater Treatment Works:**

- Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Works **(27 MI/day)**
- Seshego Wastewater Treatment Works **(9 MI/day)**
- Mankweng Wastewater Treatment Works **(8 MI/day)**
- New Regional Wastewater Treatment Works **(20 MI/day)** \*\*\*

***(\*\*\*indicates Projects that are under implementation.)***

### **Other Infrastructure Includes but not limited:**

- Sewer Pumps Stations.
- Raw Water & Portable Water Pump Stations.
- Bulk water and Bulk Wastewater pipelines.
- Bulk & Service Reservoirs.
- Reticulation Pipelines.
- Bulk and Domestic Meters.

## **5.17.2 Recommendations for Polokwane Water Utility**

**It is recommended that the Municipality:**

- Engage in a **pre-feasibility** fact finding exercise to determine the potential of establishment of a water utility, it may be beneficial to engage with **Metros** regarding their successful transition to an establishment of water utility, specifically regarding any lessons learnt during their process.
- Conduct a study as per Section 76 of MSA to determine the service delivery mechanism, implications and overall feasibility, this study needs to be comprehensive and include as a minimum the MSA and WSA requirements.
- The current human capital may be affected. Engagement with labour **Unions** should be undertaken, and a resolution will be required concerning the existing staff.
- The recommended procedure is that the current staff employed by the city will be required to be transferred to the Utility for training and skills development.

## CHAPTER Six: Energy Services

### 6.1. ENERGY SERVICES

Polokwane Municipality distributes electricity in the City/Seshego cluster while Eskom is the service provider in the rest of the Municipal area. 99% of dwellings in the City/Seshego cluster are supplied with electricity. Streetlights and High Mast lights are installed annually in various areas of the municipal area of jurisdiction.

The number of households with access to electricity increased from 230 177 in 2019 to 231317 in 2020 and to 232 172 in 2021 and 233 372 in 2022. Households for Polokwane municipality increased from 178 001 in 2011 to 239 116 in 2016 (Stats SA 2016), making the current access to electrification to 99.26%. IHS Global insight (2021) indicates that Polokwane municipality has 244 359 households. Although the backlog percentage seems less, the growth rate of the city makes the municipality to fail in making sure access to electricity by all. The municipal area increased in 2016, incorporating major parts of former Aganang municipality (76.93%) into Polokwane and thus adding backlog numbers.

#### 6.1.1 Energy Master Plan

The **Energy Master Plan** has been reviewed in 2018/19 and has been approved by council. The draft master plan is prepared on the basis of 5 years' growth Projection. The analysis of the energy master plan forms the basis of a recommendation regarding the anticipated demographic and economic growth factor that should be provided for in terms of additional electricity demand during the next five years. The current challenge is the rate in which low-cost houses are constructed in the urban area, Polokwane Ext 78 and Ext 133, 134, 127 and 40 to name the few, thus creating urban backlog of 10800.

**Table: Distribution of households with its main source of energy for lighting**

Main source of energy	No of Households
Electricity from mains	227 641
Other sources of electricity (e.g., generator, etc.)	302
Gas	419
Paraffin	2038
Candles	8383
Solar	500
Other	394

Main source of energy	No of Households
None	554
Unspecified	435
<b>Total</b>	<b>241 129</b>

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

In comparison with the 2011 Census there is tremendous improvement of the number of households with access to electricity in 2022. The census shows that 225 628 households out of 239 116 have access to electricity with the current backlog being 8 939. The current Polokwane Municipality Priority list indicates an increase from backlog of 15 965 to 19371 in 2021. households. Polokwane municipality electrified 2013 households during 2021/22 financial year.

### 6.1.2 Free Basic Electricity

Free basic electricity is the amount of electricity which is deemed sufficient to provide basic electricity services to a poor household.

Polokwane municipality provides **50kWh** of free electricity to registered consumers in the Eskom supply area with 20,901 configured consumers (16,081 collecting) which is a reduction from the 21,504 households in rural Polokwane area Mankweng and Solomondale from the previous financial year. The number reduced after the process done to re-register and verification of beneficiaries. In Polokwane and Seshego (Polokwane license area) 100kWh is allocated monthly to 8663 households from 13134 registered beneficiaries. In Aganang cluster, 3995 households are benefitting from FBE whilst 500 households are benefitting from Free Basic Alternative Energy (FBAE).

#### Challenges

1. Non collection by some beneficiaries
2. Free Basic Electricity provided to able people while some indigents do not benefit
3. Insufficient staff to verify and approve indigence in Eskom and municipal license areas
4. Budget constrains to provide 100kWh in Polokwane license area, the national allocation is 50kWh for FBE.

Table: Free Basic Electricity Provision

Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Number Customers	The level and standard
<b>Electricity</b>				
Eskom Area	R157.08 per month	16081collected	21437	50kWh at RDP standard



Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Number Customers	The level and standard
				(20amp connections)
Municipal License Area	R118.53 per month	8 663collected	8 400	100 kWh (20-amp connections)-

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

### 6.1.3 Free Basic Alternative Energy (solar light system)

Polokwane municipality had in the past in conjunction with Department of Mineral Resources and Energy provided solar light system to households that will not be provided with electricity in five years' time. The contract ceased since it was between the service provider and Department of mineral resources and energy. New service providers have been appointed and the municipality is busy with the application to activate it again.

Polokwane municipality is providing this service to 500 households with solar light, cooking gel and gel stoves to Aganang cluster, a cluster service provisioning that formed part of basic conditions for incorporating former Aganang municipality with Polokwane. The numbers also fluctuate as and when the areas get electrified. 445 households benefited for 2016/17 financial year till 2018/2019. From 2020 to date 500 beneficiaries are served.

#### Challenges

1. Financial constrains to provide the FBAE (free basic alternative) service
2. The appointment of new service provider by department of mineral resources and Energy for alternative (non- grid) energy).
3. Service providers engaging directly with communities
4. Not enough staff to verify beneficiaries

### 6.1.4 Solar Water Geysers

Polokwane municipality received 10 000 units to be allocated to low-cost housing and indigent residences of wards **8, 11,12,13,14,17,19 and 37** within City and Seshego clusters with an additional 6000 added at a later stage. Council approved the criteria in 2016/17 financial year considering people who were living in low-cost houses and paying services to the municipality first. The program is planned to be rolled all over the municipal area as and when new allocations are provided. Currently 197 geysers installed with seven incidences of hot water bursts that resulted in four people with minor injuries. Polokwane, DMRE and the Department and Labor are busy with investigations and had to put the project on hold. **The project is continuing with different types of geysers (flat ones) and about 3000 geysers installed to date.**

#### Challenges

1. Geyser allocation to a moving target as new low-cost housing are allocated annually.
2. Water reticulation compliance of the project
3. Budget for Extra accessories and service requirements by the municipality. E.g., the cost to move water connection from the corner tap to the house.

4. Roof type, e.g., Asbestos roofs not strong enough to carry the weight.
5. Warn out roof structures and rotten corrugated irons
6. Appointments and roll out by the department of mineral resources and energy
7. Cases of inappropriate material provided, e.g. plastic taps, tap screws instead of bolt and nuts
8. Roof leaks, etc.

#### **6.1.5 Challenges/Achievements by the Municipality to provide Energy.**

- Capacity Provisioning – the municipality will not be able to sustain future developments unless new programmes are implemented to provide electricity capacity. Projects were identified to strengthen the supply which, amongst others, includes construction of Bakone substation, which is at completion stage, construction of Bakone to IOTA 66kV line, construction of Matlala substation, construction of 66KV lines from Matlala substation to Alfa and Sigma substations respectfully as well as construction of a 90MW solar farm through PPP which are currently at planning stage.
- Delays in implementation of other strategic projects identified in the master plan due to budget constrains will result in lack of capacity in future which might require the implementation of internal load shedding.
- Illegal connections and bridging of electricity meters are contributing to electricity losses. Cigicell appointed to help with revenue enhancement.
- Ageing infrastructure
- Theft and vandalism of cables has been reduced in substations, but thieves are now targeting other areas such as household connections, miniature substations and low voltage cables in the industrial areas, streetlight and meter box covers. Storage of equipment by street vendors and people living in streets are breaking locks for mini substations.
- The reduction was because of the appointed of a service provider who is monitoring substations on 24 hours, 7 days a week basis.
- Theft of transformers which supplies residents and borehole pumps is very high in rural areas and is causing disruption of service delivery.
- ESKOM has upgraded Boyne and Nobel substations and now busy upgrading University substation and new Rampheri substation is also under construction. Network strengthening is also taking place in strategic areas within the municipality.
- A company was appointed to install prepaid meters for Domestic customers and Smart metering solutions for business and bulk supplied customers within the city/Seshego area.
- Meter auditing of the current prepaid meters is ongoing as part of programmes of reducing energy losses.
- Installation of check meters to verify the bill from Eskom, has been completed.
- A service provider has also been appointed to upgrade the current meters for Token Identifier (TID) compliance and replace meters that cannot be upgraded to be able to recognise new tokens post 2024.

### 6.1.6 BACKLOG OF ENERGY SERVICES

Below is the current status of existing backlog in energy services, which without annual maintenance will escalate.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog
Electricity	280 225	242 015 (87.2%)	38 210

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

### 6.1.7 Rural Areas Electrification

Each year the City of Polokwane get INEP (Integrated National Electrification Plan) grant Budget to Electrify Rural Areas that still do not have Electricity. Council has approved electricity Priority list that guide the Process. there is so much progress in this Programme.

### 6.1.8 Polokwane/Seshego Urban Complex Technical Assessment

#### Electricity Services

<b>Level of Service</b>	Grid Electricity Service - connected and metered (conventional and or pre-paid).
<b>Overview</b>	The Municipality distributes electricity in the Polokwane City/Seshego Functional Area while Eskom is the service provider in the rest of the Municipal area.
<b>Capacity and Backlog</b>	<p>The electricity backlog in the Polokwane Electricity Supply Area is 10800. New township development in the Seshego (Extension 133, 134, 127,126) area have not been electrified but the process of building more low-cost housing continues.</p> <p>ESKOM currently supplies Polokwane Municipality from two substations namely the Pietersburg Substation and the Silica Substation. Indications are that the demand on the Pietersburg Substation exceeds the secure capacity of the supply lines by 45% but does not exceed the secure capacity of the 132kV / 66kV transformers. The demand at the Silica Substation does not exceed the secure capacity of the incoming lines or the secure capacity of the 132kV /66kV transformers. ESKOM has the following upgrading/strengthening strategies:</p> <p><b>Pietersburg Substation:</b></p> <p>ESKOM is currently busy with the planning for the construction of a new 132kV supply line from the ESKOM Witkop Main Transmission Substation to the ESKOM Pietersburg Substation. This line will have a capacity of 195MVA and is expected to be completed in 2026. At the completion of this line the secure capacity of the supply lines to Pietersburg Substation will be 172MVA which will be sufficient until 2028.</p> <p>After completion of the new line one of the existing lines will be upgraded as well to have a capacity of 195MVA. The date of completion of the upgrading of this line is currently</p>

unknown. Completion of the upgrading of this line will bring the secure capacity of the supply lines to, Pietersburg Substation to 281MVA. This upgrade falls outside the 10-year planning window.

**Silica Substation:** No upgrading for the substation is planned.

**Seshego Metering Point - Sigma Substation:** No upgrading for this metering point is planned.

**Pietersburg Substation: area:** The completion of the Bakone - Iota 66kV line and the Bakone intake substation is scheduled for completion in year three (3) after which the 66kV lines feeding into the old Pietersburg area will have a firm capacity of 4 x 80MVA = 320MVA. This is sufficient for the foreseeable future demand.

**Seshego area:** Supplied from Eskom Pietersburg substation to the Seshego metering point by a single non-firm 66kV line with a capacity of 42MVA which is concerning for the following reasons:

It is mostly a wood-pole line with poles dating from 1976/1977. This indicates that the line is 41 years old and has reached the end of its lifespan.

The supply is not firm, and a breakdown of the line could result in a lengthy period without electricity for the entire Seshego.

It is recommended that this line be replaced due to the age of the existing line.

It is further recommended for the Construction of Matlala and Dentron substations with its connector 66kV lines to make a complete 66KV ring in Seshego area as well

**Bakone Intake Substation:** The Bakone substation is scheduled for completion in 2023 and no problem is envisaged in the study period with this substation.

**Alpha Intake Substation:** The 66kV supply line to Sigma substation is currently supplied from the Eskom Pietersburg substation and is under control of Eskom. This situation is unacceptable, especially when the 66kV system will be modified to become a firm supply when control of the system must be by the Municipality. To correct the situation, Eskom moved the metering point to Alpha/Pietersburg substation but not yet transferred ownership of the line to Polokwane municipality.

The existing transformer substation has sufficient capacity for the 10-year study period. In the long-term new transformer substations are required with the proposed establishment of Tweefontein, Dendron and Matlala to unlock the development of the areas.

**Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate**

The largest contributor to service charges is **electricity services** with a contribution of 68% followed by **water services** accounting for approximately 18% of the total service charges levied.

### **6.1.9 The Supply and Installation of Electrical network at EXT 78 - Phase 2**

#### **Project Description**

STANDS) –Multiyear Project: The Supply and Installation of Electrical network at Polokwane EXT 78 - Phase 2 (1210)

## 6.2 Electricity Losses

The municipality has managed to decrease electricity losses to **11,8%** in the 2021/2022 financial year. Automatic meter reading has been installed on all Large Power Users allowing constant monitoring of 503 large consumers. This automatic meter reading systems, meter audits and ad hoc operations to identify illegal connections are used to reduce energy losses. The municipality has also established a Revenue Protection Unit to assist with finding illegal connections, meter tampering and meters that are not on the financial system.

### 6.2.1 Causes of electricity losses

#### (a) Technical losses

- Transmission/distribution losses (**Inherent resistance of conductors to conduct electricity**).
- Transformer losses (**Copper and iron losses**).

#### (b) Non-Technical Losses

- Bridged meters.
- Illegal connections.
- Unread meters.
- Wrong readings.
- Meters not on the system.

### 6.2.2 Longer Term plan to address Electricity losses (distribution and revenue)

#### (a) Non-Technical Losses:

- Continuous meter auditing.
- Implement a check and area metering solution to identify where the main losses occur – area metering, substation and feeder levels.
- Purchase “**smart ready**” **pre-payment meters** to replace tampered and faulty meters.
- **Back to basics** approach and improve and enhance the customer service programmes and education programmes in the field.
- Ensure that all consumers are metered and are paying for the energy consumed.

#### (b) Technical Losses:

- Contribute to approximately **6-8%** of total losses depending on the loading and the age of the networks.
- **Re-prioritise** spending to increase the funding for upgrading and refurbishing of electrical networks.
- **Develop Maintenance Plans** to improve the performance of networks to reduce the technical losses

- Consider network operations **under optimum “open point”** conditions to avoid long feeders and high resistances.
- Maintain networks to the standard as prescribed by **NERSA**.
- Electrical meters to be installed on all municipal buildings, street and traffic lights to account for own use which is now shown as losses

### 6.2.3 Electricity Losses (Key Findings)

Electricity loss	June 22		Jun-21		Jun-20	
	Units	Value	Units	Value	Units	Value
<b>Loss</b>	78 885 211 kWh	R 103,603,776.84	103 721 777 kWh	R 115,503,859.95	103 514 579 kWh	R 107,822,221.05
<b>Percentage losses</b>	<b>11,8%</b>		<b>15%</b>		<b>15%</b>	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

### Progress in addressing backlogs in basic services (Electrification)

The municipality is electrifying houses on a **priority list** that was approved by council in **2017** with approximately **1500** houses to be electrified per year.

**2013** Houses were electrified in 2021/23 with 1800 planned to be electrified for the next three years with funding as per the current **DORA allocation**.

### Challenges Experienced

- ✓ Funding deductions – A certain number of houses are planned and included in the IDP and then needs **to be reduced** when the DORA is published.
- ✓ Capacity shortages on Eskom networks.
- ✓ Site allocation by Indunas/Kgoshi's are generally **not planned properly** and are sometimes in **wetlands**.
- ✓ Additional houses **built after** the planning was finalised is a challenge .
- ✓ DMRE allocation per house **too little** to cover the actual cost.
- ✓ Amount of additional houses is **increasing faster** than what is electrified.
- ✓ **CoGHSTA** is implementing housing projects without funding for electricity.



## Progress in addressing backlogs in basic services (Public lighting)

### Public lighting

Only **five high mast lights** are installed per year due to funding shortages on CRR and as and when CRR funds are available.

Solar lighting technology, even though not as effective as Grid connected lighting, is going to be used in 2022/2023 for the first time to avoid high connection costs and capacity constraints in the Eskom supply areas. It will also assist with lighting up high crime areas during load shedding and load reduction.

### Challenges Experienced

- The demand for high mast lights is **much higher** than what is installed.
- Eskom connections are **very costly** and takes for ages to be completed.
- Capacity constraints on Eskom networks hampers the completion of most of the high mast light projects.
- Energy services is implementing solar High Mast lights as a resolution to this.

### New infrastructure

- New infrastructure is planned and implemented by means of the **Energy Master Plan** which was approved by Council in **2020 Fy**.
- The City is, however, **growing faster** than what can be funded from the CRR.
- The municipality is currently in **negotiations with Eskom and NERSA** for **taking over** some of the **Eskom networks** that are in close proximity of municipal networks and that are falling in the **SDF** and or is creating unsafe islands within the Polokwane supply area.
- The municipality is busy **advertising** for the installation of **Power Banks** to reduce the **Eskom Maximum Demand** and the installation of a **Solar Farm** to reduce the consumption on the Eskom Bill is also in an advanced planning stage.

### New infrastructure

#### Power Bank and Solar Farm Projects

- The municipality is busy advertising for the installation of **Power Banks** to reduce the **Eskom Maximum Demand**.
- The project will be implemented on a Risk Based Approach with minimal to **zero expenditure for the municipality**.
- Service providers will recoup their capital layout from a share of the savings on the Eskom Bill.
- Further to the **Power Banks project**, the municipality embarked on a feasibility study for the installation of a **Solar Farm project**, in which the **DBSA got** involved and found it to be a viable project with the potential of becoming a **regional supplier** that can include supply to smaller neighbouring municipalities.
- The 100MW approval by government suits this project ideally.

**Planned expenditure towards (new infrastructure, operations; maintenance and planning)**

**(Projects Planned for the next three years)**

Projects planned for the next three years	Required Budget
Completion of Bakone Substation	R20m
Bakone to Iota 66kV connector line	R60m
Securing of servitudes for 66kV Ring Feeders	R6,7m
Matlala Substation	R50m
New Pietersburg Substation	R55m
Sigma to Matlala 66kV connector line	R30m
Tweefontein substation	R52m
Electrification of houses	R108m
Replace street lights with LED luminaires	R24m

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

#### 6.2.4 Maintenance Plan for Electrical Infrastructure

##### Maintenance Plan

- A **Maintenance Plan** is currently being developed with the assistance of the Asset team to plan and implement maintenance of infrastructure in an **organised and auditable fashion**.
- Funding allocation towards maintenance of infrastructure will in future be much easier.
- The City is currently **not honouring** its licence agreement with **NERSA** as far as maintenance of infrastructure is concerned.
- The funding allocation towards the maintenance of infrastructure currently stands at **R 27,705,043.00**
  - Refurbishment of Ivydale overhead networks = R4,5m
  - Replace cables = R14m
  - Replace meter boxes and 11kV Oil switchgear = R15,7m

#### 6.3 Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

##### Introduction

Polokwane municipality has been issued with the licence to distribute Electricity in the City and Seshego areas. The other areas and townships are supplied by Eskom who has capacity challenges already and busy improving that through construction of substations. Electricity is one of the basic service deliveries KPI for any licenced Municipality. The process of capacity provisioning includes construction and/or

upgrading of substations and switching stations to be able to provide electricity as and when required. The delays in construction of substations means that some new developed areas will not be able to be provided with electricity.

### Discussions

Annually the municipality do budget for the provisioning of bulk electrical infrastructure. CRR and INEP are used to provide infrastructure and electrification projects. Budget constrains causes some projects to be done way after their proposed construction period, which means some developmental areas will lack capacity to be connected. Township developments continues as some are done through private developers and some by COGHTA. Those by COGHTA are provided with gravel roads, water and sanitation. Electrical capacity provisioning is done by developers for private developments and by Polokwane Municipality for COGHTA and municipal developments.

#### 6.3.1 Approved Townships List that Require Electrification

The following table is a report from Planning and Land Use management unit indicating the approved townships and those on planning to be implemented. Most of them shows water and sanitation completed, while electrical and taring of roads requires municipal budgets to be done.

#### A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
1	Polokwane X 72	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income Low income	500 Government employee housing 300 RDP Units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections  Water and Sanitation Installed	R 64 000 000.00  R33 000 000.00 RDP subsidies required

## A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
<b>2</b>	Polokwane X 76	Erf 15953 and Erf 15934 Polokwane X 76	Approved Proclaimed	Social Housing	240 housing units Residential 4	High density Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	<b>R96 000 000.00</b> CCG & top up subsidies secured <b>R 9 600 000.00</b>
<b>3</b>	Polokwane X 78	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	3000 units Residential 1 Mixed 2100 RDP units 500 high densities 400 GAP	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Res 1 Res 4 Res 1 Water and Sanitation Installed	<b>R 240 000 000.00</b> <b>R168 000 000.00</b> funding required <b>R128 000.00</b> CCG & top up subsidies required <b>R4 000 000.00</b> FLISP subsidies required
<b>4</b>	Polokwane X 79	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income	500 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	<b>R 40 000 000.00</b>
<b>5</b>	Polokwane X 106	Portion 171 of the farm Doornkraal 680 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category, Student Accommodation and Social Housing.	208 units Residential 1-190 Residential 2-18	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections .	<b>R 6 640 000.00</b> RDP subsidies

## A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
						Water and Sanitation Installed	
<b>6</b>	Polokwane X 107	Portion 191 of the farm Doornkraal 680 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category, Student Accommodation and Social Housing.	638 units 238 RDP 200 social housing Student accommodation Residential 1-142 Residential 2-854	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Res 1 High densities Student beds Res 1 GAP Market Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	R 51 040 000.00 R26 180 000.00 required R51 200 000.00 R29 319 781.00 Funding required R1 420 000.00 FLISP subsidies required. R8 540 000.00 FLISP subsidies required
<b>7</b>	Polokwane X 86	Remaining Extent of Portion 45 of the farm Doornkraal 680 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	564 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	<b>R 45 120 000.00</b>

## A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
<b>8</b>	Polokwane X 121	To be verified	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	300 units  Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage,  Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	<b>R 24 000 000.00</b>
<b>9</b>	Polokwane X 126	Engelsch edoornboom 668 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	500 units  Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage,  electrical Connections . Installation in progress for Water and Sanitation	<b>R 40 000 000.00</b>
<b>10</b>	Polokwane X 127	Farm Engelsch edoornboom 668 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	500 units  Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage,  electrical Connections , Water and Sanitation.	<b>R 40 000 000.00</b>



## A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
<b>11</b>	Polokwane X 133	Farm Klipfontein 670 LS  Farm Stoefontein 678 LS	Approved  Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	3000 units  2 000 RDP  1 000 market  Residential 1  GAP	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.  RDP  GAP market	R 240 000 000.00  <b>R220 000 000.00</b> subsidies required  R10 000 000.00 FLISP subsidies required
<b>12</b>	Polokwane X 134	Farm Vogelstruisfontein 667 LS	Approved  Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	2290 units  Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	<b>R 366 400 000.00</b>
<b>13</b>	Nirvana X 5	Holding 74 and 75 Ivydale AH	Approved  Proclaimed	Middle income category	100 units  Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	<b>R 16 000 000.00</b>
<b>14</b>	Seshego C	Seshego	Approved  Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified  100 units  Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation Installed	To be verified  R 16 000 000.00
<b>15</b>	Mankweng Unit C X 1	Mankweng	Approved  Proclaimed	Middle income category	402 units  Residential 1	Tarred Road Network,	<b>R 16 080 000.00</b>
<b>16</b>	Mankweng Unit F	Mankweng	Approved  Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified  500 UNITS  Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	<b>R 80 000 000.00</b>

## A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
<b>17</b>	Mankweng Unit G	Mankweng	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified 500 UNITS Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	<b>R 80 000 000.00</b>
<b>18</b>	Mamadimo Park	Portion 54 of the Farm Syferkuil 921 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	1007 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	<b>R 161 120 000.00</b>
<b>19</b>	Erf 514 and Erf 515 Annadale Ext 1	Annadale	Approved Proclaimed	Social Housing	494 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity High density	R 19 680 000.00 R135 000 000.00 CCG & top up subsidies acquired
<b>20</b>	Erf 6403 Portion 1 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	51 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	<b>R 2 040 000.00</b>
<b>21</b>	Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	55 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	<b>R 2 200 000.00</b>
<b>22</b>	Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	50 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	<b>R 2 200 000.00</b>
<b>23</b>	Erf 8634 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	50 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	<b>R 2 200 000.00</b>
<b>TOTAL</b>						<b>R 1 659 320 000.00</b>	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

### 6.3.2 Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)

The above developments require electricity and in some areas the construction of a substation or switching station to make sure there is capacity available for electrical connections. The following summary shows the cost implementation to provide electricity as some shown above are costs for reticulation without capacity provisioning.

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	Total Low cost	Total Middle/High Income	Total Estimated Costs	Comments
Polokwane Ext 72	300 @ R 6 000 000	500 @ R 12 000 000	<b>R 18 000 000</b>	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext 76		240 @ R 6 000 000	<b>R 6 000 000</b>	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext 78	3000 @ R 60 000 000	3000 @ R 75 000 000	<b>R 75 000 000</b>	Busy with 2000 sites. 1000 households completed It requires the completion of new Pietersburg to connect all sites. Portion 2 could be connected from Emdo temporary.
Polokwane Ext 79	500 @ R 10 000 000		<b>R 10 000 000</b>	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext. 86	564 @ R 11 280 000		<b>R 11 280 000</b>	No capacity. It depends on completion of New Pietersburg substation.

**Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)**

<b>Total townships</b>	<b>Total Low cost</b>	<b>Total Middle/High Income</b>	<b>Total Estimated Costs</b>	<b>Comments</b>
<b>Polokwane Ext 106</b>	208 @ R 5 000 000		<b>R 5 000 000</b>	Capacity not available, can be connected temporarily from Luthuli 9L feeder. New 11KV switching station to be built through developers at Polokwane Ext. 109
<b>Polokwane Ext. 107</b>	438@ R8 760 000	200@ R5 000 000	<b>R 13 760 000</b>	Capacity not available, can be connected temporarily from Emdoring. New 11KV switching station to be built through developers at Polokwane Ext.109
<b>Polokwane Ext. 121</b>	300@R 6 000 000		<b>R 6 000 000</b>	No capacity. It depends on completion of New Pietersburg substation.
<b>Polokwane Ext.126</b>	500 @ R 10 000 000		<b>R 10 000 000</b>	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
<b>Polokwane Ext. 127</b>	500 @ R 10 000 000		<b>R 10 000 000</b>	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
<b>Polokwane Ext.133</b>	2000 @ R40 000 000	1000 @ R 20 000 000	<b>R 60 000 000</b>	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line

**Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)**

<b>Total townships</b>	<b>Total Low cost</b>	<b>Total Middle/High Income</b>	<b>Total Estimated Costs</b>	<b>Comments</b>
<b>Polokwane Ext.134</b>	2290 @ R 46 000 000		<b>R 46 000 000</b>	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
<b>Nirvana X 5</b>	100 @ 3 000 000		<b>R 3 000 000</b>	Capacity available and could be connected from Epsilon substation through Southern Gate way substation.
<b>Seshego C</b>	100 @ R 2 500 000		<b>R 2 500 000</b>	Capacity available and can be connected from Zone 3 Or zone 6 ring
<b>Mankweng Unit C X 1</b>	402			No capacity but Eskom to confirm
<b>Mankweng Unit F</b>	500			Completed
<b>Mankweng Unit G</b>	500			Completed
<b>Mamadimo Park</b>	1007			Completed
<b>Erf 514 and Erf 515 Annadale Ext 1 (Garena)</b>	494 @ R 15 000 000		<b>R 15 000 000</b>	Busy and capacity available from Gamma substation
<b>Erf 6403 Portion 1 Pietersburg</b>	51 @ R 1 600 000		<b>R 1 600 000</b>	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
<b>Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg</b>	55 @ R 1 700 000		<b>R 1 700 000</b>	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
<b>Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg</b>	50 @ R 1 500 000		<b>R 1 500 000</b>	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
<b>Erf 8634 Pietersburg</b>	50 @ R 1 500 000		<b>R 1 500 000</b>	Capacity available from Epsilon substation

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	Total Low cost	Total Middle/High Income	Total Estimated Costs	Comments
Design and Construct New Matlala Substation including feeder line from Alfa substation			R 197 000 000	The designs should be completed in the 2022/23 financial year
Design and Construct New Pietersburg substation			R 66 000 000	Designs completed and requires R66 000 000 including 3X11KV cables from Gamma to New Pietersburg substation, however, it is dependent on the upgrading of Gamma Substation
Upgrading of Gamma substation			R 70 000 000	To add 1X20MVA transformer, the feeder bay, the substation building extension and switchgear.
Completion of Bakone Substation			R 20 000 000	To complete the Bakone Substation ready to connect a 66kV feeder to IOTA substation
Build 66kV Feeder between Bakone and IOTA Substations			R 60 000 000	To build a 66kV feeder that will connect Bakone and IOTA Substations to enable firm supply to all the municipality's substations. Design completed, busy with servitude negotiations
<b>Total Budget Required</b>			<b>R 710 840 000</b>	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate



## 6.4 Electricity Master Plan

The Electrical master plan shows the developments and projects to be implemented, when to implement those projects and the cost estimates. If network infrastructure development could be done as indicated in the Master Plan, the above challenges could be avoided. Master plan indicates that the designs for New Matlala, 66KV substation to be started in 2020/21 financial year.

## 6.5 Future Township Developments

The table below indicate the future municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of **engineering services**. These will be considered at five to ten-year plan and estimates shown will be revised in five years to come.

### Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
<b>1</b>	Not yet allocated	Portion 158 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 112 000 000.00</b> <b>R21 000 000</b> for Electrical connection from Epsilon
<b>2</b>	Not yet allocated	Portion 159 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 112 000 000.00</b> <b>R21 000 000</b> for Electrical connections from Epsilon
<b>3</b>	Not yet allocated	Portion 160 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 112 000 000.00</b> <b>R21 000 000</b> for Electrical connections from Epsilon

**Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.**

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
<b>4</b>	Ivydale Ext 35	Ivydale AH	Planning Process	Middle income	To be verified 400 UNITS Residential 1 Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 102 400 000.00</b>  CCG & top up subsidies required  <b>R 12 000 000 (electr)</b>
<b>5</b>	Polokwane X 40	To be verified	Planning Process	Middle income	To be verified 400 UNITS Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 64 000 000.00</b>  <b>R76 057 141 (electr)</b>  Has court order and will be done once the place starts to be occupied
<b>6</b>	Ga Mothapo Integrated Human Settlement	Ga Mothapo Traditional Council	Planning Process	Mixed Income	5000 To be verified Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 800 000 000.00</b>  Electricity provision by Eskom
<b>7</b>	Farm Hardetyd and Vrederust	Mamabolo Traditional Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 80 000 000.00</b>  Electricity provision by Eskom
<b>8</b>	Solomdale /Sebayeng	Dikgale Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 80 000 000.00</b>  Electricity provision by Eskom
<b>9</b>	Makgoba Village	Makgoba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	300 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service	<b>R 24 000 000.00</b>

**Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.**

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
						reticulation including roads	Electricity provision by Eskom
<b>10</b>	Mothibaskraal Village	Mothiba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units To be verified Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 80 000 000.00</b> Electricity provision by Eskom
<b>11</b>	Vlakfontein Juno Village	Matla Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	415 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 66 400 000.00</b> Electricity provision by Eskom
<b>12</b>	Boanatlou Village	Maraba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	58 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 9 280 000.00</b> Electricity provision by Eskom
<b>13</b>	Mankgaile Village	Molepo Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	600 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	<b>R 96 000 000.00</b> Electricity provision by Eskom
						<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R</b>
						<b>Total Electrical</b>	<b>1 699 680 000.00</b>
							<b>R 151 057 141</b>

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

### 6.5.1 Energy Services Challenges

The Polokwane City being the Capital of Limpopo Province, and the business hub, coupled with urbanisation contributes to high backlog into service delivery. The ageing infrastructure also needs to be considered, thus sharing the budget of electricity provisioning projects. Commitment of multi-year projects may allow annual budget provisioning to some of the projects.

Discussions with CIGICELL revealed that their current funding models does not make provision for the implementation of projects of this nature. They, however, agreed to investigate the possibility of funding such projects and will revert to the municipality in due course.

IUDG was identified as another source of funding. The fund was used to co-fund R12,000,000.00 for the installation of the Bakone to Iota 66kV feeder in the 2022/2023 financial year.

### 6.5.2 Financial Impact

The municipality should provide at least an annual budget of **R150 000 000** per year for the next five years for electrical capacity building and township developmental projects. A total of **R740 840 000 million rand** is required to implement the medium term (**next 5 years**) projects.

### 6.5.3 Recommendations

That Energy services be provided with a column to indicate the capacity availability in the identified townships to be developed and the substation to tap on the approved township developments and future projects, That Budget allocation to an amount of **R150 000 000** per annum be provided for urban electrification, That COGTHA be requested to provide budget for electricity to its developmental projects.

That the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy be requested to fund urban capacity provisioning for urban electrification projects, a funding model be negotiated with CIGICELL to assist the municipality with the implementation of electrical projects.

City Planning and Property Management is aware of the projects and support that Energy services plan accordingly.

That municipality plan an all-inclusive budget when they build new low-cost housing from 2023/24 onwards

## 6.6 The Electrification Acceleration Process

The acceleration process helped the municipality to complete all its villages in 2017/18 financial year and started electrifying extensions and newly established villages. In 2018/19 financial year, Polokwane municipality absorbed major portion of the former Aganang municipality, and created a cluster called Aganang with five wards (40,41,42,43,44 and 45).

Electrification in Aganang was also completed except extensions and new villages. In 2018/19 the new priority list was included that included Aganang cluster. It was discovered later that one of the conditions to incorporated Aganang was to make sure that each financial year, there should be an electrification project in Aganang cluster as well. This was a Resolution of Council when Aganang was Merged to Polokwane Municipality.

The National Treasury instructed the municipality to pay back the loan from 2017/18 financial year and the annual electrification processes reduced as the municipality was supposed to be pay back the loan in two financial years. The INEP allocation had then to be divided into two, a portion to continue with the work and a portion paying back the loan. CRR money could not be used because there is no revenue generation from rural electrification and was found to be an unfunded mandate to use CRR in rural Polokwane.

### **6.6.1 Rural Electrification Backlog**

The current rural electrification backlog is **19 371** as per priority list and **8629** as per statistics 2016. The urban electrification backlog is **10 800** which covers the newly established townships in Seshego and Polokwane.

### **6.6.2 Challenges of Rural Electrification**

1. Insufficient budget.
2. Housing development projects by COGHSTA which provides housing, water and roads but no electricity.
3. The way in which traditional leaders allocates sites need improvement.
4. Capacity challenge by Eskom.
5. Fast growing villages around the city.

### **6.7 Installation of High Mast Lights in rural areas**

Polokwane municipality Council adopted the priority list for installation of to supply wards High Mast lights in Rural Villages. Each Financial year a budget for High must is approved.

The Provincial Government Through the Office of the premier have Requested to Municipal Council to Prioritize Traditional Council Offices First in process of installation of High mast Lights. As part of intergovernmental Relation Polokwane Municipality has started to install Apollo lights at Tribal Offices.

#### **6.7.1 Challenges of High Mast lights**

1. Insufficient budget
2. Eskom capacity and delays in energizing
3. Monthly maintenance costs and unstable consumption payments costs

### 6.7.2 High Mast Lights Recommendations

That High Mast Lights be included in UIDG funding, That CCR budget be allocated for urban electrification. That COGHTA be requested to fund electrification as well as public lighting within their housing provisioning. That solar technology be used for high mast lighting. That communication be sent out to affected communities on the status of their uncompleted High Mast lights

### 6.7.3 Electrification Project in progress at EXT 78(July 2022)



Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

### 6.7.4 Construction of Bakone Substation



Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate



# CHAPTER Seven: Environmental and Social Analysis

## 7.1. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS

Every citizen has the right to an environment which is not harmful to their health or well-being and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.

People depend on healthy ecosystems and sufficient natural resources to support their livelihoods. Ecosystem services provide physical resources such as clean air, water, food, medicinal plants, wood as well as the aesthetic value. The viability of these ecosystem services is a key factor in the economy, essential to poverty eradication and our national goals of shared and accelerated growth. Polokwane Municipality has a role to play in the management of biodiversity assets and ecological infrastructure. The municipality of Polokwane carries key responsibilities of implementing the important environmental legislations as well as several national strategies and policies relating to biodiversity and sustainable development.

### 7.1.1 Climate Description

Polokwane Municipality lies in the summer rainfall region and has a warm climate. Frost is rare. The highest temperatures occur during December and January. The daily average high temperature is 28.1 degrees Celsius in January, and the highest recorded temperature is 36.8 degrees Celsius. The average minimum winter temperature is 4.4 degrees Celsius in July with a record low of -3.5 degrees Celsius in 1964. The mean annual daily variation is 15 degrees Celsius.

The mean annual precipitation for the region is 478mm. Most precipitation falls between October and March with the peak period being December/January. Rainfall between the months of May and September is generally low with the average precipitation rate for the period June to August being 4,6mm.

Large-scale surface airflow over the region is dominated throughout the year by easterly and north-easterly winds. October and November are typically windy with wind speeds up to 13.8m/s. The frequency of southerly winds increases during June and July.

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF,**

### 7.1.2 Pollution Levels - Air Quality

The purchase of an air pollution monitor was approved during the 2015/2016 budget. The monitor will be used in different areas every quarter.

- Polokwane Smelter (SO<sub>x</sub>, solid particulates, NO<sub>x</sub>).
- Municipal Landfill (odours, carbon monoxide, methane, particulates).
- Industrial Activities (coal burning and related processes).
- Ready-mix Materials quarry (dust).
- Motocross track (dust, noise, carbon monoxide).

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

### 7.1.3 Topography

The Municipal area is divided into two rough topographical units, namely 'Moderately Undulating Plains' (mainly the eastern half of the municipal area) and 'Strongly Undulating Plains' in the west. The Polokwane Municipal area is situated on the so-called 'Pietersburg Plateau', which is bordered in the south by the Strydpoort Mountains, in the west and north by the Waterberg Mountains and in the east by the Great Escarpment. The highest part of the Plateau lies in the south near the Strydpoort Mountains which forms the watershed between the Olifants and Sand River systems.

There are a number of ridges which form constraints on development due to their visual exposure, potential as recreation or educational sites, former importance as sacred sites (likelihood of heritage sites) and likelihood of supporting sensitive plant communities.

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

### 7.1.4 Geology

The underlying geology consists of medium-grained, yellowish, laminated sandstone of the Makgabeng Formation of the Waterberg Group. It is also characterized by granite, biotite granite-gneiss, pegmatite, lava and pyroclasts.

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

### 7.1.5 Hydrology

There are 19 Catchment Areas represented in the municipal area. This includes 9 small portions of larger catchments outside the Municipal boundaries and the remaining 10 catchment areas are within the municipal boundary.

The Sand River catchment is drained by the Sand and Blood river. These are indicated as perennial streams but are often dry in the winter. The Blood river has its origin in the west of the Municipal Area and flows eastward between Blood river and Seshego. It is impounded in the Seshego Dam, and also joins the Sand River to the north of Polokwane City. The City of Polokwane has a number of storm water retention dams and storm water channels that eventually discharge into the Sand River via the Sterkloop Spruit and open storm water channels. There are a number of important wetland areas in the catchment. These areas support rare or endangered frog species and plant and red data bird species.

The utilisation of water in the catchment is mainly underground water abstraction via boreholes. There are a multitude of boreholes pumping into a number of reservoirs and tanks of various sizes in the municipal area. This aquifer is under threat from two major pollution sources, namely, the Polokwane Cemetery and the Seshego Sewerage Works.

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

### 7.1.6 Vegetation

There are 6 Vegetation Types that occur in the Polokwane Municipal Area. The largest Veld-Types are as follows: Pietersburg Plateau False Grassveld, Sourish Mixed Bushveld, Sour Bushveld, Mixed Bushveld, North-Eastern Mountain Sourveld and a relatively small area of Lowveld Sour Bushveld.

The veld is currently badly degraded and overgrazed and requires intervention from the municipality. North Eastern Mountain Grassveld occurs in the southern parts of Molepo-Maja-Chuene cluster and in the eastern part of the Mankweng cluster, along the Strydpoort Mountains, including 280 bird species, 22 butterfly species, 4 frog species, 12 mammal species, 6 reptile species and 5 scarab species.

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

### 7.1.7 Soils

The Pietersburg Plateau contains mainly grey iron-containing lateritic soil types that have been formed over the granite. These are sandy or gravel in texture and usually contain a hard iron containing bottom layer of hard pan. The area also contains, in certain areas, non-leached, black clay soil while to the West, light brown sandy soil of the Waterberg Sandstone and Lime deposits occur. The escarpments are also characterized by the round granite mounds that were formed by the intrusion of younger granites.

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

### 7.1.8 Heritage Resources

The fact that the municipality has not yet undertaken a comprehensive heritage survey of the entire municipal area, the heritage information on record is very limited. There are heritage sites that are currently recorded, namely, the **Bakone Malapa site** on the Chuenespoort Road which has been developed as a Museum and Mankweng **Rock Art Site** located in Mankweng which is linked to the Turf Loop Dam and provides other recreation activities such as hiking, picnicking and water sports. Other sites that provide good research material are the **Irish House Museum, Hugh Exton Museum and the Art Museum**.

#### **The Zion Christian Church (ZCC)**

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC) forms a unique heritage in Limpopo Province. Every year, mainly during the Easter holidays and in September, millions of ZCC congregation members flock to this area for worship, although the events were impacted by the outbreak of Covid-19 in 2020. The municipality has to capitalise on this unique advantage besides the fact that there is a by-pass directing these people to travel along the periphery of the City. Businesses in Polokwane should take advantage of this unique opportunity and gear it to provide a service to these people e.g. Open until late at night. There is a need for the municipality to develop a heritage database that will be looking at the Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS).

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

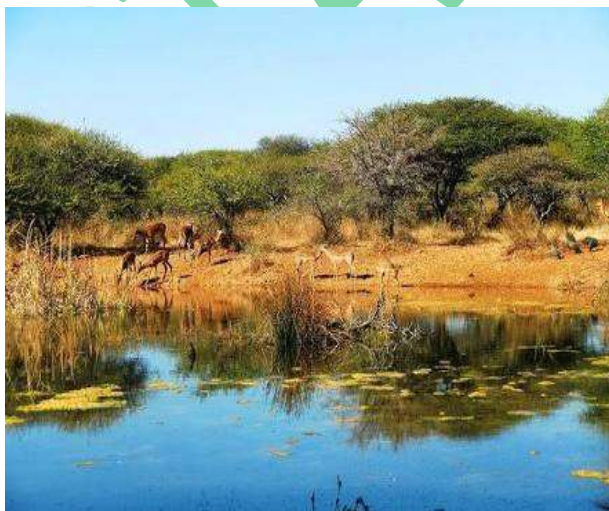
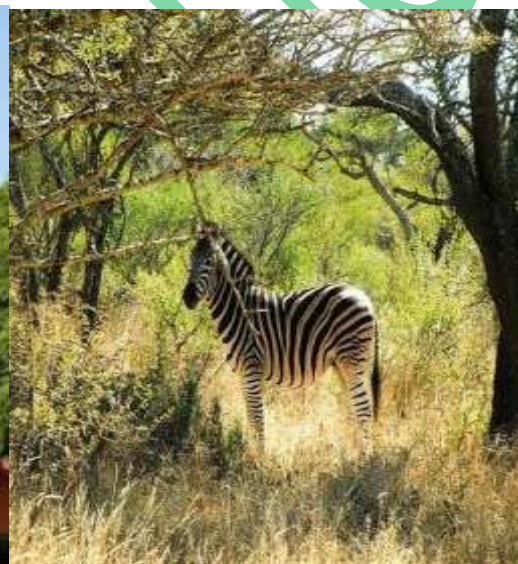


### 7.1.9 Protection and Conservation of ecosystems (Biodiversity)

**Polokwane Game Reserve** is just a 10 minutes' drive from the City Centre Covering **3200** hectares, this scenic reserve is one of the largest municipal reserves in South Africa.

The Game Reserve still has its unspoilt bush veld and meandering drives and it's also a home to 52 game species. Amongst the favourites are the rare white rhino (currently placed in a secure environment outside the reserve, sable antelope and giraffe. The centre of the city has a large bronze statue of necking giraffe so the animal's association with the City is a special one. The park is also the nesting place of approximately 200 bird species. It is a shining example of preservation of the threatened Pietersburg Plateau False Grassland and plant Oenthusiasts will discover 110 different grasses, approximately 280 flowering plants and 68 tree species. It is eco-tourism at its best.

It is important to note that, the following sensitive areas within Polokwane municipality must remain protected from development (i.e. no development within 150m):



**Polokwane Botanical Reserve** (one of only two habitats worldwide for endemic endangered **Euphorbia Clivicola**, a large Aloe marlothii 'forest', high geological and microclimate diversity, over 20 tree species) which is the highest and therefore the most visible point in Polokwane.

**Flora park wetland** (a seasonal wetland harbouring the only known community of endemic **Haemanthus montanus** bulbs and a rare form of Serapegia);

**Polokwane Frog Reserve** (breeding grounds for 12 Frog species including endangered Giant Bullfrog).

**Buffer Zone** along the Sand River of 100m on either side of the channel. The profusion of Syringa and other invasive weeds must be addressed as part of a planned rehabilitation strategy.

The **Suid Street drainage channel** (a dense stand of Vachelia karroo ), which provides an ideal linear open space.

**Unprotected Sensitive plant communities** – The endemic plant communities (e.g., **Euphorbia clivicola** and **Euphorbia groenewaldii**) and other sensitive communities of high biodiversity around wetlands and ridges in the Polokwane area are not protected in any way and are therefore under threat from development, removal, habitat destruction, etc.

**Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF**

#### **7.1.10 Euphorbia Clivicola**

The Clivicola is located on the farm Krugersburg in Pietersburg Extension 11. The plant is a critically endangered species and has been listed as a CITES Schedule II species. It is only found in Polokwane and Percy Five in the whole wide world. The plant needs to be protected for the sake of future generations. Less than 300 plants are left in the habitat.

#### **7.1.11 Euphorbia groenewaldii**

Another endangered species that needs to be protected is the groenewaldii. The species forms part of the biodiversity of the Pietersburg false plateau. Plans are in place to fence off the area where these plants are located through creation of botanical garden.

#### **7.1.12 Giant Bullfrog - Pyxicephalus adspersus**

<b>Common name</b>	<b>Scientific name</b>	<b>Status in Polokwane</b>
Giant Bullfrog	Pyxicephalus adspersus	Restricted to a few seasonal wetlands scattered throughout the Polokwane Municipal Area

The **Giant bullfrog** (*Pyxicephalus adspersus*) is a species of frog in the Pyxicephalidae family. It is also known as the **pixie frog** due to its Latin name. Its natural habitats are dry savanna, moist savanna, subtropical or tropical dry shrubland, intermittent freshwater lakes, intermittent freshwater marshes, arable land, pastureland, and canals and ditches. This is a large frog, with males weighing 1.4 kg (3.1 lb), though can easily exceed 2 kg (4.4 lb); females are half the size, making it unique among frogs, as in most amphibian's females are usually larger than males. Males can reach 23 cm (9 inches) while females are much smaller. The Giant Bullfrog is the largest amphibian found in southern Africa. Areas has been identified within the Polokwane Municipal areas which serve as habitat for this species. the species needs to be protected.

## **7.2. CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING**

When talking about climate, allusion is made to the long-term average weather patterns of a given region (i.e., temperature, pressure, precipitation). In this context, climate change then refers to perceived increases in the long-term average temperature of the earth's climate system. This temperature increase alters typical processes of ice formation and melting, changes the hydrological cycles and modifies the air and ocean currents. As a consequence, social, biological and ecological systems are also affected; and there is a strong threat on food supply, health, availability of water resources, economic growth, etc.

The understanding of climate change has been growing and today scientist is 95% certain that the perceived increases in global temperature are mostly caused by the concentration of Greenhouse Gases (GHG) in the atmosphere and other human activities. Solar radiation penetrates into the earth warming its surface; however only a fraction of this radiation is returned back to the space as most of it is trapped by the accumulation of these GHG gasses. The trapped radiation goes back to heat up the earth's surface, increasing its temperature just as a greenhouse operates.

Most of the GHG are present naturally in the atmosphere in small proportions; however, since the industrial revolution their concentration has notably risen. This rise has primarily been linked to the combustion of fossil fuels driven by the demand for energy, goods and services, and to the conversion of natural ecosystems to intensive land use.

Climate change is becoming increasingly apparent in Limpopo Province. The usual manifestations of climate change are evident by the long-term changes in weather indicators such as rainfall or temperature. Polokwane Municipality, as a secondary city, should play a role in planning and implementing Climate change mitigation strategies.

### **Rainfall**

Typical rainfall for the Limpopo province ranges from 200mm in the hot dry areas to 1500mm in the high rainfall areas, with most of it happening between October and April. Rainfall in the province varies significantly between years. There has been a perceptible decrease in the total rainfall on much of the eastern part of Southern Africa including most of the Limpopo River Basin This can have serious impacts on the water balance of the region, affecting the largely rural population dependent on agriculture.



## Drivers and Pressures

Without a doubt, the main drivers of climate change are population and economic growth. As the population numbers increase, more people aspire to higher material standards - creating an even greater demand for goods and services as for the energy to provide these. Transportation, industry, commerce, and the residential sector are the greatest contributors to GHG emissions, due to their high demand of energy which is supplied from non-renewable sources. The energy sector is responsible for about 89% of the national emissions of CO<sub>2</sub>, mainly from energy industries (57%), transportation (9%) and manufacturing and construction (9%) Other sources of emissions are industrial processes and agriculture and land usage.

**Source: Limpopo Environmental Outlook Report,**

### 7.2.1 City of Polokwane Plans on Climate Change

It is for this reason that the City of Polokwane set budget aside for development of Framework for **Climate Change Adaptation Action Plan (CCAAP)**

Project Name	Activity	Location
Development of a Climate Change Adaptation Action Plan (CCAAP) for the City of Polokwane	Development of a Climate Change Adaptation Action Plan (CCAAP) for the City of Polokwane	Municipal Wide

### Solar Energy

As part of Free Basic Electricity, the municipality has provided households with solar **Panels**. Plans are in place to increase the provision of **solar Panels** to other parts of the municipality.

### 7.2.2 Environmental Challenges

The following is a generalized summary of the existing Environmental problems encountered within the municipal area:

- Waste Management
- Mine and Industrial site rehabilitation
- Sinkholes.
- Depletion of Soil nutrients
- Soil erosion
- Reduction in scenic value
- Deforestation
- Overgrazing
- Invasive alien's plants
- Unprotected Sensitive plant communities
- Borrow pits.
- Illegal Sand mining

- Aging urban forest

### General Challenging issues

There is a need to develop and maintain rural cemeteries, burial sites and recreational facilities. There is no proper control and coordination of identification process of suitable land that should be utilised for burial purposes; burial site ends up being established on environmentally sensitive areas. However, the municipality has completed the process of engaging traditional authorities in identifying ideal or suitable sites for the establishment of regional parks and cemeteries in rural areas.

### 7.2.3 Major Environmental Achievements

Item	Progress
<b>Greening</b>	Polokwane Municipality planted 3 714 trees in 2021/22 financial year
<b>Arbor day celebration.</b>	The municipality successfully celebrated Arbor Day 2021, at Ga-Matlala Moshate.
<b>National Arbor City Awards</b>	Polokwane Municipality was awarded first prize (winners of National Arbor City Awards) in the Local municipality category in <b>September 2021</b> .
<b>Invasive Alien plant control</b>	Most of invasive alien plants were removed from Serkloop channel.
<b>Kroomdraai Plantation</b>	Polokwane Municipality has appointed valuer to perform valuation count valuation of plantation Kroomdraai forest. Council owns portion 4 No 1025 Kroomdraai plantation farm which is located at Haenertsburg, with these GPS coordinates 23° 54'10.59" S 29° 56.09.51" E.  The farm is about 49 hectors of which 41 hectares in planted. The main use of the land is forestry with pine trees (Pinus elliottii). The valuation was completed in June 2022.
<b>Future environmental plans</b>	The State of the Environment Report, the Strategic Environmental Assessment report and the Environmental Strategic Framework report has been developed, finalizing the submission of an Environmental Management Plan and the compilation of Environmental policy.
<b>Cemetery Management system</b>	A new system to be introduced for Cemetery Management in collaboration with the GIS section of the Planning SBU.
<b>Tree inventory</b>	<b>Already captured 6840 trees on GIS</b>
<b>Maintenance of parks</b>	Detailed activity-based operational/maintenance plans have been developed for all the parks within the Municipality

Item	Progress
<b>EPWP</b>	Environmental Management have two projects funded through EPWP grant, namely rural bush clearance and Nursery management

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

#### 7.2.4 Provincial Intervention for Environmental Management – LEDET

LEDET Interventions For Environmental Management				
PROGRAMME NAME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION/TYPE OF STRUCTURE	PROGRAMME DESCRIPTION	DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	LOCAL MUNICIPALITY
Environmental Empowerment Services	<b>Limpopo Green Schools competition</b>	Schools' competition to promote green economy	Capricorn	All locals
	<b>Tree planting</b>	Promote planting of trees to mitigate for climate change	Capricorn	All locals
	<b>Environmental knowledge Capacity building</b>	Environmental capacity building workshops to wards committees and Traditional Leader	Capricorn	All locals

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

#### 7.2.5 Approved Capital Projects (2022/23)

	Project Name	Project Description	Budget	Available
<b>1</b>	Greening Programme	Procurement and planting of trees.	R 1 304.348	R 1 304.348
<b>2</b>	Development of regional parks in Rural areas	Construction of Ablution facilities at Tom Naude and Mankweng Unit C Park	R 2 260.869	R 2 260.869
<b>3</b>	Grass cutting equipment	Procurement of grass cutting equipment	R 1 595.123	R 1 595.123

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

### 7.2.6 Polokwane Environmental Forum

Polokwane Environmental Forum was established by City of Polokwane with the aim of addressing the environmental challenges in a coordinated manner within Polokwane City. Environmental management SBU being the custodian of the forum. Environmental challenges such as illegal dumping and illegal sand mining just to mention the few are addressed during the meetings. Meetings for the Forum are held once quarterly. The following are the key external stakeholders i.e., LEDET, Capricorn District Municipality, DEA, SAB, Polokwane Anglo Smelters, Coca Cola and University of Limpopo. Internal SBU's that are part of stakeholders include Waste, Environmental Health, Water, Environmental Management, Planning, Energy and GIS.

### 7.2.7 Capricorn District Environmental Forum

This forum is coordinated at District level (**Capricorn District**) and of which Polokwane Municipality is an active member of the forum. Meeting are held once quarterly.

### 7.2.8 Arbor Day Celebration

Polokwane Municipality has celebrated Arbor day through tree planting and provision of fruit trees under the theme "**Forest Restoration**" at Ga-Matlala Moshate. The municipality has provided 500 fruit trees to the community, while ornamental trees were planted in schools and within Matlala Traditional Offices.

#### Arbor Day Celebration





Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

### 7.3 Maintenance of Open Spaces and Parks (48 x Municipal Parks)

The City of Polokwane has **48 parks** in total that needs to be maintained at all times for them to remain in Good Condition. The main Municipal Parks in the City are the **Civic Centre Park, Flora Park Dam, Tom Naude** being the main popular for usage by members of the public in the City.

In Seshego is the main one is Zone 4 Park and in Mankweng the main one is Unit C Park and Unit A Park which are popular. All the mentioned parks have irrigation systems but due to water Challenges in the City of Polokwane, Council has taken a decision to stop irrigation of all parks. With irrigation our parks were going to be in better shape. below is the list of all Municipal Parks which also provides maintenance plan and their status quo.

#### 7.3.1 48 x Municipal Parks Status Quo

##### Park Maintenance Status Quo

Park Maintenance Status Quo				
	Name of the Park	Activity	Service/material required	Labour required
1	AGANANG OFFICE AND TRAFFIC	Litter picking	Refuse bags ,gloves	03
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Forks,spade,rakes,refuse bags,gloves	03



**Park Maintenance Status Quo**

	<b>Name of the Park</b>	<b>Activity</b>	<b>Service/material required</b>	<b>Labour required</b>
		Hard surface, cleaning and application of herbicide	Hard brooms	03
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers,	07
2	<b>RAINBOW PARK</b>	Litter picking, sweeping and weeding of hard-surface	Refuse bags and spades	05
		Pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
		Painting of benches and children's play equipment	Paints and brushes	02
		Sandpits	Weeding	02
		Preparations and Establishment of flowerbeds	Spades, forks and pik	05
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers	
3	<b>TOM NAUDE PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags ,gloves	05
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Forks,spade,rakes,refuse bags	05
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers	07
		Grading of parkrun route	Grader	01
		Weeding of hard surface ( scrubbing)	Spades	05
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
		Painting of children's play equipment	Paints and brushes	02
4	<b>SABC PARK A</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags ,gloves	03
		Weeding	Forks,spade,rakes,refus	03
		Hard surface and application of herbicide	Chemicals, knapsack, spades,	03
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers, brush cutters,	07
		Pruning of shrubs	Hedge pruner	02



**Park Maintenance Status Quo**

	<b>Name of the Park</b>	<b>Activity</b>	<b>Service/material required</b>	<b>Labour required</b>
5	<b>ZONE 4 PARK</b>	Litter picking and sweeping of hard surface	Refuse bags ,gloves	06
		Weeding of flower beds	Forks,spade,rakes,refuse bags,gloves	05
		Hard surface and application of herbicide	Chemicals,knapsack,spades,rakes,respirator,chemical gloves	6
		Grass cutting		15
		Pruning of shrubs	Pruning shear	02
6	<b>TRIANGLE PARK</b>	General cleaning/litter picking	Spades, forks ,refuse bags, gloves	05
		Weeding of flower beds	Spades and folks	05
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers	04
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pruning shear	02
7	<b>EXT 76 PARK</b>	General cleaning/litter picking	Spades, forks ,refuse bags, gloves	05
		Maintenance of sandpit	Spade,rake	05
		Grass cutting	Tractors and brush cutters	15
8	<b>MANKWENG UNIT A PARK</b>	Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades.	05
		Hard surface treatment	Spades, rakes, chemicals, knapsacks	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck,	05
9	<b>MAMOTINTANE PARK</b>	Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	03
		Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades	05
		Flower bed maintenance	Forks and rakes	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
10	<b>MANKWENG UNIT C PARK</b>	Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades.	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	05
		Hard surface-Sweeping	Brooms, spades,	03

**Park Maintenance Status Quo**

	<b>Name of the Park</b>	<b>Activity</b>	<b>Service/material required</b>	<b>Labour required</b>
11	<b>FLORA PARK DAM</b>	Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades	05
		Flower bed maintenance	Forks and rakes	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
12	<b>RSA PARK (MOTOR CITY)</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Weeding of walk way	Spades	04
		Weeding of flower beds	rakes, spades	05
		Trimming and pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
13	<b>CIVIC CENTRE GARDENS</b>	Litter picking and sweeping of hard surface	Leaf blower and refuse bags	05
		Maintenance of sand pits	rakes, spades	03
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Forks and rakes	05
		Deadheading of flower beds		03
		Pruning of shrubs and trees	Pruning shear and pole pruner	02
14	<b>CONNIE VAN RENSBURG</b>	Cleaning of sandpit	Spades	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
15	<b>RSA DAM</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
16		Litter picking	Refuse bags	05

**Park Maintenance Status Quo**

	<b>Name of the Park</b>	<b>Activity</b>	<b>Service/material required</b>	<b>Labour required</b>
	<b>SEBAYENG PARK</b>	Weeding of flowerbeds	Spades and folks	03
17	<b>WESTERNBURG PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
18	<b>WESTERNBURG PARK (RDP)</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
19	<b>ALOE PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	03
		Pruning of shrubs	Pole pruner	02
		Removal of old children's play equipment		05
20	<b>OOST SKOOL PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Spades	04
21	<b>KOBIE VAN ZYL</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
22	<b>SESHEGO ZONE 8 PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Spades and folks	04
23	<b>STERPARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
24	<b>LADANNA PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
25	<b>ZEN PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
26	<b>NIRVANA PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
27	<b>EDUAN PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05

**Park Maintenance Status Quo**

	<b>Name of the Park</b>	<b>Activity</b>	<b>Service/material required</b>	<b>Labour required</b>
28	<b>EXT 22 IVY PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Cleaning of sandpit	Spades	03
		Tree staking	Poles	02
		Pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
29	<b>ZONE 3 PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
30	<b>EMDO PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning	Pole pruner	02
31	<b>WILGE PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
32	<b>MACDONALD PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Cleaning of children's play area	Spades and folks	05
33	<b>HERMAN PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
34	<b>RHEBOK PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
35	<b>VALENCIA PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
		Weeding of Sand pit	Spades	03
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Spades and folks	05
36	<b>SCHALK PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
37	<b>GERT DU TOIT PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
		Weeding of Sand pit	Spades	05
38	<b>BENDOR SIRKEL PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
39	<b>GRASMERE PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
40	<b>PENINA PARK</b>	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Ranch fencing ( repair)	Ranch poles	02
		Trimming of trees	Pole pruner	02

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

### 7.3.2 Grass Cutting Teams

The grass cutting teams consists of permanent staff and temporary labors who are only brought in during rainy seasons to ensure there is adequate capacity to deal with the fast-growing grass. Due to lack of capacity, grass cutting teams from various areas (Seshego, Mankweng, City) are at times clustered together in one area with their tractors and brush cutters to ensure there is an immediate impact. The grass cutting teams are as follow:

CLUSTER /AREA	PERMANENT EMPLOYEES
1. Mankweng	7
2. Seshego	3
3. City	14
4. Game Reserve	5
5. Cemeteries	0
6. Nursery	3
<b>Total</b>	<b>32</b>

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

### 7.3.3 Grass cutting teams on the Ground.



Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

### 7.3.4 AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme

<b>AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme (Location)</b>
<b>BENDOR</b>
Veldspaat drive from Munnik to Sasol garage
De Meer side walk from Veldspaat to Logan open area
The Crescent Open area
De wet side walk from Outspan to De Meer
Vharanani street Sidewalk from Outspan to De Meer
Hilary open area
Hyde close
DE Villiers and Outspan Open area
<b>Eduan Park</b>
Logan sidewalk and Open area
De Meer Open area
Stadium peripheries
Suid street area from De Wet to Dorp street
<b>Ster Park</b>
Aquarius and Virgo Open area
Ster Park sidewalks
Apollo open area
Open Stands
<b>Serala View</b>
Sidewalks
<b>Ivy Park and Ivy dale</b>
Ext 34 entrance and sidewalks
Campbell street from Marshal to N1 South
<b>CBD</b>
Sidewalks
<b>NIRVANA</b>
Safire street open area
<b>Ladana</b>
Vermiculite from Micro to N. Mandela drive
Witklaap drive
Corner Vermiculite and N. Mandela drive Open area
Spelankon open areas
Barracks
<b>MANKWENG AREAS</b>
Sebayeng Entrance
Mankweng entrance from dumping towards Nkerase
Open area between Zone 1 and Toronto towards R71
Mamodimo Valley from unit C to Stop sign towards Mamodimo park sports ground



<b>AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme (Location)</b>
<b>SESHEGO AREAS</b>
Old road from circle centre to Traffic open area, Lesedi open area next to the ground
N1 South circle to Seshego zone 5 crossing
Ext 71 open area and taxi rank
Road from zone 8 AFM church to Txutxu Valley side walk
Zone 5 B, C, and D
Zone 4 Skotipola from circle to Blood river Robot
Khensani drive from circle to Hostel traffic lights
Ext 40 and Ext 44 open areas
Mahlasedi park Vermiculite from Micro to N. Mandela drive
Zone 8 outline from corner Helen Joseph to and Mandela
Entrance Legae la batho from traffic lights to Ext 75 and Madiba park to from Traffic light to Ext 73

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

### **7.3.5 Establishment of Animal Pound**

#### **7.3.6. An effective approach on animal pound (Revised approach)**

The key question to the establishment of the Animal Pound is whether it should be operated by the **municipality or outsourced**, and it be operated by private company. To arrive at the determination on the two options of insourcing or outsourcing the Organisational Development Unit has been tasked to undertake a study to determine costs - benefit analysis of the two options and make a recommendation to the accounting Officer and ultimately to the Council. The draft report is circulating internally to source comments and inputs of relevant role players before submission to the Accounting Officer.

The study covers the following specific issues:

- ✓ Overall impact on employee salary bill,
- ✓ The estimated salaries which exclude benefits,
- ✓ Costs for the management of the pound which will include amongst other issues the following: shelter, food, water, travelling including necessary medical treatment to all animals in the pound.
- ✓ The municipality will have to arrange for an animal technician or veterinary doctor for emergencies and dispensing medications.

- ✓ Potential revenue to be collected based on the set tariffs.
- ✓ Risk of animal death and theft at the pound.
- ✓ Refurbishment of Animal Pound to bring it to a functional state and purchase of required truck and its future maintenance or repairs.

The proposal made by SPCA to operate the Animal Pound will be looked at upon finalisation of model to be used for establishment of the pound.

### 7.3.7. Options Available for Animal Pound Establishment

OPTIONS FOR ESTABLISHING THE POUND	COMMENTS /UPDATE
1. Municipality to run the pound	<p>This option will require review of the organogram to create new positions and have all operational requirements and readiness in place including own pounding trucks, veterinary surgeon in place as well as refurbishment of the debilitated pound.</p> <p><b>This option is likely to take longer and to come at a cost</b></p>
2. Use of the Animal Pound of neighboring Municipality	<p><b>Lepelle - Nkumpi Local Municipality</b> has existing pound. A letter has been sent to them to consider our request to use their pound in the meantime we are still finalizing processes relating to establishing own municipal pound. However, the municipality does not handle pigs due to their difficult nature.</p>
3. Contracting a private entity or NGO/NPO's to operate the pound	<p>SPCA has made a proposal to host and operate municipal pound from their existing pound outside town. The process of considering and finalizing their proposal will take two to three months as it will have to be subjected to unsolicited bid process of the SCM, which includes calling for public comments and writing to the National Treasury for their comments before giving it final approval.</p>

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

### 7.3.8 Availability of Alien Invasive Species Eradication Plan

Within the Environmental Management SBU of the City of Polokwane, there is a sub-unit dealing with Horticulture, there are dedicated Horticulturalist who are responsible for alien invasive eradication programme.

The programmes involve physical removal of alien species in the municipality jurisdiction. The programme is implemented through **EPWP**.

The plan covers the entire City of Polokwane and its being implemented in terms of the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983); National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No 10 of 2004) and others

#### **7.4. National Arbor City Award Received**

The City of Polokwane was awarded with the **National Arbor City Award** by the Department of Forestry, Fishery and the Environment. The City of stars has been participating in the National call for planting thousands of trees with the aim of eventually being an eco-friendly City. The award came with an amount of R300k and a certificate sponsored by Absa. The event took place in Richards Bay, Durban

#### **National Arbour City Award**



Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

#### **7.5. AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT**

##### **7.5.1 Air Quality Management Plan developed and adopted/approved by Council**

The City of Polokwane Environmental Health Section has developed the Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP) which was adopted by the Council.

**Table: Status of Polokwane Sector Plans**

Municipal Plans	Sector	AVAILABLE	NOT AVAILABLE	DEVELOPMENT STAGE	UNDER REVIEW
Air Management Plan	Quality	<b>X</b>			

Air Quality Management Plan provides the “blue-print” upon which City of Polokwane will continue to implement air quality management effectively and efficiently within the City over the next coming years, to continually ensure good air quality for our children and future generations.

Section 24 of the Constitution states that ‘Everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health and well-being’ and to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation; promote conservation; and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.’ The Constitution further places an obligation in terms of section 152(1)(b) and (d) on the part of Local Government as stipulated in sections 4(2)(d) and 4(2)(i), 73(1) and (2) of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 to ensure that the right to a clean and healthy environment is fulfilled.

The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act 39 of 2004 (AQA) requires Municipalities to introduce Air Quality Management Plans (AQMP) that set out what will be done to achieve the prescribed air quality standards. After five years, the AQMP must be reviewed, the goals realigned and a revised AQMP should be developed. As part of their legal obligation,

An AQMP describes the current state of air quality in an area, how it is changing over time and what can be done to ensure clean air is achieved and maintained. An AQMP provides objectives and sets a course of action to attain air quality management goals. It identifies and addresses significant sources of impact using appropriate solutions to ensure that health effects and environmental impacts are minimized.

### **7.5.2 Submission of AQO Annual Report & report on implementation of Air Quality Management Plan**

#### **AIR QUALITY**

The ambient air quality is measured in three places in Polokwane City, namely, the Civic Square, Annadale (close to the industrial area) and Seshego. The information from the monitoring station indicates that the readings for the City of Polokwane are well below the values for other South African Cities.

There are a number of air pollution risks in the Municipal area that must be recognized:

- Polokwane Smelter (SOx, solid particulates, NOx)
- Municipal Landfill (odours, carbon monoxide, methane, particulates)

- Industrial Activities (coal burning and related processes)
- Ready-mix Materials quarry (dust)
- Motocross track (dust, noise, carbon monoxide)
- Old Asbestos dump/factory, Industrial (Asbestos fibres, dust)

### **7.5.3 Developed an Air Quality By-Laws**

The City of Polokwane has developed the Air Quality By –Laws which was adopted by Council the Public Participation Public Notice as published on local Newspapers, Municipal Website, Municipal Notice Boards.

### **7.5.4 Air quality monitoring stations and monitoring of ambient air quality pollutants**

The following equipment have been placed around Polokwane municipality jurisdiction:

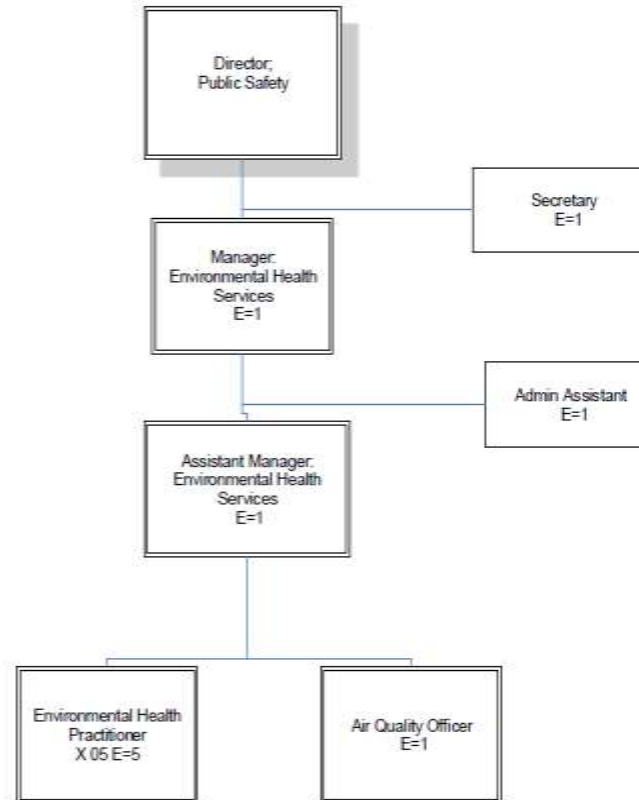
- a) One station is situated at Greenside Primary school **(CDM)**
- b) One is station is situated in the Polokwane Game Reserve **(Anglo Smelters)**
- c) Polokwane Municipality monitoring equipment has some Challenges that are being address, it is currently not functional.

### **7.5.5 Designation of Air Quality Management Officer**

There is an appointed official under Environmental Health SBU. The Official is not yet legally designated. Below is City of Polokwane approved Organogram Structure for Environmental Health SBU reflecting the position of Air Quality Officer which is currently filled.

# Public Safety Environmental Health Services

Annexure 8.3





### **7.5.6 Conducting of industry inspection**

The industry inspections are being conducted by municipal officials on a quarterly basis.

### **7.5.7 Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs**

Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement are being conducted by municipal officials on a quarterly basis.

### **7.5.8 Allocation and availability of Air Quality Management related work budget**

The allocated budget is insufficient. There is a need for Council to allocate more budget on Air Quality Management related work. Over the previous financial years IDP, air quality related projects were developed, and allocated budget as reflected below:

## **7.6 ENVIRONMENTAL GOVERNANCE AND CROSS CUTTING ISSUES**

### **7.6.1 Municipal Projects consider EIA**

It is reflected under the IDP Projects phase. All Municipal projects that trigger Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) listing notices are subjected to EIA process.

Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) is an environmental decision support tool, which provides information on the likely impacts of development projects to those who take the decision as to whether the project should be authorized. The purpose of an EIA is to determine the potential environmental, social, and health effects of a proposed development, so that those who take the decisions in developing the project and in authorizing the project are informed about the likely consequences of their decisions **before** they take those decisions and are thereby more accountable. It is intended to facilitate informed and transparent decision-making while seeking to avoid, reduce or mitigate potential adverse impacts through the consideration of alternative options, sites or processes.

### **7.6.2 Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties**

The EIA commence are now being done. The Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) register under EAPASA are mandated to comment on the EIA application as interested/or and affected parties.

### **7.6.3 Environmental Outlook**

For Environmental Outlook the City of Polokwane rely on CDM and LEDET plans. The City has not yet developed its own environmental Outlook.

#### **7.6.4 Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA)**

EMFs are part of the suite of Integrated Environmental Management (IEM)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) are tools that are used to support informed decisions regarding the management of environmental impacts that arise out of human activities and developments.

Environmental Management Frameworks are one of the tools that can attempt to achieve the desired developmental and ecological balance by utilizing early identification and mapping of sensitive ecosystems and resources to assist in pre-empting potential future land use conflicts.

Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) is a process of prior examination and appraisal of policies, plans, and programmes and other higher level or pre-project initiatives. The City of Polokwane developments decisions are guided by these two main Environmental tools.

#### **7.6.5 Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness**

Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness which addresses air quality management, biodiversity, conservation, climate change, waste management, etc.

The City of Polokwane Municipality has a well-established team of officials that handles the environmental education and awareness programmes to the community. The City of Polokwane has established **Polokwane Environmental Education Centre** and other designated officials (Waste Education Officers) whose responsibilities is to educate the public about environmental management issues.

#### **7.6.6 Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions**

Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions such as Air Quality Management, Biodiversity and Conservation, Climate Change, Coastal Management, Waste Management, Intergrated Environmental Management, Environmental Advocacy and designation of officers in line with NEMA/SEMA requirements.

The City of Polokwane has an Approved Organisational Structure that has a Directorate called Community Services headed by the Director, all unit that deals with environmental aspect are located under this Directorate i.e. (**Environmental Management SBU, Waste SBU, and Environmental health SBU**).

The SBU's are headed by a Managers that is responsible for Unit daily functions that include supporting environmental functions such as Air Quality Management, Biodiversity and Conservation, Climate Change, Waste Management, Intergrated Environmental Management, Environmental Advocacy and designation of officers in line with NEMA/SEMA requirements.

#### **7.6.7 Allocation and availability of budgets for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA**

Each Financial year, the City of Polokwane allocate a Budget for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA, etc. including Projects in all those SBU

### **7.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT**

## 7.7.1 Waste Management Services Municipal Wide

### INTRODUCTION

The **Waste Management SBU** strives to provide **efficient, effective and appropriate** waste management services to all waste generators, while recognizing the contributions made by private sector in enhancing the provision of these services as contained in the integrated waste management plan within these legislative prescripts:

- ❖ Waste Act & Environmental Management Act.
- ❖ Norms and Standards.
- ❖ Municipal Integrated Waste Management Plan.
- ❖ Municipal policies and Bylaw.

### 7.7.2 Vision and Mission-Waste SBU

#### Vision

- A clean and litter free environment for all through best innovative waste management practices.

#### Mission objectives

- To have all general waste collected, reused, recycled, and disposed of in an environmentally friendly manner.

### 7.7.3 CORE FUNCTIONS OF WASTE SBU

- Awareness and education to change public mindset about best waste management practices.
- Waste minimization i.e. **Reduction, Reuse and Recycling** of waste before disposal
- Waste storage, collection, transportation & disposal at licensed landfill sites.
- Cleaning and clearing of illegal dumping.
- Street cleaning services (manual litter picking and mechanical street sweeping in the CBD).
- Rural waste management including EPWP litter picking.
- Hazardous waste monitoring with special reference to medical waste: competency of province.

### 7.7.4 Personnel (Waste SBU)

#### Personnel-Waste SBU

- ✓ 1 x Manager.
- ✓ 1 x Asst Manager Operations.
- ✓ 1 x Asst Manager Awareness
- ✓ 1 x Admin Assistant, 1 x Admin clerk.
- ✓ 2 x Senior superintendents.
- ✓ 3 x Supervisor, 4 x Acting Supervisors.
- ✓ 22 X Operators, 8 X Acting Operators.
- ✓ 2 X Drivers, 7 X Acting drivers, 119 X Labourers.
- ✓ 75 X Temps working as loading labourers.
- ✓ 178 X Temps street cleaning.

- ✓ 24 X Temps for street sweeping.
- ✓ 229 X EPWP beneficiaries (rural).

### 7.7.5 TYPES OF EQUIPMENTS REQUIRED

TYPE OF EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY	AREAS OF OPERATION	SHORTAGE
<b>TLB</b>	3	City, Mankweng & Seshego: Clearing of illegal dumping, Clearing of transfer stations	3 X TLB
<b>Tipper trucks</b>	3	Work with TLB's	Minimum of 2 X trucks per TLB
<b>Grab trucks</b>	2	Clearing of commercial and communal skip containers	2 X multipurpose 2 X Contracted
<b>Multipurpose</b>	3	Cleaning of rural skip containers	
<b>Roll on roll off</b>	3	Clearing of Transfer stations & skip containers in hospitals, industries. Skip containers in hospitals, schools, large industries	2X City 1X Seshego 1X Mankweng To purchase 2X ROROTrucks
<b>Compactors</b>	5 new 4 old trucks	Seshego, Moletjie and Aganang clusters waste collection City outer CBD routes Mankweng, Sebayeng and Dikgale waste collection	4 Seshego for residential and rural areas 2 Mankweng 3 Urban & 2 rural collection
<b>Fleet Africa compactors</b>	14	Daily collection of waste from businesses and institutions, rural weekly collection	8X City 7X Seshego 2X Mankweng
<b>4 Ton Trucks</b>	6	Collection of litter picking & street cleaning bags	2X City 2X Seshego 2X Mankweng

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.7.6 SERVICE LEVEL STANDARDS: OPERATIONS

CATEGORY	EQUIPMENT	FREQUENCY
Residential	Compactor	Once a week
Business	Compactor	Daily
Transfer Station	Roro and FEL	Daily
Industrial	Load lugger and Grab	Week days
Communal Skip	Gran and Load Lugger	Daily
Illegal Dumping	Tipper trucks	Week days
Street Sweeping at Night CBD	2X Street Sweepers	Daily
Litter picking	4 ton trucks	Daily

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.7.7 weekly waste collection service

#### SERVICE PROVISION

- 103 776 x Households receive weekly waste collection service in all urban areas: **City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng.**
- 53 x **villages receive weekly waste collection service** in rural areas.
- Clearing and cleaning Illegal dumping **weekly in all hotspots**
- 14 x **recycling companies** operational at Weltevreden landfill site.

### 7.7.8 WASTE FACILITIES (Landfill sites and Transfer Stations)

#### Landfill sites: Total 02

- Weltevreden Landfill site.
- Aganang Landfill site.

#### Transfer stations: Total 07

- City: Webster & Ladanna.
- Mankweng: Dikgale, Makotopong, Mankweng & Mankweng Buy Centre.
- Seshego: Makgakga & Vaalkop.
- 

### 7.7.9 Rural Skips Distribution Summary

CLUSTER	NUMBER OF SKIPS	CHALLENGES
Maja/Chuene/Molepo	10	Insufficient equipment to service/clean them
Mankweng/ Sebayeng/ Dikgale	31	
Aganang/ Moletjie/ Seshego	28	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.7.10 CURRENT WASTE PROJECTS: 2022/23

PROJECT NAME	SCOPE OF WORK	BUDGET AMOUNT
Extension of Landfill site	Licensing of the new extension	170 365
Molepo Transfer Station	Fencing, earth works for ramp and retention wall, guard house, bore borehole and elevated tank	5 217 391
6 & 9 M <sup>3</sup> Skip containers	Purchase of skip containers	86 957
240 litre bins	Purchase of 240 litre bins	549 796
Building plans for Mankweng transfer station	As built designs for licencing	165 217

PROJECT NAME	SCOPE OF WORK	BUDGET AMOUNT
Educational material	Purchase of awareness and education material	304 348
No dumping Boards	Purchase of No Dumping Boards	130 435
Pavement bins	Purchase of pavement bins	347 826

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.7.11 CONTRACTED SERVICES UNDER WASTE MANAGEMENT

#### 3 Contracted services for these areas:

- City: CBD (2 compactors and 2 Street Sweepers by Mashumi Construction and Projects
- City Residential 3 waste compactors by Ingwe Waste and 3 Compactors Makayise
- Business and skips in the city and industrial areas 2 Grab Trucks by Mminatlou

#### IN-HOUSE SERVICES

#### Replaced outsourced services:

- ✓ 6 x Compactors for Seshego residential areas
- ✓ 3 x Compactors for Mankweng and Sebayeng.

### 7.7.12 IMPLEMENTATION OF BY-LAW

- Compliance monitoring of the By-Laws will also need to be implemented.
- The By-Laws put in place the necessary institutional and legal frame works
- A critical component to the implementation of the IWMP is the supporting legal framework and budget.
- Law enforcement IS A CHALLENGE- lack of personnel.
- Issuing of fines and impounding of vehicles to be investigated.
- Fines imposed to be reflected in municipal billing to be investigated.

### 7.8 Challenges for cleanliness of the City

- Attitudes on Littering and illegal dumping by general public – only two officials allocated to deal with this anomaly
- Down town untidy due to uncontrolled hawkers, car washers, illegal mechanics, job seekers, street kids sleeping in the city streets and illegal occupations.
- Contributing factors include mainly lack of adequate pole and pavement bins
- Stakeholders that must be involved: Environment, Roads & LED SBUs, Law Enforcement, Ward Councillors.
- Illegal dumping-building rubble on open spaces & general waste in rural areas



- Lack of support for Ward by the public during cleaning campaigns.
- Lack of adequate personnel (aging staff, budget constraints to fill vacant positions timeously).
- Removal of planted no-illegal dumping boards for selling scrap yards for cash
- Long turn-around time for repairs of trucks and aging fleet to render an effective service, e.g. cleaning of communal skip containers especially in rural areas.
- Weltevreden landfill site is remaining with only 1year lifespan and the process of extension is very slow.

### **7.8.1 Designation of Waste Management Officer**

The City of Polokwane has designated Waste Management officer that is located under the Waste Management SBU.

### **7.8.2 South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) reporting**

The City of Polokwane is timeously reporting on SAWIS portal as required by the Act. **(Waste Information System).**

The South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) developed by the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) in 2005, is a system used by government and industry to capture routine data on the tonnages of waste generated, recycled and disposed of in South Africa on a monthly and annual basis.

Publicly available reports generated from SAWIS are available through SAWIC 'Waste in South Africa. The Waste Information Centre provides the public, business, industry and government with access to information on the management of waste in South Africa. The Centre also provides users with access to the South African Waste Information System (SAWIS).

## **7.9. WASTE MANAGEMENT (2)**

Waste management is one of the critical services rendered by municipalities. The availability and/or unavailability of this service have a direct impact on the quality of life of citizens, their health as well as the degradation of physical environment.

Waste management embraces "prevention, generation, characterization, monitoring, treatment, handling, recycling and residual disposition of solid wastes at the approved landfill sites. There are various types of solid waste that include municipal (residential, institutional, commercial), agricultural, and special (health care, household hazardous wastes, sewage sludge). Functions relating to waste management include:

- Awareness and education to change the attitude of the public
- Waste minimization (reduce, re use and recycle) The 3 Rs.
- Waste generation, storage, collection and transportation.
- Waste treatment where waste is hazardous
- Landfill disposal sites of waste
- Environmental negative impacts considerations
- Financial and marketing aspects

- Research, Policy and regulation
- Education, awareness and training
- Planning and implementation

Polokwane Municipality is able to handle this function satisfactorily as there is a full-fledged unit established to focus on waste management. Waste collection is currently rendered in the city, Seshego, Mankweng, and Sebayeng Townships from **103 776 HH**. Municipal trucks collect waste **once a week** at residential areas/suburbs/Townships and **daily** at businesses and industrial areas). A Plan is underway to roll out this full service to rural areas as contained in the IWMP. At the moment, **53 rural villages** receive weekly waste collection service. EPWP litter picking is being done in all wards but not all villages, the challenges being equipment and personnel. All collected wastes are transported to Weltevreden and Aganang municipal Landfill sites, which are both licensed. The Aganang landfill site receive waste mainly from Moletjie and Aganang clusters

Currently in the Aganang Clusters, Waste Removal Services is Rendered in the following areas i.e.

- 1) **knobel hospital**
- 2) **Post office**
- 3) **Mashashane crossing.**
- 4) **Maphepha centre**
- 5) **SASSA**
- 6) **Matlala police station**
- 7) **the local market and**
- 8) **Tibane shopping centre.**
- 9) **Kgabo park**
- 10) **Vlakfontein**

Furthermore, street cleaning is also rendered in in all wards through Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and all the waste collected is now transported for final disposal at Weltevreden and Aganang landfill sites.

### **7.9.1 Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP)**

The City of Polokwane has developed and adopted an IWMP which embraces the concept of waste Management Hierarchy as follows:

- Waste Avoidance or prevention
- Waste Minimisation-reduce, reuse & recycle.
- Waste treatment
- Waste disposal

Integrated Waste Management Planning (**IWMP**) is a basic requirement for all municipalities as stipulated in the **National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)** (NEMWA). The Waste Act requires that the IWMP must be adopted for a period of five years and reviewed every five years as well. The primary objective of IWMP is to integrate and optimise waste management planning in order to maximise efficiency and minimise the associated environmental impacts and financial costs, and to improve the quality of life for all South Africans.

The National Waste Management Strategy provides a set of goals that municipalities must achieve in order to give effect to the Waste Act. It contains an action plan with various targets to be achieved by municipalities.

### 7.9.2 Recycling and Recovery of Waste

Polokwane Municipality IWMP Goal is to promote recycling and the recovery of waste; in a tabular format and this would be represented as follows:

**Table: Promote Recycling and Recovery of Waste**

Immediate goals	Short term goals	Medium term goals	Long term goals
Establish mechanisms for promoting separation at source (develop waste minimisation plan with clear programmes, project, budget and timelines for implementation.	Roll out separation at source to 30 % of households	Roll out separation at source to 70 % of households	100% households receiving separation at source
Conduct a feasibility study to determine whether there is a need to establish buy back centres	Develop plans to establish buy back centres	Buy back centres established	Utilization of buy back centres.
Develop a composting strategy/plan to divert garden waste from landfill sites	Establish a compost recycling plant	Compost recycling plant fully operational and is operated in a sustainable manner	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.9.3 Refuse Removal Trends

**Table: Refuse Removal**

Municipality	Removed by local authority/ Private company	Communal refuse dumps	No rubbish disposal

Polokwane	2018	2019	2020	2018	2019	2020	2018	2019	2020
Households	43.08*	43.332%	43.4%	56.92%	56.67%	56.6%	56.92%	56.67%	56.6%

Source: Stats, S.A,

There is an improvement in areas that had no service at all since 2017. As indicated earlier, the unavailability of such a service has a direct impact on the health of the citizen as well as the physical environment. A high number **56.6%** of households in rural areas still use communal dumps in comparison of households with access to refuse removed by local authority/private company of **43.4%**.

Currently, only City / Seshego and Mankweng / Sebayeng clusters have conventional waste management services in place. There are now two landfill sites licensed and two transfer stations in the CBD area. In the **Mankweng/Sebayeng** there is one transfer station. There are three rural transfer station at **Makgaga, Vaalkop, Dikgale and Makotopong** that were completed and operational.

Planning of Westernburg and Seshego transfer stations is completed and budgeted on the outer years of 2203/4 for construction. Additional budget for rural transfer stations on the MTREF capital budget is required for transfer stations at **Maja/Chuene, Aganang cluster to take the service close to the residences**. Ladanna transfer station is without paving, proper retention walls and ramping. There is also a need to budget for it in order to comply fully to Norms and Standards for construction of transfer stations

The bulk of rural areas normally do not have conventional waste management methods, illegal dumping characterised these areas without such services. A certain level of Rural Waste Collection service under the EPWP incentive Grant is undertaken in all **wards** municipal wide. The employees render litter picking service three days per week and the waste is collected by waste municipal trucks and disposed of at the two landfill sites.

One more rural transfer station is budgeted for on the MTREF namely Molepo for 2022/3. It is therefore important for the municipality to develop and implement a municipal-wide waste management plan in rural areas with clear sustainable service levels (IWMP). In order to promote the notion of waste recycling, DEA constructed and donated the **Mankweng Buy back centre** to Polokwane Municipality and the municipality is in the process of appointing a new service provider after the old one has expired.

According to the IWMP there are additional Buy back centres that must be established in rural areas as well to support and promote waste minimisation in those areas. Waste recycling should also be introduced in all rural transfer stations in order to intensity recycling and create basic job opportunities.

#### 7.9.4 Licensed Landfill Sites

The City of Polokwane has **X 2 licensed landfill**, both fully operational namely, Weltevreden and Aganang landfill sites. The municipality also has **7 transfer stations in total:**

- 7 x permitted.

- 1 x ROD (Record of Decision) for Mankweng transfer station but not permitted, New plans were drawn to finalise the licensing thereof.

### 7.9.5 Waste Management Challenges

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lack of adequate trucks and long turn-around time for repairs to render effective service in rural areas, illegal dumping and industrial cleaning resulting in over usage of overtime</li> <li>• Weltevreden landfill site is remaining with only one years' lifespan.</li> <li>• Landfill site does not charge disposal fee currently</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Purchase of adequate trucks, compactors, tipper trucks and ROROS to render effective and efficient service in the urban and rural areas</li> <li>▪ Repairs of waste trucks to prioritised as there are no relief trucks during breakdowns</li> <li>▪ The feasibility study of the landfill site was completed and the licensing process is still going on</li> <li>▪ Implementation of waste disposal charges at the landfill sites to be re-introduced to argument revenue</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shortage of personnel for refuse removal. Some staff members are old and sickly and on light duty resulting in over usage of temporary workers on waste collection and transfer stations as well</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continuous budgeting and filling of vacant positions is imperative especially operators, labourers, supervisors and Awareness and education officers to enhance efficient service delivery</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is no full refuse removal service in rural areas only 53 villages receive weekly service.</li> <li>• There are no transfer stations in all clusters.eg Maja/Chuene, Mashashane and Matlala areas</li> <li>• Ladanna transfer station upgraded with walling around, water connection and guard house. The working area is not paved, ramp and retention are also dilapidated.</li> <li>• There are no transfer stations at Westernburg and Seshego resulting in lots of illegal dumping</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Construction of rural transfer station is currently underway at Ga Molepo with capital budget of R 5 000 000. There is a need to budget for additional transfer station at Westernburg, Seshego and other rural clusters</li> <li>• A waste minimisation strategy /plan with clear programmes and projects with timelines to be finalised and implemented</li> </ul>

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The municipal area is characterised by lot of illegal dumping from building rubble due to inadequate awareness and education officers and inadequate law enforcement.</li> <li>Down town is untidy due to illegal activities by hawkers, illegal outdoor advertising, car washers, illegal mechanics, street kids, job seekers who sleep in the streets on municipal properties</li> <li>Lack of adequate street pavement bins in the CBD</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All budgeted positions of senior superintendent, operators, supervisors, awareness and education officers to be advertised and filled</li> <li>Outsourcing of litter picking in the City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng. A pilot outsourcing using cooperatives to be undertaken first in the City.</li> <li>Working together with other SBUs to control all illegal activities (Housing SBU) and the sweeping of sand in the CBD (Roads and Storm Water SBU)</li> <li>Waste awareness and education plan compiled and awaiting approval</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mankweng illegal dumping area is licensed for closure but without budget for rehabilitation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mankweng pit to be budgeted for closure and rehabilitation as it continues creating pollution of the environment</li> </ul>

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.9.6 Waste Management Status Quo

	ACTIVITY	PROGRESS
1.	IWMP	The approved IWMP to be reviewed after five years, which will be October 2022
	By-Law	By-Law approved by Council and is now gazetted. The fines and penalties are also approved already by the Chief Magistrate
2.	Waste collection in rural areas	EPWP litter picking, and collection is being done in all 45 wards. 53 villages are currently receiving weekly waste collection service and there is a need to extend to other villages in all wards. Additional acquisition of trucks and personnel will ensure that the service is rolled out to other villages



	ACTIVITY	PROGRESS
3	Plan\program on waste collection in the City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	A schedule on waste collection is in place and it also guides the placement of personnel and allocation of trucks
4.	Weltevreden landfill site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cashier house is completed, and the landfill site has been classified as a high-risk area to collect cash at the site instead rates and taxes accounts of end users will be debited, including the use of coupons and other smart options.</li> <li>• Landfill external auditing is continuing and being done every year.</li> <li>• Feasibility study to extend has been completed and busy with licensing process</li> </ul>
6	6 and 9 M <sup>3</sup> skip containers for rural transfer stations.	To appoint a three-year service provider to supply and deliver skip containers for rural areas. The allocated budget is not adequate to make inroads in rural areas
7.	Aganang landfill site	The site is completed and commenced operating on 1 July 2021
8	Upgrading of Ladanna transfer station	<p>Construction of ablution facilities, sewer and water connections have been completed and functional.</p> <p>Outstanding items of paving, retention wall and ramping to be budgeted for.</p>

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.9.7 Waste Collection in Rural Areas

EPWP litter picking will be done in all **45 wards** with a total budget of R 2 520 000 for the first six months and the remaining months with CRR budget. Approval and implementation of rural waste strategy is part of IWMP.

## 7.10 Waste Management Services Status Quo

### 7.10.1 Status Quo on Rendered Services

NO	TYPE OF SERVICES	PLACES RENDERED	FREQUENCY	Transport Mode
1.	Residential kerb side collection	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Once a week	In house compactors
2.	Businesses	Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily	3 in house compactors
3.	Street sweeping and litter picking	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily and week days only	2 x outsourced sweepers and 1 X 19 M <sup>3</sup> compactor truck  210 x temporary employees for manual litter picking
3.	Industrial areas and communal skip containers	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily and when necessary	In house Load luggers, Grab trucks and ROROS 2 x Grabs adhoc rental
4.	Transfer stations and illegal dumping	City, Seshego, Mankweng, Sebayeng and rural areas	Daily and when necessary	In house tippers & TLB and ROROS
5.	Rural villages and EPWP	Villages in all rural wards	Once a week	In house compactor trucks and 4-ton trucks

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.10.2 Rural Waste Transfer Stations and landfill sites status quo

#### Rural Transfer Stations

NO	NAME OF FACILITY	SPATIAL LOCATION	STATUS	Period of establishment and operation
1.	Makgaga rural transfer station	Makgaga ward 10	operational	2016
2.	Vaalkop rural transfer station	Vaal kop ward 9	operational	2019
3.	Dikgale rural transfer station	Ga –Dikgale ward 33	operational	2020

NO	NAME OF FACILITY	SPATIAL LOCATION	STATUS	Period of establishment and operation
4.	Makotopong rural transfer station	Makotopong ward 24	Operational	2020
5.	Webster garden transfer station	C/o Webster and Suid streets Flora Park ward 20	Operational	1998
6.	Ladanna transfer station (Need upgrading)	Vermikuleit street Ladanna ward 20	operational	2002
7	Mankweng transfer station	Mankweng ward 31	Operational	2005
8.	Molepo garden transfer station	Ga-Molepo ward 4	Under construction	N/A
9.	Aganang rural landfill site	Aganang ward 45	Operational	2021
10	Weltevreden general medium with insignificant water production (G:M:B -) landfill site	Polokwane ward 20	Operational and busy with extension due to 1-year remaining lifespan	1998

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.10.3 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Maja/Chuene/Molepo Cluster)

#### City Depot: Maja/Chuene/Molepo cluster

No	Name of Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
1.	Thogoaneng along 37 road	Chuene	1	2
	Thogoaneng along Bergeneck road			
2.	Feke	Maja	2	2
	Koppermyn			

No	Name of Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
3.	Between Mothapo and Mothiba ngwanamago	Molepo	5	2
	Moremadi along powerlines		5	
4.	Rampheri	Molepo	4	2
	Boyne (close Shell garage)			
5.	Thaba		3	2
<b>Total Allocated</b>				<b>10</b>

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

#### 7.10.4 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Moletjie and Aganang clusters)

##### Seshego Depot: Seshego, Moletjie and Aganang clusters

No	Name of Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
1.	Kgabo park	Aganang	45	2
	Between Rampuru & Ceres			
2.	Kalkspruit cross	Aganang	42	2
	Kgoroshi & Sechaba			
3	Setumong next to Matlala taxi rank	Aganang	43	2
	Dibeng village			
4.	Vlakfontein	Aganang	44	2
	Tibane Crossing			
5.	Opposite Mashashane clinic	Aganang	40	2
	Opposite mohloung police station			
6.	Diana clinic	Aganang	41	2
	Naledi clinic			
7.	Kwena Moloto	Moletjie	10	2
	Letsokwane			
8	Mmakgodu	Moletjie	36	2
	Kgohloane			
9	Moletjie crossing	Moletjie	18	2
	Around Boetse Sec school			
10	Makgofe Ga-tladi	Moletjie	16	2
	Motinti			
11	Madihorong	Moletjie	15	2
	Matamanyane			

No	Name of Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
12	Rankuwe	Moletjie	35	2
	Ga manamela			
13	Ramogoana	Moletjie	38	2
	Hlahla			
14	Sengatane	Moletjie	9	2
	Doornspruit			
<b>Total</b>				<b>30</b>

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.10.5 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters)

#### Mankweng depot: Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters

No.	Illegal Dumping Area	Cluster	Ward	Proposed skips allocation
1.	Nobody Mothapo Thagalang (between Nobody and Mabo)	Mankweng	07	3
2.	Thoka, Boipuso and Thoka Reservoir	Mankweng	27	2
3.	Moremadi Moremadi Powerline	Mankweng	27	2
4.	Mentz Malesa /Badimong	Mankweng	34	3
5.	Ga Mothiba Magwareng to Mamatlho School	Sebayeng	24	2
6.	Ga Mothiba Ngwanalaka	Sebayeng	24	1
7.	Tshware	Mankweng	30	2
8.	<b>Mamahule R71 Gate</b>	Mankweng	06	1
9.	Mentz Dubula next to Illegal Landfill	Mankweng	28	2
10	Madiga	Sebayeng	29	2
<b>Total</b>				<b>20</b>

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU (2021)

### 7.10.6 Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection Service Once a Week

Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
<b>Maja/Chuene cluster</b>	Moshate Ga Chuene, Marulaneng, Maja Moshate, Ga Phiri, Mapelaneng, Makatsane, Lekgothoane, Laastehoop, Mojapelo, Dithlopaneng, Tshebela, Mankgaile, Mountainview Pae Pae and Mmotong wa Bogobe	<b>15</b>
<b>Moletjie cluster</b>	Blood river, Mmotong, Makgofe, Moletjie Moshate, Mmakgodu, semenya, Ga Hlahla, Letsokwane and Kwena Moloto	<b>09</b>
<b>Aganang Cluster</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Business Areas</li> <li>• Municipal offices and Traffic,</li> <li>• Tibane Shopping Centre,</li> <li>• knobel Hospital, Sassa Department,</li> <li>• Maphepha stores, Matlala SAPS &amp;</li> <li>• Small Business Centre (Post Office,</li> <li>• Garage &amp; Indians shops)</li> <li>• Kgomo school</li> </ul> <p><b><u>Villages:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mandela, Madiba, Moshate, Maubane, Mapeding, Venus, Kgoroshi, Saiplaas, Moetakgare, Tibane Rampuru, Kgabopark, Ramashoana</li> </ul>	<b>12</b>
<b>Mankweng, Sebayeng/Dikgale cluster</b>	Kotishing, Ramathopye, Malesa Mentz, Ga Mothiba, Segopye, Masealama, Mamotintane, <b>Mamahule</b> 1&2R71, Mothiba Ngwana Laka, Makotopong, Moremadi, Tsatsaneng and Ramogale	<b>17</b>

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU (2021)



### 7.10.7 Plan to improve Cleanliness of the City CBD

- a) Intensify supervision of litter picking in the CBD by rotating the limited Assisting supervisors.
- b) Re-arrange the current cleaning program in the CBD by grouping all the litter pickers to clean in the morning and afternoons while there less congestion, during the day to be taken to concentrate on hot spots areas during peak periods.
- c) Ensuring that the list of hot spots such as taxi ranks, bus stops and hawker's areas are marked or ticked daily by supervisors to make sure they have been attending to adequately.
- d) To ensure that skip containers are cleaned daily and twice at hot spots areas, such as, De Hoek, Dahl Street, Biccard street and Oriental Plaza/Indian Centre by the contractor.
- e) To coordinate with Law Enforcement SBU to issue notices and fines to transgressors since the waste By-Law has been approved and gazzeted
- f) To ensure Awareness and Education to businesses, hawkers and taxi areas is done and flyers in this regarded distributed to all in the CBD
- g) To ensure that night shift street sweeper contractor is effective by allocation of a supervisor at night on alternating shift basis for three hours utilizing overtime.
- h) **Remove old damaged and defaced pavement bins** and replace them where necessary.

### 7.10.8 Waste Management Challenges and Intervention

- a) The previously decreased number of litter pickers will be increased to original quantities in order to improve cleanliness in the CBD and other areas
- b) Certain number of temporary litter pickers are allocated to trucks because of shortage of permanent staff for loading of bins. There are 10 x temporary laborer's positions which were advertised in the second quarter, and they are filled as yet
- c) Congestion and littering caused by car washers, hawkers and people sleeping on streets.
- d) Displacement and damage of refuse containers by vagrants, job seekers and street kids.
- e) The operations of multidisciplinary By-law enforcement task team will be intensified to prevail over these challenges on a continuous basis in relation to 2.3 and 2.4 above.
- f) Shortage of Awareness and Education officers. The whole municipality is manned with **one officer** instead of six. In addition to filling of the vacant positions, Ward

Committees who head Waste Management desks and Councilors to oriented on basic education and awareness during their community meetings so that they can play a key role in combating unhygienic throughout the municipal area. LEDET and Municipal Communication to be partners in this initiative.

### 7.10.9 Management of illegal Dumping in the City, Seshego and Westernburg

#### Areas with illegal dumping challenge in City, Seshego and Westernburg

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
<b>List of areas with illegal dumping challenge in City and Westernburg</b>			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Sterpark</b></li> </ul>	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>De wet and R 71</b></li> </ul>	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Mall of the north on R81(Behind Farm Yard</b></li> </ul>	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>RSA</b></li> </ul>		On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
	EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month		dumping boards and Law enforcement
• <b>N1 South</b>	monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On monthly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• <b>Buite street taxi holding area</b>	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On daily basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• <b>Lawton street</b>	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• <b>Saphire street Nirvana</b>	monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On monthly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• <b>Covydale and Buys street</b>	weekly with TLB and tipper truck	Westernburg transfer station(temporary)	Two skips in covydale street shifted further

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
	EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	to be cleaned each Tuesdays and operated for closure.	from the residents. New Westernburg transfer station planned Budgeted capital project with a budget of R 556 098

**List of areas with illegal dumping challenge in Seshego**

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Emdo, Legae la batho, Madiba park, Phase 3, extension 76, 71 and 73</b></li> </ul>	<p>Monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month</p>	on monthly basis	<p>New Seshego transfer station is planned /Budgeted with a budget of R 906 098.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Zone 1 next to Biko park, Zone 2 next to Moletji drive</b></li> </ul>	<p>weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month</p>	on weekly basis	<p>Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Bridge between hospital view and Madibapark</b></li> </ul>	<p>weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month</p>	on weekly basis	

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alf Makaleng street</li> </ul>	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on weekly basis	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

#### 7.10.10 General Method of Dealing with Illegal Dumping

- Cleaning by TLB and Tipper trucks as per drawn program.
- Manual litter picking utilising EPWP urban cleaners.
- Awareness and education and law enforcement
- Planting of No Dumping Boards.
- Illegal dumping sites are cleaned on weekly basis.

#### 7.10.11 Challenges in addressing illegal dumping problem.

- Lack of adequate equipment. E.g., Only one set of 1 X TLB and 2 x Tipper trucks per cluster
- Regular break downs with long turnaround time for repairs of the fleet
- Continued unabated illegal dumping of building rubble by unscrupulous developers especially at night.
- Transplanting/stealing of No Dumping Boards and being sold at scrap yards by street kids and job seekers for cash
- Despite weekly house to house waste collection, communities continue to dispose waste at open spaces and corners of streets
- Lack of transfer stations at Seshego, Westernburg and other areas. Those available are far apart and not accessible to other villages

### 7.10.12 Progress Report on 2021/22 Waste Management Capital Projects

NO	PROJECT NAME	WARD NO	BUDGET	PROGRESS / STATUS QUO
1.	Extension of landfill site	Ward 20	1 000 000	Licensing process not finalized yet to enable the commencement with designing and construction of the project Consultant for designing and construction supervision appointed
2.	Seshego transfer station	Ward 8	906 098	Planning and designs completed
3.	Westenburg transfer station	Ward 11	556 098	Planning and designs completed

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

### 7.11 By-Law Enforcement & SECURITY

The Municipality has an obligation in terms of Sect 152 (1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 108 of 1996, to promote safety and healthy environment; and to encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government. These objectives are achieved through constant crime prevention operations with other Law Enforcement Agencies. The SBU is sub-divided into the following three (3) sub-units:

#### 1. By-Law Enforcement

The sub-unit provides the following services within the municipality:

- Enforcement of municipal by-laws
- Conduct crime prevention operations with other law enforcement agencies
- Conduct crime awareness campaigns
- Provide VIP Protection.
- Investigation of internal crime/incident cases
- Participate in the Community Policing and Community Safety Forums within the communities,

#### 2. Asset Protection

The sub-unit renders the following services:



- Provide 24/7 security services to protect municipal properties, assets and employees,
- Conduct crime awareness to municipal employees and contractors operating with the municipality
- Pre-Employment Screening and vetting of municipal employees and private companies rendering service to Polokwane Municipality with the assistance of SAPS and State Security Agencies.
- Conduct security inspections, risk assessments and surveys at municipal premises.
- Facilitate Technical Surveillance Counter Measure at critical premises.

### 3. Emergency Control Centre

- Provide 24/7 emergency control centre services
- Provide technical access control and support of automated access into municipal buildings (e.g. motorized gates, card reader automated access control system, biometric access control system, walkthrough metal and parcel scanner).
- Provision, maintain and monitor CCTV Surveillance camera networks and IP related equipment.
- Manage emergency calls and complaint logging systems

#### 7.11.1 Challenges and the intervention Within the SBU

The table below illustrates the challenges and the interventions to address them.

Challenges		Interventions to address these challenges.
1.	Shortage of resources (staff, equipment and funding).	- Fill all budgeted vacant posts and to request adequate budget for Security equipment
2.	Lack of SBU Capacity (Law Enforcement Officers appointed as 5 day workers; and in the event of illegal land invasions, community protests and other incidents that happen after hours require the same 5 day workers to respond; and this impacts negatively on overtime budget).	- HR to advice and facilitate the process of ensuring 24-hour service for Law Enforcement Officers

Challenges	Interventions to address these challenges.
3. Insufficient Budget for the procurement of new and the replacement of CCTV cameras; and Access control systems; repairs and maintenance	- To request budget for the procurement of new and for the replacement of aged CCTV Cameras and Access Control Systems in the coming financial years.
4. Lack of human capacity on CCTV and Access Control system repairs and maintenance.	- To fast-track the appointment of technicians for control centre.
5. Insufficient office space for By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU	- To secure dedicated office space for the entire SBU
6. Huge amount of money spent on guarding services.	- To look for alternative best practice module and technology to reduce the spending on physical security.
7. Lack of specialised vehicles (armoured/Nyala) for crowd control	- To request for the procurement of armoured/Nyala vehicles
8. Increased vandalism and theft of municipal infrastructure (cable theft and vandalism of municipal infrastructure).	- Temporary deployment of law enforcement officers to patrol electrical infrastructure during the night (till additional officers to work 24/7 are employed).
9. Increased vagrants sleeping in the streets in the CBD.	- To engage relevant Government Sectors for interventions (psycho-support and accommodation).
10. The increased hair braiders and illegal street traders	- Employment of additional Law Enforcement Officers to augment and intensify police visibility and the enforcement of illegal street traders and hair braiders.

Source: PLK By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU

### 7.12 CALL CENTRE STATUS QUO

The call center had challenges with the telephone system which was not effectively distributing calls to various service delivery SBU's for reporting of service delivery complaints and emergency response. IT SBU has intervened on the matter and now the telephone system is able to guide callers to select an option for service delivery SBU's for reporting of their complaints, namely: Traffic accidents, fire, waste, accounts, water, electricity, roads, licensing, etc.

The other challenge is some members of the public who prefer not to use Control Centre reporting protocol rather prefer to call municipal officials or councilors directly, which render the Control Center redundant. In addressing this challenge, Municipal Communications has issued notice to address the matter. However, it is acknowledged that if the Control Centre is

not functioning properly, members of the public will face frustrations and opt for alternative means of reporting, hence calling municipal officials or councilors.

### **7.12 .1 Crime awareness at school**





### 7.12.2 Re-launch of community safety forum and crime awareness



### 7.12.3 Joint Crime Prevention Operation (search for expired goods in businesses)



## **7.13 DISASTER MANAGEMENT AND FIRE SERVICES**

### **7.13.1 Fire Services Status Quo**

Polokwane Fire Services cover the Municipal area of jurisdiction with three Fire Stations that are manned 24 hours 7 days a week. There are many Major Hazardous Installations within the area of jurisdiction and specialised institutions. The municipality has grown geographically and has widened the scope of responses required on the services. Fire Services have limited staff complement to attend incidents and ensure fire prevention across the municipality. This limits the capacity of the service to conduct law enforcement, Inspections, implement fire safety legislations, By-laws, Fire investigation reports, building plans, new development plans, Flammable liquids and Hazardous substances as required in terms of Fire Brigade Services Act.

### **7.13.2 Polokwane Main Fire Stations**

There are **three** existing Fire Stations in the jurisdiction of the municipality, namely:

- 1) **Main Fire Station in Laboria, Polokwane,**
- 2) **Satellite Fire Station at the Civil Airfield, Silicon Road and**
- 3) **Mankweng Fire Station.**

Clusters outside the city and Mankweng do not have Fire Stations. Areas like Moletji, Aganang, Matlala, Mashashane, Maja Chuene Molepo and Sebayeng clusters do not have Fire Sub Stations. There is no budget allocated to build stations in order to render the service. There is a need to allocate sufficient budget to build the Substations in those clusters.

### **7.13.3 Challenges of Fires Services Unit:**

The amalgamation of part of Aganang in the former Polokwane Municipality has made the demographic area to be serviced too big to respond. This has made response time more difficult to be met in line with required standard. Fire Services vehicles are too old to be relied on and are not coping to the high rate of calls in the municipality.

The lifesaving equipment which are being used are also old and obsolete. At the same time, some of the equipment are insufficient and cannot be relied on during for firefighting and rescue incidents. The equipment does not have budget allocation to repair and maintain if they are broken. They are being over used. Lack of maintenance for existing infrastructure and facilities is adding to the problem of dilapidation. Limited budgetary constraints negatively affect service delivery and capital projects allocations.

The municipality is developing at a faster pace and that requires lot of inspections and approval of fire safety components. Serious staff shortages in strategic positions specifically in the Fire Safety Section where the workload has tripled, and the staff component shrunk. Appointment of additional adequately qualified instructors at both Fire Safety and Operations Section. Filling of vacated positions is imminent to address the shortage.

The Fire Safety component is seriously lagging behind in the execution of its duties. There is a very serious need for adequately qualified staff. The workload is ever increasing, and the present staff compliment just cannot cope with it. Building inspections as well law enforcement (including newly promulgated by-laws) is being done with limited staff available in the section. Shortage of staff has impact on the amount of law enforcement to be done and as such the risk of fire and illegal activities will continue unabated including the enforcement and National Veldt and Forest Fire Act of 1998.

Lack of water and low water pressure for firefighting is being a dominant challenge to fight fires in the municipality. This is complemented by old and shortage of water tankers and fire engines to supply water to team fire when on fire calls. The problem is further compounded by the use of fire trucks to deliver water to hospitals when there is no water. Under these circumstances water pumps are normally getting broken due to overuse to supply water to those Facilities.

Fire hydrants are burning issue for several years now. They are full of dirty items which break the pumps during the fire incidents. The current fire hydrants require fire hydrants cover to protect them. There is a need to move from up ground and resort to the undercover hydrants. Inadequate staff made it difficult to clean, clearly mark, and report on faulty hydrants.

It is very common now to see fire hydrants and booster connections stuffed with papers and plastics etc., especially in dark nights this will damage pumps and hamper operations. The newly promulgated Fire Emergency By-law compels Fire Services to commit itself to Fire Safety and requires it to carry out specific duties that are putting the Municipality at serious risk. Unsafe or non-compliant buildings in town and rural areas are major problem for the municipality.

However, The SBU is having a project to service and maintain fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, hoses and heels for municipal buildings. This project helps to prolong life span and effective use of these fire suppression equipment.

#### **7.13.4 Accredited Fire-Fighting Course**



Fire Training Section has been accredited by SAESI to conduct training as per course accreditation. There is sufficient capacity to conduct accredited fire-fighting training course in the station. These courses are offered to both internal and external moderators. the demand for the course has increased exponentially for the past three years. The section is awaiting approval of additional courses from **LGSETA** to enable the municipality to generate more revenue. The training is doing well and is able to generate revenue to the municipality.

However, the approval of new courses will require additional staff capacity to cope with the demand. The approval of the additional courses must be matched by requisite facility to meet the demand. The budget allocation for the upgrading of the training is very insufficient and cannot assist in planning project in phases. It is also important to finalise Memorandum of Understanding with **GAAL (Polokwane Airport)** or the proposed "**Ike Maphoto Airport**" to comply with the existing aviation laws.

#### **7.13.5 Disaster Management Status Quo**

Disaster Management Disaster Management role in terms of the Disaster Management Act (Act 57 of 2002) to ensure that the appropriate prevention, mitigation and disaster response initiatives have been implemented. Disaster Management performs a response coordinating role, ensuring that multi-disciplinary coordination is in place and communication between responding agencies is efficient. The section has conducted awareness campaigns to various business establishments on Covid-19 compliance.

Disaster Management Plan has been developed and adopted by council. The Unit plays a major role in safety and security (JOCCOM) in the municipality particularly during this pandemic. It is permanent stakeholder in Event Safety and Security Planning Committee in all Premier Soccer League games and other major or medium risk events. Both private and public sector are trained on safety issues particularly on evacuation drills or exercises. The Sub Unit offers training to the stakeholders in matters of evacuations. The Sub Unit further participate in National Key Point activities in terms of Critical Infrastructure Act.

It responds to incidents occurring within the jurisdiction of the municipality and offers relief items to victims' disaster incidents supported by SASSA, Capricorn District Municipality Disaster Management Centre and Provincial Disaster Management Centre. Victims of disasters are being referred to Home Affairs and Social Development Departments renew of IDs and psycho social support. The Sub Unit holds Disaster Management Advisory Forum meetings on quarterly to solicit technical advice on matters related to disasters. Coronavirus pandemic has brought opportunities for development and changes to the human behaviour in terms of ensuring that prevention is better than cure.

### **7.13.6 Challenges of Disaster Management Unit**

Like Fire Services, Disaster Management has limited capacity to respond and have few disaster capabilities to render its services effectively. Lack of resources is limiting the capacity of the Sub Unit to plan and respond quicker to assist the victims. There are insufficient personnel members and limited budget to cater other preventative activities in the municipality. Therefore, additional personnel are required to cater the entire clusters.

There is challenge in terms of budget to execute certain legislative mandate. The staff is not adequately trained on regular basis. Communities in rural areas are allocated residential sites in flood plain areas. The allocation exposed communities to loss of properties and municipal infrastructure.

### **7.13.7 Polokwane Fire and Disaster Fleet**



Source Polokwane Fire and Disaster Fleet

## **7.14 TRAFFIC AND LICENSES ANALYSIS**

### **7.14.1 Traffic and licenses services**

Polokwane Municipality has a standing Traffic and Licences services resorting under Directorate: **Public Safety**. The Strategic Business unit ensures services as follows:

- All traffic related functions- Municipal-wide
- Licences: three licensing stations  
Namely: - Mankweng Licensing station
  - City (Ladanna licensing)
  - Aganang Licensing

#### **7.14.2 Roles and responsibilities: Traffic and Licenses**

Traffic and licences services provides the following key performance areas:

- Traffic related escort duties, regulation, and control
- Traffic law enforcement
- Road Traffic safety awareness
- Accident's scene management, securing and recordings.
- Speed checks and collection of outstanding fines.
- Driver and vehicle fitness
- Enforcement of municipal by-laws and parking offences
- Management of parking
- Other services such as internal and external training needs iro law enforcement courses.

The following traffic services are conducted only within the **City cluster** as a result of infrastructural and legislative requirements:

- Vehicle Mass measuring
- Pound and impounding of vehicles (of which the pound facility must still meet specific required standards with phase1 thereof completed).
- Vehicle roadworthiness test (enforcement).
- Accident response, recording, and capturing after hours due to minimal staff compliment at cluster level.

#### **7.14.3 City of Polokwane current Traffic Fleet**

**City of Polokwane current Traffic Fleet**



Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

#### **7.14.4 Revenue Enhancement Streams**

The following are the available revenue streams:

- Traffic fines.
- Outstanding warrants of arrest
- Parking Management
  - On street parking (implementation thereof to commence
- By- law enforcement and vehicle impoundments
- Licensing services.

#### **7.15 Licensing Services**

The Following services are rendered on an Agency Basis on behalf of the Department of Transport (MOU entered in to with the Department for a period of three years) i.e.

- Registration and licensing of motor vehicles
- Roadworthy tests on Vehicles
- Applications and examining of learners and driving licenses.
- Authorizations to drive municipal motor vehicles.
- Applications for professional driving permits

- Applications and testing of instructor certificates.
- Weighing of motor vehicles for tare determination and examine overloading on vehicles.

### 7.15.1 Computerised Learners Testing Facility

The Municipality in conjunction with the Department of Transport implemented the Computerized learners license facilities at City and Aganang clusters with the intention of rolling it further to Mankweng cluster.

### 7.15.2 Licensing Transactions Over a period of 12 months

The tables below depict transactions performed in licensing units for the period July 2019/20, 2020/21, and 2021/22 over a period of 12 months' specific financial year/The codes are translated as follows:

**TXN:** Transaction.

- **02:** Vehicle Registration,
  - **63:** Driving License Issue,
  - **71:** Learners License Issue.
- **The licensing transactions has been grouped per Cluster for easy reference.**

#### CITY CLUSTER

#### CITY CLUSTER= (JULY 2019 TO JUNE 2020)

JULY 2019 TO JUNE 2020													
TXN	JUL 19	AUG 19	SEP 19	OCT 19	NOV 19	DEC 19	JAN 20	FEB 20	MAR 20	APR 20	MAY 20	JUN 20	TOTAL
02	3309	2803	2971	3367	2878	2259	3325	2849	2043	0	0	2900	28704
63	2196	2038	1883	2211	1845	1614	2008	1773	977	0	0	1547	18092
71	51	05	32	105	107	55	143	107	40	0	0	01	646

#### CITY CLUSTER= (JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021)

JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL

<b>02</b>	2613	2765	2565	2811	3132	2191	2279	2421	2526	2732	2461	2319	<b>30 815</b>
<b>63</b>	1352	1322	1504	1572	1812	1159	775	1048	1488	1378	1504	1646	<b>16 560</b>
<b>71</b>	29	35	42	65	56	45	62	90	129	108	134	123	<b>918</b>

**CITY CLUSTER (JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022)**

JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022													
TXN	JUL 21	AUG 21	SEP 21	OCT 21	NOV 21	DEC 21	JAN 22	FEB 22	MAR 22	APR 22	MAY 22	JUN 22	TOTAL
<b>02</b>	2730	2560	2578	2747	2081	2029	2438	2289	2289	142	2520	2079	<b>26482</b>
<b>63</b>	1736	2039	1631	1583	1503	1451	1547	1473	1473	673	2951	447	<b>18747</b>
<b>71</b>	181	198	143	308	235	224	333	375	375	145	371	2216	<b>5104</b>

**Mankweng Cluster**

**MANKWENG CLUSTER= (JULY 2019 TO JUNE 2020)**

JULY 2019 TO JUNE 2020													
TXN	JUL 19	AUG 19	SEP 19	OCT 19	NOV 19	DEC 19	JAN 20	FEB 20	MAR 20	APR 20	MAY 20	JUN 20	TOTAL
<b>02</b>	194	161	149	184	166	106	202	181	130	0	0	140	<b>1613</b>
<b>63</b>	738	579	544	496	559	401	626	603	420	0	0	438	<b>5404</b>
<b>71</b>	152	140	145	165	166	105	109	139	106	0	0	19	<b>1246</b>

**MANKWENG CLUSTER= (JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021)**

JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL
<b>02</b>	184	163	139	150	135	138	113	158	173	118	150	113	<b>1 734</b>
<b>63</b>	456	368	407	447	446	397	302	437	517	547	571	626	<b>5 521</b>
<b>71</b>	59	70	90	99	109	76	128	104	85	149	132	143	<b>1 244</b>

**MANKWENG = (JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022)**

JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022													
------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--



TXN	JUL 21	AUG 21	SEP 21	OCT 21	NOV 21	DEC 21	JAN 22	FEB 22	MAR 22	APR 22	MAY 22	JUN 22	TOTAL
02	138	158	171	170	145	155	164	145	147	142	145	139	1819
63	486	636	448	616	650	644	704	632	854	673	901	583	7827
71	141	183	143	141	190	162	183	173	194	145	208	216	2079

### Aganang Cluster

#### AGANANG CLUSTER = (JULY 2019 TO JUNE 2020)

JULY 2019 TO JUNE 2020													
TXN	JUL 19	AUG 19	SEP 19	OCT 19	NOV 19	DEC 19	JAN 20	FEB 20	MAR 20	APR 20	MAY 20	JUN 20	TOTAL
02	31	40	41	24	31	26	25	24	17	0	0	18	277
63	436	254	316	377	252	438	487	327	267	0	0	393	3060
71	299	384	248	341	299	308	384	379	274	0	0	143	3059

#### AGANANG CLUSTER= (JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021)

JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL
02	43	30	44	50	35	35	25	35	35	24	35	20	411
63	456	333	432	603	523	529	521	491	590	560	624	629	6 291
71	367	310	324	407	168	224	319	381	383	378	415	374	4 050

#### AGANANG CLUSTER- (JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022)

JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL
02	31	13	-	-	3	24	23	23	24	19	26	35	221
63	752	427	-	-	68	480	566	575	724	642	614	511	5259
71	371	209	-	-	28	24	267	238	217	224	214	210	2211

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

### 7.15.3 Polokwane Road Accidents Statistics

The table below depicts yearly accident Statistics recorded within the City of Polokwane Municipality:

Financial Year	Accidents Statistics (Total)
2011/12	2317
2012/13	1704
2013/14	1927
2014/15	1860
2015/16	1004
2016/17	1908
2017/18	1862
2018/19	1942
2019/20	1696
2020/21	2341
2021/22	1995

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

The above figure highlights only accidents with Minor or no injuries and including minor damages on the affected vehicles. All accidents with fatalities are recorded and captured by The South African Police Services and including investigations thereof.

### 7.15.4 Traffic and Licences Challenges:

The following are current challenges:

- Offices need structural refurbishments. (Dilapidated)
- Inadequate traffic and licensing facility.
- Licensing services continuously disrupted due to Network.
- Centralized City licensing facility which is unable to cope with the influx.
- Inadequate parking facilities for both customers and employees.
- No waiting area facilities at all licensing stations
- Shortage of personnel.
- Inadequate specialized vehicles.

### **7.15.5 Measures to address Challenges:**

#### **Measures to address challenges:**

- Refurbishment of the current facility and including structural expansion.
- Decentralization of services including satellite stations at strategic areas (Rates Hall, clusters and other service points thus accommodating “one stop shop” idea.
- New technological innovations including wireless, etc. thus relieving the current load on the conventional IT system.
- Satellite stations to cater for shorter travelling costs and time.
- Decentralization of Traffic services with licenses thus accommodating law enforcement operations.
- Whilst gearing towards being a Metro Municipality, gradually fund the newly approved positions on the recently approved Organogram thus avoiding pressure of reaching the targeted personnel number required for All services within Metro-Municipality.
- Procure specialized Vehicles such as Law Enforcement Motorbikes, adapted/specially made tow trucks for easy maneuvering during law enforcement operations.
- Decentralization of infrastructural facilities namely Vehicle Test yards, Vehicle pounds and other related at all clusters.

### **7.16. ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH**

Polokwane Municipality provides environmental health services only for the “City area”. The Services in the other areas are done by the Capricorn District Municipality (CDM). There is no service level agreement entered into between the Polokwane Municipality and Capricorn District Municipality as it is a district function. The devolution process is not completed. The relocation of Environmental Health Services to the District Municipality will have a negative impact on Polokwane because of the different work activities and co-operation with other SBUs.

Services rendered are inter alia control and monitor of food premises, food control, food sampling, inspection of schools and pre-schools, inspection of accommodation establishments and air pollution control. The National Health Act 61/2003 sec 34 determine that “until a service level agreement contemplated in sec 32(3) is concluded, municipalities must continue to provide, within the resources available to them, the health services that they were providing in the year before this act took effect “.

Although the above-mentioned functions are executed, the authorization of Polokwane Municipality has been withdrawn according to Government Notice 37297 of 4 February 2014:

- Section 10(3)(b)-Authorization of Environmental Health Practitioners in writing
- Section 11-Powers, duties and functions of inspectors
- Section 24-Right to prosecute per provision of environmental health services in the municipal area is limited as the available practitioners do not meet set standards. The standards determine that there must be 1 x EHP per 15 000 populations. Currently there is a shortfall of 12 of employees compared to the standards to cover the whole population.

### **7.16.1. Polokwane Environmental Health**

Polokwane Municipality Environmental Health is conducting awareness campaign and health education to Communities in Polokwane. The following are our activities:

#### **Food premises:**

Monitoring of sanitization and wearing of masks.

Monitoring compliance with the social distancing regulations.

Monitoring compliance with the limited number of people (not more than **50** at one given time) depending on the Lockdown level we are at.

#### **Funerals:**

- Giving health education to families with positive cases.
- Monitoring of keeping of social distances at the graveyard.
- Ensuring sanitization at the household.

#### **Contact tracing:**

- We conduct the tracing of contacts of COVID-19 Positive cases.

#### **Churches:**

- Conduct health education or awareness campaigns.
- Monitoring of keeping of social distances, sanitization of hands, wearing of masks.
- Ensuring full compliance with the regulations.

**Place of instruction:**

- Monitoring and ensuring compliance with the regulation at schools and pre-schools (sanitization; wearing of masks and keeping of social distancing).

**Complaints:**

- Responding to non-compliance complaints.

**Hospitals:**

- Monitoring of handling of human remains at the hospitals.

**Funeral undertakers:**

- Giving health education to funeral undertakers on the pandemic.
- Inspection and monitoring compliance at the funeral undertaker's facilities.

## **7.17 SPORTS AND RECREATION ANALYSIS**

Sports and Recreation has the potential to serve as a tool for development as well as catalyst for social and personal change. It is also worth noting that sport and recreation builds stronger, healthier, happier and safer communities, a vehicle for positive social change. The priority of the municipality is to enhance participation in Sport and Recreation activities which include hosting of municipal, district, provincial, international Sports and Recreation events. The municipality also assist sport structures with the aim of attracting major events that will market the City as sporting hub and that have an impact on the local economy. The focus continues to be provision of sport equipment and grading of rural sport facilities, conducting sport and recreation programmes and maintenance of existing infrastructure.

Sports is used in promotion and marketing of Polokwane through presenting major events in order to establish Polokwane as the sport hub of the Limpopo Province. The municipality continues to provide a marketing platform for the City through the hosting of the national sporting activities such as the premier league matches. The national event attracts TV coverage beyond the borders of the country, giving a glimpse into the sporting facilities that exist within our city.

The municipality has hosted other events that have directly benefitted the communities within the municipality such as the **Indigenous and Golden Games, the Mayoral Cluster Races, and the Mayoral Road Race**. Polokwane Mayoral Marathon has been classified as Comrade Marathon qualifier.

Currently Sports and Recreation also coordinates programmes that are aimed at raising funds for charity and providing bursaries for needy community members by hosting the Mayoral Charity Golf day and the Annual Road Race. Through partnership with the sponsors, the municipality continue to raise monies in order to fund needy students from Polokwane. There is hoped to continue amassing sponsorship that would make it possible to spread beneficitation to a far greater audience than what is being reached at the moment. The partnerships with professional football clubs have provided the City with opportunities to contribute towards local economic development in that premier league matches played at the New Peter Mokaba

Stadium contributes to local retail and hospitality establishments enhancing their revenue generation.

The municipality continuously promotes sport by hosting municipal cluster marathons, indigenous and golden games. These are hosted at ward to cluster level and finally municipal level. Holiday programmes are presented to the community during the school holidays to ensure that children who are on holiday spend quality time.

Polokwane Municipality has launched a programme that is Polokwane Mayoral Football and Netball tournament, which is running from ward, cluster and lastly at the municipal level. The main aim is to enhance talent identification while promoting Sport in the municipality. Polokwane Municipality will continue to strive to be a winning team in promoting Social Cohesion. The municipality continues to fulfil the constitutional mandate of social cohesion by actively maintaining facilities and bringing major events to such through the Directorate Community Services.

These events not only give access to the multitude of participants, but they generally contribute to economic growth of the City. Events and facilities are deliberately used to empower disadvantaged communities and individuals, providing them access to schooling, recreational activities as well. The notion of Sport and Tourism should be looked at quite seriously and deliberate programmes to be packaged in conjunction with other relevant stakeholders in the Economic cluster. The hosting of national and international games should provide an impetus to investors and role players in the hospitality and tourism sector to want to partner more and more as such programme would be proving to be catalysts for the business growths.

Polokwane Municipality also conduct skills development and capacity building workshops through federations for various sporting codes.

### **7.17.1 Municipal Swimming Pools**

Municipality has several Swimming Pools within its area. ie City **CBD** Swimming Pool, **Seshego** Swimming Pool, **Westernburg** Swimming Pool  
**Municipal Swimming Pools**



Source: PLK sports SBU



### 7.17.2 New Peter Mokaba Stadium

Figure: New Peter Mokaba Stadium



Source: PLK Sports SBU

The new Peter **Mokaba Stadium** is one of the five stadiums that was constructed to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup in South Africa. It was built next to the old Peter Mokaba Stadium and is currently being used for all types of events over and above Soccer, Rugby and meetings. Already the venue is popular for school tours, hosting of lifestyle activities and offices.

Peter Mokaba Stadium holds much historical significance in South Africa. It was named after one of the renowned sons of the struggle and emancipation of South Africa against the apartheid regime. **Peter Mokaba** was born and bred in Polokwane and was renowned for his fighting spirit and for his inspirational leadership.

Although the Peter Mokaba Stadium was built with a capacity for **45 000** spectators, this was reduced to **41 700** for the World Cup. Interestingly, the stadium's design was inspired by the **baobab tree**, which is often said to look like it is upside down, with its roots emerging out of the ground and reaching for the sky. The stadium's steel structure gathers together at each corner of the stadium and is supported by structures that resemble massive tree trunks.

There is a VIP area that accommodates up to **500 VIPs**, a VIP reception area and lounge, as well as offices and storage areas. The stadium is less than five kilometres from the City centre of Polokwane. This area boasts a number of other sights and activities, including the Polokwane Museum, Polokwane Bird and Reptile Park.

A number of major events have been hosted at the two venues, including Rugby matches, weddings, conferences, political rallies, IEC centre during elections, religious gatherings and meetings.

### 7.17.3 Two Premier Soccer League Teams Hosted at the new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium

The new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium host two Premier Soccer League teams in the Limpopo Province, namely **Marumo Gallants FC** and **Sekhukhune United FC**.

### 7.17.4 ABSA Premiership Fixture for 2022/23



## 2022/2023 ABSA PREMIERSHIP FIXTURE

NO	DATE	DAY	FIXTURE	TIME	VENUE
1	06/08/2022	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALANTS VS STELLENBOSCH	15H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
2	10/08/2022	WEDNESDAY	SEKHUKHUNE VS GOLDEN ARROWS	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
3	13/08/2022	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS GOLDEN ARROWS	15H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
4	20/08/2022	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS MAMELODI SUNDOWNS	15H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
5	27/08/2022	SATURDAY	MTN QF		
6	03/09/2022	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS ROYAL AM	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
7	04/09/2022	SUNDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS SWALLOWS FC	15H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
8	07/09/2022	WEDNESDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS KAIZER CHIEFS	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
9	11/09/2022	SUNDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS KAIZER CHIEFS	15H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
10	17/09/2022	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS STELLENBOSCH FC	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA

NO	DATE	DAY	FIXTURE	TIME	VENUE
11	01/10/2022	SATURDAY	MTN8 SF LEG 1		
12	04/10/2022	TUESDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS ORLANDO PIRATES	17H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
13	08/10/2022	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS AMAZULU	15H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
14	15/10/2022	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS MARUMO GALLANTS	20H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
15	22/10/2022	SATURDAY	MTN8 SF LEG 2		
16	25/10/2022	TUESDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS AMAZULU	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
17	29/10/2022	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS CAPE TOWN CITY	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
18	05/11/2022	SATURDAY	MTN8 FINAL		
19	31/12/2022	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS AMAZULU	20H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
20	03/01/2023	TUESDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS MARUMO GALLANTS	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
21	07/01/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS MARITZBURG UNITED	15H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
22	14/01/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS RICHARDS BAY	15H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
23	24/01/2023	TUESDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS CAPE TOWN CITY	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
24	28/01/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS ORLANDO PIRATES	20H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
25	04/02/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS SEKHUKHUNE UNITED	20H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
26	07/02/2023	TUESDAY	NEDBANK CUP R32		
27	14/02/2023	TUESDAY	NEDBANK CUP R32		
28	18/02/2023	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS RECHARDS BAY	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
29	25/02/2023	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS CAPE TOWN CITY	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
30	04/03/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS TS GALAXY FC	15H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
31	07/03/2023	TUESDAY	NEDBANK CUP R16 & CAF IC 2021-22 MD4		
32	11/03/2023	SATURDAY	NEDBANK CUP R16		
33	18/03/2023	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS CHIPPA UNITED	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
34	01/04/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS ROYAL AM	15H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
35	04/04/2023	TUESDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS ROYAL AM	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
36	08/04/2023	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS MARITZBURG UNITED	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
37	12/04/2023	WEDNESDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS CHIPPA UNITED	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
38	15/04/2023	SATURDAY	NEDBANK CUP QF		
39	18/04/2023	TUESDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS SUPERSPORT UNITED	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
40	23/04/2023	SUNDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS KAIZER CHIEFS	17H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
41	29/04/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS SUPERSPORT UNITED	15H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
42	03/05/2023	WEDNESDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS TS GALAXY FC	15H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
43	06/05/2023	SATURDAY	NEDBANK CUP SF		
44	09/05/2023	TUESDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS MAMELODI SUNDOWNS	19H30	NEW PETER MOKABA
45	13/05/2023	SATURDAY	MARUMO GALLANTS VS MAMELODI SUNDOWNS	15H00	NEW PETER MOKABA
46	20/05/2023	SATURDAY	SEKHUKHUNE UNITED VS SUPERSPORT UNITED	15H00	NEW PETER MOKABA

NO	DATE	DAY	FIXTURE	TIME	VENUE
47	27/05/2023	SATURDAY	NEDBANK CUP FINAL		

Source: PLK Sports SBU

### 7.17.5 Horticultural Services

Horticultural Sub-SBU render services to all sport facilities (sport fields, community halls, swimming pools, showground and shooting ranges) at all cluster of Polokwane Municipality. Horticultural services include landscaping, pitch maintenance and refuse removal especially in City, Seshego and Mankweng clusters. Grass cutting (turf grass and wild grass) and tree felling is done to all facilities that falls under sport and recreation SBU.

Marking of soccer, rugby, softball, athletics, cricket and other sporting codes including all indigenous games is done within the SBU. Rolling of cricket pitch and preparation of all types of events that are hosted in our facilities is also a responsibility of horticultural service team.

### 7.17.6 Sport and Recreational Facilities

Polokwane Municipality is also responsible for managing sport and recreation facilities which are leased out on long- and short-term basis bringing in revenue and ensures that the maintenance of such facilities is done in terms of council policies and used in terms of Sport and Recreation Act 2, of 2010, for hosting of events.

Various outdoor and indoor sports and recreation facilities including community halls that are used for professional and leisure activities. The indoor facilities include **Jack Botes Hall** which host meetings, weddings, funerals, music concerts and legislature sittings. **Ngoako Ramathodi indoor centre** which hosts activities like indoor soccer, netball, basketball, volleyball, karate and also serves as a community hall for hosting of music events, community meetings and funerals. The Polokwane Indoor recreation centre caters for activity such as gymnastics, badminton, squash, kickboxing and a gymnasium (Virgin active).

Outdoor facilities include Golf club, Cricket, Tennis, Korfball, Jukskei, shooting range, Motorsport, 4X4 Motor Vehicle Track, Close Circuit Motorcycle track, Model Flying Aeroplanes, Rugby, Softball, Bowling, Soccer. The **Old Peter Mokaba stadium** remains the only facility in the province that complies to host national and international athletics events. The municipality also has various facilities with all-weather surfaces and artificial grass surfaces which ensures that sports and recreation activities can be played under various conditions.

## 7.18 New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane

### 7.18.1 Profile information on New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane as at (08 September 2022



## **1. Background to the project.**

The Polokwane Local Municipality has been identified as the home of softball. Polokwane Local Municipality is one of the Municipalities benefitting from the Ring-Fenced MIG (UIDG) Sport Allocation to the total amount of R85 m in three (3) financial years. The planning of the project commenced during the 2019/20FY, where Polokwane Municipality was allocated an amount R 25 000 000.00. However due delays caused by the National Lockdown announced in March 2020, the finalization of the Procurement process was delayed. Construction of the project commenced during 2020/21FY. The contractor has since commenced.

Polokwane Local Municipality has been allocated an amount of R 85 000 000.00. The funding is utilized for the Construction and professional fees of Polokwane Softball in Polokwane city cluster within Polokwane Municipality. The municipality forms part of the Capricorn District Municipality in Limpopo Province. The head office of the municipality is situated in Polokwane.

The project involves the Design, Planning and Construction of an International Softball Stadium in Polokwane. The project consists of design and construction of 3 Softball Fields, a practice field and associated 3500-seater Concrete Grand Stand for field A, steel and timber Grands for fields B and C and associated buildings

The detailed scope of works is as follows:

### **Associated Facilities & infrastructure for the whole stadium**

- Grandstand Building (with facilities for visiting and home teams, administration, media, VIP, storage, ancillary spaces, ramps, staircases, part circulation spaces and ablutions.
- Ablution facilities for all Fields (A, B, C and 2 practice fields) located in the Grand Stand Building
- Electrical, Mechanical and Fire prevention works.
- Sewer collection and reticulation works, water supply and reticulation works.
- Roadworks for entry and exit to site, internal and circulation road works and parking.
- Public plaza works.
- Landscaping to spaces around the Grand Stand, Stand B and the public plaza.
- Secured Kids Play Area

### **Main Field A**

- Field A Grand Stand with roof (3500-seating)
- Field A, 6260m<sup>2</sup> (International Standard) with netting and safety requirements as per manual
- Earth Berm (Future seating), Dugouts, Bullpens and batting cages
- Lighting and electronic requirements as per client specification

### **Field B**

- Field B (Area 6260m<sup>2</sup>) (International Standard)
- Field B Seating Stand (1000 spectators)
- Earth Berm, Steel Structure Pavilion, Bullpens and batting cages
- Lighting and electronic requirements as per client specification
- Field C

- Field C (Area 6260m<sup>2</sup>) prepared for match standards and conditions.

### **2 x Practice Fields**

- Open grassed area practice field of area 8250m<sup>2</sup> (75m x 110m).

The Polokwane Municipality has certain financial expenditure obligations to achieve (e.g., expenditure of allocated budgets within the required financial year). The Polokwane Municipality would try by all means to balance out the available budget with the actual expenditure claimed for work done.

### **2. Status of the project.**

**The overall progress is at 56% towards completion with the following breakdown:**

- Preliminary & General 61%
- Building and Grandstand Works 38%
- Specialist Works-Civil Works 56%
- Specialist Works-Mechanical Works 0.00%
- Specialist Works-Electrical Works 16%

### **3. Expected completion date.**

Construction of the works started **12 December 2020** and was scheduled to be completed by **26 September 2022** (21 Months Duration).

The contractor is behind schedule and a valid extension of time was applied for and granted. Intervention meetings have been held with the Contractor to get a commitment to put in place a catch-up plan. The Contractor has started increasing resources on site as agreed with the Project Team in order to catch up with the programme.

A realistic completion date is revised to **February 2023**.

### **4. How will the community benefit?**

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) for Polokwane Municipality has also noted the need for recreational facilities and has provided for such a development in the current 5-year plan. The Construction of an International Softball Stadium will attract tourists together with international events like World Olympics and World Cups Games. This will boost the local tourism industry.

### **5. Expected number of jobs to be created (temporary and permanent).**

A cumulative number of local work (unskilled labour) opportunities created to date is **41** at cumulative wages of **R 568 129,12**

### **6. No of youth to benefit.**



28 Youth male, 10 Youth female and 1 person living with a disability have been employed on the construction project.

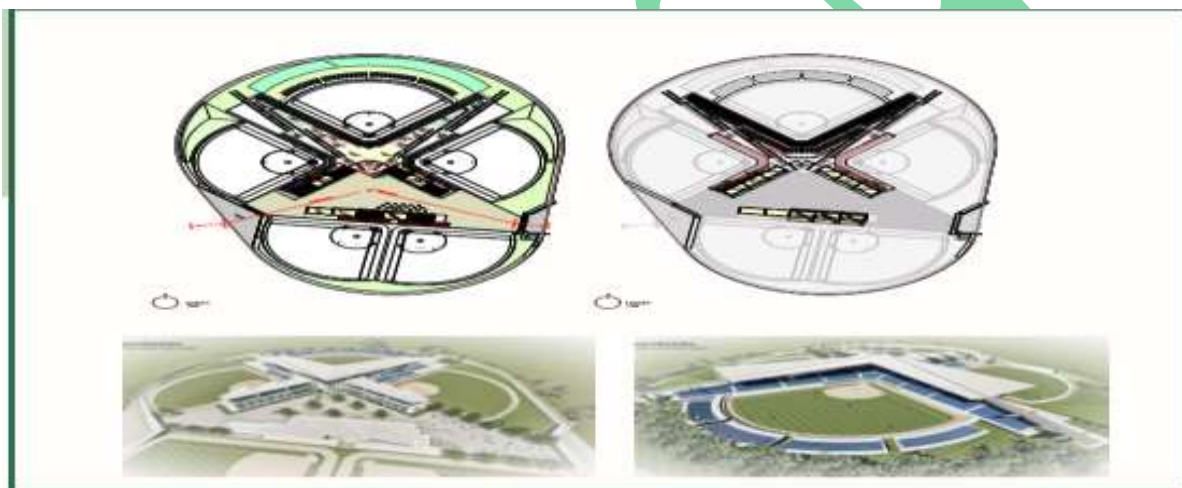
### 7. Challenges and possible interventions.

The contractor is behind schedule and a valid extension of time was applied for and granted.

Intervention meetings have been held with the Contractor to get a commitment to put in place a catch-up plan. The Contractor has started increasing resources on site as agreed with the Project Team in order to catch up with the programme and there is a visible improvement.

The contractor has highlighted cash flow challenges due to price escalations on material caused largely by the pandemic. The municipality is assisting with paying for material directly through cession agreement and the contractor has submitted a variation order that is currently under review.

#### 7.18.2 Softball Stadium Concept Designs



#### 7.18.3 Construction of Softball Stadium Progress as at (08 September 2022)



Source: PLK Sports SBU

### 7.19 SPORTS GROUND GRADING STATUS QUO

Sports and Recreation has one grader for grading of sports ground in all 45 wards. The annual target is to grade 12 sports grounds per ward which equals to 540 for the entire municipal area.

The achievement of the set target is affected by the poor mechanical condition of the grader as it is more often send for repairs and maintenance. Currently it is on a breakdown for about 6 months, and it is waiting for imported part, namely top casket. To continue with the grading services, the grader is borrowed from Roads and Transport over the weekends.

Despite the challenge, grading has been done for 6 clusters and 36 wards with 97 grounds done: For purposes of becoming more efficient in grading sports grounds, a new Grader has to be budgeted for in the next financial year

CLUSTER	NUMBER	WARDS
1. Mankweng	21 Sports Fields, 3 for each ward	7, 25, 26, 27, 28,30, 34
2. Sebayeng Dikgale	6 Sports Fields, 1 in each ward	06,24,31, 32, 33,29
3. Molepo/Chuen/Maja	10 Sports Fields= 2 in each ward	01, 02, 03, 04, 05
4. Moletjie	28 Sport Fields= 4 in each ward	09, 10,15,16, 18, 35, 36, 38,
5. Seshego	30 Sport Fields = 5 in each ward	11, 12, 13, 14, 17 and 37
6. Aganang	6 Sport Fields = 1 in each ward	40, 41, 42,43,44,45
7. City	5 Sports field for ward 8 only	08, 19,20,21,22,23,39
	<b>Total 106</b>	<b>Total 39 Wards Done</b>

Source: PLK Sports SBU

### 7.19.1 Sports Field Grading Program

The grading of fields is mainly seasonal and such services are mainly required during the festive season when tournaments are held and during the Easter weekends when such tournaments are continuing to be held in the communities.

Sport and recreation have been allocated 1 grader that is currently out of commission, however the plan has taken into consideration a situation where we have 2 operators and two graders all working in different areas servicing community needs. Essentially a minimum of two graders are required at any given time to become efficient and address the potential for back logs. The plan does not include ad hoc requests.

#### Sports Field Grading Program

Clusters:	Overall Grounds per cluster:	Grounds per ward:
Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster	18 Grounds	

<b>Clusters:</b>	<b>Overall Grounds per cluster:</b>	<b>Grounds per ward:</b>
<b>(6 wards)</b>		3
Mankweng Clute <b>(7 wards)</b>	21 Grounds	3
Moletjie Cluster <b>(8 wards)</b>	24 Grounds	3
Molepo/Maja/Chuene Cluster <b>(5 wards)</b>	15 Grounds	3
Aganang Cluster <b>(6 wards)</b>	18 Grounds	3
Seshego Cluster <b>(6 wards)</b>	18 Grounds	3
City Cluster <b>(4 wards)</b>	12 Grounds	3
<b>Overall grounds:</b>	<b>63</b>	

**Source: PLK Sports SBU**

The above-mentioned grading plan take into consideration raining season and the fact that at times, sports field can be graded twice in a space of two or three months because of heavy rains. During Easter weekends, requests are also ad hoc and are treated on a first come basis and availability of equipment.

The lack of budget to maintain the sport and recreational facilities is a huge risk as most of the facilities are not in compliance with fire and disaster requirements. Sport and Recreation operates over 62 facilities mainly within the city bounds.

## **7.20 CULTURAL SERVICES**

### **7.20.1 Cultural Services**

The provision of cultural services is an important function of Polokwane Municipality in supporting social cohesion and promoting Local Economic Development through thriving cultural industries. The Strategic Business Unit (SBU) Cultural Services is responsible for libraries, museums, heritage and cultural programs – Promotion of Reading (Libraries); Promotion, Management and Conservation of Heritage Resources (Museums) and Presentation of Cultural Programs (Cultural Desk).

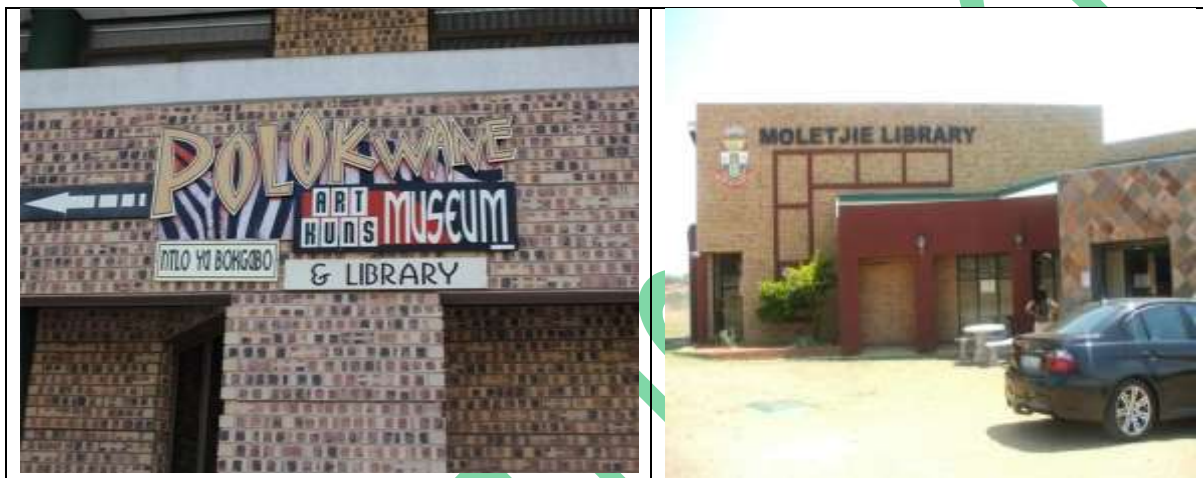
### **7.21 Libraries**



### 7.21.1 Challenges and Interventions for Libraries

The Municipality renders a flagship library service in the CBD (City Library) and operate branch libraries in **Mankweng, Matlala, Moletjie, Nirvana, Seshego and Westernburg**. The Municipality provide library materials on loan to users within the municipal jurisdiction, Polokwane Place of Safety's resource centre, Siloe School for the Blind and three old age homes.

The Provincial Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (DSAC) provided a library at Molepo area which is operated jointly by Polokwane Municipality and DSAC. Part of the Molepo-Chuene-Maja cluster office has been converted for library purposes but is not yet operational.



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

#### Current Services:

The Polokwane Municipal Libraries renders information service to the community and provides reading materials for a variety of purposes, e.g., education and cultural development, self-improvement and recreation. In order to promote and cultivate a culture of reading, the libraries section actively engages with the community through various “outreach” programs. The following are the core functions:

**Provision of information:** The Reference & Study section of our libraries are frequented by users from various parts of the province. User groups are tertiary students; secondary school learners doing research for school projects; primary school learners and their parents; persons requiring information to enhance their general knowledge and to improve their personal circumstances.

**Books for informal reading:** Municipal Libraries provide a variety of materials suitable for informal/leisure reading. One improves his/her reading skills by consistently engaging in reading. The libraries provide books for self-development and cultural development.

**Circulation service:** Circulation of books remains an integral part of every library's services. While anybody may read as much as they can free of charge inside our libraries, a borrower of books must enrol as a library member (prescribed rules & subject to payment of the relevant fees) before being allowed to borrow library material for home use.

**Provision of study space:** Library users need space to study, the environment of such space should be conducive for studies – calling for good lighting levels, good ventilation, etc. The

libraries made study areas available to accommodate daily visitors, allowing them the use of all books in the library. This is a growing need in our libraries. There are also requests for after-hours utilisation of study areas – which we try to provide during peak times.

**Internet and Wi-Fi:** The libraries currently offer a limited number of Internet connections to users to aid learners, students and upcoming entrepreneurs. A connection is free for one hour per day and is sponsored by the “Conditional Grant for Public Libraries” – Free Wi-Fi is limited to the study section of the City Library but covers branch libraries entirely. The **Mzansi Libraries On-line project**, initiated by the National Library of South Africa, promised relief with extra ITC equipment to be provided to some of our libraries. The office of the Premier also provided Free Wi-Fi (LCX Public Wi-Fi), which was discontinued in January 2022.

**Technological Aids:** To render distribution of information effectively all service points have dependable photocopiers/reprographic resources. Our libraries offer photocopying at cost to users. All our libraries **urgently need the installation** of updated 3M Book theft Detection systems to ensure that patrons borrow books legitimately. This Theft Detector Systems project was budgeted for during the 2021/2022 FY, but due to the inability to appoint a service provider it did not materialize.

**Library Outreach and awareness programs:** The municipal libraries continuously present holiday programs, conduct outreach to schools to inform learners about libraries, assist in establishing reading clubs and provide library orientation for new user’s /school groups. Municipal libraries support the celebration of National events like South African Library Week (SALW) and National Book Week in order to promote the use of libraries and reading. Our libraries facilitate and host in the annual Executive Mayor’s debating tournament annually.

### **Challenges:**

#### **Vacancies:**

The large number of vacancies funded (1) and unfunded (48) have remained unfilled. Positions provided on the organogram but not budgeted for, is detrimental to the upkeep of service standards. This has a negative effect on staff morale as the current staff feel exploited and overworked.

#### **Grading of library staff:**

The current grading of qualified librarians (who holds a four-year degree) on levels lower than posts that require a three-year degree or even only a diploma is a justified complaint amongst library staff. An anomaly is the requirement of a degree for librarians, yet the position of Library Assistant does not require a tertiary qualification other than Matric. This situation must be URGENTLY rectified to normalise this formal situation. Library Assistants must possess at least a national Diploma.

#### **Library hours disputed:**

All Polokwane libraries are open to the public beyond ordinary office hours. Summer hours are 08:00 to 16:30 on weekdays, winter hours 08:00 to 16:00 on weekdays. Libraries are not operational on weekends and public holidays. All other Small Business Units within the organization receive overtime remuneration for extra hours and Saturdays’ work. While this practice serves community needs, it calls for extended working hours. Library staff are willing to work these hours, but this calls for overtime remuneration or alternative forms of compensation. The current overtime budget will have to be adjusted upwards, should Council agree that library staff be re-classified as five-day workers.



**“Absenteeism” due to training, sick leave, maternity leave, study leave:**

Budgeting for the compensation of additional and relief staff must be a priority in the municipality.

**User fees:**

The current policy regarding user fees should be revisited. Statistics on membership numbers (new as well as existing) indicates that our numbers do not meet targets due to the fact that many users prefer to visit the library to do the reading at the library instead of paying for membership which allows the user to use the reading material at home. Benchmarking amongst other municipal libraries indicates that Polokwane remain as one of few municipalities that still impose membership fees. The meagre amount of revenue collected does not justify the risk involved in handling and transporting said income.

**Book stock development:**

The current book collection can be regarded as stale, outdated and irrelevant. Library book stock needs constant replenishment and updating in order to provide in the informational and educational needs of the community. Every library should have an up to date, well balanced, representative and relevant book collection to give library users the best possible resources that will enable them to excel. Due to escalating publishers’ prices our limited budget barely allows for maintenance. Annual funds required to provide books for envisaged new libraries must be appropriated. The proposed annual budget for this purpose must be approximately R2 000 000 to enable the institution to be provide the users with the latest editions of reference works, as opposed to the current allocation of R200 000 or less.

**No library expansion program:**

Interpretations of the so called “Unfunded Mandate” is hampering the expansion and rendering of library services in Polokwane. Rural areas where people need to travel great distances to reach the nearest library are affected, contributing to poor performance at schools. Areas identified in earlier IDP documents should be prioritized. Alternative forms of accommodation, (for example modular- and container libraries) should be considered for satellite libraries.

The existing City Library’s position in the CBD is not ideal for library purposes. No parent will allow his child to face the traffic in order to visit the library for leisure reading. Insufficient parking makes it even difficult to bring users by car. Transport costs/availability is also a limiting factor for users that use public transport. In addition, the building cannot easily be extended to accommodate the ever-increasing number of users. Council, DSAC and the Province are currently doing feasibility studies for the development of a new city library, as part of a larger “**Cultural Precinct**”.

It is important that in order to guide library development and align it with developmental goals, a library master plan be developed. Such a plan should be aligned with the IDP in order to provide services where communities prioritize the need for library services.

**ITC and connectivity:**

While Internet access and Wi-Fi can aid library services all remote locations experience various IT related problems, where slowness/lack of bandwidth is hampering service delivery. The allocation of funds for the appointment of unfunded positions of Education Assistants (Internet) must be prioritized. This will propel the library services towards the 2030 smart city vision.

**Inter-Governmental Relations:**

Limited assistance to fund libraries is being received from the Limpopo Department of Sports Arts and Culture through the “Conditional Grant” allocations. Needs related to books, equipment, ITC, personnel and maintenance is communicated to DSAC on a regular basis.

The “partnership” between the department and municipalities leans to favour municipalities that can’t afford to render services.

**Status of library buildings:**

Our existing library buildings can be regarded as functional. There are challenges regarding ventilation, lighting levels, floor finishes, roof leakages. In almost all cases library usage exceeds expectations/projections at the planning stage. Library facilities are unable to cope with inflow of students during peak and exam times.

There is a backlog regarding maintenance tasks at all of the libraries. Our libraries and museums’ maintenance depends on the maintenance priority list of the Facilities and PMU Management teams. This leaves Cultural Services in a vulnerable position. Services such as water, sanitation, roads infrastructure and energy receive preference.

**Interventions:**

**Staff matters.**

- HR/Council to address staff related challenges v/s service delivery.

**User fees**

- Council to take a decision about the abolishment of library membership fees and introduce measures that will ensure the well-being of the municipal book collection in accordance with GRAP 17.

**Library expansion**

- Find sources for funding of new library infrastructure e.g., MIG in order to provide branch libraries. Identify existing infrastructure in clusters that may be converted for library use. Invest in a mobile library service that can visit and utilize the new one-stop-service centres.
- Provide new City Library as part of Cultural Precinct in partnership with Limpopo DSAC.
- Prioritize funds for a Library master plan.
- Council to increase the allocation for maintenance and repairs of existing library infrastructure.
- Council to approve a program to replace at least one 3M Tattle Tape book detection system per year and to maintain others.

**Book stock development**

- Council to commit sufficient funding to renew and expand the library’s book collection. The procedure of asset control of damaged, outdated and lost books should be revisited. The proposed annual budget for this purpose must be in excess of R2 000 000, as opposed to the current allocation of R200 000 or less.

**ITC and connectivity**

- IT SBU must urgently address network problems, slow connection, insufficient licenses for Papyrus and other software.

**Inter-governmental relations**

- SLA between Polokwane Municipality and Limpopo DSAC is renewed annually.

**7.22 Museums**

The aim is development of museums and heritage through research; collection; education; protection and conservation.

### 7.22.1 Objectives of the Museum

- Upgrade all existing museum exhibitions to acceptable modernized standards, representative of all communities.
- Upgrade collection and its management systems
- Undertake heritage studies to eventually include the whole municipal area and to develop Cultural Resources Management plans (CRMP) for areas identified as heritage sites.
- Engage museums in extensive research to accumulate data that will be necessary for the development and up-keeping of museum norms and standards.
- Engage the museums in aggressive collection of objects that are worthy/necessary for research, exhibition, and conservation.
- Ensure proper conservation of museum collections as well as heritage sites.
- Upgrade infrastructure and amenities at museums and other heritage sites.
- Undertake museum related research and collection of specific books to enhance available information to public and academics.
- Be involved in internship programs related to museums, tourism, and heritage related services.
- Equip museum staff with necessary knowledge relevant to the sector (museums)
- Engage in outreach programs to schools to promote museums.
- Engage in job creation through EPWP program
- Take part in the Local Geographic Naming of Polokwane Municipality
- Steer and take lead in directing the future of the vulnerable state of public statues and heritage in general, through the newly established heritage committee.

### 7.22.2 Museums located within the City

The are other 4 museums that are located within the City:

1. **Irish House Museum-** A cultural history museum where history and culture of people within Polokwane; Limpopo and beyond is exhibited. An exhibition budget has been put in place and currently the project is being executed to change the one currently on show. Currently the first phase of the exhibition has been completed. Plans are underway to complete the second phase of the exhibition.
2. **Hugh Exton photographic Museum-**a museum of photography which contains a collection of the renowned photographer, Mr. Hugh Exton who captured more than twenty thousand photographs on glass negatives. Since the exhibition is old, there is a need for exhibition update in this museum and provisional budget has been set aside in the multiyear budget to prepare for a change in the exhibition in this museum.
3. **Polokwane Art museum-** a museum of art where painting, works on wood and sculptures are housed and maintained/conserved.
4. **Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum** Bakone Malapa is regarded as a living museum, the Bakone Malapa Northern Sotho Open-Air Museum is one of several museums and national monuments that bear testimony to South Africa's peoples.

It is an Open-air Museum, where tribesmen practice long-standing traditions to enlighten visitors about the traditions of Africa's people, Bakone Malapa is a reconstructed village in the style used by the northern Sotho about 250 years ago designed to demonstrate the daily life of the Bakone, a highly sophisticated subgroup of the northern Sotho tribe. The cultural village includes two homesteads or lapas that display and explain fire making, maize grinding and beer brewing as they would have been carried out years ago. There are also handcraft demonstrations that include pottery, basketry, and bead work and most of these locally made crafts are then sold from the local craft shop.

The guides are excellent story tellers and the village's architectural and cultural styles come alive through their eyes as they take one through the village's traditional way of life. the museum is more than a cultural village alone. There is a bird sanctuary, a game reserve, hiking trails and outdoor recreation areas.

### 7.22.3 Irish House Museum



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

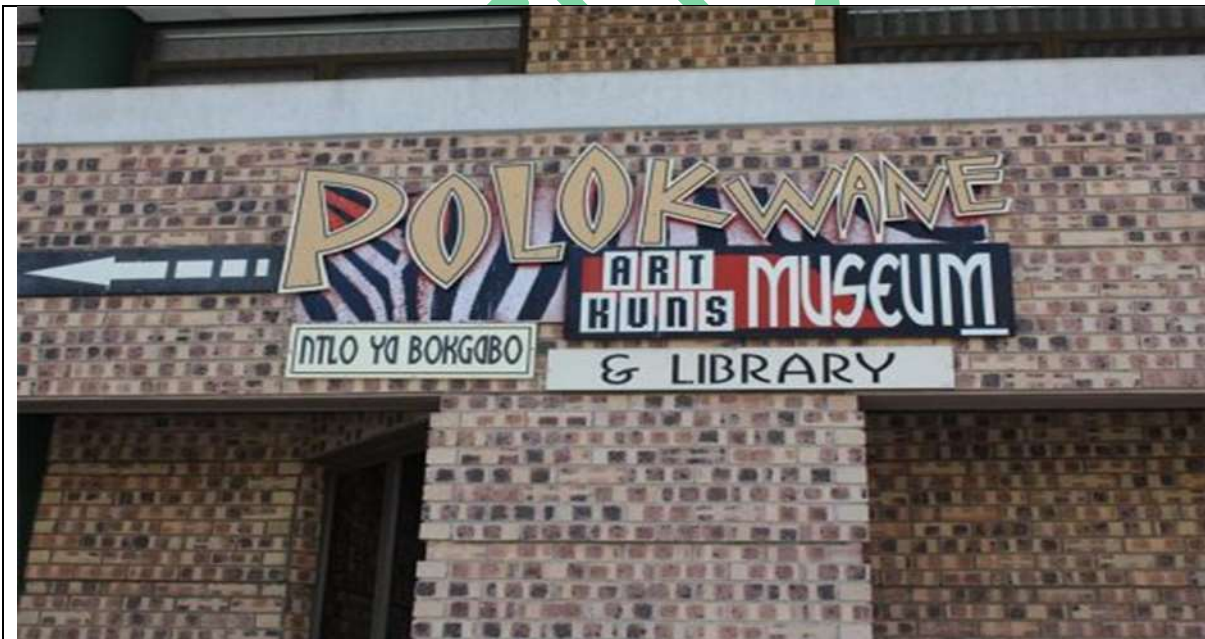
### 7.22.4 Hugh Exton Photographic Museum





Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

#### 7.22.5 Polokwane Art Museum



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

#### 7.22.6 Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

### 7.23 Heritage Sites

The museum services are also responsible for the management of heritage objects, both movable and immovable within Polokwane Municipality. The best-known heritage sites are the Irish House Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic museums due to their aesthetic and history attached to the presence today in the development of the City of Polokwane. These buildings are currently in use as museums and are Council owned. There are other buildings which could be noted such as churches and privately owned properties which still holds significant status in the City's development and in a well-preserved condition.

**Eersteling monument**-The first **gold mine** in the country before the discovery of Pilgrim's Rest and lately, the Witwatersrand Gold mine. The remains of these mine are still visible on site.

**British Fort Marabastad monument**-This fort was the site of a Boer Siege in 1880, where 140 soldiers were held for a period of 104 days. The Fort was declared a National Heritage site by the then National Monument Council (NMC), now South African Heritage Resources Authority (SAHRA) and Concentration camp-a concentration of graves for those who participated and succumbed the 1899-1902 war.

#### 7.23.1 Eersteling monument





Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

### **7.23.2 Other heritage sites that have been identified**

Other heritage sites that have been identified by means of surveys are **Moletjie heritage site** (Rock Art) and Mothapo rock art site and it is planned to Investigate / study them further for tourism development purposes.

Overall survey of heritage sites at Moletjie and Maja Chuene has been completed but detailed studies still need to be done. Excavation of a heritage site at Moletjie Ga-Legodi has been done. A conservation Management Plan needs to be done, which will include the Rock Art Site in this area. Heritage sites at Ga-Dikgale have been completed recently and therefore detailed studies are awaited. Specific site study of the site at Mothapo has been identified to be made. Heritage Sites have been identified in part within the newly incorporated areas of Aganang such as Percy Fyfe Nature Reserve to mention one. The museums continue to comment on structural demolition applications for developmental purposes.

#### **Challenges:**

##### **Vacancies:**

The large number of vacancies, as well as positions provided for on the organogram but not budgeted for remain vacant. This is detrimental to the upkeep of service standards. It also generates a lot of unhappiness as staff feels exploited and overworked.

Budget is always a problem for the development of museums to fully function. Museum's budget is always given low preference and they (museums) are expected to draw visitors to Polokwane as a Centre Hub and a Gateway to Africa. The absence or low budget cannot afford to draw new museum audience and therefore additional allocation of funds is a necessity for continuous visit to the museums.

The status of public Art is not earning full enjoyment as far as municipal holistic budget allocation is concerned. The museums are unable to render preservation as well conservation of public art due to either lack of budget or public consultation. The transformation of Industrial Art Park into a business site will ultimately lead to compromise into the City's public art space. Although progress is already at an advanced stage, the relocation of these works of art will need to be properly taken into consideration and must be under strict care of art experts.

## **7.24 Cultural Desk**

This section within Cultural Services is responsible for cultural programs aimed at developing cultural practitioners, promoting social cohesion among the citizens of Polokwane Municipality and in developing sustainable cultural industries that will contribute meaningfully into the local economy. Important stakeholders/beneficiaries of our cultural programs are mostly young artists, school children and vulnerable such as children in places of safety/care, the aged and people in incarceration.

### **7.24.1 key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection**

The following are key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection: Cultural Competitions; Holiday Program, Mayor's Debate Tournament, Outreach Programs and Annual Polokwane Literary Fair

1. Cultural Competitions take place in all the clusters culminating in Municipal Finals. They include poetry, storytelling, stand-up comedy, drama, music and dance. There is a standardized financial reward for winners in each category.
2. Holiday Program is held once a year on a chosen public holiday. It sees children and senior citizens coming together to share in music, dance and Indigenous Knowledge Systems. It is aimed at promoting social cohesion among different age groups/generations.
3. Mayoral Debate tournament is aimed at providing youth with requisite debating skills as well as sharpening their minds through research that is done in preparation for the debate.
4. Outreach Programs are a crosscutting function within Cultural Services SBU that seeks to connect municipality with its stakeholders through planned visits to their places of operation.
5. Annual Polokwane Literary Fair is held every September in collaboration with stakeholders such as National Book Week. It is a platform created especially for literary artists such as writers, poets and storytellers. It consists of skills workshops, poetry performances and various conversation platforms.

### **7.24.2 Cultural Desk Challenges**

An added function to Cultural Desk is The Polokwane Municipal Choir which was established some years ago and needs some financial support to assist their development such as attire and basic musical instruments. Cultural organizations indicate that much needs to be done to stimulate culture in the province and those local artists should be provided the opportunity to develop through the provision of a theatre and other suitable venues.

Venues under Cultural Services such as the Library Auditorium and activities rooms are used extensively and there is a high demand for the free use of facilities by Cultural organizations which currently can only be granted use free of charge subject to certain conditions, during the week (up to Thursday) for one occasion. A delicate balance will have to be found between the need for free allocation of venues under certain circumstances to cultural organizations and income generation for the municipality from such facilities. Costs to maintain such facilities

inclusive of overtime are very high and some facilities such as the Library Auditorium consistently need upgrading. There is also a dire need for the development of a policy and guidelines at provincial level for financial assistance towards cultural organizations for presentation of cultural events especially those aiming to promote and develop culture. Facilities for the development of culture in general such as a theatre and workshop venues catering for art development. The development of a Cultural Hub (which will include a library, theatre, etc) at the Bakone Malapa Open Air Museum facility is currently under development through the joint efforts of the Limpopo Dept of Public Works and Polokwane Municipality.

## **CHAPTER Eight - Good Governance and Public Participation**

### **8.1 Performance Management System (PMS)**

A Municipality's Performance Management System (PMS) is the primary mechanism to monitor, review and improve the implementation of its IDP and to gauge the progress made in achieving the objectives set out in the IDP. In addition, a Municipality's PMS must also facilitate increased accountability, learning, improvement, provide early warning signals and facilitate decision-making. Chapter 6 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act makes provision for the establishment of the performance management system in municipalities. The establishment of the performance management system is meant to assist the municipalities to monitor, measure and evaluate its performance against its developmental targets that are set in the IDP.

The most valuable reason for measuring performance is that what gets measured gets done. Polokwane Municipality has developed and adopted the Performance Management Framework that guides how performance needs to be undertaken in the municipality. Furthermore, the municipality has developed the Performance Management Policy that guides the day-to-day implementation, monitoring and evaluation of performance. The Policy is

reviewed regularly to accommodate the performance changes in the municipal environment. The latest review was done in May 2022 and become effective and implemented in July 2022. The Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) was last reviewed during the 2019/20 financial year. The SOP is still up to date and there are changes that needs to be made.

In order to ensure that performance management gets implemented at Polokwane, the organisational structure made provision of a Business Units that should management performance. The organisational structure has four (4) position, and the breakdown of the positions are that of the Manager, Assistant Manager and two PMS Coordinators. All the four (4) positions are currently filled and there is no vacancy. The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) outlines how the challenges of sustainable development in a Municipality are to be met through strategic interventions and service delivery over the five-year period. The IDP is developed by the Municipality in conjunction with the community and a credible IDP must be supported by a realistic budget. The IDP is supported by a Municipal Scorecard which sets out the key deliverables over the election period in a log-frame format.

### **8.1.1 Alignment of the IDP, Budget and SDBIP**

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) outlines how the challenges of sustainable development in a Municipality are to be met through strategic interventions and service delivery over the five-year period. The IDP is developed by the Municipality in conjunction with the community and a credible IDP must be supported by a realistic budget. The IDP is supported by a Municipal Scorecard which sets out the key deliverables over the election period in a log-frame format.

### **8.1.2 Legislation that governs Performance Management in Municipalities**

Legislation that governs performance management in local government includes the Municipal Systems Act (MSA), the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations (MPPMR), the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), the Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers directly accountable to the Municipal Manager and the Framework for Programme Information (FPPI) issued by National Treasury.

#### **Cascading of Performance Management**

The Approved Performance Management System Policy of Polokwane Municipality makes provision for cascading of performance to lower levels employees. Further, the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs published the Local Government Municipal Staff Regulations in September 2021. The key development brought by the new regulation is the introduction of the Individual Performance Management System for all employees in the municipality below the level of senior managers. Local government employees in South Africa are not expected to participate in the performance management system with the exception of employees under the Expanded Public Works Programme. The regulation came into effect on the 1<sup>st</sup> July 2022, however the Department of Corporative Governance has issued a Circular in July 2022 informing municipalities that the implementation date has been revised to 1<sup>st</sup> July 2023.

The Executive Mayor of Polokwane Municipality is passionate about employee performance management. His address to all municipal staff in March 2022, he requested executive

management to implement performance management to all the employees of the municipality. Further, he indicated that employees that are performing well must be recognised and awarded performance bonuses in line with the provisions of the law.

Polokwane Municipality in line with the Local Government Municipal Regulations of 2021 and the pronouncement by Executive Mayor, started with the implementation of the individual employee performance. Strategic Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation is responsible for coordinating the implementation of the individual performance management. Corporate and Shared Services Directorate is responsible for all human resources function pertaining to the implementation of the Regulations. To date, SPME conducted sessions with all the municipal directorates regarding the implementation of the Regulations. Implementation of the Regulations is expected to be done and concluded latest by the second quarter of the 2022/23 financial year. Further, an assessment report in terms of compliance will be done by the executive management to ensure that all the employees have performance plans in place.

### **8.1.3 Performance Reporting**

The PMS Policy of Polokwane Municipality makes provision for the reporting timeframes. The timeframes are guided by the IDP/Budget and PMS Process Plan that gets approved by Council. Furthermore, the reporting timeframes is in line with the provisions of the MFMA and the MSA. Polokwane Municipality compiles performance management reports quarterly, which is 30 days after the end of each quarter. Furthermore, performance assessment report is compiled during the first half of each financial year, that is in January every year. At the end of the financial year, an annual performance report is compiled and submitted to the Auditor General for auditing with the financial statements. Polokwane Municipality is being consistent in terms of ensuring that the performance management system is functional, and all legislative reports are compiled and submitted to the relevant stakeholders.

Polokwane Municipality automated the performance reporting system since 2016. The municipality has embraced the convenience of utilising the web-based reporting system, which makes it easy and convenient to do performance management. The effectiveness of the automated performance reporting system relies on the access to internet and the technological competency of the municipal staff. Reporting in the automated system is done by managers as the inputters and directors as the reviewers of the performance information. The automated system also provides internal audit unit with rights to audit inside the system. The Executive Management of Polokwane Municipality on the 4<sup>th</sup> August 2022 resolved that institutional performance reporting should be done on monthly basis as a build-up to quarterly reporting. This will assist management to proactively address issues of poor and under-performance before the quarterly reporting is done.

## **8.2. Audit of Performance Management Information**

The Performance Management System Policy of the municipality makes provision for the auditing of the performance information. All the performance management reports are submitted to Internal Audit for verification and quality assurance. Audited performance management information is processed to Council through the Audit Committee. The Audit Committee Chairperson is responsible for presenting the reports in Council once the reports have served and are approved by the Audit Committee.



The Office of the Auditor General audits performance information on an annual basis as per the provisions of section 46 of the Local Government Municipal Systems and further as a requirement of the Public Audit Act. The outcome of the audit of performance information has been consistent for the past two (2) financial years, 2019/20 and 2020/21 financial years. Polokwane Municipality received an unqualified audit opinion for the two mentioned financial years. The audit of the 2021/22 financial year resumed already in the month of August 2022 and the audit outcome will be issued in November 2022.

### **8.2.1 PMS Challenges**

- ❖ Performance Indicators needs to be reviewed annually to ensure that they are consistent and in line with the budget allocations.
- ❖ When developing performance targets, previous performance reports must be taken into considerations to ensure that targets are feasible and within the available resources.
- ❖ Directorates needs to compile Listing of all their reported achievements
- ❖ Compilation of Portfolio of Evidence needs to be reviewed and aligned to reporting. All the necessary documentation must be included and properly referenced.
- ❖ There is a lack of review of reported performance information to ensure that the reports are complete, accurate, consistent and reliable.
- ❖ There is a need to align the Budget, IDP Indicators and Targets to ensure that the SDBIP is not misaligned with the two documents.
- ❖ Polokwane Municipality must ensure compliance with the Local Government Municipal Staff Regulations
- ❖ All municipal employees must have signed performance agreements and assessments conducted as per the Municipal Staff Regulations.

## **8.3. INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP)**

### **8.3.1 Integrated Development Planning**

Local Municipalities in South Africa have to use "integrated development planning" as a method to plan future development in their areas. Apartheid planning left us with cities and towns that:

- Have racially divided business and residential areas
- Are badly planned to cater for the poor - with long travelling distances to work and poor access to business and other services.
- Have great differences in level of services between rich and poor areas.
- Have sprawling informal settlements and spread-out residential areas that make cheap service delivery difficult.

Rural areas were left underdeveloped and largely un-serviced. The new approach to local government has to be developmental and aims to overcome the poor planning of the past.

Integrated Development Planning is an approach to planning that involves the entire municipality and its citizens in finding the best solutions to achieve good long-term development.



An Integrated Development Plan is a **super plan** for an area that gives an overall framework for development. It aims to co-ordinate the work of local and other spheres of government in a coherent plan to improve the quality of life for all the people living in an area. It should consider the existing conditions and problems and resources available for development. The plan should look at economic and social development for the area as a whole. It must set a framework for how land should be used, what infrastructure and services are needed and how the environment should be protected.

All municipalities have to produce an Integrated Development Plan (IDP). The municipality is responsible for the co-ordination of the IDP and must draw in other stakeholders in the area who can impact on and/or benefit from development in the area.

Once the IDP is drawn up, all municipal planning and projects should happen in terms of the IDP. The annual Council budget should be based on the IDP. Other government departments working in the area should take the IDP into account when making their own plans.

It should take **6 to 9 months** to develop an IDP. During this period service delivery and development continues. The IDP is reviewed every year and necessary changes can be made.

The IDP has a lifespan of **5 years** that is linked directly to the **term of office for local councillors**. After every local government election, the new council has to decide on the future of the IDP. The Council can adopt the existing IDP or develop a new IDP that takes into consideration existing plans.

The Executive Mayor of the municipality have to manage the IDP Process. The Executive Mayor may assign this responsibility to the Municipal Manager.

The IDP has to be drawn up in consultation with forums and stakeholders. The Draft and Final IDP document has to be approved by the Council.

### 8.3.2 Evolution of the IDP (Trends since 2001)

1 <sup>st</sup> Generation (2001-2006)	2 <sup>nd</sup> Generation (2006-2011)	3 <sup>rd</sup> Generation (2011-2016)	4 <sup>th</sup> Generation (2016-2021)	5 <sup>th</sup> Generation (2021-2026)
Eradication of service delivery backlogs	Eradication of service delivery backlogs	Participation of provincial and national spheres of government	Intergovernmental programme pipelining	NDP vision 2030 – spatial transformation
	IDP being a plan of all government	Alignment of planning and budgeting processes	Respond to policy imperatives (NDP, IUDF, SPLUMA)	
		Integration of municipal sector plans into the IDP	Spatial planning	

Source: PLK IDP SBU

### **8.3.3 IDP/ Budget Process Plan**

In terms of Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Section 28(1), each municipal Council must adopt a process set out in writing to guide the planning, drafting, adoption and review of its Integrated Development Plan. Annually, City of Polokwane Council approves IDP/Budget/PMS process plan that is aligned with the Municipal Corporate Calendar detailing activities and processes that will unfold culminating with the final approval and adoption of the IDP and Budget by Council and it is aligned with the Municipal Corporate Calendar.

### **8.3.4. The IDP/Budget Committees**

Legislation requires municipalities to establish appropriate mechanism, processes and procedures for the organs of state, including traditional authorities and other role players to be identified and consulted on the drafting of the Integrated Development Plan. To achieve this purpose, the City of Polokwane established committees towards attainment of the above legislative requirement as follows:

### **8.3.5 IDP/Budget Technical Committee**

The IDP /Budget Technical committee is chaired by the Municipal Manager and constituted by all Directors and all Managers who are appointed annually by the Municipal Manager. This committee serve as a working committee for municipal planning, budgeting and institutional performance.

### **8.3.6 IDP/Budget Steering Committee**

The IDP Steering committee is chaired by the Executive Mayor and composed of all members of the Mayoral committee, Speaker of Council, Chief whip; MPAC Chairperson, Ethic Chairperson, Geographic Names Chairperson, MM, all Directors and selected Managers. Councillors in the committee play oversight role over municipal planning, budgeting and institutional performance whereas municipal employees provide expertise and technical knowledge in a supporting role.

### **8.3.7 IDP Representative Forum**

The IDP/Budget/PMS Representative Forum is platform that the City of Polokwane use to engage with organized formations and government departments. The Forum is fully functional, and its meetings are held every phase of the IDP for feedback purposes and further engagements with stakeholders.

## **8.4 Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements Process**

Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Chapter 4 provides for the municipalities to develop a culture of municipal governance that complements formal representative government with a system of participatory governance and to encourage and create conditions for the local

community to participate in the affairs of the municipality including in the preparation, implementation and review of its Integrated Development Plan. Polokwane Municipality is divided into seven (7) clusters for administrative purposes and further has a diverse and active citizenry that requires an effective public participation process to ensure that they are fully engaged in matters of their development. These includes community, business sector, government departments, non-governmental organisations, Traditional Authorities amongst others.

Polokwane Municipality has dedicated the month of April annually to consult with its stakeholders and source inputs into the tabled draft IDP and Budget. During these meetings Council gives feedback on the implementation of the current financial year projects, budgets and interventions where necessary and further present proposed projects, programmes, budgets and tariff increases for the coming financial year for engagements with stakeholders. Copies of both the draft and final IDP and Budgets are placed at strategic places within the seven (7) municipal clusters, libraries and also get posted on the municipal website for consumption by members of the public.

### **8.5 MEC IDP Assessments**

Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Section 32 requires municipalities to submit the adopted Integrated Development Plans (IDP) to the Office of the MEC for local government within ten **(10) days** after Council approval. This is to allow the MEC for local government to assess the IDPs of municipalities for compliance and to make proposals for amendments where possible for consideration by local councils. Polokwane Municipality has always complied with legislation and submitted the adopted IDP within the prescribed timelines. Polokwane Municipality always considers proposals by the MEC for Local Government from the IDP Assessments and incorporates them into planning. Below is the Ratings Received from MEC assessment on Polokwane final IDP's.

#### **8.5.1 MEC rating for Polokwane Municipality IDP**

<b>MEC IDP Assessment Rating for Polokwane (High; Medium and Low)</b>	
<b>Financial Year Final IDP Assessment</b>	<b>MEC Rating</b>
2011/12	<b>High</b>
2012/13	<b>High</b>
2013/14	<b>High</b>
2014/15	<b>High</b>
2015/16	<b>High</b>
2016/17	<b>High</b>
2017/18	<b>High</b>
2018/19	<b>Medium</b>

<b>MEC IDP Assessment Rating for Polokwane (High; Medium and Low)</b>	
<b>Financial Year Final IDP Assessment</b>	<b>MEC Rating</b>
2019/20	<b>High</b>
2020/21	<b>High</b>
2021/26	<b>High</b>
2022/23	<b>Not yet Released</b>

Source: PLK IDP SBU

### **8.6 Strategic Planning Session (Bosberaad)**

The purpose of the strategic planning session is to maintain a favourable balance between an organization and its environment over a long run. Strategic Planning has been defined as “a disciplined effort to produce fundamental decisions and actions that shape and guide what an organization is, what it does, and why it does it”. It provides a systematic process for gathering information about the bigger picture and using it to establish a long-term direction and then translate that direction into specific goals, objectives, and actions. It blends futuristic thinking, objective analysis, and subjective evaluation of goals and priorities to chart a future course of action that will ensure the organization’s vitality and effectiveness in the long run. “At best it permeates the culture of an organization, creating an almost intuitive sense of where it is going and what is important”.

In today’s highly competitive business and organizational environment, budget-oriented planning or forecast planning methods are insufficient for organization to prosper. There is a need to engage in strategic planning that clearly defines objectives and assesses both the internal and external situation to formulate strategy, evaluate progress, and make judgments as necessary to stay on track. Polokwane Municipality usually host its strategic planning sessions **each financial year** in terms of the IDP/Budget/PMS Process Plan. The session is led by the Executive Mayor. The Executive Mayor with the support of the Members of the Mayoral Committee, Senior Management and Managers holding key strategic positions embarks on a retreat to make a thorough introspection on whether the municipality is on track to achieve its Vision 2030/Smart City and take the necessary actions / decisions to ensure that Polokwane Municipality succeeds in bettering the lives of its communities and therefore achieve its Vision 2030.

### **8.7 District Development Model (DDM)**

#### **8.7.1 Background to the DDM**

The President in the 2019 Presidency Budget Speech (2019) identified the “pattern of operating in silos” as a challenge which led to “to lack of coherence in planning and implementation and has made monitoring and oversight of government’s programme difficult”.

The consequence has been non optimal delivery of services and diminished impact on the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and employment. The President further called for the rolling out of “**a new integrated district-based approach** to addressing our service delivery challenges [and] localise[d] procurement and job creation, that promotes and supports local businesses, and that involves communities...”

The President is cognisant of the fact that such an approach will require that “National departments that have district-level delivery capacity together with the provinces ... provide implementation plans in line with priorities identified in the State of the Nation address”.

The proposed New District Level model seeks to utilise the existing legal framework and implementation machinery, which includes the Intergovernmental Relations (IGR) Framework Act which provides for the Minister (and department) responsible for cooperative governance to provide “a framework for coordinating and aligning development priorities and objectives between the three spheres of government” as well as the development of “indicators for monitoring and evaluating” the implementation of the framework.

Thus, the Model utilises and enhances these frameworks and the existing implementation machinery by facilitating for joint planning, implementation as well as monitoring and evaluation, between and amongst all spheres of governance wherein the term District is seen to refer to locality rather than the District Municipality, which no doubt forms an important part of the planning, delivery as well as Monitoring and Evaluation architecture.

By crowding in public, private and not for profit investments to a district locality, in an all-inclusive manner as directed by joint district implementation plans, the model aims at maximising impact whilst capitalising on a window of opportunity (over the next twelve to eighteen months) whilst addressing the ‘burning’ and ‘stabilisation’ challenges faced by local municipalities who are seen as critical building blocks towards the realisation of the objectives of the model and the development aspirations of our people. By laying a solid foundation in the short term a long term spatially relevant plan for South Africa will be secured through the sum total of the District Implementation Plans into Joined Up Plans or the One Plan which aligns and mutually reinforces the District Plans. In so doing the One Plan will:

- a) focus on the District/Metropolitan spaces as the appropriate scale and arena for intergovernmental planning and coordination.
- b) focus on the 44 Districts + 8 Metros as developmental spaces (IGR Impact Zones) that will be strategic alignment platforms for all three spheres of government.
- c) produce a Spatially Integrated Single Government Plan (as an Intergovernmental Compact) for each of these spaces that guides and directs all strategic investment spending and project delivery across government and forms the basis for accountability.

- d) reinforce an outcomes-based IGR system where there is a systematic IGR programme and process associated with the formulation and implementation of a single government plan.
- e) take development to our communities as key beneficiaries and actors of what government does.

These Single Joined-Up plans, or the **One Plan** will take the form of prioritised spatial expressions over the long term and will be divided into 5 and 10-year implementation plans supported by annual operation plans which will be based on commonly agreed diagnostics, strategies and actions. Each sphere and sector department will have to elaborate in more detail their own plans and actions. The plans will facilitate for:

- a) Managing urbanisation, growth and development.
- b) Determining and/or supporting local economic drivers.
- c) Determining and managing spatial form, land release and land development.
- d) Determining infrastructure investment requirements and ensure long-term infrastructure adequacy to support integrated human settlements, economic activity and provision of basic services, community and social services:
- e) Institutionalize long term planning whilst addressing 'burning' short term issues

The content of the Plans will elaborate the key transformation processes required to achieve long-term strategic goals and a desired future in each of the 44 district and 8 metro spaces.

### **8.7.2 Formulation and implementation of a One Plan**





Source: Cogta One plan process Guideline

### 8.7.3 District Development Model (DDM) Executive Summary

The District Development Model (DDM) is an operational model for improving cooperative governance aimed at building a capable, ethical and developmental State. It embodies an approach by which the three spheres of government and state entities work collaboratively in an impact-oriented way, and where there is higher performance and accountability for coherent service delivery and development outcomes.

Furthermore, the DDM is an intergovernmental approach focusing on 52 district and metropolitan spaces as IGR impact zones for more effective joint planning, budgeting and implementation over multi-year planning and electoral cycles. Although each sphere, sector or entity has its distinct constitutional powers, functions and responsibilities, they cooperate and undertake collaborative planning, budgeting and implementation processes converging developmental efforts at the district/metropolitan level. Accordingly, this joint work is expressed through the formulation and implementation of a “**One Plan**” which is a long-term strategic framework guiding investment, service delivery and development in relation to each of the district and metropolitan spaces.

The Institutional Arrangements for the DDM are aimed at sustaining a programmatic approach to cooperative governance and IGR centred around the One Plan and the related reprioritisation processes to be undertaken by all spheres, departments, entities and municipalities. This will culminate in both political and technical work streams that will need to be managed at the level of district/metro hubs for the co-creation of the joined up One Plans by and for all three spheres of Government.

The management is undertaken by two key committees. At the level of the district/metro hub, the two committees referenced below will be responsible for the management of the one plan

process. The **DDM political committee** provides political leadership, oversight and support to the hubs whereas the **DDM district/metro coordination steering committee** will oversee the technical work of the district/metro hubs. Each of these committees will relate with the rest of the institutional teams based on political and technical interfaces. In essence, these committees will drive the work of the district/metro hubs including intergovernmental collaboration required to develop the joined up one plans. The DCF, PCF and PCC will be key structures interacting with the DDM political and district coordination steering committees for the interim sign-off of the One Plan stage milestones. A council of advisors or similar may be proposed and may assess the 52 district/metro plans and recommend approval to PCC and Cabinet.

The One Plan process guideline will outline the activities, roles, responsibilities, ownership and timelines that will need to be undertaken during each One Plan road map stage and it will also synthesise how each stage integrates into Government's existing planning and budgeting cycles across the three spheres with a view of creating a long-term strategic framework (joined up one plan) that guides all strategic investments from Government and the private sector.

## **8.8. MUNICIPAL CLUSTER OFFICES**

### **8.8.1 Number of Municipal Clusters and their Wards**

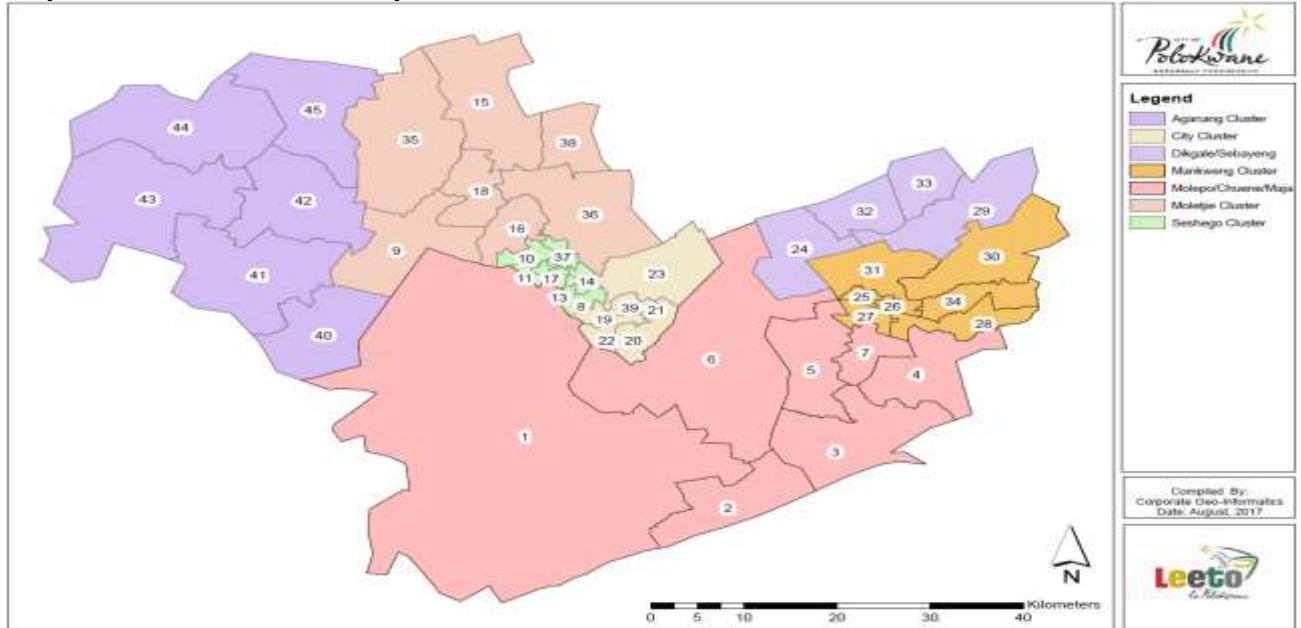
Polokwane Municipality is Consist of 7 **Clusters** that should be provided with services. The number of wards is now **45 wards**. The Name of the Clusters are:

	<b>Clusters Name</b>	<b>Wards No.</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Mankweng Cluster</b>	06,07,25,26,27,28, 34
<b>2</b>	<b>Moletjie Cluster</b>	09,10,15,16,18,35, 36,38
<b>3</b>	<b>Molepo / Chuene / Maja Cluster</b>	1,2,3,4,5
<b>4</b>	<b>Sebayeng / Dikgale Cluster</b>	24,29,32,33,30,31
<b>5</b>	<b>Aganang Cluster</b>	40,41,42,43,44,45
<b>6</b>	<b>City Cluster</b>	08;19,20,21,22,23,39
<b>7</b>	<b>Seshego Cluster</b>	11,12,13, 14,17,37

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

## 8.8.2 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards

Map: Polokwane Cluster Map



Source: Polokwane G.I.S SBU: 2021

### 8.9 Municipal Cluster Offices

All Clusters have Municipal Offices that assist in Monitoring of Service Delivery. The Municipal Offices are as Follows:

#### 8.9.1 City Cluster Office - Municipal Head Office

The **Civic Centre** will remain the **Municipal Head Office** and will also accommodate staff that is deployed to work in the City Cluster. It has been recommended that rates halls be incorporated into the Westernburg and Nirvana Community Centres, municipal offices in Ladanna and the Thorn-hill shopping Centre to provide residents around these areas with access to officials with regards to queries on their accounts and other municipal services. Relocation of staff that is deployed to other clusters (to their respective cluster offices or depots) will provide an opportunity for essential refurbishment to be done to the Civic Centre and also alleviate the problem of office accommodation at the Main Building.

#### 8.9.2 Molepo-Chuene-Maja Cluster Office

The existing municipal cluster office at Mothiba Ngwana-Mago in the Maja area for which a photographic image is provided below, is suitably located in terms of centrality, population concentrations and numbers as well as access roads. Access will be further improved once the existing tarring of the road from Polokwane via Silicon Smelters is completed. The office however needs to be extended to meet the deployment requirements of staff as well as the municipal services to be provided in the cluster area.

It is recommended that a secure site be established from where mobile services can be made available to residents in the Molepo area. The site has already been identified at Rampheri village in the Molepo area. This will allow mobile service providers such as Departments of Health, SASSA, SAPS, Home Affairs to move in and utilize the facility to render services to the local community. Office accommodation requirements are summarized in the table at the end of this section, with concept-level proposals from an architect provided in the following section.

### **8.9.3 Mankweng Cluster Office**

There are currently three satellite offices situated at Unit A, B and C in Mankweng as well as a Community Library and a Fire Station. An approval has been granted for the development of a Thusong Service Centre at Ga-Makanye Village in Ward 28 to cater for the needs of the local community within the Cluster. The Thusong Service Centre programme is a government initiative to extend government services and information to communities in an integrated manner. This could form the nucleus of an office precinct for Mankweng, with an Education Circuit office and other sector departments such as Home Affairs, Social Development, Health and parastatals to follow.

Secure site is recommended to be established for mobile services at the primary road intersections between the settlements of Thune, Mongwaneng & ga-Mamphaka. This will improve access to municipal and other government services for residents on the periphery of the Mankweng cluster who have to travel long distances to access government services. Service providers such as Departments of Health, SASSA, SAPS, Home Affairs can on scheduled days utilize the facility to render services to the local community.

There is also a need to consider establishing a Municipal Depot to accommodate all heavy duty and other vehicles particularly from the Engineering and Community Services Directorates that are rendering services to the local community. It is also likely that the proposed Transfer Station for the Integrated Rapid Public Transport Corridor between the City and Mankweng will eventually be constructed in this vicinity. The new office must have a discernible image that will form part of the Polokwane Smart City brand.

### **8.9.4 Sebayeng-Dikgale Cluster Office**

The existing Municipal Cluster Office in Sebayeng town is suitably located, but the facility needs to be upgraded and expanded according to the cluster staff deployment requirements. A secure site is also recommended at Segopje village in the Mamabolo area to provide mobile services to benefit the local community. Several sector departments such as Health, SASSA, Home Affairs and parastatals have been engaged in this regard and have shown keen interest. A visual image of the office is provided below. ICT connectivity must also be significantly improved. A depot is required for Engineering and Community Services to best render services to the local community. There is also a need for a Community Library in the cluster area.

### **8.9.5 Seshego Cluster Office**

Seshego is currently having three municipal offices situated at Zone 1, 3 and 8 and are suitably located to serve as rates halls and providing other municipal services for the local communities and should therefore be retained as such for local neighbourhoods.

A new Cluster Office, branded according to the Polokwane Smart City Vision, is proposed to be developed in close proximity to the Seshego Circle Mall. This is the most accessible point in the Cluster, and it is located close to the Seshego Hospital. It is also densely populated. The vacant land is available for this project. The Transfer Station for the proposed Rapid Public Transport Corridor between the City and Seshego is earmarked for the same vicinity. The proposed new cluster office should provide motor vehicle licensing services and form part of the Seshego Precinct Development Plan.

In a rapidly changing world, space is increasingly becoming a scarce resource as productivity and work efficiencies are crucial to the success of any institution. Space planning is therefore vital in addressing this challenge. Although the Municipality is currently implementing the open floor plan, decentralization of more services to the outlying cluster areas could go a long way in alleviating the problem of office space at the main building.

### **8.9.6 Moletjie Cluster Office**

The existing municipal office at Koloti is suitably located to serve as a cluster office due to its centrality with regard to the population settlement pattern and the primary transport corridors. However, this facility will require infrastructure upgrading and expansion according to staff deployment needs. Access from the main road will also have to be improved. Although there is a functional Thusong Service Centre in Moletjie some few meters from the municipal cluster office, secure sites are recommended to be established for mobile services at the primary road intersections at Ramongwana and Chebeng. This will improve access to municipal and other government services for residents on the periphery of the Moletjie cluster who have to travel long distances to access government services.

### **8.9.7 Aganang Cluster Office**

The Aganang area that has been incorporated into Polokwane Municipality is now serving as the seventh cluster area for Polokwane. The municipal complex at Ceres village has been converted into a Cluster Office with 64 offices, four boardrooms and a community hall. The facility has a separate Traffic Centre with six offices, a conference room and testing rooms. There is need to upgrade the ICT infrastructure in order to facilitate efficient operational communication between the Civic Centre and the Cluster office.

It is proposed that a suitable Municipal Depot be developed next to the Traffic Station to accommodate the deployed staff, plant and machinery and other specialized vehicles of Engineering and Community Services. This should have appropriate office accommodation and workshops for operations of the Engineering Services and the necessary space for materials and equipment. There is need to establish a community library at the Cluster Offices as well as expansion of the provision of municipal services to satellite offices at Matlala One-

Stop Centre and Mohlomong Office in Mashashane to access Social Development, Health, Education and Post Office services. The building is illustrated in the figure below.

### **8.10 Cluster Offices Challenges**

- **ICT:** Poor Network Connectivity at Cluster Offices – Moletjie, Sebayeng/Dikgale, Molepo/Chuene/Maja, Mankweng, Aganang and Moletjie Thusong Service Centre
- **Office accommodation:** Inadequate office space at the existing cluster offices to accommodate the anticipated number of employees to be deployed at these offices particularly Moletjie, Sebayeng/Dikgale, Molepo/Chuene/Maja, Seshego and Mankweng.
- **Hostel Accommodation (Barracks):** Inadequate hostel accommodation for employees attached to the Fire Services and Water and Sanitation at Unit A in Mankweng cluster.
- **Municipal Depots:** Lack of municipal depots in the different cluster areas. The Municipality is currently leasing a Facility in Seshego (LIMDEV Building) with unsatisfactory conditions. The facility is used by Roads and Storm Water, Environmental Management and Waste Management Strategic Business Units. In Mankweng cluster, the municipality is using the prefabricated facilities from the Department of Water Affairs to accommodate employees of Roads and Storm Water and Water and Sanitation strategic business units.
- **Under-utilised office** accommodation at Aganang cluster offices. The Municipal complex at Ceres village has a total of 64 offices, 4 boardrooms and a community hall. The facility has a separate Traffic and Licensing centre with 6 offices, a conference room and testing rooms.
- **Ablution facility:** lack of ablution facilities to cater for the immediate needs for the offsite staff. Employees have to travel back to the satellite office on a regular basis thus hampering productivity due to time spend travelling to and from the satellite offices.

#### **8.10.1. Proposed intervention on Identified Challenges**

- **ICT:** There is need to upgrade the ICT infrastructure at Cluster offices in order to facilitate efficient operational communication between the Civic Centre and the cluster offices and also to accelerate service delivery to communities.
- **Office accommodation-** it is recommended that a new Cluster Office be developed on a vacant land across the Circle Mall in order to form part of the Seshego Precinct Development Plan. The location is central in terms of the residents of the cluster area and will offer convenient access for all modes of transport. The existing satellite offices in Zones 1, 3 and 8 will continue operating as Rates Halls for local neighbourhood.
- It is further recommended that a Thusong Service Centre be developed in Mankweng Cluster to provide not only municipal services but also those provided by other government departments, non-governmental organisations and parastatals.



- There is need also to upgrade or expand the existing office facilities at Moletjie, Sebayeng/Dikgale and Molepo/Chuene/Maja in line with the numbers of employees and services rendered at the respective offices.
- Hostel accommodation- there is need to construct a new hostel facility for employees doing night and stand-by shifts in Fire Services, Water and Sanitation, Energy and other Emergency related services in Mankweng cluster.
- **Municipal depots-** Construction of depots in Seshego, Mankweng and Moletjie clusters as a first priority and with consideration also of the other cluster areas such as Aganang, Sebayeng/Dikgale and Molepo/ Chuene/Maja.
- Decentralisation of more municipal services to cluster areas in particular Aganang which may also be converted into a Thusong Service Centre. Three sector departments are already rendering services on the same premises namely Social Department, SASSA and the South African Post Office.
- Construction of ablution facilities on municipal properties including parks to cater the need of the offsite staff

### **8.10.2 CORE RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CLUSTERS-SBU**

The Cluster-SBU has a core responsibility of executing the Municipal Cluster model to decentralise the delivery of services. Through this model, the municipality has been able to decentralize services to the far-flung rural areas. The idea behind the Cluster model is to bring government services closer to the people and bringing services closer to the communities. Service decentralization in the clusters, has contributed towards promoting active community participation in the decision-making processes of Polokwane Municipality.

Section 153 of the Constitution stipulates that each municipality should structure and manage its administration, budgeting and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community and to promote social and economic development of the community.

### **8.10.3 Municipal CLUSTERS Offices**

The SBU is comprised of six Cluster Offices namely, Aganang, Mankweng, Molepo-Chuene-Maja, Moletjie, Sebayeng-Dikgale and Seshego. Aganang Cluster was incorporated into the Cluster model in 2016 after the dis-establishment of the former Aganang Local Municipality. Role of the Cluster Offices is to decentralise services and ensure that municipal services are accessible within the municipality's six (6) geographical areas. In each Cluster Office there is Assistant Manager that manage the Cluster Office and also coordinate service delivery issues with various SBU's.

#### 8.10.4 CLUSTER OFFICES AND THEIR LOCATIONS

NO	CLUSTER	LOCATION	BUILDING
1	Aganang Cluster	Moletjie, Ceres	Municipal Building
		1 Stop Centre, Ipopeng	Municipal Building
		Mohlonong Satellite Office	Municipal Building
2	Mankweng Cluster	Mankweng Unit C	Municipal Building
		Mankweng Unit B	Municipal Building
		Mankweng Unit A	Municipal Building
3	Moletjie Cluster	Moletjie Moshate	Municipal Building
	Moletjie Thusong Service Centre	Moletjie Moshate	Municipal Building
4	Molepo/Chuene/Maja	Mothiba Ngwanamaago	Municipal Building
5	Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster	Sebayeng Township	Municipal Building
6	Seshego Cluster	Zone 3, Seshego	Municipal Building
		Zone 8, Seshego	Municipal Building
		Zone 1, Seshego	Municipal Building

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

#### 8.10.5 CURRENT STAFF COMPONENT ACROSS CLUSTERS

Number of positions	Filled	Vacant	Budgeted	Non-budgeted
49	27	22	5	17

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

### 8.10.6 SERVICES RENDERED IN THE VARIOUS CLUSTER OFFICES

NO	CLUSTER	SBU
1	Aganang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clusters</li> <li>➤ Traffic &amp; Licensing</li> <li>➤ Roads &amp; Stormwater</li> <li>➤ Public Participation</li> <li>➤ Waste Management</li> <li>➤ Cultural Services (Libraries)</li> <li>➤ City Planning &amp; Property Management</li> </ul>
2	Mankweng	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clusters</li> <li>➤ Traffic &amp; Licensing</li> <li>➤ Waste Management</li> <li>➤ Environment</li> <li>➤ Fire &amp; Disaster</li> <li>➤ Water &amp; Sanitation</li> <li>➤ Roads &amp; Stormwater</li> <li>➤ Cultural Services (Libraries)</li> <li>➤ Property Management</li> <li>➤ Public Participation</li> <li>➤ Records</li> </ul>
3	Moletjie	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clusters</li> <li>➤ Public Participation</li> <li>➤ Water &amp; Sanitation</li> <li>➤ Roads &amp; Stormwater</li> <li>➤ Traffic</li> <li>➤ Cultural Services (Libraries)</li> <li>➤ Energy Services</li> <li>➤ Waste Management</li> </ul>
4	Molepo/Chuene/Maja	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clusters</li> <li>➤ Public Participation</li> <li>➤ Water &amp; Sanitation</li> <li>➤ Roads &amp; Stormwater</li> <li>➤ Traffic</li> <li>➤ Waste Management</li> <li>➤ Cultural Services (Libraries)</li> <li>➤ Energy Services</li> </ul>
5	Sebayeng/Dikgale	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clusters</li> <li>➤ Traffic</li> <li>➤ City Planning &amp; Property Management</li> <li>➤ Public Participation</li> <li>➤ Waste Management</li> <li>➤ Roads &amp; Stormwater</li> </ul>
6	Seshego	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Clusters</li> <li>➤ Traffic</li> <li>➤ City and Regional Planning</li> <li>➤ Public Participation</li> <li>➤ Waste Management</li> <li>➤ Cultural Services (Libraries)</li> <li>➤ Roads &amp; Stormwater</li> <li>➤ Environment (Cemetries &amp; Parks)</li> <li>➤ Revenue</li> <li>➤ Water &amp; Sanitation</li> </ul>

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

### 8.10.7 CLUSTERS CAPITAL PROJECTS

PROJECT NUMBER	PROJECT NAME/DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION
CWP_01	Thusong Service Centre	Mankweng
CWP_02	Mobile service sites at Rampheri village	Rampheri
CWP_03	Construction of Segopje Mobile Service Centre	Segopje
CWP_04	Renovation of existing Cluster Offices	Municipal wide
CWP_05	Upgrading of existing Cluster Offices	Municipal wide

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

### 8.11 Project Management Unit (PMU)

The PMU is responsible most of for the management of the capital infrastructure programme (municipal scale) as well as physical project implementation activities including:

- The coordination of regular progress meetings
- The associated project management administrative functions, from project registration and evaluation through to final project completion reports.
- Co-ordination of strategic bulk water and sanitation programs
- Management of infrastructure programs for critical service delivery objectives of the municipality.

The PMU is currently responsible for capital infrastructure projects funded from MIG now IUDG, RBIG, NDPG, WISG; EPWP.

#### 8.11.1 NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

The Precinct Plan is for development and connection of the identified business nodes in Seshego urban hub as part of the NDPG (Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant) funded project from National Treasury. During the investigations about Seshego Urban hub, it was realized that there are some areas where the facilities/infrastructure need re-designing to accommodate growth patterns at Seshego. It becomes the priority of the precinct plan to

address those problems at a minimal cost while ensuring that people still receive the required services as they are supposed to.

The precinct plan is aimed at promoting the performance of Seshego urban hub with the following objectives:

- Formalise public transportation facilities and services.
- Increase pedestrian volumes to the hub by defining and improving pedestrian movement.
- To create vibrancy, job opportunities and increase population thresholds by means of the integration and mix of land uses such as commercial, transport, social and public space, higher residential densities and training facilities.
- Establish a public square to encourage social and cultural gathering and interaction. Improve the Economic Development within the entire hub.

To date, 25 projects have been identified during the precinct planning and it will require R850 300 125.00 to complete the project in phases.

**AM Consulting** Engineers have been appointed by the municipality to assist with implementation of the projects within the precinct plan in Seshego Urban Hub. Though the precinct plan has been approved by the Council, National Treasury has allowed the municipality to revise the plan, reprioritise the implementation of certain projects and propose new projects where possible. This will assist both the municipality and National Treasury to fully implement the NDPG Programme by also exploring other possible sources of funding.

The precinct plan is reviewed regularly, and engagements are done with national Treasury for assessment and prioritisation of projects.

In the 2020/21 the NDPG team at National Treasury advised that a sub precinct be developed to focus on heart of the already approved precinct plan. The Precinct Plan Review aims to transform the existing Seshego into an urban hub that is vibrant, pedestrian orientated, create convenience and functions as a Transit Oriented Development (TOD) environment. The interventions proposed are subject to availability of bulk infrastructure capacity and strong precinct management. Successful government interventions will stimulate private sector opportunities and confidence to invest in the hub. All these interventions will be to the advantage of the broader community of Seshego and Polokwane it is noted that the Precinct Plan recommendations may have to be updated if any final designs impact on the Precinct design proposals.

## **8.12 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is a nation-wide Government Programme aiming at drawing significant numbers of unemployed into productive work, so that they increase their capacity to earn an income.

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) was initiated in 2004 with the primary goal of reducing unemployment across South Africa. The EPWP provides labour intensive employment created through the infrastructure sector, social sector, environment sector as well as the non-state sector. These sectors under the EPWP therefore have a dual purpose namely, job creation and upgrading of infrastructure

The persistently high rate of unemployment in South Africa is one of the most pressing socio-economic challenges facing the Government and Polokwane Local Municipality is not immune to these challenges. High youth unemployment in particular means young people are not acquiring the skills or experience needed to drive the economy forward.

Therefore, job creation and skills development remain the key priorities of the Polokwane Local Municipality. EPWP targets are set annually by the National Government, which the Municipality is expected to achieve. With the introduction of the EPWP phase III, the Municipality has performed well in terms of job creation, by achieving their target for the first year. Currently most jobs are created through Capital projects as well as Operational projects, and quite a significant number of jobs are created through Water and Sanitation, Waste Management, Roads and storm water, Environment Management and Transportation Projects.

An EPWP policy document was developed and approved by Council in 2012/13 financial year and is reviewed annually. The policy is aimed at providing an enabling environment for the Municipality to upscale the EPWP Programme, through the re-orientation of the line budget function and channelling a substantial amount of the overall annual budget allocation and human resources towards the implementation of EPWP. This policy also advocates for the establishment of a Municipal EPWP Steering Committee which has since been established and is responsible for the strategic direction and coordination of EPWP.

To ensure accountability by all Directorates in the achievement of these set National EPWP targets, the Directorates are allocated annually, a portion of the total target which the Directorates must achieve. Objectives and key Changes in EPWP Phase IV



The Municipality is currently implementing the new phase of the Expanded Public Works Program, EPWP Phase IV, which came into effect in April 2019.

### **8.12.1 Objectives of EPWP Phase IV**

The Objective of EPWP Phase IV is:

To provide work opportunities and income support to poor and unemployed people through the delivery of public and community assets and services, thereby contributing to development”

- EPWP Phase IV Focus
- Strengthening the monitoring of the core EPWP principles to improve compliance to the EPWP guidelines
- Expansion of the programme through replication and improved in programmes across all sectors.
- Enhancing the EPWP coordination and institutional arrangements including the PEP-IMC.
- Strengthening impact evaluation of the EPWP and ensure greater transparency and accountability through the introduction of Social Audits.
- Strengthening partnerships with the private sector and TVET Colleges.

### **8.12.2 Community Work Programme**

The Municipality in partnership with the Department of Co-operative Governance Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA) is implementing the Community Work Program (CWP). The CWP targets specific areas, where a significant number of people unemployed are drawn into productive work. The communities identify useful work at community level.

The programme aims to provide an employment safety net, by providing a minimum level of regular work opportunities to participants, with a predictable number of days of work provided per month. It is targeted at the unemployed and/or underemployed people of working age, including those whose livelihood activities are insufficient to lift them out of poverty. The Polokwane Municipality has received an allocation of 1000 participants from (COGHSTA) through the CWP, and the Programme is currently implemented in the following clusters:

<b>Mankweng Cluster</b>	<b>Moletjie Cluster</b>	<b>Aganang Cluster</b>
▪ 500 participants	▪ 500 participants	▪ 1000 participants

**Source: PLK PMU SBU**

The Municipality has also received an additional 450 participants, for the CWP Pilot programme which the Department is rolling out, specifically targeted towards the traditional Authorities Villages/ Wards.

### **8.12.3 EPWP Vuk'uphile Learnership Programme.**

This is also one programme implemented by the Polokwane Municipality in partnership with the National Department of Public Works (NDPWI) and is called the Vuk'uphile Learnership Programme. The Vuk'uphile programme has been developed to build the capacity amongst emerging contractors to execute the increasing amount of labour-intensive work that is part of the EPWP. Although the programme does not focus entirely on the Youth, it is the requirement of the programme that 50% of the individuals benefitting from the programme should be Youth.

Learner contractors in this programme receive all training required as part of the EPWP guidelines, so that when they exit the programme, they are fully qualified to bid and execute labour intensive projects under the Expanded Public Works programme. The Learner Contractors must also exit the programme, with a CIDB Grade higher than the grade on joining the programme, so that they are able to compete in the open market.

A total of ten (10) Learner Contractors and (10) Learner Supervisors were appointed for the programme, through a process that was open, clear and transparent. Selected learners are required to go on a 2 – 3-year full-time Construction Education and Training Authority (CETA) registered Learnership, consisting of a series of classroom training and practical training projects.

Learner contractors have completed their first allocated projects indicated below. Six (6) have upgraded to grade 3CE PE, two (2) upgraded to 2SQ PE and two (2) upgraded to 5CE PE. The 10 learner contractors have been allocated and completed their second projects on the following sites:

- Rehabilitation of streets in Seshego
- Fencing around electrical substations

- Upgrading of Storm water infrastructure
- Upgrading or road in Mankweng

#### **8.12.4 EPWP Jobs Targets**

As part of the EPWP, the municipality set EPWP targets for each project which contractors have to achieve. It is also a requirement in terms of demographics that, 55% of the people employed during project construction should be **youth**. For the 2021/22 Financial year a total of **3552** EPWP participants were recruited on projects, out of which **1530** were youth and 1743 were **women**.

#### **EPWP**

- EPWP Job Creation Target for 2022 / 23 Financial Year is =**3656**
- Work Opportunities achieved = **1812 to date**

#### **8.13 PMU Challenges**

- Poor performance of service providers leading to delays.
- Community disruptions.
- Completed but dysfunctional water supply projects due to outstanding borehole connections by Eskom.
- Vandalism of completed infrastructure.
- Capital infrastructure projects to the value of R601,2 million have been impacted by the national Treasury moratorium that stopped the advertising of tenders for goods and services as of February 2022. After further clarity was sought, SCM applied for exemption of affected projects that were ready for procurement. The exemptions were applied between 10 March 2022 and 04 April 2022 and currently all but one of the projects managed by PMU was advertised and undergoing procurement processes to appoint service providers. These projects have been planned on a multiyear basis to be implemented in the 2021/22 and 2022/23 financial years
- Projects in planning are awaiting appointment of newly advertisement consultant which is also awaiting evaluation and appointments

##### **8.13.1 Proposed Intervention on PMU Challenges**

- Political intervention at community level to ensure that the complains are successfully addressed and resolved.
- Forward planning has been improved such that service providers for grant funded projects are appointed and commence implementation at the beginning of the financial year.
- Continuous community consultations be done in order to identify potential actions that may hinder projects progress.

- Termination of poor performing service providers or use of subcontractors where feasible to complete works.
- Fast tracking the procurement of service providers to ensure that targets are met, and projects are completed within their planned periods

### 8.14 Technical Report Approval

The municipality implements its Regional Water Scheme (RWS) projects mostly through the new Integrated Urban Development Grant (IUDG). It was a requirement that all projects be registered and approved for funding by CoGHSTA. The process was done through preparation of technical reports by the municipality through appointed consultants, which are then processed by the Department of Water Affairs for recommendation of funding to MIG. Improvements have been observed with regards to the **approvals** as indicated by the below recently approved technical reports:

- Mashashane RWS phase 2. (**Approved in March 2022**).
- Aganang RWS. (Assessment session in **March 2022**. Two technical reports approved in **June 2022**).
- Chuene Maja RWS Variation approval (**August 2022**).

### 8.15 2021/22 Grants performance.

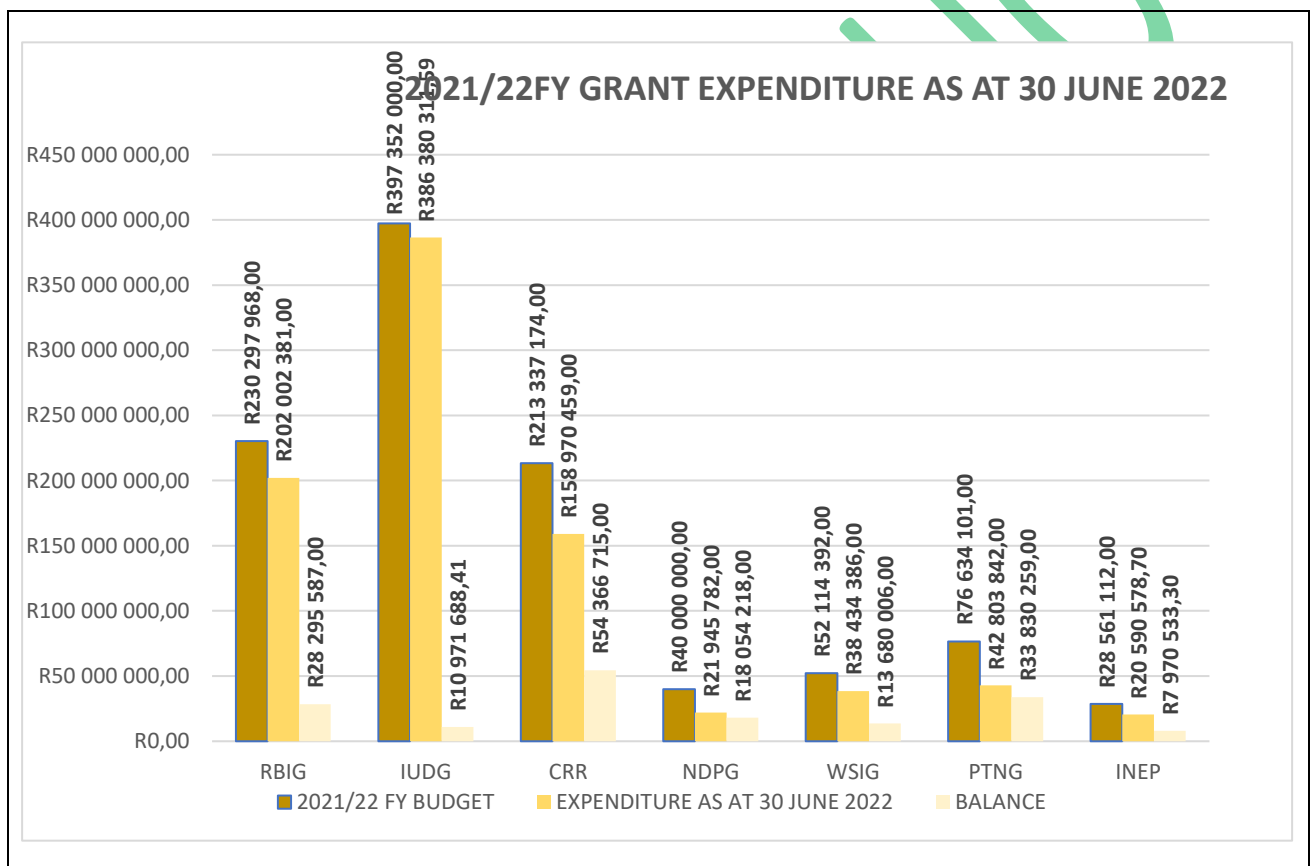
The municipality has received allocations of grants to support infrastructure development in the current financial year which are managed as follows:

GRANT REGISTER 2021/22		
Code	Grant	SBU
IUDG	Integrated Urban Development Grant	PMU and Transportation
RBIG	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant	PMU
PTNG	Public Transport Infrastructure Grant	Transportation
EPWP	Extended public works programme	PMU
INEP	Integrated National Electrification Programme	Energy Services

GRANT REGISTER 2021/22		
Code	Grant	SBU
NDPG	Neighbourhood Dev Partnership Grant	PMU
WSIG	Water Services Infrastructure Grant	PMU

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU:

### 8.15.1 2021/22 GRANTS PERFORMANCE (Graph)



Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

### 8.15.2 RBIG OVERVIEW

For the 2020/21 financial year. The total final adjusted allocation for RBIG is R309 358 779.00, the expenditure as of **30 June 2021** is **R293 526 358**, therefore percentage expenditure is 98%. The Municipality applied for a rollover of (R 11 802 111,32), R11.4m was approved

For the 2021/22 financial year. The total allocation for RBIG is R218 806 000,00(adjusted to R230 297 962), the expenditure as of 30 June 2022 is R202 002 381.00 therefore percentage expenditure is 87.71%

A total of fifteen (15) multiyear projects were allocated to be implemented under the Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant for the 2021/22 financial year and are multi-year projects. 2 at procurement, seven (7) projects are at planning and design, and six (6) are at construction between 70% and 98%.

### 8.15.3 RBIG OVERVIEW

Ref. #	Contract Description	Current Status
<b>WASTE WATER TREATMENT</b>		
1	Construction of Outfall Sewer to Polokwane Regional WWTW - Phase 1A Seshego to East of Pipe Bridge.	On Construction, physical progress at 69%. Contractor terminated
2	New Regional Waste Water Treatment Works - Structural, Mechanical, Electrical, Civil	Tender advertised, closing on 08 August 2022
3	Refurbishment of Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Works (WWTW) : Phase 02 (RBIG)	DDR and IRS approved, insufficient budget.
4	Re-routing of Seshego Outfall Sewer (RBIG)	Designs have been completed, insufficient budget
5	Refurbishment and upgrading of Mankweng Waste Water Treatment Works (RBIG)	Designs have been completed; IRS not approved by DWS.
6	Refurbishment of Seshego Waste Water Treatment Works (RBIG)	On procurement stage, insufficient budget
7	Replacement of AC Pipes (SCADA and Phase 02 up to PDR / IRS).	On Planning for scada installation for the water supply network. IRS not yet approved by DWS.
8	(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - PM131/2018: Construction of Sandriver North Water Treatment Works. (RBIG)	On Construction, progress at 71%. Expected completion date is October 2022
9	(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - PM132/2018: Construction of Borehole Infrastructure and Pumping Mains for the	On Construction, progress at 97.9%. Expected completion date is October 2022



Ref. #	Contract Description	Current Status
<b>WASTE WATER TREATMENT</b>		
	Sterkloop and Sandriver South Wellfields (RBIG)	
10	(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - PM133/2018: Construction of Borehole Infrastructure and Pumping Mains for the Sandriver North Wellfield and Polokwane Boreholes. (RBIG)	On Construction, progress at 93.95%. Expected completion date is October 2022
11	(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - PM02/2019: Seshego Water Treatment Works (RBIG)	On Construction, progress at 90%. Expected completion date is October 2022. Potential delay on delivery of PLC due to worldwide shortage
12	(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - PM01/2019: Bloodriver Wellfield and Seshego Groundwater Development and Pumping Mains. (WSIG)	On Construction, progress at 97.9%. Expected completion date is September 2022
13	Polokwane Distribution Pressure and Flow Management. (RBIG)	Designs have been completed; IRS not approved by DWS
14	Bulk Water Supply - Dap Naude Dam (Pipeline section, booster PS and WTW refurbishment) Additional 2-4M <sup>3</sup> /day Phase 01. (RBIG)	Designs have been completed; IRS not approved by DWS
15	(Turfloop and Dieprivier aquifer development) - Sebayeng RWS Water Transfer. (RBIG)	Designs have been completed; IRS not approved by DWS

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

#### 8.15.4 IUDG OVERVIEW

In 2021/22 financial year the IUDG allocation is R397 532 000,00, the expenditure as at 30 June 2022 is R386 380 311.59 therefore the expenditure percentage is 97.24%. There is a total of fifty-eight (58) projects under UIDG broken down as follows:

- 1) There is a total of **twenty-three (23)** roads and storm water for the 2021/22 financial year, which are multiyear projects. **Four (4)** projects are at planning and design stage, **Two (2)** at tender stage (BSC, Advert, BEC & BAC), and **Fourteen (14)** of the projects are at construction between 0%-94%, 2 is completed and one is practically complete.
- 2) There is a total of twenty-nine (29) water and sanitation projects for the 2021/22 financial year.

- 3) There are twenty-four (24) water supply and reticulation projects: Five (5) projects are awaiting technical report approval and preparations, five (5) projects are at planning and design stage, two (2) projects are at tender stage and five (5) at construction between 38%-98% and 3 are practically complete and 4 are complete.
- 4) There are five (5) sanitation projects and five (5) are at design stage
- 5) There is a total of one (1) waste management projects. The project is at BSC stage and was delayed by budget shortfall.
- 6) There is a total of five (5) projects for sports and recreation one (1) project is at planning and design stage, two (2) projects are on construction between 40%-42%, two (2) are completed and one (1) is at design stage

### 8.15.5 IUDG OVERVIEW (Projects on construction)

No	Project Name	Adjusted 2021/22 Budget	Appointed amount	Expenditure	Start date	Completion date	Physical Progress (%)	Progress/ Comments
1	Upgrading Makanye Road (Ga-Thoka)	R535 517	R17 037 274,46	75.47%	11-03-20	15-03-22	90%	Contractor terminated
2	Tarring Ntsime to Sefateng Phase 5	R1 200 000	R13 448 411,80	72.03%	21-01-2020	30-11-2021	95%	Practically complete, outstanding work is to correct failed 100m subbase
3	Ntshitshane Road	R210 150	R24 674 021,27	100%	27-01-20	5-03-21	100%	Project complete
4	Upgrading of Arterial road in Ga Rampheri	R 2 000 000	R20 037 663,12	95.62%	21-01-2020	04-12-2020	97%	Contractor on penalties. Disputes between JV partners causing extreme delays. Term contractor on site to finalise snags.

No	Project Name	Adjusted 2021/22 Budget	Appointed amount	Expenditure	Start date	Completion date	Physical Progress (%)	Progress/ Comments
5	Upgrading of internal streets in Seshego Zone 5 (New Phase)	R13 470 000	R18 448 795,75	83.88%	13-05-21	20-03-22	89%	The contractor is behind schedule, put on terms and EOT submitted
6	Mohlonong to Kalkspruit upgrading of roads from gravel to tar Phase 4	R 15 200 000	R17 729 824,79	69,2%	7-06-21	21-04-22	90%	Contractor was delayed due late payment by the Municipality which affected the progress on site. EOT submitted.
7	Completion of Hospital Road in Mankweng	R 17 850 000	R31 060 115,05	35%	08-07-21	08-04-22	62%	Contractor behind schedule, put on terms.
8	Construction of Storm Water in Ga Semanya	R12 890 000	R13 613 425,85	99%	12-05-21	29-11-21	100%	Project complete.
9	Upgrading of access Roads to Maja Moshate (Ga-Thaba) Phase 4	R 4 950 000	R13 702 093,19	N/A	TBC	TBC	N/A	Contractor appointed. Budget was not sufficient for implementation. Project will start in 2022/23 FY
10	Upgrading of internal streets in Toronto (Phase 4)	R 4 950 000	R16 020 750,56	0,00%	TBC	TBC	N/A	Contractor appointed. Budget was not sufficient for implementation. Project will start in 2022/23 FY
11	Chuene Maja RWS phase 12	R 21 440 000	R9 936 170,01	85.84%	31-08-21	22-03-22	99,00%	Practically complete
12	Chuene Maja RWS phase 11		R14 323 593,64	69%	02-Feb-20	15-Feb-22	73,00%	Contractor delayed by start of initiation season, to resume after completion
13	Chuene Maja RWS Phase 10		R17 897 238,33	73,48%	17-Sep-19	25-Jun-21	100,00%	Project completed
14	Mankweng RWS phase 12	R 3 000 000	R9 427 844,88	40.89%	24-Nov-21	27-May-22	62%	Contractor Busy with pipe laying

No	Project Name	Adjusted 2021/22 Budget	Appointed amount	Expenditure	Start date	Completion date	Physical Progress (%)	Progress/ Comments
15	Hout river RWS Phase 13	R 3 100 000	R9 153 529,63	88,81%	24-Oct-19	30-Sep-21	100%	Project complete.
16	Sebayeng/Dikgale RWS Phase 7	R 4 000 000	3416766,74	68%	05-Mar-2021	30-Jan-2022	60,00%	Practically complete
17	Mashashane Water Works phase 1	R4 715 903	R7 468 679,45	77.87%	21-May-21	15-Feb-22	81%	Busy with pipeline and fittings at the treatment plant
18	Mothapo RWS Phase 15	R 4 000 000	17902165,35	42.75%	17-Nov-21	22-Jun-22	62%	Busy with pipelaying and steel tank fittings
19	Moletjie East RWS Phase 14	R4 000 000	R18 754 115,92	94,65%	24-06-2020	16-10-2021	100%	Project completed
20	Aganang RWS (2) (Mahoai and Rammetloana)	R 18 600 000	R 16 058 493,44	89,78%	1-Mar-21	22-Sep-21	100,00%	Complete
21	Aganang RWS (2) (Sechaba Kgoroshi villages)		R 8 968 002,45	89,10%	12-Feb-21	10-Aug-21	99,00%	Project complete
22	Aganang RWS (2) (Ceres)		R 3 058 747,98	83,09%	22-Jan-21	21-Jun-21	99,00%	Practically complete
23	Construction of an RDP Combo Sport Complex at Molepo Area	R 6 294 750	R8 538 669,59	20,36%	18-06-2021	18-01-2022	40%	Consultants terminated
24	Construction of Softball stadium in City Cluster	R 27 030 042	R57 676 674,95	42.17%	24-11-2020	19-07-2022	44%	Contractor busy with construction of ramps
25	EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Facility	R4 214 055	R14 999 500	95,07%	18-01-2021	19-09-2021	100%	Phase 1 Completed Phase 2 at BSC
26	Upgrading of Mankweng Stadium	R 3 000 000	R26 000 304,47	95,07%	22-06-2020	22-01-2022	100%	Phase 2 Project complete

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

### 8.15.6 NDPG OVERVIEW

In 2021/22 financial year the NDPG allocation is **R35 000 000.00(adjusted to R40 000 000)**, the expenditure as at 30 June 2022 is **R21 945 782,00**. The expenditure percentage is at 54.86%.

There was a total of **six (6)** roads and storm water for the 2021/22 financial year, whereby **three (3)** are at procurement, two are complete and **One (1)** is at construction stage at 89% physical progress.

### 8.15.7 NDPG PROJECTS

No	Project Name	Adjusted 2021/22 Budget	Appointed amount	Expenditure	Start date	Completion date	Physical Progress (%)	Progress/ Comments
1	Upgrading of F8 Street in Seshego	R3 121 826,00	R7 972 220,13	91,4%	13-01-2021	13-09-2021	100%	Project complete
2	Ditlou street upgrade	R6 928 230,00	11672232,17	84,58%	13-01-2021	21-09-2021	100%	Project complete
3	Hospital View Road 1 and 2	R 7 018 982,00	TBC	66,56%	11-05-2021	10-12-2021	89,00%	The contractor is behind schedule, EOT submitted.
4	Mandela Bokelo Crossing(Nelson Mandela,Bookelo, Ditlou crossing)	R133 187,00	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	Tender advertised
5	Stormwater Canal	R10 500 000,00	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	Tender advertised
6	Hospital View Roads/Streets (Additional roads and streets)	R10 000 000,00	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	Tender advertised

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

### 8.15.8 WSIG OVERVIEW

In 2021/22 financial year the WSIG allocation is **R65 000 000.00(adjusted to R50 000 000)**, the expenditure as at 30 June 2022 is **R39 434 386.00**. The expenditure percentage is at 73.75%

There is a total of **seven (7)** water supply and reticulation projects for the 2021/22 WSIG financial year, **two (2)** project are completed, **four (4)** projects are on construction stage at progress at between 0 and 95% and one is at tender stage

### 8.15.9 WSIG PROJECTS

No	Project Name	Adjusted 2021/22 Budget	Appointed amount	Expenditure	Start date	Completion date	Physical Progress (%)	Progress/ Comments
1	Juno and farlie	R30 000 000	R13 771 756,63	89,75%	13-02-2021	13-08-2021	100,00%	Project Completed
2	Jupiter		R11 144 699	91.8%	22-11-2021	21-06-2022	91,00%	Contractor behind schedule, EOT submitted
3	Kordon		R5 738 820	89,61%	24-02-2021	10-07-2021	100,00%	Project Completed
4	Ramalapa		R11 215 798.35	21.04%	16-05-2022	16-11-2022	35%	Contractor busy with pipelaying
5	Makgodu Mashamaitse		R16 136 794.48	24.08%	10-06-2022	10-01-2023	0	Contractor busy with excavations
6	Badimong	R2 400 000	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	0	At BEC
7	Segwasi RWS Phase 5	R8 600 000	R7 398 858,50	84%	11-10-2021-	11-04-2022	95%	Practically complete

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU



### 8.16 Unspent budget to be rolled over to 2022/23FY

The total amount that is expected to be unspent and therefore rolled over in the 2022/23FY is R72 675 234.73. The table below indicates the projected unspent budget or projected rollover applications for all grants.

Item no.	Grant Name	2021/22FY Allocation	Expenditure by End June 2022	Expenditure %	Rollover Amount	Comments
1.	Integrated Urban Development Grant(IUDG)	R 397 532 000,00	R 387 363 008,63	97%	R 10 168 991,37	Appointment and commencement of ten(10) projects to a total value R R89,6mil were delayed due to road concession projects requiring additional funds in order to finalise the 2021/22fy scope. The projects pre-handover meeting was held on the 07th June 2022 and expenditure is anticipated during the 1st Month of the 2022/23FY.
2.	Water Service Infrastructure Grant(WSIG)	R 50 000 000,00	R 37 447 076,50	75%	R 12 552 923,50	The three(3) projects were delayed due to the grant conditions which state that the municipality may not proceed with any project without the business plan approval through the sector department, the Department of water and sanitation indicated to Polokwane municipality that new projects and the approvals of business plans would be withheld until the finalisation and or submission of groundwater reconciliation, following electronic confirmation of the approval of business plan on 30 August 2021, the municipality started with the design process and advertised the projects by 19 November 2021 with tender adverts closed on the 24th January 2022. The two contractors were appointed in April 2022.

Item no.	Grant Name	2021/22FY Allocation	Expenditure by End June 2022	Expenditure %	Rollover Amount	Comments
3.	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant(RBIG)	R 218 806 000,00	R 191 537 920,38	88%	R 27 268 079,62	Advertisement of tender to a value of approximately R400mil was delayed due to a moratorium issued by National Treasury. The tender was then advertised on 10th June 2022 and closing on the 08th August 2022.
4.	Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant(NDPG)	R 48 000 000,00	R 25 314 759,76	53%	R 22 685 240,24	Advertisement of Three (3) Tenders to a total value of approximately R112mil were delayed due to a moratorium issued by National Treasury. The two tenders closed on the 14th June 2022 and the third tender will close on the 15th July 2022.
				<b>Total to be rolled over</b>	<b>R72 675 234.73</b>	

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

### 8.16.1 Poor spending challenges

#### 1. RBIG

The municipality has experienced frustrations with the IRS approval process, and this has impacted the municipality's ability to conduct long-term planning due to uncertainty of budgets. The RWWTW and Seshego WWTW tenders had to be cancelled due to reduced allocation and realign scope to available funds. This has caused delays and possible price escalations. The Mankweng WWTW IRS has not been approved. The municipality has written a letter to the department to clarify the need for upgrading the plant and a response has not been received. The plant is crucial to ensure sufficient capacity and quality of effluent and to accommodate the growth of Mankweng

Polokwane Municipality made a fundamental change to an integrated approach to secure grant funding for aligned strategic water and wastewater projects up to 2022. Funding has been secured and project implementation has started. However, the administrative misalignment between the municipality and the DWS has negatively impacted the subsequent allocation due to Polokwane to perceived non-performance as the bulk water supply expenditure is not recognized by the department. This effort however is not recognized administratively due to unapproved IRS and the financial progress is further not recognized which culminates into a perception of poor performance by Polokwane Municipality. The allocations to Polokwane have been reduced and as such the municipality is working on an allocation deficit of R 384 515 566 from the Dora and some of the planned projects are stalled or on hold

The Moratorium on the advertisement of projects from the National Treasury has affected the advertisement of the RWWTW and Refurbishment of Seshego WTW and will result in poor spending on RBIG.

## **2.IUDG**

During the February 2021 budget adjustment process the 2020/21 financial year council took a decision to finance the rural road concession program through the IUDG grant. The IUDG grant has already been over committed with the inclusion of 24 new rural road concession projects in the 2020/21 and 2021/22 financial years and 34 roads in the outer two years 2022/23 and 2023/24 financial years.

The inclusion of these roads has resulted in some of the projects in the ordinary basic service delivery projects in this grant funding having to be 'pushed' back or cancelled to accommodate these new projects. The finding for the 34 projects was sourced from existing projects which were already in their various stages of forward planning and / or implementation. This has resulted in a huge number of transfer of funds from one project to another in the 2020/21 FY year and the same is anticipated in the current year pre and post the budget adjustment process.

During the February 2022 adjustment process, a further amount of R35 262 290 was made available to the rural concession projects, this meant that further projects that had not commenced construction had to be put on hold and deferred to the 2022/23 financial year

## **NDPG**

The Moratorium on the advertisement of projects from the National Treasury has affected the advertisement of the Nelson Mandela Bookelo Crossing, Storm water Canal and Hospital View Additional streets projects and this will result in poor spending of the NDPG. The 2 projects on construction were completed by the end of June but the total spending on these projects was not adequate to spend the whole allocation

The 3 projects with an estimated value of R112 million were advertised with tenders closing in July and August, therefore the allocation could not be spent for these projects

## **4. WSIG**

The three(3) projects were delayed due to the grant conditions which state that the municipality may not proceed with any project without the business plan approval through the sector department, the Department of water and sanitation indicated to Polokwane municipality that new projects and the approvals of business plans would be withheld until the finalization and or submission of groundwater reconciliation, following electronic confirmation of the approval of business plan on 30 August 2021, the municipality started with the design process and advertised the projects by 19 November 2021 with tender adverts closed on the 24th January 2022. The two contractors were appointed in April 2022, and one tender has still not been appointed.

## 8.17 FORWARD PLANNING FOR 2022/23

### 2022/23 Grant budget

This part aims to update the progress on the municipality's Capital Infrastructure Program for the Financial Year (2022/23).

#### 8.17.1 2022/23 GRANTS ALLOCATIONS – PMU MANAGED

GRANT	2022/23 FY BUDGET
RBIG	R154 584 000
IUDG(co managed with Roads and Transportation)	R426 044 000
NDPG	R40 000 000
WSIG	R77 160 000
EPWP	R 11 570 000
Total	R 709 358 000*

*\*Approximately R 146 227 000 is managed by Roads SBU*

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

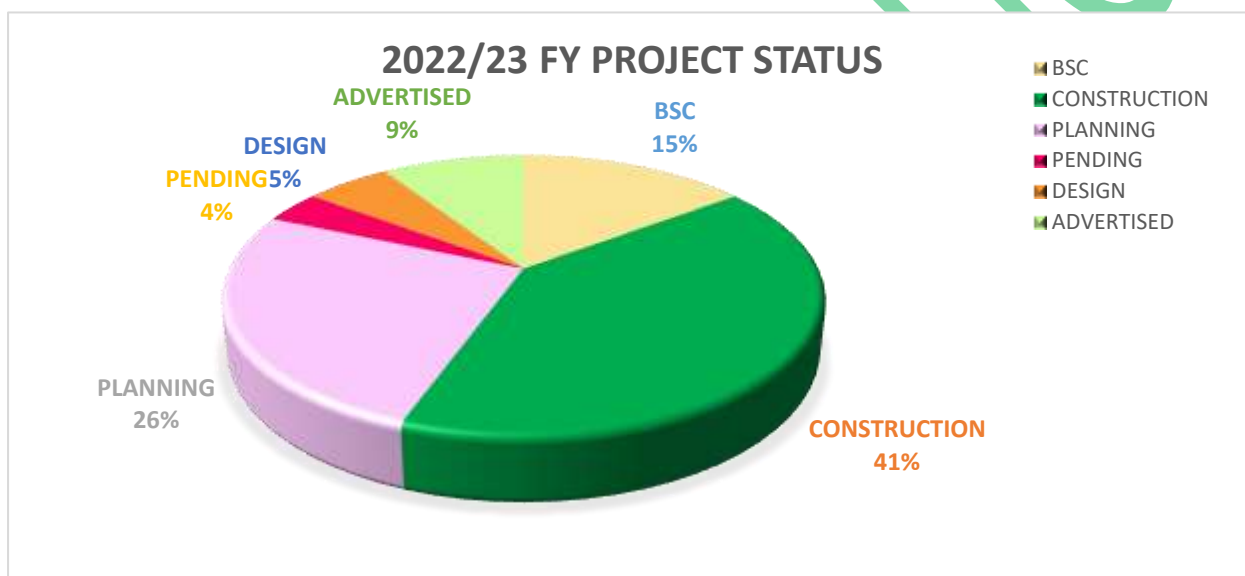
#### 8.17.2 SUMMARY OF FORWARD PLANNING

There a total of 54 PMU managed projects at a value of R 563 131 000 funded from various grants with statuses categorised as follows:

PROJECT STATUS	NUMBER OF PROJECTS	VALUE
BSC	8	R66 567 000,00
CONSTRUCTION	22	R202 958 000,00
PLANNING	14	R62 675 000,00 (awaiting new panel)

PROJECT STATUS	NUMBER OF PROJECTS	VALUE
PENDING	2	R30 300 000,00
DESIGN	3	R21 000 000,00
ADVERTISED	5	R179 631 000,00
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>54</b>	<b>R563 131 000,00</b>

### 8.17.3 2022/23 Financial Year Project Status Quo



## 8.18 INTERNAL AUDIT

### 8.18.1 Definition and mandate of Internal Audit

The International Professional Practices Framework defines Internal auditing as an independent, objective, assurance and consulting activity designed to add value and improve an organization's operations. It helps an organization accomplish its objectives by bringing a systematic, disciplined approach to evaluate and improve the effectiveness of risk management, control, and governance processes.

According to chapter 14, section 165 of the MFMA, each municipality and each municipal entity must have an internal audit unit. The MFMA allows the IAA to be outsourced to assist the municipality or the municipal entity to develop its internal capacity. However, the Council or the board of directors should ensure that it is cost-effective to outsource

The Internal Audit Function of Polokwane Municipality has been established in terms of Section 165 of the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003). The primary objective of Internal Audit division is to assist the Municipal Manager and the Audit and Performance Audit Committee in the effective discharge of their responsibilities; Internal Audit provide them with independent analysis, appraisals, recommendations, counsel and information concerning the activities reviewed, with a view to improving accountability and service delivery.

Section 62(1) (c) (ii) of the MFMA requires internal audit to operate in accordance with prescribed norms and standards. This would imply that Internal Audit Activity should apply the Standards for the Professional Practice of Internal Audit (SPPIA) in the execution of its functions.

The purpose of the Standards is to:

- Delineate basic principles that represent the practice of internal auditing
- Provide a framework for performing and promoting a broad range of value-added internal auditing
- Establish the basis for the evaluation of internal audit performance
- Foster improved organisational process and operations

Standards for the Professional Practice of Internal Audit (SPPIA) consists of Attributes, Performance and Implementation standards:

#### **Attributes standard**

Attributes standards address the attributes (characteristics) of organisations and individuals performing internal audit services. These includes that the purpose, authority and responsibilities of the Internal Audit Activity should be defined in the audit charter, Internal Auditors should apply proficiency and due professional care in discharging internal audit work and the Internal Audit activity should go through the process of quality assurance and devise a development program.

Standard 1110 requires that the “Chief Audit Executive should report to a level within the organization that allows the Internal Audit Activity to fulfil its responsibilities. The Chief Audit Executive must confirm to the ‘board’, at least annually, the organizational independence of the Internal Audit Activity”.

The standards further require that Internal Audit should be free from conditions that threaten the ability of the Internal Audit Activity to carry out internal audit responsibilities in an unbiased manner. Standard 1010 require that “The Chief Audit Executive should discuss the Definition of Internal Auditing, the Code of Ethics, and the Standards with senior management and the board. “Standard 1010 require that “The Internal Audit Activity must be independent, and internal auditors must be objective in performing their work”.



### **Performance standards:**

Performance Standards provide guidance on the nature of audit work and planning, conducting, managing, communicating, and reporting throughout the audit activity, the standards also address aspects such as resource and risk management, policies and procedures, control, and governance.

### **Implementation standard:**

Implementation Standards are provided to expand upon the Attribute and Performance standards, by providing the requirements applicable to **assurance** or **consulting** activities.

**Assurance services** involve the internal auditor's objective assessment of evidence to provide an independent opinion or conclusions regarding an entity, operation, function, process, system, or other subject matter. The nature and scope of the assurance engagement are determined by the internal auditor.

**Consulting services** are advisory in nature and are generally performed at the specific request of an engagement client. The nature and scope of the consulting engagement are subject to agreement with the engagement client.

Internal Audit operate in terms of approved Charter which set out the nature, role, responsibility, status and authority of internal auditing within Polokwane Municipality and to outline the scope and responsibilities of the Internal Audit activity.

### **8.18.2 Internal Audit Strategic Coverage Plan**

The rolling three-year Internal Audit Plan is developed based on the strategic organisational risk register and the annual Internal Audit Plan is derived or based on the Rolling Three-Year Strategic Internal Audit Plan.

The critical success factors for an effective internal audit plan are that it:

- Is aligned with the strategic objectives of the organisation.
- Covers the strategic risk areas facing the organisation, not just the financial risks and controls.
- Is risk based – addresses the key risk areas/concerns of management.
- Is prepared in consultation with management and the Audit and Performance Audit Committee.
- Matches assurance needs with available resources.
- The Internal Audit Plans includes risk based, performance information reviews compliance, ICT, financial, follow up and adhoc (requests from management) reviews. The Internal Audit Plans also highlights the objectives, scope, risks to achieving objectives and the resource allocation.

### **8.18.3 Audit Committee and Performance Audit Committee**

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC) is a committee of Council primarily established to provide independent specialist advice on financial performance and efficiency, compliance with legislation, and performance management. A combined committee was appointed to represent both Performance Audit and Audit Committees in compliance to section 166 of MFMA no 56 of 2003 and section 14(2) of Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations. The Audit and Performance Audit Committee must liaise with Internal Audit in terms of Section 166(3) (a).

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee must ensure that the strategic internal audit plan is based on key areas of risk, including having regard to the institution's risk management strategy. The Committee reviews the work of Internal Audit through the internal audit reports.

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee currently has three members, comprised of Chairperson and two members. The other two positions are vacant.

APAC operate in terms of approved Charter which outline the role, responsibilities, composition and operating guidelines of the committee of Polokwane Municipality and report to Council quarterly.

### **8.18.4 Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)**

The Municipality also established a task team to drive the Clean Audit initiative called "**Operation Clean Audit**" and which aims at improving governance, financial systems and service delivery at both local and provincial government level, reversing poor internal controls, poor quality of financial statements and non-compliance with Supply Chain Management whilst attaining a clean audit opinion. OPCA committee has been established to address **Audit findings**

The Task Team is an operational forum which formulates action plans and monitor progress in implementing action plans towards achieving a clean audit.

The Task Team report to Council via the Audit and Performance Audit Committee which is responsible to Council for financial and internal control oversight in line with the Audit and Performance Audit Committee Charter

Prevailing challenges noticeable include recurring audit findings indicated in the Internal Audit reports; information not presented to internal audit on time or not submitted at all, establishing greater synergy between Council committees and Audit and Performance Audit Committee; achieving greater compliance with key areas of legislation, the MSA, other regulations and policies.

### **8.18.5 Resources availability for Internal Audit**

The current Internal Audit function comprises of the Chief Audit Executive, Assistant Manager: Internal Audit, seven (7) Internal Auditors. The contract of the Co-Sourced Internal Audit Service Provider has ended in May 2022.

### **8.18.6 Report of the Chief Audit Executive on AGSA Audit Opinions**

Report of the Chief Audit Executive on AGSA Audit Opinions Matters for the term of the office of Council

#### **Auditor General (SA) Audit Opinion**

**2015/2016 Financial Year: Unqualified** audit opinion with matters of emphasis

The matters of emphasis were as follows:

- Restatement of corresponding figures
- Material impairment
- Material under spending
- Unauthorized expenditure
- Irregular expenditure

**2016/2017 Financial Year: Qualified** audit opinion

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:

- Property, Plant and Equipment
- Revenue from exchange transactions
- Expenditure
- Revaluation Surplus
- Cash flow statement

**2017/2018 Financial Year: Qualified** audit opinion

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:

- Revenue from exchange transactions
- Commitments

**2018/2019 Financial Year: Qualified** audit opinion

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:

- Property, Plant and Equipment
- Revenue and receivable from exchange transactions
- Cash and cash equivalents

**2019/2020 Financial Year: Qualified**

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:







1. Property plant and equipment
2. Investment property
3. Revenue and receivables from exchange transactions




**2020/2021 Financial Year: Qualified**

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows

1. Property plant and equipment
2. Revenue from exchange transactions

The following table reflects the movement of the municipality audit opinions for the term of office of council:

Year	Audit opinion	Movement of audit opinion
2015/2016	Unqualified	
2016/2017	Qualified	
2017/2018	Qualified	
2018/2019	Qualified	
2019/2020	Qualified	
2020/2021	Qualified	
2021/2022		

-  Improved audit opinion
-  Maintained same audit opinion
-  Regressed

## 8.19 RISK MANAGEMENT

### 8.19.1 Risk Management core responsibilities

Risk Management is one of Management's core responsibilities in terms of section 62 of the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and is an integral part of the internal processes of a municipality. Risk Management is a systematic process to identify, evaluate and address risks on a continuous basis before such risks can impact negatively on service delivery capacity of a Municipality.

Polokwane municipality has a Risk Management unit, the role and responsibility of the unit is to develop and maintain an effective risk management system which will ensure an internal control environment that is conducive to the achievement of the municipality's objectives. This is achieved by developing and implementing an effective Risk Management framework and conducting institutional risk assessment in consultation with all stakeholders including the Audit and Performance Audit Committee on matters of governance.

### **8.19.2 Risk Management Committee**

Oversight of overall Municipal risk management activities resides with Risk Management Committee and the Audit and Performance Committee. Risk Management Committee meet quarterly and report to the Audit and Performance Audit Committee.

The Position of Independent chairperson who is not an employee of the Municipality has been advertised and closed on the 12<sup>th</sup> August 2022 and is Anticipated to be filled by the 30<sup>th</sup> September 2022. The Risk Management Committee is responsible for reviewing the effectiveness of the municipal's risk management system, practices, and procedures, and provide recommendations for improvement. All Municipal Directors are members of the Committee. The committee as a collective possess a blend of skills, expertise and knowledge of the Municipality, including familiarity with the concepts, principles and practice of risk management, such that they can contribute meaningfully to the advancement of risk management within the Municipality.

### **8.19.3 The Risk Champions Committee**

Risk Management Unit has also established a Risk Champions Committee which is chaired by Manager: Risk Management. Its main objective is to assist Risk management SBU in implementing risk management framework and cascading risk management processes to lower levels in the municipality.

### **8.19.4 Top 10 Strategic Risks Identified**

Strategic risks are reviewed annually, the main purpose of the review is to assess progress made in risk treatment strategies, determine whether the risk identified in the previous year and mitigations were implemented and whether those risks are still relevant and identify emerging risks. Strategic risks are reviewed annually, and the process has been aligned with the IDP and Budget process to ensure that identified risk mitigations are budgeted for.

**Below are the top 10 strategic risks identified for 2022/23 Financial Year**

1. Ageing of infrastructure due to lack of sufficient funds for maintenance.
2. Electricity losses due to theft of electricity through illegal connections.
3. Water Scarcity.
4. Cash flow constraints.
5. Fraud and Corruption.
6. Negative Audit Outcome.
7. Rising community unrest, coupled with distraction of Municipal infrastructure.
8. Late delivery of services to the community.
9. Inadequate ICT.
10. Slow economic growth and development escalated by Covid\_19 .

### **8.19.5 Risk assessment review process**

Risk assessment and review process is conducted annually at strategic and operational level where Directors and SBU Managers are consulted and encourage to identify risks and mitigations. Operational risks assessment and review is conducted for each SBU. Reporting of progress on mitigation both strategic and operational risk is done on the reporting system and monitored continually and reported to EXCO and Risk Management Committee.

## **8.20 Fraud and Corruption Strategy**

### **8.20.1 Polokwane Municipality statement of attitude to fraud**

Polokwane Municipality always requires all staff to act honestly and with integrity and to safeguard the municipal resources for which they are responsible. The Municipality is committed to protecting all revenue, expenditure, and assets from any attempt to gain illegal financial or other benefits.

Any fraud or corruption committed against the Municipality is a major concern to the Council. Consequently, any case will be thoroughly investigated, and appropriate corrective action will be taken against anyone who is found guilty of corrupt conduct. This may include referral to the South Africa Police Services and other relevant state organ depending on the nature of the matter. The Municipality has an approved anti-fraud and corruption strategy approved by Council.

### **8.20.2 Whistle Blowing Policy**

Council has approved a whistle blowing policy in compliance with the Protected Disclosures Act, the policy is intended to encourage and enable staff to report suspected fraud and corruption activities within Polokwane Municipality rather than overlooking a problem or blowing the whistle via inappropriate channels. The Municipality also encourages communities and stakeholders or service providers who suspect fraud and corruption to report allegations of fraud and corruption using the protected disclosure.

An alternate way of reporting possible fraud and corruption can be made by contacting the Municipality's Fraud Hotline (**0800 20 50 53** or email [cdm@tip-offs.com](mailto:cdm@tip-offs.com)). The Fraud Hotline is available 24 hours in all official language, you have an option to remain anonymous or identify yourself when reporting.

### **8.20.3 Anti-Fraud and awareness**

The Municipality conducts fraud awareness activities to create awareness on fraud and corruption prevention on a quarterly basis as required by the Fraud Risk Management Plan.

## **8.21 PUBLIC PARTICIPATION AND COUNCIL SUPPORT**



### **8.21.1 Key Municipal Stakeholders**

The relationship between the Municipality and its stakeholders is very important. The involvement of all stakeholders in the matters of the municipality is necessary because the municipality is accountable to them for decisions taken. Stakeholders are not only local people. They include governments and their agencies, as well as people, organizations, institutions and markets. Stakeholders include people and institutions that impact directly but also indirectly on the organization, and they can include people who may not even be aware that they have a stake in the management of these organization.

The primary aim of stakeholder identification is to name all those who could and should have a stake in a planning and management process.

#### **The following is a list of key stakeholders for Polokwane Municipality**

- Traditional Authorities
- Community
- Business Sector
- Traditional Healers
- Government Departments
- Education Sector
- Non-Governmental Organisations
- Transport Sector
- Labour Unions
- Financial institutions
- Farmers
- Civic organisation
- Religious groups

### **8.21.2 Relationship with Traditional Leaders**

The relationship between the Municipality and the Traditional Leaders has improved drastically and we were able to engage them on numerous occasions and towards and after any IDP/Budget Review consultations, the Municipality meet with Magoshi and discuss the consultation programme with them first before we go to our rural areas.

During the development of the New Organizational Structure (Organogram), Traditional Leaders have been officially placed under the Office of the Speaker and all engagement is facilitated from the Speakers' Office through Public Participation Unit.

The municipality have established a structural relationship between the Municipality and our Traditional Leaders. Quarterly annual schedule of meetings excluding IDP/Budget Review consultations. During the Community Outreach programmes (IMBIZO's), the Municipality pay courtesy visit to our Traditional authorities before the Executive Mayor speaks to the community.

The Executive Mayor have established an Annual Charity Fund that benefit the most Rural Poor Organizations (NGO's & CBO's) and to strengthen our relations, our Traditional leaders have been tasked to identify the neediest NGO's & CBOs to benefit from the proceedings.

The Office of the Speaker quarterly convenes special meetings with all Traditional Authorities to focus on Service Delivery matters and this has worked well.

Generally, the Polokwane Municipality has a smooth relationship with all our Traditional leaders, and they participate actively in our Municipality Programmes.

### **8.21.2 The building blocks of Good Governance**

The building blocks of good governance are participation, accountability, predictability and transparency. Developmental local government requires municipalities to promote good governance and community participation. In promoting and ensuring a culture of good governance in providing services municipalities are required to establish components and mechanisms that promote good governance and community participation.

### **8.21.3 Ward Committee and CDW's**

The table below is depiction of ward committee system and number of CDW's deployed in Polokwane municipality:

**Table: Distribution of ward committees and Community Development Workers**

<b>Number of Wards</b>	<b>Number of CDW's</b>	<b>Number of ward committees</b>	<b>Number of wards committees not functional</b>	<b>Challenges</b>
45	29	450	0	Limited capacity building programmes due to financial constraints  Limited number of CDW's in the municipal area. CDW's report to CoGHSTA BUT MUST ATTEND ward committee meetings.

## **8.22 SECRETARIAT**

### **8.22.1 The main objectives of the Secretariat unit**

- To run an effective Councillors, support programme.
- To perform the general administration of Council, Mayoral committee and other committee established by Council.

- Perform the general administration of Council, Mayoral Committee and all other Committees established by Council.
- Internal Political Interface with the Mayor's Office, Speakers Office and the Chief Whip.
- To run an effective decision support programme for portfolio committees.

### 8.22.2 Challenges /Constraints at Secretariat and Records

- No adherence to the meeting dates scheduled for Portfolio meetings and MAYCO.
- Unavailability of items for discussion by portfolio committees.
- Office and record filling space.
- Implementation of Council resolutions
- Late submission of reports for packaging for portfolio, MAYCO and Council.

#### Interventions

- Adhere to the meeting date schedule for Portfolio meetings and MAYCO by regular reminders through cellular phones text messaging system.
- Request HR training division to attend to the matter of training and induction processes.
- Submission of reports for packaging in time to meet deadlines and comply with the Rules of Order Governing Council and Council Committees.

## 8.23 COUNCIL COMMITTEES

Council is the body that makes policy and oversees its implementation. Its key role in its current structure is to focus on legislative, participatory and oversight roles. The Executive Mayor is the political head championing the strategy of the municipality. Executive Mayor is assisted by the Mayoral Committee made up to 10 councillors and six are full time councillors. The Mayoral Committee is responsible for individual portfolio and report directly to the Executive Mayor.

Polokwane Municipality holds its Council meetings, on average, quarterly Mayoral Committee meetings are held fortnightly while Portfolio Committee meetings are held once a month. The Council is consisting of **45 Ward** Councillors.

Polokwane Municipality has a political presentation of **eight political parties**. The political parties and the number of its representatives are listed on the table below.

- |                                      |   |           |
|--------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1. Total number of Councillors:      | = | <b>90</b> |
| 2. Total number of ward Councillors: | = | <b>45</b> |
| 3. Total number of PR Councillors:   | = | <b>45</b> |

### 8.23.1 Political Parties Represented in Council:

There are **8 Political Parties** that are represented in Council of City of Polokwane:

	Name of Political Party	No of Councillors
1	ANC	56
2	EFF	21
3	DA	07
4	FF+	02
5	COPE	01
6	ABC	01
7	MSM	01
8	ACDP	01

### 8.23.2 Portfolio Committees

In accordance with the delegated powers and function of the executive, all reports first serve at the Portfolio Committee then escalated to Mayoral committee before they are submitted to Council for decision making. At the Council reports are noted and adopted.

The Municipality has **Ten (10) Portfolio committees**. Each of the ten members of the Mayoral Committee chairs a Portfolio Committee and reports their activities to the Executive Mayor. The Executive Mayor reports to Council during Council meetings, which are open to the public. Polokwane Municipality holds its Council meetings, on average quarterly, Mayoral Committee meetings are held once a month while Portfolio Committee meetings are held once a month.

### 8.23.3 MPAC - Municipal Public Account Committee

That in accordance with Section 129 (5) of the Municipal Finance Management Act, Council of Polokwane Municipality has adopted the "Guideline for Establishment Municipal Public Accounts Committees" ("Guideline"). The members of the Polokwane Municipal Public Accounts Committee ("MPAC") are consisting of the following Councillors:

**Table: MPAC Members**

	Name of Councillors:
1.	Cllr. Ngoasheng Lehlogonolo Herman ( <b>Chairperson</b> )
2.	Cllr. Malatji Michael ( <b>Whip</b> )
3	Cllr. Dikgale Sewela Julia
4	Cllr. Makhafola Daniel

	<b>Name of Councillors:</b>
<b>5</b>	Cllr. Mokobodi Mpho Victor
<b>6</b>	Cllr. Ramakgolo Maula Meriam
<b>7</b>	Cllr. Clarke Suzan
<b>8</b>	Cllr. Chidi Tiny
<b>9</b>	Cllr. Mohlabeng Dina Mokgadi
<b>10</b>	Cllr. Raphela Thokwana Richard

Members of Polokwane Municipal Public Accounts Committee are guided by the following pieces of legislation to consider and scrutinize the Annual Reports:

- Circular No. 32 of 15 March 2006

The MPAC has been tasked with the responsibility of assessing the annual reports of the Municipality. Council appointed a multi-party Oversight Committee to review the annual report

## **8.24 COMMUNICATION AND MARKETING**

Communications and marketing are important elements of good governance. It is through communication that the communities and other stakeholders are informed about the activities, challenges and achievements of the municipality and thereby being empowered to participate in the affairs of the municipality. Section 18 of the Municipal Systems Act stresses the importance of communication between the Council and its communities. It gives guidelines of issues that the municipality must communicate about to its stakeholders.

The incorporation of Aganang Municipality resulted in the municipality growing bigger in size and this necessitates a review of the organogram and the approach model of the Communications and Marketing so that the municipality can efficiently respond to the needs of the communities in that cluster with the assistance of the Public Participation and Clusters Services.

A variety of media platforms are used to encourage community participation in municipal affairs. These include programmes of mobilizing, informing and educating, engaging and empowering communities in municipal affairs. The turnaround strategies and activities driven by the political leadership are highlighted during direct communication with communities and complemented by proper messaging.

The municipality is taking advantage of new electronic and social media channels to improve on the speed through which information reaches residents and other stakeholders. These include communication through mobile phones technology in the form of SMSs, chat groups, broadcast lists, Facebook, Twitter, YouTube etc.

Face-to-face, direct communications with communities & community structures are conducted through outreach programmes such as the mayoral roadshows, “Imbizo” and other interested groups meetings on a regular basis.

Services challenges and achievements, products and programmes of the municipality have been and continue to be profiled on various radio stations (national, regional and community) newspapers, posters and third-party website as a way of marketing Polokwane as a city that is capable to respond to the needs of its communicators and visitors to the province. The municipality created and maintained sound relationship with the media personnel.

The municipality has adopted a communications brand which is an umbrella brand that would provide shelter under which developmental activities that relates to the growth of the city should be communicated to the residents of Polokwane. The “Re aga Polokwane” (which means we are building Polokwane) platform is being used to ensure the City’s citizens have a better understanding of the various projects that the city is embarking on and why the city has embarked on these projects. Further, the brand provides residents and businesses with a platform and opportunity for their own initiative to come up with programmes that will benefit and improve the city in various ways. The programme has taken off the ground.

Under this banner, the municipality must develop and implement a comprehensive well-researched marketing strategy that will implement campaigns geared towards revenue enhancement, water conservation, key municipal projects, service delivery achievements, investments opportunities and internal communications.

The municipality will continue to develop and improve processes to enhance public participation and strengthening of relations with critical stakeholders to entrench participatory local government.

There is a need to make full use of billboards, electronic and conventional) around the city and urban areas to communicate key programmes around awareness like water and environmental conservation.

#### **8.24.1 Complaints Management System**

The municipality uses suggestions books to record all complains, suggestions and complements by the community about municipal services or any other matter that affects the municipality.

The books are placed at the rates halls and cluster offices frequented by the public. The books are attended to regularly and content is shared with the affected SBU’s to ensure that the inputs are attended to.

The Call Centre manned by the Community Services Directorate is available and allows members of the public to report complaints or other service-related issues. Processes are currently underway to implement an integrated or one stop call centre that will be able to deal with services standards within the municipality.

Currently the Facebook Page is used to complement the current control room where complaints and complements are forwarded to the relevant departments for intervention. Complaints are also received through government hotlines, walk-ins and media enquiries.

The municipality also participates in the District and the Provincial Hotline and Batho Pele Forums where management of complaints are entertained with the aim of reducing complaints received.



There is an urgent requirement for the municipality to have a dedicated business unit that will deal with the development of performance standards drawn from standard operating procedures developed by all the business units in the municipality. This will be used as a benchmark for acceptable and non-acceptable standards of delivery of services. This unit should be able to keep track of service complaints received from all government hotlines, suggestion books, walk-in, and control room and media queries.

#### 8.24.2 New electronic and social media channels of Communication

The municipality is taking advantage of new electronic and social media channels to improve on the speed through which information reaches residents and other stakeholders. These include communication through mobile phones technology in the form of **MMS, SMS, chat groups, broadcast lists, Facebook, Twitter, YouTube etc.**



#### 8.25 EXECUTIVE SUPPORT PROGRAMMES

The Executive Support Unit is located within the Office of the Executive Mayor to address issues that affect previously deprived and marginalized groups of the society, such as **women, children, youth, people with disabilities and older persons as well as people living with HIV**. The forums for all the targeted groups were established, including the Local Aids Council and the Local AIDS Council Technical Committee, with the aim of mainstreaming all the Executive Support programmes into the municipal services and processes. The Ward AIDS Councils will be Re- established in all 45 wards of the municipality. The unit plays a role of supporting and strengthening these councils to yield best possible results of reducing HIV and AIDS and other opportunistic diseases. Social ills such as Gender Based Violence, Teenage pregnancy, Substance abuse and others, are also addressed within these municipal

structures. The HIV and AIDS/Special Programmes Centre provide training, information and counselling to individuals, organizations, schools and other community structures. The centre also serves as a condom distribution site.

Section 73(1) of the Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000 requires municipalities to give effect to the provisions of the Constitution to give priority to the basic needs of the local community and to promote its development. The Act, Section 73 (2) further states that municipal services should be equitable, accessible and be provided in a manner that is conducive to the prudent, economic, efficient and effective use of available resources.

### **8.25.1 Core Function of the Executive Support SBU**

The core function of this unit is to provide care and support services to the vulnerable groups in the community. Mainstreaming of services is ensured through the following programmes:

- **HIV/AIDS, STI and TB (HAST)**
- **Gender Focal Point**
- **Disability Rights Advocacy**
- **Youth Development**
- **Children's Rights Advocacy**
- **Older Persons' Rights Advocacy**

The Executive Support Programmes are regulated through community forums: i.e.

- Local AIDS Council, Local AIDS Council Technical Committee and The Ward AIDS Councils.
- Gender Forum and the Men's Forum
- Older Persons Forum
- Disability Forum
- Children's Rights Stakeholders Forum
- Youth Forum
- Civil Society Organizations Forum
- Plans are underway to establish the **Local Drug Action Committee** to address issues of **substance abuse**.

The Fast Track City Programme had been introduced in the City of Polokwane with the main aim of achieving HIV/AIDS, STIs and TB goals and objectives using the Local Implementation Plan by attaining the 90/90/90 targets. The 90/90/90 implementation will:

- Ensure that at least 90% of PLHIV and TB know their status.
- Improve access to Anti Retro Viral and TB treatment to 90%
- Ensure that 90% of PLHIV and TB who are on treatment are virally suppressed and those TB+s is cured.
- Increase the utilization of combination HIV prevention services,
- Reduce to zero the negative impact of stigma and discrimination,
- Establish a common web-based platform for real time monitoring progress.

All the programmes are implemented in collaboration with government departments, civil society organizations, faith-based organisations, traditional authorities and developmental partners to ensure effective services to the vulnerable groups.

## 8.25.2 Special Focus Challenges

Special Focus Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation meetings are:

Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation	Corrective measure
1. Braille Documents for the blind and partially sighted persons	As a short-term intervention strategy, the documents and agendas used during community consultation meetings are printed in Braille with the assistance of South African National Association of the Blind and Partially sighted (SANABP). Plans are underway to have the IDP and Budget document printed in Braille. Plans are also underway for the procurement of the Braille machine for the municipality.
2. The money raised during the Mayor's Charity Fund not enough to cover the huge number of NGOs in the Municipality.	The municipality in partnership with government departments and financial institutions strive to capacitate Community Based Organizations (CBOs) in terms of financial management and fundraising skills to ensure sustainability of their initiatives.
3. The Participation of people with disabilities and women as well in the procurement process.	Women and people with disabilities and youth are encouraged to register on the municipal data base.
4. Most of our buildings still not user friendly to our people living with disabilities.	Access ramps were constructed at the 1 <sup>st</sup> , 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> floor entrances of the building.
5. Inclusion of people with disabilities in the workforce (non-compliance to the 2% employment mandate) The Employment Equity Survey conducted confirmed an increase of employees with disabilities from 1.1% to 2%.	People with disabilities are encouraged to apply for advertised jobs through the disability forum and organizations.
6. Shortage of land for NGOs and CBOs.	The land acquisition and disposal of municipal property policy that was adopted by council will enable community organizations to make applications for leasing or buying of land.  Plans are underway to seek permission for the utilization of some Municipal Vacant land as a one stop centre for community service organizations, including the Victim Support and Empowerment Centre.

Source: Special Focus SBU

## 8.26 Health and Social Development

### 8.26.1 Health Facilities Analysis

To optimize the delivery of quality health care services to the community of Polokwane, the provision of health services is fairly covering the communities. There are 40 clinics and 1 health care centre found in the municipal area. Most of the clinics operates 24 hours and are fairly equipped with all necessary infrastructures. The municipality also harbours a provincial hospital, 1 District hospital and 2 tertiary hospitals.

### 8.26.2 Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane

The following are the Major Hospitals in City of Polokwane

1. Polokwane Hospital
2. Mankweng Hospital in Mankweng township (30 km east of Polokwane)
3. Pholoso Netcare Hospital (next to savannah Mall)
4. Seshego District Hospital (10 km out of Polokwane City)
5. Knobel Hospital in Aganang Cluster (60 km North West of Polokwane.)
6. Med clinic Limpopo (Polokwane)
7. Rethabile Health Centre in Polokwane City
8. Over 40 clinics associated with all the above hospitals

#### Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane

**Polokwane Hospital**



**Pholoso Netcare Hospital next to savannah Mall**



**Mankweng Hospital in Sovenga township (30 km east of Polokwane)**



**Seshego District Hospital (10 km out of Polokwane City)**



**Source: Limpopo Dept Health**

### **8.26.3 HIV /AIDS Prevalence in Polokwane**

#### **HIV and AIDS**

The burden of HIV and AIDS continue to pose a developmental hurdle because it put PLM's human assets at risk of morbidity and mortality. Data extracted from Regional Explorer (2019) showed that 59,664 people were infected with HIV in 2016; 69,539 in 2017 and 71,007 in 2018. During the same period, 1376 AIDS related deaths were reported in 2016: 1234 deaths in 2017 and 1241 deaths in 2018. Owing to an effective ARV treatment strategy adopted in 2009, AIDS related deaths reduced significantly by 9.8% between 2016 and 2018. The City of Polokwane is arguably one of the top HIV hotspots in Limpopo Province.

#### **8.26.4 National HIV prevalence**

The estimated National HIV prevalence was 29.5%, showing a slight drop of 0.7% from the 2010 national HIV prevalence (30.2%). However, Limpopo indicated a steady increase from 21.4% in 2009 to 22.1% in 2011 whereas the Capricorn District has shown an increase from 24.9% to 25.2%. The Polokwane municipality has therefore a vigorous role to play in the prevention and support objectives of the Provincial HIV and AIDS strategy. The Centre also serves as a condom distribution site (distributing  $\pm$  120 000 condoms per month).



### **8.26.5 Awards Received by Special Focus**

The Special Focus unit received an award for the most resourceful Council in terms of gender mainstreaming during the Capricorn/Swaziland Gender Protocol and Justice summit.

### **8.26.6 The 90-90-90 targets**

The 90–90–90 targets are a set of global goals established by the United Nations Programme on AIDS and HIV. By 2020, the goal is that “**90%** of people living with HIV will know their HIV status, **90%** of those who know their HIV-positive status will be accessing treatment, and **90%** of people on treatment will have suppressed viral loads.”

These targets provide a good measure of how well different provinces are performing in key areas such as the provision and promotion of HIV testing and helping people who test positive to start treatment and to stay on treatment

STATUS Quo



## **CHAPTER Nine - Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development**

### **9.1. ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE**

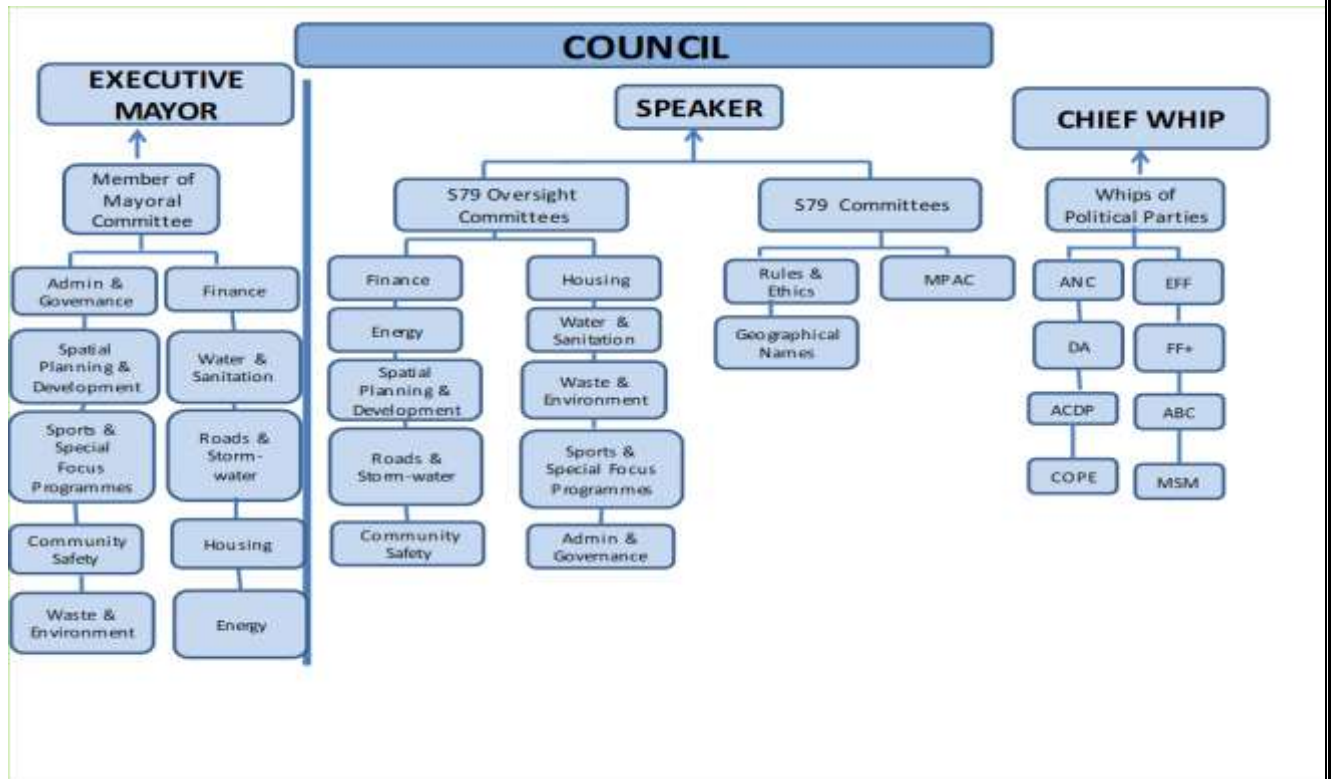
Municipalities are faced with increased scrutiny, budget constraints and pressure to improve services. Leaders are taking a hard look at Service Delivery as part of their strategic initiatives to modernize. Service delivery is carried out primarily through human capital. Polokwane municipality can only position itself to deliver effectively and efficiently from inside by attracting and keeping skilled workers and by also promoting itself as being a desirable place to relocate to or grow up and stay in. The ability to maintain skilled workers is accomplished by anticipating and accommodating new trends in service delivery, skills, local population, demographics and new economic opportunities.

The organizational structure is not simply an organization's chart. It is all people, positions procedures, processes, culture, technology and related elements that make up the organization. It explains how all these pieces work together (or in some instances they don't work together). The structure must be aligned to the strategic objectives of the municipality in order to achieve the mission and goals of a Smart City. The structure must be totally aligned with strategy for the organization to achieve its mission and goals.

The governance model consists of the Legislative Authority (Speaker of Council, Chief Whip and Section 79 Portfolio and Standing Committees), the Executive Authority (Executive Mayor and Members of the Mayoral Committee (MMCs) as indicated below.

### 9.1.1 Political Governance Structure

#### POLITICAL GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE

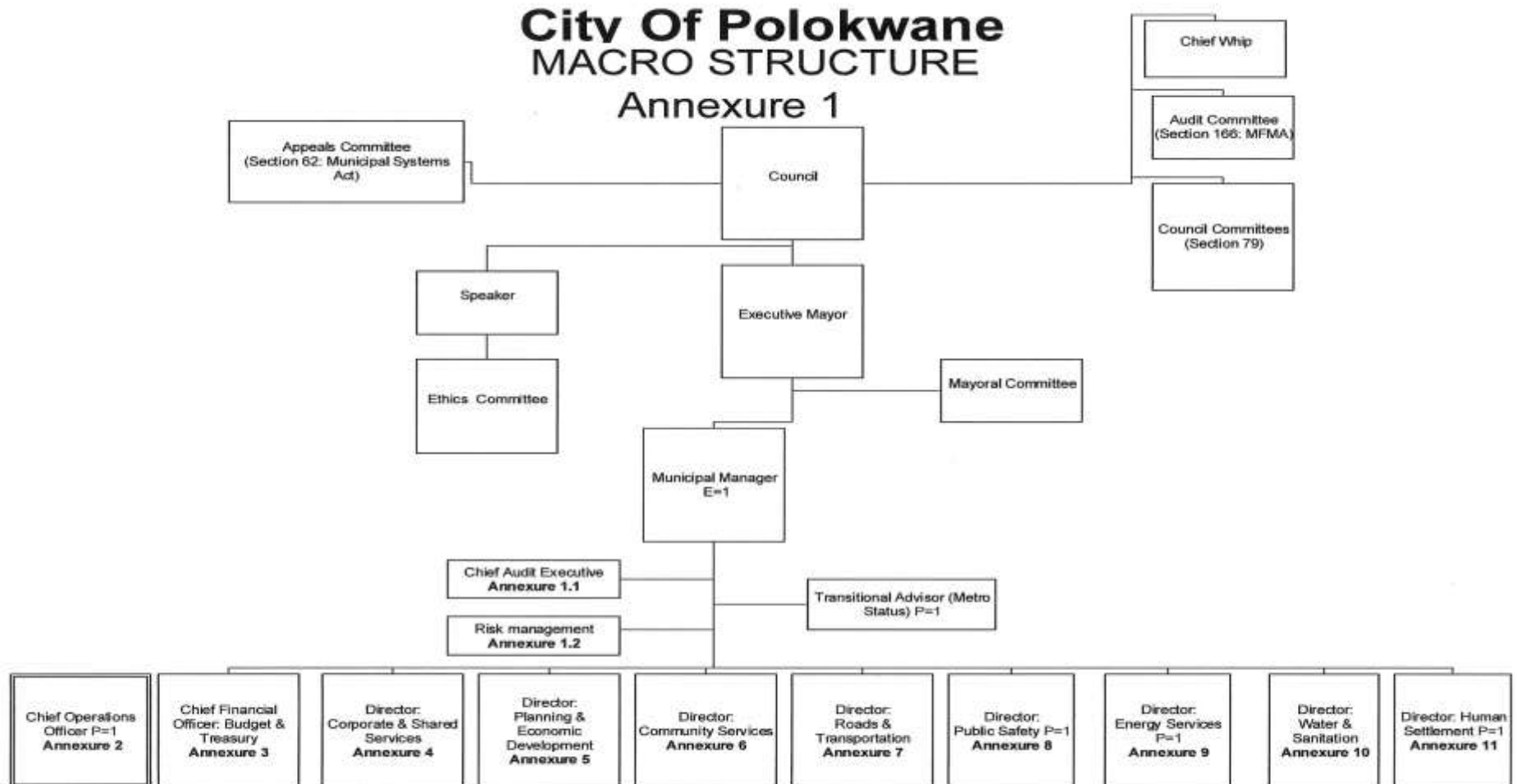


The position of a Transitional Advisor has been created for coordination of the metropolitan status processes and applications (metro status). The functions are listed as follows:

- Research on the attainment of Metro status with relevant Metropolitan cities.
- Benchmarking
- Analysis of status quo
- Assist directorates in identifying projects aimed at driving the attainment of a Metro in the IDP and budget
- Monitoring and evaluating set deliverables for various directorates.
- Regular reporting on project road map to EXCO, Portfolio Committees, MAYCO, and Council

The organizational structure has 4886 positions. The structure is being implemented through a phased in approach in response to new developments.

## 9.2 The organizational structure



### 9.2.1. Appointment of Senior Managers

There are Currently (10) Senior Manager Positions on the City of Polokwane's Organogram.

- 1) Municipal Manager (MM)
- 2) Chief Financial Officer (CFO)
- 3) Deputy: Chief Financial Officer (DCFO)
- 4) Director: Planning and Economic Development
- 5) Director: Community Services
- 6) Director: Strategic Planning Monitoring and Evaluation (SPME)
- 7) Director: Transportation and Roads
- 8) Director: Corporate and Shared Services
- 9) Director: Water and Sanitation
- 10) Director: Energy Services

### 9.2.2 New Senior Managers Positions on the organogram

The Organogram has additional 3 Senior Manager Positions that are all Vacant. It has been resolved that those 3 Senior Manager positions will only be filled when the City attains the **Metro status**, they are currently not budgeted for. Their Functions are still rendered by the other Directorates that are filled.

The City is finalising the **Protocol accreditation agreement** with CoGHSTA, once finalised the position of director: Human Settlement will then be filled.

- 1) Director: Human Settlement
- 2) Director: Public Safety = will only be filled in future once the municipality is declared metro
- 3) COO= Depends on the Metro Status

### 9.2.3 Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate

Table 1: Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate

Job Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	Total
Office of the Municipal Manager	4	-	5	1	6	3	1	-	3	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	24

Job Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	Total
Chief Operations Office	8	-	2 4	8	21	27	17	11	20	6	4	-	3	-	-	-	37	186
Budget and Treasury	6	-	1 4	7	9	19	6	13	61	63	14	1	5	1	-	-	5	224
Corporate and Shared Services	5	-	1 4	21	28	4	13	13	40	4	62	-1	6	-	-	-	158	369
Planning and Economic Development	7	-	1 4	23	37	47	22	21	23	13	2	-	-	-	-	-	2	211
Community Services	4	-	7	1	9	21	23	42	65	121	31	8	5	14	6	56	1177	1590
Public Safety	4	-	6	8	19	60	156	202	15	129	29	40	4	-	-	60	43	911
Roads and Transportation Services	4	-	9	11	13	12	13	4	23	43	1	28	1	-	-	-	204	366
Energy Services	2	-	5	8	7	9	17	15	63	17	6	-	2	-	-	-	114	265
Water and Sanitation	3	-	5	8	16	10	18	12	95	41	15	1	50	-	-	-	454	728
<b>Total</b>																		<b>4874</b>

**Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU**

The breakdown above excludes the 11 Directors and the Deputy CFO appointed on contract at level 0.

The total staff complement based on the current organizational structure stands at **2021** with a **2.97%** turnover rate. Municipalities are highly regulated as such it's a challenge to retain or

attract talent. It is a common occurrence that skilled employees will always look for greener pastures or leave for bigger cities due to the highly regulated salaries and wages. A job evaluation process is underway led by SALGA (South African Local Government Association).

The process is meant to:

- Evaluate all new positions within Polokwane Municipality.
- Implement the results of the evaluation in line with the wage curve.

**TABLE:2**

Number of jobs on the structure	Number of jobs evaluated	Number of jobs submitted to Provincial Audit Committee
732	642	356

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

### 9.2.4 Positions and Budget Per Directorate

#### POSITIONS AND BUDGET PER DIRECTORATE (2021-2022)

Directorate	Number of Positions as per Organogram	Positions Filled	Positions Vacant	Number of Budgeted vacancies	Non Budgeted vacancies	Salary Budget (2021-2022)
Municipal Manager's Office	25	14	11	1	10	R18 392 914
Chief Operations Office	187	105	82	10	72	R89 526 125
Budget & Treasury Office	226	151	75	29	46	R99 468 302
Corporate and Shared Services	370	169	201	8	193	R102 577 084
Planning & Economic Development	176	62	114	7	107	R55 470 756
Human Settlements	36	15	21	2	19	R9 620 655
Community Services	1592	526	1066	64	1002	R193 878 751



Directorate	Number of Positions as per Organogram	Positions Filled	Positions Vacant	Number of Budgeted vacancies	Non Budgeted vacancies	Salary Budget (2021-2022)
Public Safety	912	374	538	74	464	R238 710 839
Roads and Transportation Services	367	123	244	32	212	R55 856 884
Energy Services	266	158	108	40	68	R94 518 411
Water and Sanitation	729	324	405	84	321	R145 575 103
<b>GRAND TOTAL</b>	<b>4886</b>	<b>2021</b>	<b>2865</b>	<b>351</b>	<b>2514</b>	<b>R1 103 595 825</b>

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

### 9.3 Skills Development and Training

Training presents a prime opportunity to expand the knowledge base of all employees. In some instances, many employers find training as an expensive opportunity; work time is consumed by training session. Despite this drawback, training and development provides both the municipality and the individual employee with benefits that may cost time; however, it is a worthwhile investment.

#### 9.3.1 Addressing Weakness in workplace skills

Most employees have some weaknesses in their workplace skills. A training program allows you to strengthen those skills that each employee needs to improve. A development program brings all employees to a higher level, so they all have similar skills and knowledge. This helps reduce any weak links within the municipality.

#### Improved Employee Performance

An employee who receives the necessary training is better able to perform his/her job. The training may also build the employee's confidence because she/he has a stronger understanding of the systems within a municipality.

## Consistency

A structured training and development program ensures that employees have a consistent experience and background knowledge. All employees need to be aware of the expectations and procedures within the municipality.

## Employee Satisfaction

Employees with access to training and development programs have the advantage over employees in other institutions that are left to seek out training opportunities on their own. The investment in training that an institution makes shows the employees that they are valued. MSA 2000 S68 (1) requires municipalities to develop their human resource capacity to a level that enables them to perform their function and exercise their powers in an economical, effective, efficient and accountable way.

### **9.3.2 Skills Development Act (SDA)**

The Skills Development Act (SDA) aims to provide an institutional framework to devise and implement national, sector and workplace strategies in order to develop and improve the skills of the South African workforce. Furthermore, it aims to provide the financing of skills development by means of a levy – financing scheme and a National Skills Fund. The Skills Development Act (SDA) aims to provide an institutional framework to devise and implement national, sector and workplace strategies in order to develop and improve the skills of the South African workforce. Furthermore, it aims to provide the financing of skills development by means of a levy – financing scheme and a National Skills Fund. The SDA also makes it a requirement for the municipality to compile a workplace skills plan and submit an implementation report. The municipality always adheres to this requirement.

### **9.3.3 Learnership programmes**

Polokwane Municipality has implemented following Learnership program i.e.

**TABLE 3: Learnership**

Item	Numbers
Municipal Finance Management Programme	55 Employed

**Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU**

Polokwane Municipality has a total of 85 employees that meet the Municipal Regulations on Minimum Competencies, 2007. Section 14 (4) requires of municipalities to compile a report on compliance with prescribed competency levels.

Twenty (20) employees have been enrolled with Resonance Institute for MFMP programme for the current year. The programme is funded by LGSETA.

## 9.4 Employment Equity

Polokwane Municipality views employment equity as a strategic priority and it recognises it as an important measure against which a Smart City and a world class organisation is benchmarked. The creation of an equitable working environment, with the dignity of all employees respected and the diversity of employees valued and properly managed, as a solid base for longer-term growth and competitive advantage.

The transformation and the successful management of diversity will deliver a competitive advantage that will deliver a stronger, more cohesive and more productive municipality. It contributes to greater employee satisfaction and commitment resulting in lower staff turnover and stronger customer and stakeholder orientation and satisfaction.

MSA 2000 S67 requires municipalities to develop and adopt appropriate systems and procedures to ensure fair; efficient; effective; and transparent personnel administration in accordance with the Employment Equity Act 1998. In implementing such the Municipality should be realistic for these programmes to be achievable. They should be based on accurate information about race, gender and disability and reflect the demographics within Polokwane Municipality.

### 9.4.1 Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality

TABLE 4: Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality

EMPLOYMENT EQUITY STATISTICS - 30 JUNE 2022										
Occupational Categories	Level	African		Coloured		Indian		White		Total
		FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	
Top Management	MM, CFO & Directors	2	2	0	0	0	1	0	1	6
Senior Management	1	8	24	1	1	0	0	0	0	34
	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

	3	28	35	0	0	2	0	3	3	70
Professionally Qualified	4	18	23	1	1	0	0	0	9	52
	5	23	25	1	1	0	0	0	4	54
	6	34	52	1	0	0	0	3	8	98
Skilled Technical	7	40	49	1	0	0	0	2	8	100
	8	67	70	1	0	0	2	2	7	149
	9	100	104	2	4	1	0	5	10	226
	10	80	114	0	1	0	1	2	5	203
	11	46	32	1	0	0	0	0	0	79
	12	11	32	1	0	0	0	0	0	44
Semi-Skilled	13	8	25	0	0	0	0	0	0	33
	14	2	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
	15	5	22	0	0	0	0	0	0	27
	16	8	18	0	0	0	0	0	0	26
Unskilled	17	298	507	1	5	0	0	0	1	812
<b>Total</b>		<b>778</b>	<b>1139</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>56</b>	<b>2021</b>

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

TABLE 5: Summary

Gender	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	National EAP	Provincial EAP	Polokwane
Females	778	11	3	17	809	55,2%	55,7%	40,03%
Males	1139	13	4	56	1212	44,8%	44,3%	59,97%
<b>TOTAL</b>					<b>2021</b>			

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

#### 9.4.2 Summary of people with disabilities

TABLE 6: Summary of people with disabilities

SUMMARY OF PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES					
Gender	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total
Females	6	1	0	3	10
Males	13	0	0	11	24
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>34</b>				

**The total number of People with Disabilities constitutes 1.68% of the total workforce of 2021**

**Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU**

### **9.4.3 Equity Plan for Polokwane Municipality**

The Municipality has an Equity Plan as required by the Act in place. Positive measures are being implemented within the Municipality to ensure that positive measures as set out the Municipality's goals and targets are realised. The Employment Equity is guided by the National and Provincial Economically Active Population (EAP) as well as time frames. The plan needs continuous Monitoring and Evaluation. Development of an effective communication strategy, Consultation, and participation by all stakeholders. Research to inform ongoing policy making and planning process. The demographics as per Economically Active Population for Polokwane stands at 39.7% for women and 60.3% for men. The disabled employees constitute 1.68% of the total workforce as contained the total workforce table five (5) above.

It should be noted that at top management level the municipality has implemented targets and it follows the Equity plan. Challenges remain in the category of disabled persons and women. The solution to this is to:

- Implement targeted recruitment process (Targeting women and the disabled)

### **9.5 Job grade analysis**

**TABLE 6: Job grade analysis**

JOB GRADE ANALYSIS - 30 JUNE 2022									
Level	African		Coloured		Indian		White		Total
	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	
1	8	24	1	1	0	0	0	0	34
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
3	28	35	0	0	2	0	3	2	70
4	18	23	1	1	0	0	0	9	52
5	23	25	1	1	0	0	0	4	54
6	34	52	1	0	0	0	3	8	98
7	40	49	1	0	0	0	2	8	100
8	67	70	1	0	0	2	2	7	149
9	100	104	2	4	1	0	5	10	226
10	80	114	0	1	0	1	2	5	203
11	46	32	1	0	0	0	0	0	79
12	11	32	1	0	0	0	0	0	44
13	8	25	0	0	0	0	0	0	33
14	2	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
15	5	22	0	0	0	0	0	0	27
16	8	18	0	0	0	0	0	0	26
17	298	507	1	5	0	0	0	1	812
MM, Dir & CFO	2	2	0	0	0	1	0	1	6
<b>Total</b>	<b>778</b>	<b>1139</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>56</b>	<b>2021</b>

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

### 9.6 Vacancy rate and Turnover

The total staff complement based on the organizational structure stands at 2021 with a 2.97% turnover rate. The turnover is because of amongst others; the highly regulated environment, challenges of retaining skills because of rigid wage/salary grades. Nine (9) Sec 56/7 positions have been filled for the period in question and only two (2) positions are vacant which are new position because of the reviewed of the organogram

The staff turnover for the year 2021/22 was at 2.97% which represents termination of 46 employees and the vacancy rate was at 58.64%. The high vacancy rate is because of the total approved positions in the organizational structure not necessarily the budgeted positions. When considering the total budgeted positions of 351, the vacancy rate is at 7.18%, which means the remaining 51.45% is non-budgeted.

The turnover rate and the vacancy rate are based on the organizational structure which was approved with 4857 positions. The tables below provide detail information on the organizational development of Polokwane Municipality.



## 9.7 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH & SAFETY (OHS)

The aim of the OHS Act is to provide for the safety and health of employees at work and in connection with the use of plant and machinery. It further provides for the protection of people other than people at work from hazards arising out of or in connection with the activities from people at work.

The main objective of the Act could be described as a pro-active attempt by the employer to prevent and avoid work related injuries and illness. The Act governs the health and safety for the diverse industry of South Africa. It regulates and control health and safety in all organizations, from a normal office environment to more hazardous environments like industrial plants and construction sites this include the Polokwane Municipality.

Occupational Health and Safety is not only the responsibility of the unit but a function that is applicable at all Strategic Business Units. Occupational Health and Safety is about compliance issues that not only include the Occupational Health and Safety Act, but the compliance factor stretch over a variety of legislations including Mine Health and Safety, Railway Safety Regulator Act and Disaster Management Act.

New Regulations/Bill adopted in the Occupational Health and Safety Act

- OHS Act Regulation: General Safety Direction
- Draft Pressure Equipment Regulation 2021
- COIDA Amendment Bill

On the 16<sup>th</sup> of March 2022 the Department of Employment and Labour has listed SARS Cov2(Covid 19) as a group 3 hazardous biological agent (HBA) Regulation which has an important implication for employers. On the 20<sup>th</sup> of May 2022 the Minister has under Section 43 of the OHS Act made the amendments to the Asbestos Abatement Regulations

Hazardous Chemical Agent Regulation requires the employer to inform and train employees about any substance to which they are or may be exposed to in the workplace. All employers and self-employed persons who carries out work at a workplace which may expose any person to HCA must take note of the changes in the 2021 Regulation and ensure compliance to them.

All injury on duty incidents is reported by this unit to the Compensation Commissioner. This is done electronically to the Department of Labour. Due to the fact that the Commissioner is not paying hospitals and doctors our employees do not always receive the quality treatment they deserve. All injuries are investigated, and risk assessments are conducted for discussions on

the relevant Strategic Business Units Health and Safety Committees. This is a legislative requirement.

In the event of serious injuries, the Department of Labour will investigate regarding this injury and this unit, represent the Polokwane Municipality. Occupational Health and Safety is also responsible for the drafting of safety specifications of personal protective clothing and ensure employees do wear them.

All construction projects must have site specific health and safety specifications and baseline risk assessment that the unit develop and must be included in the tender. Once the contractor has been appointed this unit must approve the health and safety file before any construction may start. During some of the construction projects Health and Safety Consultants are appointed and the management of these consultants are the responsibility of this unit.

Occupational Health and Safety Unit conducted Municipal wide inspections ensuring that compliance to OHS protocols to Covid 19 are adhered to. This ongoing and form part of day-to-day activities. In total on 86 sites safety checks were conducted from the period 1 July 2021 to 30 June 2022.

### **9.7.1 OHS unit Challenges**

#### **Challenges that the OHS unit encounters:**

- Staff complement is not sufficient to ensure that proper consultations and compliance are effective and manage health and safety pro-actively.
- Lack of training for OHS Officials to ensure that they are capacitated on new development and changes in the Occupational Health and Safety Act programmes
- A proper electronic health and safety management system needs to be implemented.
- Late reporting of IOD by SBU's which results in non-compliance to the COIDA and may result in penalties.
- There is a need to capacitate Managers, Supervisors, and all employees on OHS training to ensure that there is a better understanding on compliance.
- Lack of proper scheduled maintenance programs that influence the health and safety of employees and public this include:
  - Fire alarms and smoke detection systems
  - Air conditioners
  - Falling structures/building

**TABLE 7: Injury on duty**

Strategic Business Unit	No of Injuries per SBU	Days lost
Waste Management	33	238
Environmental Management	15	109
Public Transport Infrastructure Development	9	93
Purification	3	105
Sports and Recreation	3	19
Water and Sanitation	7	376
Traffic and Licenses	5	36
Energy Services	5	144
By-Law Enforcement and Security.	2	14
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>82</b>	<b>1134</b>

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

## 9.8 EMPLOYEE RELATIONS

Employment relations are important and viewed as key in the creation of a successful organization, economic prosperity. Employment is viewed as a critical factor for the development of any organization.

The Local Labour Forum is important as a point of engagement with organized labour. Training of Line Managers on employee relations remains key to the management of relationship in the workplace. Training must not only be restricted to line managers, but worker representatives also form an important part in employee relations, and therefore any capacity building initiatives should include worker representatives.

Workshops on employee code of conduct were held across all Directorates to make employees aware of the required standard for conducting oneself and newly appointed employees are specifically workshopped on the code of conduct.

The Municipality has seen a significant rise in disciplinary hearings involving indifferent behaviour, where senior employees and their juniors are unable to show courteous and mutual respect to one another.

Labour Relations has collaborated with Employee Assistant Programme to try and foster good relations between senior and junior employees.

## **9.9 EMPLOYEE ASSISTANCE PROGRAMMED (EAP)**

Employee Assistance Programme is important in any organization as it deals with the well-being of employees. EAP offers services that address personal, family problems and work-related problems. The range of psycho-social challenges that they assist with includes ill-health, poor productivity, personal finance management, emotional instability, stress and depression management, trauma, grievance and various addictions amongst others. Services are offered internally (to employees and management) and externally (to employees and their immediate families). Two service providers have been appointed for a period of three years to assist those who need further specialized intervention.

Employees often encounter challenges as they interact with their counterparts daily both in the workplace and outside. Some of employees who seek assistance are affected by poor working relations, lack of resources, unproductive communication channels and relations with superiors.

It would be in the best interest of the Employer and Employees to have regular team cohesion sessions, attend health proactive programme, self enhancement activities, as this will result in energised, goal orientated employees who are set to meet the objectives of the organization, resulting in return on investment for the employer.

EAP also incorporates proactive wellness programmes. It is very imperative for employees to be empowered on wellness issues, so that they can be informed and always be in the know of new medical developments or research findings which could promote healthy lifestyles. Proactive Information sharing sessions are conducted on issues such as cancer, substance abuse, HIV & AIDS, stress management, healthy lifestyle, work-life balance and so forth. Health screenings are also done quarterly to conscientize about their health status and make it part of one's lifestyle to undergo regular medical check-ups. These health screenings also help with early detection of health concerns. There is a need for employees to take proper care of their health and to participate in wellness programmes.

The Employee Assistance Programme has established a good working relation with stakeholder such as Old Mutual and Sanlam who are rendering financial wellness to our employees freely. This will go a long way in reducing the financial burden that they are subjected to which has resulted in several workplace challenges such as absenteeism, stress, poor productivity, and high turnover of resignation due to debts.

The impact of mental health should also be promoted and not be overlooked across the workplace. The EAP unit will continue to explore how they can support employees' emotional wellbeing.

The functionality of the Peer Educators programme within the workplace – this has prompted a positive outlook on the EAP activities such as wellness champions and promotion of healthy living, as by virtue of having support system in a form of health champion or an enabler it makes things easier for those who need support and knowledge. The availability of Peer Educators within all the directorate and clusters have created a pathway for promotion of EAP services and increased utilization.

The promotion and establishment of effective workplace Men's forums, with the overall aim of empowering male employees on ways of overcoming social ills, understanding and promotion of eradication of gender-based violence. Creating and promoting positive role models for younger men, see women as their social partner/equal. This will go a long way in building a better society and creating a conducive psychosocial environment for all to live in.

The impact of COVID 19 amongst employees had a huge impact on the delivery of services within the workplace. The Municipality has seen a significant increase on number of employees who had not been to work due to loss of lives amongst employees and all the departed were within the essential services.

#### **EAP related challenges:**

- Staff compliment is not adequate to ensure that proper servicing of employees is sufficient.
- Lack of contracted services to assist with the provision of EAP related services to employees (Psychologist, psychiatrist, Occupational Therapist, and rehabilitations centers)
- Lack of office space (Confidentially in compromised)

### **9.10 RECRUITMENT**

Municipalities are at the coalface of service delivery. The challenges of transformation places municipalities in the centre of the job markets where competition is high. To survive and deliver services municipalities must ensure that they attract and retain talent.

To make smart hiring for top talent the municipality has approved a recruitment policy as well as a scarce skill policy. After all, an institution's productivity and profitability depend on the quality of its workers. The policies, considers a mix of factors, including credentials, work experience, personality, and skills.

Challenges of a highly regulated bargained environment persist although as an institution we have policies in place to attract and retain talent. Forty-six (46) vacancies filled. The Covid-19 continues to play a major role in making recruitment difficult. The new normal forces employers to be innovating in the recruitment process.

The municipality is currently reviewing the policy to align it with new ways of recruitment in line with the new Regulations for Staff. The turnover rate is reasonable at 2.97% it is attributed to the high unemployment rate as employee turn to stay longer except in the high skill category.

### **9.11 FLEET MANAGEMENT SERVICES**

Fleet Management Services main function is to provide fleet management support to the municipality. The sub functions are including fleet administration, selection and procurement, risk management and disposal. The sub functions are listed as follow:

1. Fleet needs analysis and acquisition
2. Fleet Administration
  - Registration and license renewals
  - Vehicle inspection, maintenance and availability
  - Management and monitoring of vehicle utilization, tracking and fuel
  - Driver behavior assessment and training
  - Compliance with NRTA, AARTO (traffic fine management) and OHSA
3. Fleet risk management
4. Fleet disposal

#### **9.11.1 Number of Fleet**

Polokwane Local Municipality has an overall of **722** units consisting of a mixed fleet of self-propelled and non-self-propelled.

1. Council Fleet =**497** (including 79 special car allowance scheme vehicles)
2. Fleet Africa =**225**



### 9.11.2 Municipal fleet status quo

Ownership	TOTAL FLEET	OPERATIONAL	NON OPERATIONAL	TO BE DISPOSED
Municipal Owned Fleet	497	435	62	125
Fleet Africa Fleet	225	156	69	
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>722</b>	<b>591</b>	<b>131</b>	<b>125</b>

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

### 9.11.3 Fleet units per category

Type of vehicle	MUNICIPAL OWNED	FLEET AFRICA	TOTAL FLEET	OPERATIONAL	NON-OPERATIONAL	TO-BE-DISPOSED
SEDANS	42	28	70	48	22	22
LDV	223	65	288	268	20	33
4 TON TRUCKS	23	20	43	31	12	5
COMPACTORS	9	16	25	19	6	3
LOAD LUGGER	3	5	8	7	3	2
ROLL ON ROLL OFF	3	2	5	5	0	1
COMPRESSOR	1	3	4	4	2	
GENERATOR	13	7	20	18	2	2
TRAILERS	47	22	69	34	35	40
TRACTORS	6	14	20	16	4	2
TIPPER TRUCKS	9	10	19	15	4	1
WATER TANKERS	37	0	37	37	0	
FIRE TRUCKS	10	0	10	9	1	
MINIBUS	6	2	8	7	1	2
MOTOR BIKE	5	0	5	0	5	5
GRADERS	10	4	14	10	4	2
FRONT END LOADER	3	0	3	3	0	
ROLL BACK	1	1	2	2	0	
FORKLIFT	1	0	1	1	0	
GRAB	5	2	7	4	0	1
35-SEATER BUS	1	0	1	0	1	1
CRANE TRUCK	2	2	4	4	0	
PANEL VAN	4	3	7	5	2	

Type of vehicle	MUNICIPAL OWNED	FLEET AFRICA	TOTAL FLEET	OPERATIONAL	NON-OPERATIONAL	TO-BE-DISPOSED
SHIPPER	1	0	1	0	1	1
ROLLER	1	0	1	1	0	
SUV	3	1	4	2	2	
TLB	11	3	14	10	2	1
CHERRY PICKER	11	6	17	16	1	1
BULL DOZER	1	0	1	1	0	
22-SEATER BUS	3	3	6	5	1	
LOW BED		1	1	1	0	
LOWBED HORSE		1	1	1	0	
STORMWATER PIPE CLEANER		1	1	1	0	
TAR CUTTER		1	1	1	0	
STREET SWEEPER		2	2	2	0	
MOBILE TESTING TRAILER	1	0	1	1	0	
MOBILE GENERATOR FOR WATER	1	0	1	1	0	
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>497</b>	<b>225</b>	<b>722</b>	<b>591</b>	<b>131</b>	<b>125</b>

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

#### 9.11.4 New vehicle procurement status quo during 2021/2022

New vehicle procurement status quo during 2021/2022 total of 29 Municipal Fleet: The Municipality has procured 29 units comprising of light delivery vehicles, trucks, as follows:

- 5 x Waste Compactors trucks
- 2 x Grabs that were procured by the Municipality through tender process.
- 14 x LDV vehicles for Energy services was acquired through RT57 process.
- 8 x Cherry Picker trucks were acquired through RT57

#### 9.11.5 Project for the current financial year 2022/2023

The Municipality plan to procure 7 units comprising of trucks, machinery and earth moving equipment's as follows:

- x Yellow Fleet consisting as follows:
- x Graders
- 2 x TLB's

- 2x Waste Compactor trucks

### **9.11.6 Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy**

In terms of the Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy a number of sourcing methods to procure and replace fleet units were identified. A hybrid model including outright purchase of fleet units, outsourcing of waste compactors and Special Car Scheme Allowance for law enforcement and traffic officials. To improve on efficiency of our business processes, a fleet support company was appointed to manage fleet administration including licensing, fuel, traffic fines, tracking, utilization and driver behaviour, risk management and as well as maintenance and availability.

### **9.11.7 Challenges within Fleet SBU**

#### **1. Budget**

Budget provided fleet replacement is not aligned with the actual needs of the municipality. Fleet needs analysis is not centralized, resulting in resources allocated to SBUs not mandated with selection and procurement of fleet.

#### **2. Ageing fleet**

The municipality has a total of 722 fleet units consisting of a mixed fleet of self-propelled and non-self-propelled.

497 municipal owned fleet units, 225 Fleet Africa fleet units with 427 units that is 59% of the overall fleet that had aged (i.e.: as far as 10-20yrs) that is guided by the Fleet Policy.

#### **3. High maintenance costs**

Council has procured a fleet solution which provided for managed maintenance option. This option functions better provided that fleet units are new/ relatively new and procured with maintenance/ warrantee/ service plan. The biggest driver of this maintenance cost is due to ageing fleet and fleet units procured without maintenance/ warrantee/ and service plan. The other major driving force of high maintenance costs is the contractual mark-up added on repairs, maintenance and accessories. Driver behaviour also a mayor contributing factor to high maintenance costs.

#### **4. Utilization and fuel management**

Vehicle log sheet and fuel slips are not submitted timeously as per the fleet policy by some SBUs.

## **5. Driver behavior and negligence**

The municipality is experiencing high accident rate that results in vehicles been written off before their expected vehicle life cycle.

### **9.11.8 Interventions and control measures**

1. Engagements and consultation with BTO, during budget consultation process to address the budget challenge.
2. Centralisation of fleet budget to Fleet Management Services SBU.
3. Engagements with other SBUs with regards to institutional fleet needs analysis.
4. Submission of monthly vehicle utilisation and fuel reports to SBUs.
5. Future procurement of vehicles will include maintenance plan or warranty.
6. Market related mark ups should be negotiated to the benefit of the municipality.

### **9.12 INFORMATION COMMUNICATION AND TECHNOLOGY (ICT)**

The world has seen extraordinary development in information and communications technology with significant global dimensions. It is impossible to ignore the importance of ICT wherever and whenever good governance is pursued. The use of ICT has been identified as the other challenge facing the transformation of municipalities, both within local government agencies and also regarding to external stakeholders (traditional leaders, citizens and local businesses). The effective and intelligent use of ICT has been an essential component of modern administrative science. It is a fact that ICT has great potential to speed up the transformation process. However, the public service track record in the use of ICT is far from ideal. It is a verity that ICT has brought a bright perspective to the human condition, but two factors must be taken into consideration, in order to take advantage of it and to facilitate public participation: accessibility and availability. If this aspect is not addressed, the use of ICT for more efficient public-service delivery might become a value which serves the vested interests of a few stakeholders, while others view them as constraints to their freedom.

ICT plays an important role in strengthening democracy, as it improves the relationship between citizens and public administration. The relationship includes the information privacy of citizen boundaries within and between the organizations; political and public accountability; and citizenship in a consumer democracy. Strategically use of ICT in a public service environment produces the following benefits:

- Speed or quality of service delivery
- Increased public access to service agencies or departments
- The facilitation of remote communication and transactions

- Enhance transparency.

The integration of public services and the destruction of the administrative walls separating bureaucratic departments and government agencies.

### **9.12.1 ICT - SMART City Concept**

During the State of the City Address, the municipality announced its adoption of the 2030 Smart City Vision as a way of fast-tracking service delivery to the community. Consistent with the 2030 Smart City Vision, the city launched six pillars that will assist the municipality to work towards the realization of becoming a Smart City; this will be the city that is characterized by a Smart Economy, Smart Environment, Smart Governance, Smart Living, Smart Mobility and Smart People. This Smart City concept is carried within the city's vision to be the "The ultimate in innovation and sustainable development".

All six of the aforementioned elements of a smart city can increasingly become more achievable and manageable by being connected through the use of ICT and developing technological systems. Furthermore, we believe that there is a great opportunity for this council to join other smart thinking cities the world over who see the opportunity to own ICT infrastructure which may be a major source of revenue in the future.

### **9.12.2 ICT Governance**

The ICT SBU is required by the Corporate Governance of ICT Policy Framework (CGICTPF) to develop and maintain an ICT Architecture, consisting mainly of the **ICT Strategic Plan** (also known as an ICT Strategic Master Systems Plan) **ICT Implementation Plan**, and **Operational plan**; and those three plans are approved and adopted.

**Diagram shows the alignment of Municipal objectives and ICT objectives.**



Source: PLK ICT SBU

The strategy aims to ensure ongoing support to the municipal users by means of improved service delivery, by achieving the following objectives:

- Objective:** To provide integrated ICT solutions.

**Description:** To make municipal services more accessible on e-services (i.e. online), which will reduce the cost of accessing the services and improve turnaround times and strengthen accountability and responsiveness.
- Objective:** To enhance ICT Infrastructure and develop smart technology solutions.

**Description:** To design, develop, implement and maintain the hardware, software, data center and a high-speed communication network in keeping up with emerging technological trends in order to enhance the performance of service delivery.
- Objective:** To continuously improve in the development and implementation of ICT Governance.

**Description:** To continuously implement, evaluate and monitor Corporate Governance of ICT Policy Framework in order improve the ICT SBU's operations.
- Objective:** To provide a secured ICT infrastructure that assures integrity, confidentiality, and availability of municipal data, information and knowledge.

**Description:** To continuously enforce the implementation ICT security Framework across all hardware and software in order to protect data as a municipal asset.



## **Implement Corporate Governance of Information and Communication Technology Policy Framework (CGICTPF):**

**Phase 1** - Create an enabling environment for the implementation for the Corporate Governance of ICT and Governance of ICT.

- Information and Communication Technology Steering Committee was in place with 4 quarterly meetings held for the period under review.
- Information and Communication Technology Policies are in place.

**Phase 2** - Strategic alignment (Collaboration of ICT and Business) was completed and the governance documents were adopted by council.

- The 2022/23 Operational Plan is being drafted for adoption.
- The ICT Strategy is in the fifth and final year (F/Y 2022/23) alignment to new business objectives is required and the process will start in the current financial year (2022/23).
- Enterprise Architecture project as part of the CGICTPF.

**Phase 3:** Continuous improvement of governance and strategic alignment arrangements

- Information and Communication Technology has drafted the Cyber Security Procedure to deal with threats related to Cyber Crime.
- The ICT Policies, Disaster Recovery Plan and ICT Business Continuity were adopted by Council for Implementation.

### **9.12.3 ICT Challenges**

- a) Electronic Documents and Records Management System (EDRMS).
- b) Partially integrated systems.
- c) Connectivity to Cluster Offices and Telephone Systems
- d) Aging Desktop Hardware and Network Cabling Infrastructure

#### **Interventions**

- a) Implementation of Enterprise Resource Planning to ensure integrated solution with all systems modules including EDRMS.
- b) Continuous improvement and maintenance Connectivity and VOIP Telephone System.
- c) Replacing old Desktop Computers and Network Cabling with latest technologies

### **9.12.4 Enterprise Resource Planning Project**

**Objective:**

- a) To digitize and modernize business operations to enable delivery of services effectively and efficiently.
- b) To upgrade server hardware, financial management, and HR system.
- c) To automate manual operations.
- d) To resolve the incorrect billing currently experienced.
- e) Implementation of Electronic Documents and Records Management system

**Deliverables:**

- a) ICT Infrastructure Upgrade, Security Systems and Disaster Recovery.
- b) Implementation of Financial Management System
  - Revenue Management
  - Supply chain Management
  - Billing
  - Contract Management
- c) Implementation of Human Resource Management.
  - Employee's self service
  - Payroll
- d) Integration of 3rd party systems to FMS
  - TCS
  - GIS
  - Performance Management
  - Risk and Audit management system
  - Library system

**Progress to date:**

- a) New server room hardware was implemented in 2018/2019 Financial Year, and it is at a maintenance stage.
- b) A new Firewall security system has been implemented in the 2020/2021 Financial Year.
- c) Financial system (Munsoft and SAGE 300 People) was implemented, and Management w successfully generate Annual Financial Statements for two Financial Years.
- d) Integration of Payroll and, GIS and Munsoft completed
- e) Electronic Documents and Records Management System implementation is underway
- f) Disaster Recovery Plan was drafted and adopted by Council for implementation in the 2021/2022 Financial Year

### 9.12.5 New Hardware Upgraded (2019/20 FY)

Below picture shows the new hardware installed as part of Data centre upgrade in the 2019/20 FY and the systems.

**Figure: New Hardware**



Source: PLK ICT SBU

### 9.12.6 New Hardware Benefits

- a) The new storage of has been upgraded to **100 TB**
- b) Backup and disaster recovery system that has resolved audit queries for Business Continuity and Disaster Recovery.
- c) A new Firewall security system has been implemented in the 2020/2021 Financial Year,
- d) Improved compliance e.g., AGSA findings, and
- e) Stability and improved response time of systems such as email, internet and other systems.
- f) High availability of critical server equipment.
- g) Hardware is under manufacturer warranty maintenance unlike the old infrastructure.

## 9.13 Network Connectivity and VOIP Telephone System Implementation

### Objectives:

- a) To upgrade the Radio Link Network Connectivity to all 56 site offices.
- b) To implement voice over IP telephone system to all 56 sites and Civic Centre.

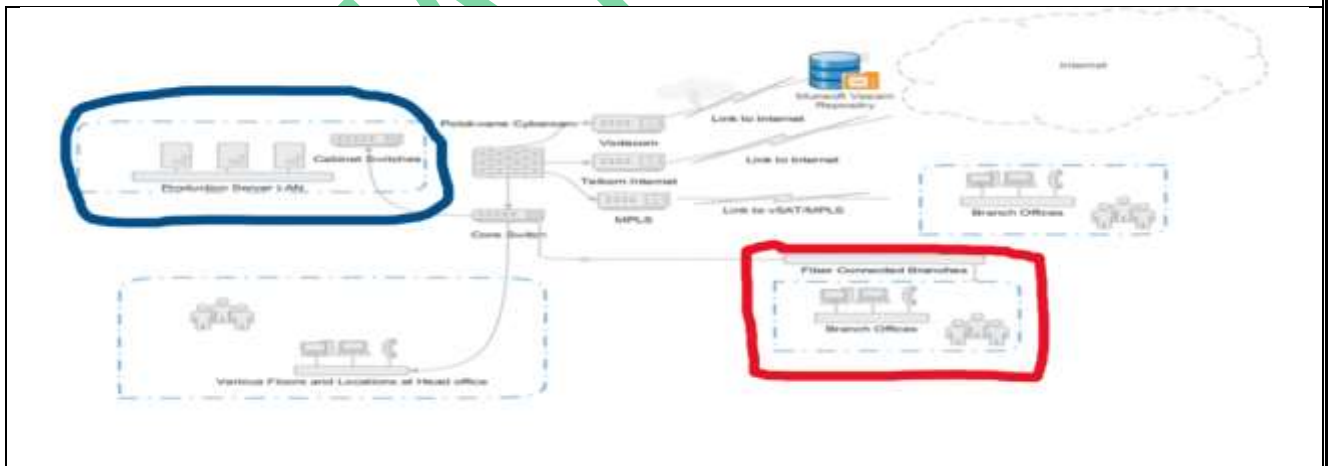
### 9.13.1 ICT (Telephone Systems)

Brilliant Telecommunication was appointed to implement telephone system in 2021/22 FY. The system is a **Voice Over IP (VOIP)** solution that depends on network connectivity. The solution is implemented in all cluster offices including Control Centre (Traffic Office).

### 9.13.2 Telephone Network Configuration

The below diagram shows the network configuration of the telephone system. The area marked in **blue** is the City's server room situated at the Civic Centre, this is where the telephone controller is hosted. The server room is connected to the Ladanna Call Centre through an overhead fibre connection marked in **red**. In an event the fibre connection between Civic Centre and Ladanna is damaged, the call centre telephones will be affected.

### Network Configuration



Source: PLK ICT SBU

### 9.13.3 City of Polokwane Call Centre Numbers

**Service Challenges Report Line** -The Municipality has implemented a **queuing system** with a voice prompt listing different services for callers to select from. The queuing system is

applicable on the Municipality main line telephone numbers: **015 290 2000 and 015 023 5000.**

### **9.13.4 Telephone System Challenges**

The major challenge that we have with the Call Centre telephones is the **fiber connectivity** between the Civic Centre. Each Month the fiber connection between the two sites is damaged and for business continuity we rerouted the connection through a temporary link. Below pictures show the damage and repair process.

**Figure: Damage and repair process of fiber connection.**



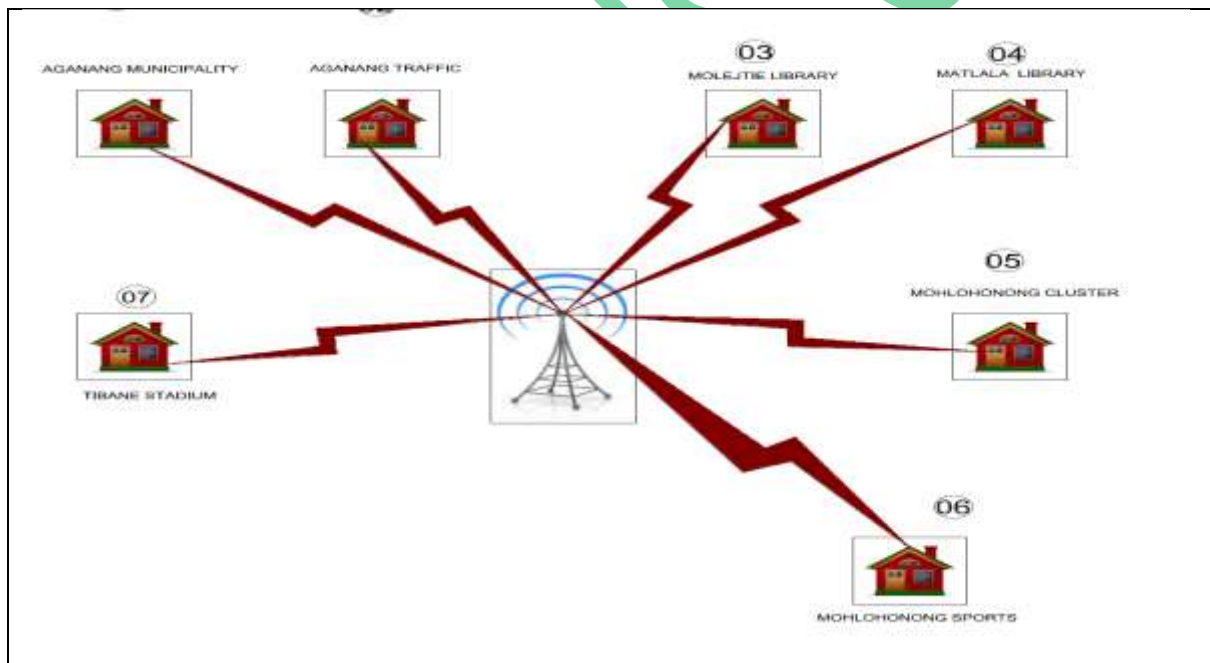




Source: PLK ICT SBU

### 9.13.5 Connectivity for Aganang Cluster

#### Connectivity for Aganang Cluster

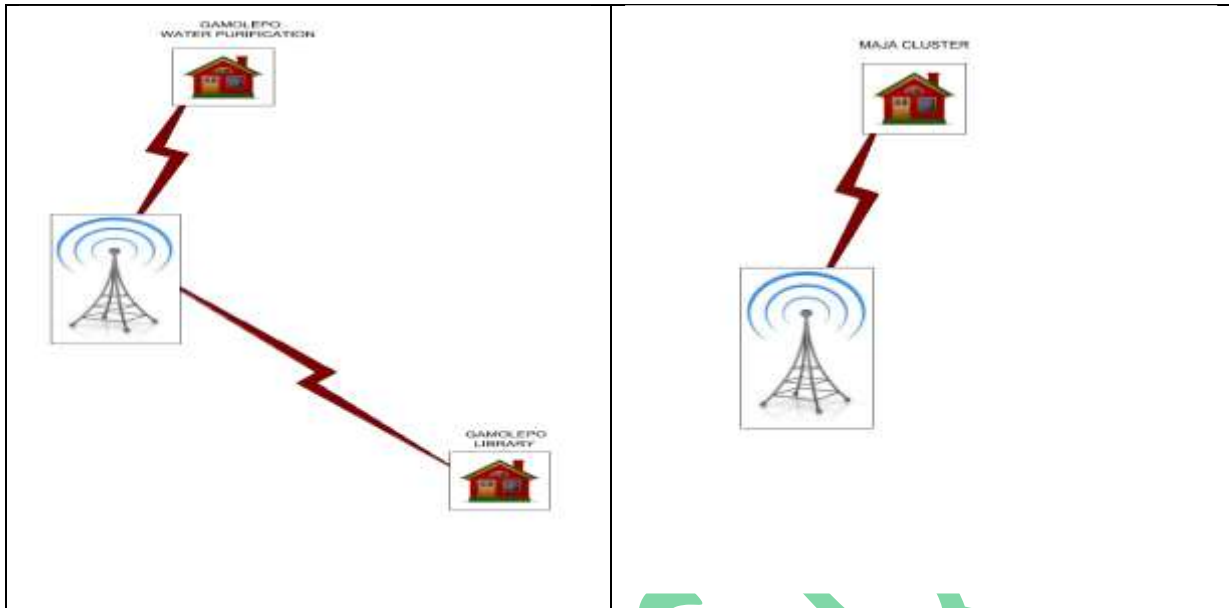


Source: PLK ICT SBU



### 9.13.6 Connectivity for Molepo/ Chuene/Maja Cluster

#### Connectivity for Molepo/ Chuene/Maja Cluster



Source: PLK ICT SBU

### 9.13.6 Network cabling in the offices

#### Before and after situation of network cabling in the offices.

Another challenge for telephones is related to network cabling in the offices. Most of the network cabling in the offices is old, recently appointed a service provider to replace the old cabling. We have started with 10<sup>th</sup> floor at Civic Centre and Ladanna Traffic Office, below pictures show the before and after situation.

#### Before and after situation of network cabling in the offices.



Source: PLK ICT SBU

## **9.14 RECORD MANAGEMENT**

### **9.14.1 Record Management Objectives**

**The main objectives of the unit are:**

- a) To keep all Records and perform the general administration of Council, Mayoral Committee and all other Committees established by Council.
- b) To attend to the electronic document management system
- c) To move away from paper documents to electronic documents for all committees.

### **9.14.2 Challenges/Constraints for Record Management**

- a) Lack of Electronic document management system
- b) Lack of storage cabinet for current files

**Solutions:**

- a) The Implementation of Electronic Documents and Records Management System
- b) Institution record management awareness or roadshow.
- c) Request HR training division to cover Record Management as part of induction package for new employees.

## 9.15 LEGAL SERVICES

The municipality has a well-established legal services unit which is responsible for the following:

1. Co-ordinate, facilitate and manage all external and internal legal actions and processes on behalf of and against the Municipality.
2. Develop and review by-laws and policies.
3. Develop and review a system of delegation of powers.
4. Advise on matters of legal compliance.
5. Effective legal support services
6. Municipal policy framework
7. Contracts (including service level agreements) drafting and vetting.
8. Finalization of (long) outstanding litigious matters.
9. Management of Illegal Land Use.

### 9.15.1 Core Functions of Legal Services

The Unit is further sub- divided into the following **4 Specialized** areas:

1. Litigations
2. Properties
3. Legislation and law enforcement
4. Governance and corporate affairs

The unit has **FIVE** lawyers appointed to handle each area of specialization in the municipality

#### 1. Litigation

There has been growth in litigation initiated by law firms and private parties since the beginning of the new democracy; this signifies the population exercising their rights freely in the courts of law. There is a need for the Municipality to put measures in place to reduce costs where is necessary to do so. The current panel of qualified and experienced Attorneys from where appointment to represent the Municipality is coming to an end. However due the current pandemic in the country, an extension is ought for the extension of the panel until the advertisement and appointment is finalized. Attorneys are appointed on a necessity basis as some matters are according to their complexity handled internally and/ or referred to the Insurance with a view to reduce legal fees. As a way of reducing spending on cases, matters

that are less complex are handled internally and when the matter is ripe for hearing an Attorney is appointed to represent the Municipality as and when a need arises.

Cases emanate from different causes of actions which are categorized hereunder:

- Contract Management 04  
(3 handled externally and 1 handled internally)
- General damages 27  
(20 handled externally)  
(7 handled internally)
- Public liability 13  
(All handled externally)  
(19 referred to the Insurance)
- Services rendered 12  
(All handled externally)
- Revenue management 2  
(2 handled externally)
- Illegal land use 47  
(All handled external)
- Notice of motion (applications) 9  
(Handled externally)
- Summons issued by the municipality 2  
against third parties  
(All handled externally)

### **Challenges Litigation**

1. Locus standing to appear in court challenged which may have an impact of cases handled internally, if found wanting this will have an impact on the budget as it will mean we have to appoint external attorneys.
2. Civil litigation takes a long time to finalize and this impact on the budget as there has to be more funds budget to finalize the matter.
3. Further instructions from User departments not furnished and thus impacting on the outcome of cases.
4. Lack of financial resources (constraint budget) with the permanent sit of the High in Polokwane, Claimants opt for litigation in the High Court.
5. Non-compliance with rules and regulations resulting in litigation and exposing the Municipality to financial risk.

6. No progress from matters referred to the Insurance resulting in matters pending for a long time.
7. Illegal land-uses in the city increasing daily
8. Reliance on the internet for research on legal opinions
9. Lack of storage resulting in decentralization of files/ information

**Intervention Litigation**

1. Attorneys called for in house clarity where same is sought.
2. Instruction to dismiss long outstanding matters issued.
3. Supervisory intervention in the event of instructions not being furnished.
4. Pleadings in other matters are prepared in house and finalized by in-house legal advisors, in other files referral for appointment is done at a later stage.
5. A need to come up with strategy on handling of illegal land-use without litigating.
6. Establishment of legal library
7. Creation of storage space

**2. Governance and Corporate Affairs**

Service Level Agreements	Number
Instructions received for drafting	92
Service Level Agreement drafted	92
Service level agreement signed	89
Number not yet signed and awaiting MM's signature	03
Memorandum of Agreement/Understanding	
Instruction received for drafting	06
Drafted	06
Finalized	06
PAIA	
Instructions received for commenting	15

Finalized	13
Pending	02
<b>Legal Opinions</b>	
Finalized	06
Pending	0
<b>Legal Comments on Council Report:</b>	
Finalized	06

Source: Legal Services SBU

#### Challenges Governance and Corporate Affairs

1. Service Providers take time to return the signed agreements for Municipal Manager's to sign.
2. Delay in appointment of legal advisors.

#### Interventions Governance and Corporate Affairs

1. Service Providers should not be allowed to render services before the agreement is signed.
2. Expedite appointment of Legal Advisors to assist with governance and corporate affairs matters.
3. To review matter with potential of settlement without setting a precedence for future claimants.

#### 3. Legislation & Law Enforcement

By-laws/Policies Status	Number of Cases
By-laws drafted & adopted by council pending promulgation	08
By-laws adopted & promulgated	03
Policies drafted & pending adoption by council	04



By-laws/Policies Status	Number of Cases
Policies adopted	03
Draft By-laws carried over to 2020/2021	12
By-laws adopted and promulgated for the period 2020/2021	07
Draft Policies for the period 2020/2021	06
Policies adopted for the period 2020/2021	0

Source: Legal Services SBU

### Challenges experienced in the drafting of By-Laws and Policies

1. It happens from time to time that SBU's do not include Legal Services in the consultation process when embarking on the drafting of various by-laws and policies.
2. This conduct causes delays in the process and also creates a risk for the municipality where documents which have not been legally vetted gets adopted by Council.

### Interventions aimed at addressing challenges

1. Regular updating of the Municipal Code Enables Legislation and Law Enforcement to effect amendments to and to update existing policies and by-laws and presenting such documents to the relevant SBU's requesting their comment and inputs.
2. Such relevant policies and by-laws are then reviewed and updated via this initiation process, thus minimizing possible risk.

### 1. Legal Property

Notarial Leases	Number
Number of notarial leases	06
Finalized	04
Pending	02
Lease Agreements	
Number of lease agreements	07

Finalized	07
Pending	0
<b>TRANSFER OF IMMOVABLE PROPERTIES:</b>	
Number of immovable properties	387
Finalized	9
Pending	378
<b>Cancellation of Notarial Lease Agreements</b>	
Number	6
Finalized	5
Pending	1
<b>Legal Comments on Council Report :</b>	
Number	57
Finalized	57
Pending	0
<b>Legal Opinions</b>	
Number	01
Finalized	01
Pending	0
<b>Donation Agreement</b>	
Finalized	0
Pending	03

Source: Legal Services SBU

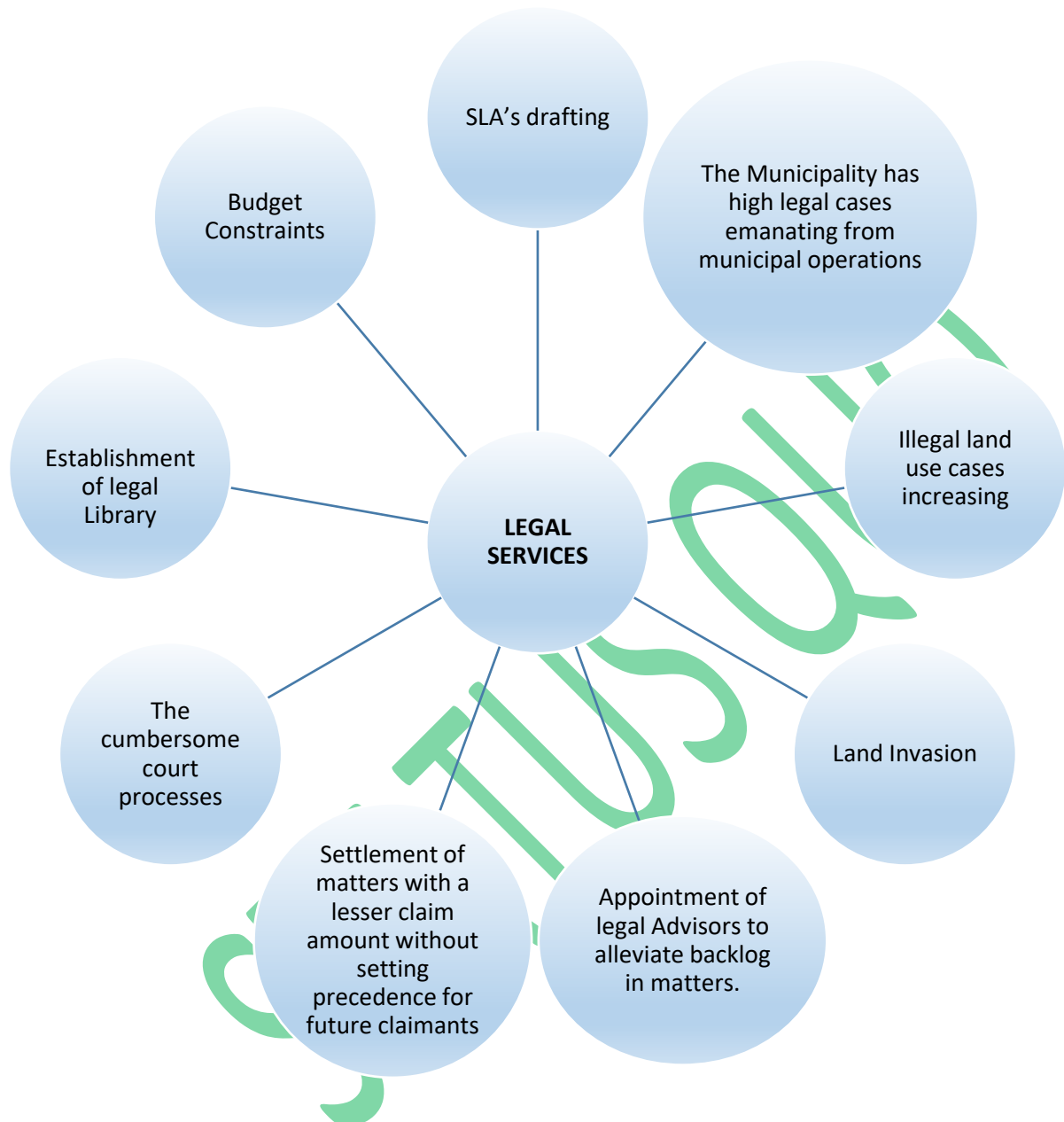
### **Challenges Legal Property**

1. Purchasers relies on financial institutions to finance the sale of the immovable property through mortgage bond and the process delays the transfer of ownership.
2. Dealing with project managers who does not have necessary expertise in property matters or real estate.
3. Delay in finalizing matters.

### **Interventions Legal Property**

1. Property Management SBU should manage ALL Council owned properties.
2. The Department of Rural Development has brought service closer to the City of Polokwane by opening the Office of the Registrar of Deeds and this will enable the Municipality to expedite the transfer of ownership of the immovable properties and registration of Notarial lease agreements.
3. Increase capacity in the Property Management SBU.

### 9.15.2 Legal Services challenges



### 9.15.3 Interventions-Legal Services

1. Appointment of legal Services Officials to be members of Bid Specification Committee (BSC).
2. Review matters with potential of settlement.
3. Approval of quotation for quality assurance and effective drafting of SLA's finalization.
4. Budget provision
5. Handling of litigious matters internally prior to handing them over to private attorneys

Constant engagement with the justice cluster (Judiciary) to ease the delay in dealing with contraventions of Municipal By-laws.

## 9.16 FACILITIES MANAGEMENT

The Municipality has established the SBU to assist in maintaining and up keeping of municipal buildings. The SBU is responsible for routine maintenance over **110 municipal facilities**. The objective of the SBU is to maintain municipal facilities in accordance with SANS 10400:1990, SABS Standard Act: 2008 and the Occupational Health and Safety Act Regulations Act 85/1993 and Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act 2010 (Act 2 of 2010) (SASREA) in order to provide a conducive environment to the employees and the community at large, utilising or visiting the Municipal offices.

### 9.16.1 List of Municipal Facilities in all Clusters

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
<b><u>POLOKWANE CBD</u></b>		
1.	Civic Centre	Landros mare str
2.	Council Chamber	Church str
3.	Fire Brigade old Airport	Silicon road
4.	Game Reserve	Silicon road
5.	Environment	Webster street
6.	Environmental storeroom	Webster street
7.	Transfer Site	Webster street
8.	Library Gardens	Jorrison str
9.	Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre	Bus Terminals
10.	Main Transfer Site	Silicon road
11.	Bird Sanctuary	Emdo
12.	Museum (Irish House)	Thabo Mbeki str
13.	Bakone Malapa	R52
14.	Art Museum	Jorrison str
15.	Art Museum Storeroom	Biccard Str
16.	Town Pool	Thabo Mbeki str
17.	Visitors Information Centre	Church str
18.	Aids Centre	Magazane str

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
19.	Water Purification	Dalmada
20.	Recreation centre	Burger str
21.	Cricket club	Suid str
22.	Netball courts	Burger str
23.	Old Peter Mokaba Stadium	Dorp Str
24.	New Peter Mokaba Stadium	Magazyn Street
25.	Show ground	N1
26.	Sports and recreation offices	Burger str
27.	Jack Botes Hall	Church str
28.	Huge Hauston Musium	Landros Maré str
29.	Public toilets x 20	Town
30.	Tennis court	Compensatie str
31.	Cooking Facilities	Church str
32.	Cemetery	Dahl str
33.	Cemetery	Church str
34.	African Market	Market Street
35.	Substations x 15	
36.	Capricorn Flying Club	26 Pierre Street, Bendor
<b>LADANNA; WESTERNBURG AND NIRVANA</b>		
37.	Hostel Ladanna	Asbes Str
38.	Westernburg Library	Buys str
39.	Hostel Matlala Road	Matlala Road
40.	Nirvana Library	Tagore str
41.	Water and Sanitation	Vermukuliet str
42.	Sewer Purification	Asbes str
43.	Electrical workshop	Vermukuliet str
44.	Mechanical workshop	Vermukuliet str
45.	Roads & Storm water workshop	Vermukuliet str
46.	Nursery	Asbes Str
47.	Waste offices	Vermikuliet str
48.	Nirvana Hall	Tagore str
49.	Westernburg Hall	Buys str
50.	Fire Brigade Ladanna	Vermikuliet str



No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
51.	Nirvana stadium	Himalaya Ave
52.	Nirvana sports facilities	Himalaya Ave
53.	Westernburg sports facilities	Tagore str
54.	Nirvana Cricket grounds	Himalaya Ave
55.	Traffic Station	Ladanna
56.	Nirvana swimming pools	Orient Dr
57.	Swimming pool	Tagore str
58.	Mayor Guest House	Soetdooring
59.	Transfer site	Vermikuliet str
60.	Stores	Vermikuliet str
61.	Public toilets x2	Ladanna and Nirvana
62.	Substations x 8	
<b>SESHEGO CLUSTER</b>		
63.	Offices	Zone 1 Chris Hani Dr
64.	Offices	Zone 3 Kwena str
65.	Offices	Zone 8
66.	Water Purification	Zone 4
67.	Waste Purification	Zone 6
68.	Seshego Library	Zone 2
69.	Environment Deport	Zone 3
70.	Ngoako Ramahlodi Sports Complex	Zone 7
71.	Seshego stadium	Zone 1
72.	Seshego sports complex	Zone 1
73.	Seshego sports fields	Zone 6
74.	Public toilets	Zone 2 & 4
75.	Environmental depot	Zone 8
76.	Substations x 3	
77.	Mashinini Pump Station	
<b>MANKWENG, SEBAYENG/ DIKGALE CLUSTER</b>		
78.	Sewer Purification	Nchichane
79.	Offices	Zone A
80.	Offices	Zone C
81.	Offices	Sebayeng

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
82.	Traffic	Zone B
83.	Fire Station Offices	Zone A
84.	Transfer station	Nchichane
85.	Taxi Rank	Zone A
86.	Community Hall	Zone A
87.	Public toilet University Hawkers Centre	Gate 2
88.	Transfer station	Dikgale
89.	Transfer station	Makotopong
90.	Public toilet Hospital Hawkers Centre	Hospital
<b>MOLETJIE CLUSTER</b>		
91.	Library	Moletjie
92.	Offices	Moletjie
93.	Water Purification	Ramakgapula
94.	Ga-Manamela Stadium	Ga Manamela
95.	Transfer station	Vaalkop
96.	Transfer station	Makgakga
<b>MOLEPO/CHUENE /MAJA CLUSTER</b>		
97.	Office	Maja
98.	Water Treatment Plant	Ga- Chuene
99.	Sports complex	Molepo
100.	Sports complex	Maja
101.	Library	Molepo
<b>AGANANG CLUSTER</b>		
102.	Office	Aganang
103.	Hall	Aganang
104.	Traffic and Licensing	Aganang
105.	Ipopeng Parliament Democracy Office	Matlala
106.	Ward office	Mashashane
107.	Stadium	Mohlonong
108.	Stadium	Tibane
109.	Jupiter Hall	Mashashane
110.	Landfill site	Aganang
111.	Nobel Hawkers Centre	Nobel

Source: PLK Facilities Management SBU

### **9.16.2 Procedures for maintenance services**

The following procedures are in place when maintenance complains, or request have been received at the facility management unit:

1. Every maintenance service request forwarded by a client to the office of facility management SBU shall be recorded.
2. Once the request has been received a response to acknowledge the request is sent back to the client.
3. At the closure of each request the client shall sign off on the job card which was opened at the beginning of the request.
4. Should a job card come back with comments that it cannot be done internally; the client will be informed of such, and the request will further be attended to by a service provider until its closed.

#### **Priority of work and response times**

Priority of work is taken up in three stages:

- (i) High priority: where maintenance is required by law or is life threatening and affects or compromises the core business of the Municipality. This request shall be attended to at our earliest convenience.
  - (ii) Medium priority: where maintenance is not of a high priority. This request shall receive the priority it requires.
1. Low priority: where the core business of the Municipality is not compromised by the need of maintenance. This request shall receive the priority it requires.

### **9.16.3 Maintenance of municipal facilities**

#### **Routine maintenance**

Routine maintenance is regarded as a service attending to day-to-day maintenance needs. This type of maintenance is done when maintenance requests are reported to facility management by the client on a day-to-day basis.

#### **Scheduled Maintenance**

This type of maintenance is regarded as maintenance needs identified by way of annual, quarterly and monthly inspections conducted by the facility management SBU. The findings are then handed over to PMU for further assessment and implementation.

#### 9.16.4 Trades conducted under routine maintenance

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
1.	<b>Electrical maintenance works:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair/replace plugs, switches, light fittings and bulbs</li> <li>• Repair/replace electrical reticulation within erfs</li> <li>• Verification and certification of electrical installations on premises</li> <li>• repair/replace distribution board</li> </ul>
2.	<b>Plumbing maintenance works:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repairing/replacing of damaged sewer pipes</li> <li>• Replacing of sanitary ware: basins, toilet pots, seats</li> <li>• Replacing of damaged toilet mechanisms</li> <li>• Unblocking of sewer pipes</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of damaged water supply pipes</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of damaged rain water gutters</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of element in the geyser and geyser complete</li> </ul>
3.	<b>Air conditioning maintenance works:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repairing of elements in the air-conditioners and heat pumps</li> <li>• Replacing of damaged elements, gas etc.</li> <li>• Servicing of air-conditioners and heat pumps</li> </ul>
4.	<b>Sound and microphones maintenance works</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repairing/servicing and replacing of microphones</li> <li>• Repairing/servicing and replacing of amplifiers</li> <li>• Repairing/servicing and replacing of speakers</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of cables and wires</li> </ul>
5.	<b>General building maintenance works</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repairing of damaged brickwork</li> <li>• Repairing of damaged plastering and painting work</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of damaged carpets</li> <li>• Replacing of damaged window panes</li> </ul>

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
6.	<b>Carpentry and joinery maintenance works</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repairing/replacing of damaged ceilings</li> <li>• Repairing of damaged wood furniture and doors</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of door locks, hinges, window stays and handles etc. (Ironmongery)</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of waterproofing membrane on the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i)Roofs</li> <li>(ii)Windows</li> <li>(iii)Doors</li> <li>(iv)Basements</li> <li>(v)Walls</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
7.	<b>Precast concrete and metal maintenance work</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repairing of damaged hot steel works etc.</li> <li>• Repairing/replacing of metal structures and precast concrete work</li> </ul>
8.	<b>Fixed generators maintenance works</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Servicing of the generator, quarterly or per specification</li> <li>• Refilling of diesel</li> <li>• Testing of generators monthly (Required by law)</li> </ul>
9.	<b>Fumigation of municipal facilities</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fumigation of municipal facilities</li> <li>• Bees and birds nest removal</li> <li>• Removal of termite's mount</li> <li>• Replacing of damaged window panes</li> </ul>
10.	<b>Supply and delivery of building and cleaning material</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supply and delivery of building materials</li> <li>• Supply and delivery of cleaning materials</li> </ul>
11.	<b>Cleaning of offices and public toilets</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deep and conventional cleaning of offices and public toilets</li> <li>• Issuing out of toilet papers to the public</li> <li>• Up keeping of cleanness of the facility during the day</li> <li>• Ensuring that the properties are not vandalised by constant appearance and locking up at the end of the day</li> </ul>

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
12.	<b>Cleaning and disinfection of municipal wide ablution facilities</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Cleaning and disinfection of sanitary fittings (basins, toilet pot and seat)</li> <li>• Servicing of sanitary bins monthly (required by law)</li> <li>• Servicing of hand dryer</li> <li>•Servicing of soap dispenser</li> <li>•Servicing of seat wipes</li> <li>• Servicing of air fresheners</li> </ul>
13.	<b>Servicing of the lifts</b>	•Monthly servicing of the lifts (Library garden, council chamber; old peter Mokaba stadium and civic centre)

Source: PLK Facilities Management SBU

### 9.16.5 Codes and Standards

#### Paint colours

- (i) The standard paint colours to be applied on interior walls of municipal facilities are cream, white or peach, unless otherwise specified by the client as special request.
- (ii) The standard paint colours to be applied on exterior walls of municipal facilities falls under the earthy group of colours or corporate colours, unless otherwise specified by the client as special request.

#### Carpets

- (i) Standard carpets to be used are tile carpets.
- (ii) Standard colour on the carpets is blue for all and maroon for executive offices.

#### Tiles

- (i) Tiles to be used are porcelain and should be non-slippery
- (ii) Staircase tiles must be fitted with an aluminium non-slippery strip

#### Roof coverings

- (i) Roof coverings should have a non-reflective finish

### 9.16.6 Covid 19 Fumigation of Municipal Offices

In order to Control the Spread of **Covid 19** Virus at Polokwane Municipality. The Facilities Management SBU is Responsible for Fumigation of all Municipal Facilities after positive Cases are identified in the offices.



# CHAPTER Ten: Roads and Transportation Services

## 10.1 Transportation Services

### 10.1.1 Introduction

Local government is responsible for creating, maintaining, and managing a vast network of local roadways, as well as providing both private and public transportation infrastructure and services. It also plays a crucial role in establishing integrated transportation planning.

### 10.1.2 COMPREHENSIVE INTEGRATED TRANSPORT PLAN (CITP)

National Land Transport Act of 2009 requires all Transport Authorities to develop the Integrated Transport Plans for their area for a period of Five (05) years and must be updated annually. The CIPT must be submitted to the MEC for approval. Polokwane Municipality must also submit its CITP to the Minister for approval of the Commuter Rail and Airports.

Polokwane Municipality CITP was developed in 2012 and still needs to be updated. It was adopted by Polokwane Municipality and was also approved by MEC as a living document which guides the Transport Planning within Polokwane Jurisdiction.

### 10.1.3 COMMUTER TRANSPORT CORRIDORS AND FACILITIES

There are two major commuter transport corridors in Polokwane:

- 1) Between Seshego/Moletji and the CBD
- 2) Between Mankweng and the CBD

**Seshego/Moletji Corridor:** This corridor serves the  $\pm$  38 000 households north-west of the CBD. Most commuters in this area stay within 15 km from the CBD in the Seshego, Perskebult, Blood River, Moletji and surrounding residential areas. According to the 2010 National Household Travel Surveys, less than 4% of working people staying in Seshego also work there. 74% of working people who stay in Seshego, work in Polokwane. The corridor is served by taxis and buses with the modal split 4:1 in favour of taxi passenger trips. The split between public and private transport is also 4:1 in favour of public transport trips.

Based on travel-time surveys undertaken in 2012, the average travel speed on this corridor (including stops) is around 35 km/h. This means that commuters from Seshego take approximately 25 minutes to travel the average distance of 15 km to town. This excludes other legs of the journey such as walking from the drop-off to the actual place of employment.

While the Seshego-Polokwane Taxi Association serve the Seshego area up to  $\pm$  15 km from the CBD, the Moletji Taxi Association serves the area further north, as far as 80 km from town. The population density north of Perskebult is however very low and the number of passenger trips are low in comparison with those from Seshego.

**Mankweng Corridor:** Taxis from the Mankweng Taxi Association make use of this corridor to serve commuters staying in villages in the Mankweng and Moria areas, between 25 and 50 km east of the CBD. Taxis from the Sebayeng and Dikgale villages along the northern municipal boundary use the R81 while villages in the Mankweng and Moria areas are served by taxis using the R71. The 25 km travelled on the R71 increases the average speed to 50 km/h meaning that a taxi from University of Limpopo in Mankweng will cover the distance of 30 km to town in  $\pm$  35 minutes. The 40 km to the Boyne taxi rank in Moria will take  $\pm$  50 minutes.

## 10.2 MODE OF PUBLIC TRANSPORT FACILITIES

**Seshego/Moletji facilities:** Public transport facilities on this corridor consist only of bus/taxi stops and lay-bys on some arterial roads, because commuters are picked-up along the routes in the AM by both taxis and buses, there are no formal ranks in the residential areas. In the PM, commuters are also dropped off along the route. The fact that there is no need for modal transfers or transfers from long distance to local taxis also negates the need for ranks in the area.

**Mankweng facilities:** Because of the longer distance from town compared to Seshego, Mankweng has a more vibrant commercial center. The University of Limpopo (Turf Loop campus), the shopping center and the hospital form the core of the economic hub in Mankweng. Public transport users coming from the university shopping center and hospital rely on taxis departing from the Turf Loop Plaza Rank and the Hospital Rank to take them to town or the surrounding villages. These ranks are not specifically used during the AM or PM peak as is the case for most ranks but are used at a low intensity throughout the day as nurses finish their shifts and students come from class.

**Polokwane CBD facilities:** For inward trips, most of which are during the AM peak, bus and taxi passengers are dropped-off at various bus and taxi stops throughout the CBD. The lack of lay-bys or formalised drop-off points in the CBD however forces taxis and buses to stop in the roadway to off-load passengers. This blocks the general flow of traffic resulting in unnecessary congestion and vehicle-pedestrian conflict.

It is generally accepted that taxis and buses off-load commuters along the route instead of at a central rank. This is done to reduce walking distances and enable commuters to get to work quicker. For outward trips, most of which are during the PM peak between 16:00 and 19:00, taxis and buses depart from various ranks within the CBD. There are more than 23 taxi facilities in the Polokwane Municipal area of which approximately 60% are formalised.

A total of  $\pm$ 17 ranks provide local commuter services. There is only one informal rank specifically dedicated for long-distance taxis, while the remaining ranks provide both local and long-distance services. There are also four taxi holding areas of which only one has been formalised. There is a rank in Hospital/Silicon Street for subsidised commuter buses and a terminus in Thabo Mbeki Street for long distance buses. Metered taxis do not currently have allocated holding areas but on street locations are used to hold and load passengers.

- i) Pick 'n Pay Taxi Rank a (Church Str)
- ii) Pick 'n Pay Rank a (Pres Paul Kruger / Devenish Str)

- |        |  |      |
|--------|--|------|
| iii)   | Taxi Holding Area (Along Nelson Mandela Drive)<br>Taxi Holding Area (Devenish / Buite Str)                       | iv)  |
| v)     | Taxi Holding Area (Rissik / Buite Str)   |      |
| vi)    | Spar Taxi Rank (Rissik / Bok Str)  |      |
| vii)   | Checkers Taxi Rank (Biccard Str)   |      |
| viii)  | Oriental Plaza Taxi Rank (Excelsior Str)   |      |
| ix)    | Dahl Taxi Holding (RSA Café: Dahl between Grobler and Thabo Mbeki Str)<br>Westernburg Taxi Rank (Ben Harris Str) | x)   |
| xi)    | No. 87 Paul Kruger Street Long Distance Taxi Rank (Privately owned)<br>Mall of the North Taxi Rank(R81)          | xii) |
| xiii)  | Sasol Taxi Rank: Paledi Mall (R71)   |      |
| xiv)   | Boyne Taxi Rank (R71)  |      |
| xv)    | Bus Rank (Silicon Str)   |      |
| xvi)   | Mankweng Hospital Taxi Rank  |      |
| xvii)  | Turfloop Plaza Taxi Rank (University of North Str)   |      |
| xviii) | Mankweng Taxi Rank 2 (opposite the hospital)   |      |

### 10.2.2 Metered Taxi

- Metered taxis operate all over and outside Polokwane.
- Polokwane metered taxi association have 64 cabs with 31 owners.
- Capricorn metered taxi association has 113 cabs with 83 owners.
- They operate 24 hours a day.
- Metered taxis are not branded.
- No facilities provided for metered taxis, subsequently they stop all over town.
- Less than eight (08) are legally operating.

#### Currently metered taxis hold at the following locations:

- Pick 'n Pay in Church Street between Devenish Street and Rissik Street.
- Shoprite located at the corner of General Joubert and Thabo Mbeki Street.
- Grobler Street between Schoeman and Landros Mare Street.
- At Savannah Mall.
- Charles Parking area between Biccard and Hans van Rensburg Street.
- Capricorn Metered Taxi Association are still waiting for operating licenses.

### **10.3 Polokwane International Airport**

Although there are **two airports** in Polokwane (Gateway Airport Authority Limited (**GAAL**) and Polokwane Municipality Airport). Polokwane International Airport (GAAL) is flying passengers between Polokwane and Johannesburg.

The airport is located approximately **5 km** to the north of the Polokwane CBD (Central Business District). **SA Air link** has a scheduled flight service to between Johannesburg (OR Tambo) and Polokwane under the management of Gateway Airport Authority Ltd (GAAL). The service is code shared with South African Airways as the marketing carrier and SA Air link as the operating carrier.

There are also local and international unscheduled flights that make use of this airport. The approximate annual flights are between 4000 and 5 000 with an approximate passenger traffic of 38 000. There are four flights from Monday to Friday, one flight on a Saturday and two flights on Sundays.

#### **10.3.1 Polokwane Municipality Airport**

**Polokwane Municipality Airport** is leased to a private operator. Only private airplanes are landing in this airport. The lease agreement is with Land use under City Planning. This Airport is using the GAAL tower for taking off. The Municipality is not contributing financially to the rental of the tower, which leaves GAAL with the responsibility of renting the tower for the Airport that is not monitored. The near accidents that are audited in Polokwane Municipality Airport are counted under GAAL. The Monitoring and Regulation of Polokwane Municipality Airport in terms of Civil Aviation Authority compliance is very important.

#### **10.3.2 Rail**

The Passenger Rail Agency (PRASA) operates the Shosholoz Meyl long distance passenger service between Johannesburg and Musina via Polokwane. It is an economy class service (sitter accommodation) that operates 3 times per week in each direction.

The train leaves Johannesburg Station on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday evenings at 19:00 and arrives at Polokwane station at 03:50 in the morning. It departs at 04:30 for Musina and arrives there at 11:15.

The train to Johannesburg leaves Musina on Tuesday, Thursday, and Sunday afternoons at 15:25 and arrives at Polokwane at 21:48. It then departs for Johannesburg at 22:35 and arrives there at 05:44.

There are no intermodal transfer facilities for passengers who need to transfer between rail, bus or taxi. The distance by foot, from the railway station to both the Hospital Street bus rank and the Pick 'n Pay taxi rank is 1 km.

Given the lack of transfer facilities and the inconvenient arrival and departure times, the service is not very popular, and most passengers prefer to travel by bus.

### **10.4 FREIGHT TRANSPORT**

#### **10.4.1 Road freight**

Polokwane is the largest town on the N1 transport corridor between Gauteng and SADC countries to the north including Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi, the DRC and Tanzania. Most of

the freight imported from and exported to the above countries is transported by road. These trucks park all over the City during the day and night. They damage the sidewalks, Road signs and electricity poles. The construction of the Truck Inn was recommended by the Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan and development of intermodal freight logistics hub at the Airport.

#### **10.4.2 AIR FREIGHT**

Due to its central location in relation to the neighbouring countries such as Botswana, Mozambique and Zimbabwe, Polokwane International Airport has a significant potential for the export of freight. Long distances to Gauteng and other provinces also create opportunities for air freight transport, specifically for perishable goods such as fruit, beef and venison produced locally. The need for an Inter-modal freight hub in Polokwane has been identified by previous studies.

#### **10.4.3 RAIL FREIGHT**

Polokwane generates fresh produce and as such, freight rail plays an important part in transporting these products to various destinations in and out of the South Africa. Due to the high cost of freight road transport, it is expected that the freight rail will boost the economy of Polokwane by transporting the products at a lower cost. Based on the Department of Transport through Transnet Freight Rail has estimated that the cost of transportation can be reduced from R1.9 billion to R1.7 billion if 35% of cargo is transported by rail. This will result in the reduction of road trucks transporting citrus fruits to port from 55 000 trips to 32 000 trips.

Due to the high cost of road freight transport, Transnet has announced plans to move more freight by rail. This is a positive development for Polokwane as it will reduce damage to roads because of high freight volumes currently transported by road. On routes such as the N1 and the R81, the percentage of heavy vehicles is as high as between 15% and 20%. The fact that up to 17% of trucks are overloaded indicates that a lot of damage is being caused to road infrastructure.

It should however be noted that it is not only overloaded trucks which damage roads. The exponential relationship between axle loads and stresses in road pavement layers means that even trucks which are within the legal limit, causes a lot of damage to roads.

#### **10.5 A SMART WAY TO TRAVEL!**

The City of Polokwane is introducing an integrated Rapid Public Transport System (IRPTS), comprising various modes including taxis, buses and non-motorised transport service. This is in line with the National Land Transport Strategic Framework developed by the National Department of Transport. The IRPTS currently being planned for Polokwane is intended to transform the public transport sector through the provision of a high quality and affordable transport system whilst reducing the overall journey times for transport users.

As part of its mandate, the municipality has continuously been engaging with stakeholders but not limited to the current public transport operators, Ward Councillors and committees, commuters as well as residents about the upcoming Integrated Rapid Public Transport System.

## 10.6 TRANSPORT IMPLICATIONS OF THE SDF

Polokwane is facing high migration into its towns from rural areas, and which is fuelled by the expectations of finding of urban jobs. Daily migration into and out of Polokwane CBD for many workers to go and work elsewhere (mining and industrial areas) is a transport matter that needs to be understood in future planning, thus linking the urban and regional perspective is partly to be understood and described in the ITP. Such integrated transport and land-use planning strategies to achieve transport provision includes:

– The urban perspective by means of:

- Concentrating residential development at stations along public transport corridors.
- creating a high density of trip-attracting activities in central areas well served by public transport; and
- Issuing guidelines, which try to ensure that new developments are accessible to public transport.

The wider regional perspective:

- **Upgraded rail, road and air transport facilities.**
  - Lack of transport facilities for the long-distance transport services and the integration with the existing local public transport services. The integration of the above services with land use management becomes a central issue to ensure that proper transport services is provided where people live.
  - Proper land use rights and densification is promoted to make transport more effective and efficient.
  - Public transport amenities e.g., taxi- bus and railway facilities are focused in the north western part of Polokwane CBD between the Buite Street taxi holding area and the Polokwane Railway station.
  - Future links can be established between the taxi/bus terminus, the railway station and Polokwane International Airport

A specific feature of Polokwane's demographic profile is the high density Seshego and Moletji corridor north-west of the CBD. The following figure indicates household densities in Polokwane on a spatial format. The corridor provides an ideal opportunity for the development of an IRPT System which is appropriate for Polokwane's specific needs. The corridor has specific features:

- It includes the most densely populated part of Polokwane with a high demand for public transport.
- This high demand corridor stretches along Nelson Mandela Drive and New Era Road through the Seshego and Moletji residential nodes.
- The corridor is approximately 4 km wide and 15 km long making it suitable for the development of an IRPT system.
- The residential areas along the main corridor extend over  $\pm 80$  % of the route.
- The corridor is currently served by taxis and buses – there is no passenger rail.



- The residential areas along this corridor include ± 37 500 households within an area of approximately 38 km<sup>2</sup>.

### **10.7 INTERMODAL/ LONG DISTANCE TRANSPORT HUB**

Lack of transport facilities for the long-distance transport services and the integration with existing local public transport services, the integration of these services with land use management becomes a central issue to ensure that proper transport services is provided where people live. Proper land use rights and densification is promoted to make transport more effective and efficient. Public transport amenities e.g., taxi- bus and railway facilities are focused on the north-western part of Polokwane CBD between the Buite Street taxi holding

### **10.8 SYSTEM ELEMENTS OF THE LEETO LA POLOKWANE INTEGRATED PUBLIC TRANSPORT SYSTEM**

#### **10.8.1 Universal Access (UA)**

Universal Access (UA) on Leeto la Polokwane, is about giving all people an equal opportunity to access a quality transport service. In line with the UA principles, Leeto La Polokwane is designed to provide easy access to all people with a variety of needs.

The UA features on Leeto la Polokwane include the use of deployable boarding bridges to allow passengers on wheelchairs, and mothers with baby strollers to enter and exit the buses safely. The other features are raised tactile (textured) paving, beeping alarms, and voice announcements that guide people who have reduced vision and who cannot read.



### 10.8.2 Non-Motorized Transport (NMT)

An important aspect to Leeto la Polokwane is the provision of infrastructure for both pedestrians and cyclists. As a result, we have built about 18.01 km of Non-Motorized Transport (NMT) facilities which includes the pedestrian walkways that are dedicated to human powered means of getting around, like cycling, walking, skating, the use of wheelchairs and handcarts.

Our first NMT public infrastructure is on Lawton Road (Nirvana), Ben Harris (Westenburg) and Matlala Road (Westenburg). The Leeto la Polokwane infrastructure aims comply with universal access design standards to ensure the safety and inclusivity for everyone using the system



### 10.8.3 Industry Transition

- Capacitation of Vehicle Operating Company (VOC) board and staff completed.
- Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA) signed, and bus operations commenced.
- Second tranche of Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A compensation paid to 121 minibus (MBT) taxi operators.
- Surrendered 123 MBT vehicles disposed via auction and cancellation of linked Operating Licences (OLs) ongoing at the Limpopo Provincial Regulatory Entity (LPRE).
- Implementation of a Turnaround Strategy covering areas such as increasing ticket selling points, bus stop coverage, revision of operational plan and route optimisation.
- VOC business/shareholding structure finalised.
- Finalisation of value chain framework pending.

#### **10.8.4 Transport Planning and Operations**

- 21 standard buses have been procured and delivered to Polokwane.
- 5 x 9 meter buses delivered and 10 x 9 meter buses outstanding.
- completion and delivery of the outstanding midi-buses expected by the end of October 2022.
- Operations begun on the **27<sup>th</sup> October 2021**.
- Leeto La Polokwane is currently operational place along Phase 1A routes (Seshego – CBD, Nirvana – CBD and Flora Park – CBD).
- Control Centre (at Peter Mokaba Stadium) has been completed and operational during the Trial Operations.
- Interim Maintenance workshop upgrade has been completed and operational as the maintenance of the buses is done on daily basis at the workshop.
- Product and advanced driver training have been completed and the drivers from all affected taxi associations are currently operating Leeto La Polokwane.

#### **10.8.9 Intelligent Transport System Modelling**

- Account-Based Ticketing (ABT) System is the NDoT's preferred Automated Fare Collection (AFC) System for all cities operating Bus Rapid Transport (BRT) System in South Africa.
- Account-Based Ticketing (ABT) integration is in progress. SANRAL/Polokwane Municipality have signed a Memorandum of Agreement (MOA). The ABT system is currently undergoing a pilot phase and council approval.
- An alternative Fare collection mechanism (Paper Ticketing) is currently in use, as the systems' interim fare collection method
- Public Transport Management System has been installed in the buses, Control Centre, and Day-time Facility.
- Leeto La Polokwane Priority Traffic Signals have been installed at three (03) intersections along Nelson Mandela Drive.

#### **10.8.10 Marketing and Communications**

- Continuous Stakeholder consultations have been taking place with affected parties for Phase 1A.
- Information Material for Leeto La Polokwane developed and distributed through various channels e.g., website, social media, and print form.
- System uniform design has been finalised.
- Appointment of Internal Staff for Customer Care Centre is underway.
- Publication of the Fare Structure and Operational By-laws in the local Provincial Gazette has been completed.
- Driver Customer Care Training has been completed.
- Provision of Leeto La Polokwane customer relationship management services

### 10.8.11 Business and Finance

- 100 Standard Operation Procedures (SOP) for Leeto la Polokwane operations developed.
- Fare Policy has been developed and approved by Council.
- Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA) has been signed and approved by the City and Esilux.
- Financial Model has been signed off by the City and Esilux.

### 10.8.12 Leeto Infrastructure

- 4.65km of Dedicated Bus route (Nelson Mandela Drive to Seshego) completed.
- 31.49km of CBD routes have been rehabilitated.
- 20.41km of Seshego Bus routes have been upgraded.
- Rehabilitation of the Day-time Facility (interim depot) is almost completed.
- 17km of Non-Motorised Transport Facilities have been completed.
- Construction of the Depot (Seshego) and Terminal Station (on General Joubert Street) is under implementation.

### 10.9 Construction of the Bus Depot at Seshego







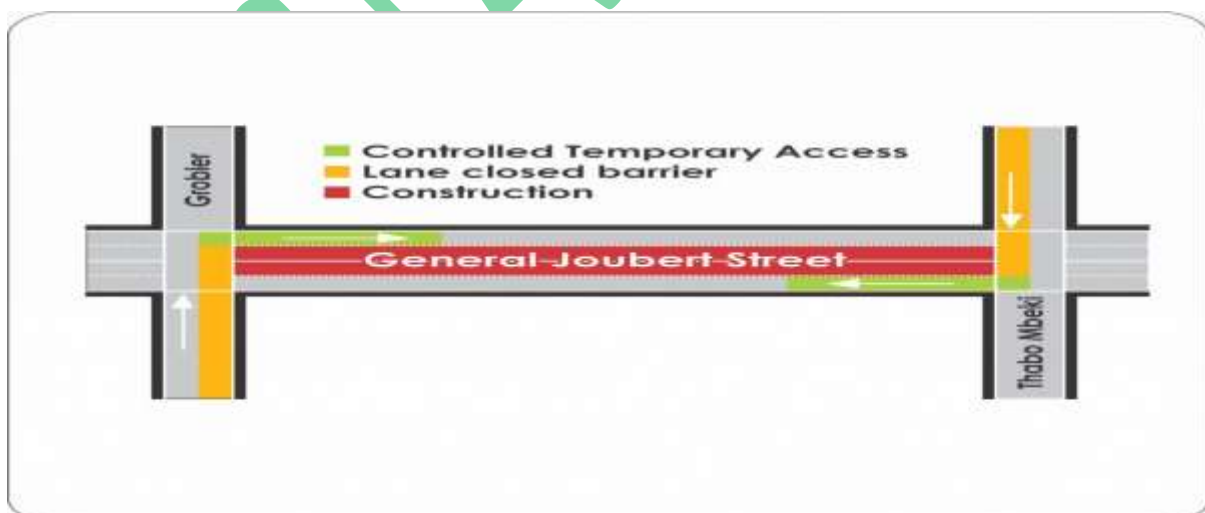
### 10.10 General Joubert Street Bus Station Precinct

The City of Polokwane's Integrated Public Transport System (IPTS), Leeto la Polokwane, is currently implementing the following infrastructure projects at the station precinct

- 1 – Construction of the Leeto la Polokwane bus Station on General Joubert Street
- 2 – Painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus dedicated lanes in the CBD

The construction will affect General Joubert Street between Grobler Street and Thabo Mbeki Street. This will result in restricted access for vehicles into the area (tenants only). This area is allocated for the Leeto la Polokwane station and dedicated Leeto La Polokwane bus lanes.

There will be no public parking in this area. Alternative parking is available on the corner of Bodenstein and Church Street.



Construction of the Leeto la Polokwane bus Station on General Joubert Street.

#### 10.10.1 Construction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD as of (27 July 2022)





## 10.11 Seshego Trunk Route

IRPTN has constructed a trunk route in the median between Seshego and the CBD. Currently it is about 4,5 kilometres. This route will be used by BRT Buses for the effective and efficient scheduled service.

Polokwane Municipality under IRPTN has also constructed the Non-Motorized Transport (NMT) both sides between the CBD and Seshego, Greenside and Westernburg. This infrastructure will be used by people walking and cycling.

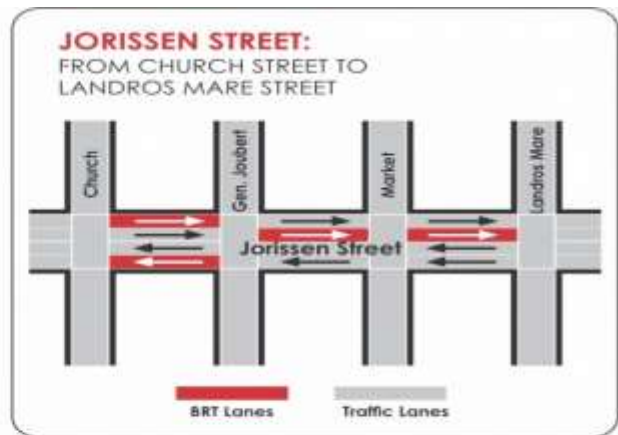
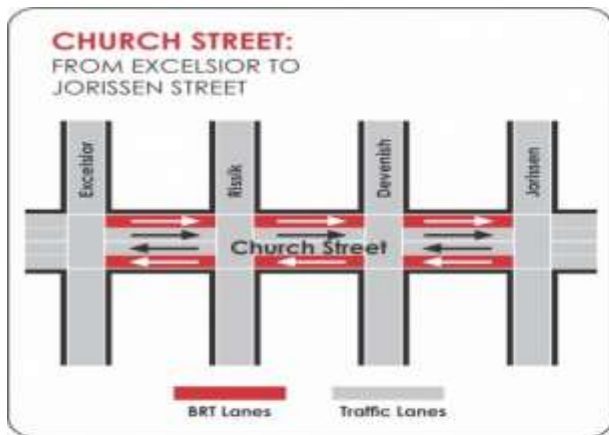
### Trunk route between Seshego and the CBD



#### 10.11.1 Painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus dedicated lanes in the CBD

The painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus lanes will be done in phases. These dedicated lanes will be painted in **red** to indicate that only Leeto la Polokwane buses and other authorized vehicles are permitted. Motorists are urged to be vigilant and exercise caution during this period. The following street will be affected:

- a) Church Street: Between Excelsior and Thabo Mbeki Street
- b) Jorissen Street: Between Church and Landros Mare Street
- c) Landros Mare Street: Between Jorissen and Thabo Mbeki Street
- d) Thabo Mbeki Street: between Landros Mare and Church Street.



### 10.11.2 Leeto Daytime Layover Facility

**Project Description include:**

Day time layover facility for Leeto La Polokwane bus operations. Construction of bus parking area, palisade fencing and refurbishment of office building and ablution facilities. To work as a mini, depot for Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane IPTS service. It will be used as offices for the Vehicle Operation Company (**Esilux Offices**).



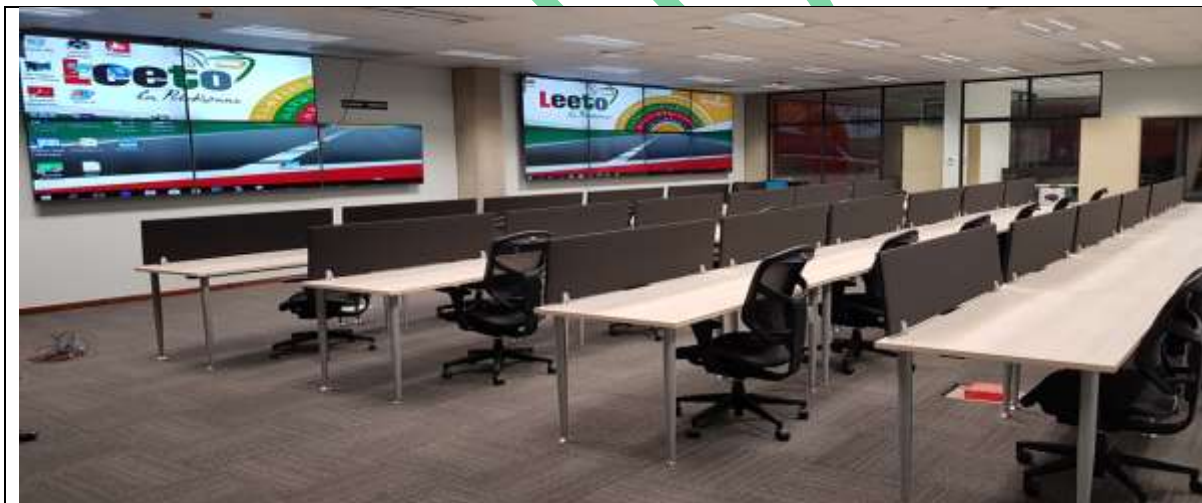


**Leeto Daytime Layover Facility in the CBD (Itsoseng bus Centre)**

### **10.11.3 Leeto La Polokwane Control Centre**

#### **Project Description include:**

Provision of the Automated Fare Collection (AFC) and Public Transport Management System (PTMS). Installation of Fare Collection equipment. Installation of operations monitoring equipment. The Leeto La Polokwane control centre is located at the New Peter Mokaba Stadium and fully functional in supporting the operations through the Public Transport Monitoring System (PTMS).



**Leeto Control Centre at Peter Mokaba Stadium**

### **10.11.4 Leeto La Polokwane (LLP)**

Leeto La Polokwane (LLP) is an Integrated Rapid Public Transport System (IRPTS) that aims to improve the state of public transport in the Municipality by integrating various modes of public transport operating within the jurisdiction of transportation. LLP is a safe, reliable, and convenient integrated public transport system for all of Polokwane's citizens. One of the features of LLP is the Bus Service which is a partnership between the municipality and the affected public transport operators.

Leeto La Polokwane is an Integrated Public Transport System (IPTS) of the City of Polokwane. The system aims to provide a high-quality public transport service aligned to the Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan of 2007, implemented under the requirements of the National Land Transport Act (NLTA) of 2009, and the public transport vision that was articulated in the White Paper on Transport Policy of 1996.

The aim of Leeto La Polokwane is to integrate various public transport modes across the municipality as well as capacitating current public transport operators who are directly affected by the System as per the requirements of the NLTA.



#### **10.11.5 Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane**

The PIPTS consists of a Bus Service which is a partnership between the City of Polokwane and the Phase 1A affected operators. The Leeto La Polokwane's PIPTS Operational Plan identified four (4) phases which will be implemented as follows:

- **Phase 1:** Polokwane City and Seshego
- **Phase 2:** Polokwane City and Moletji
- **Phase 3:** Polokwane City and Mankweng
- **Phase 4:** Polokwane City and Koloti

It should also be highlighted that the phases will not necessarily be implemented in chronological order, but rather in accordance with the travel demand patterns observed using surveys.



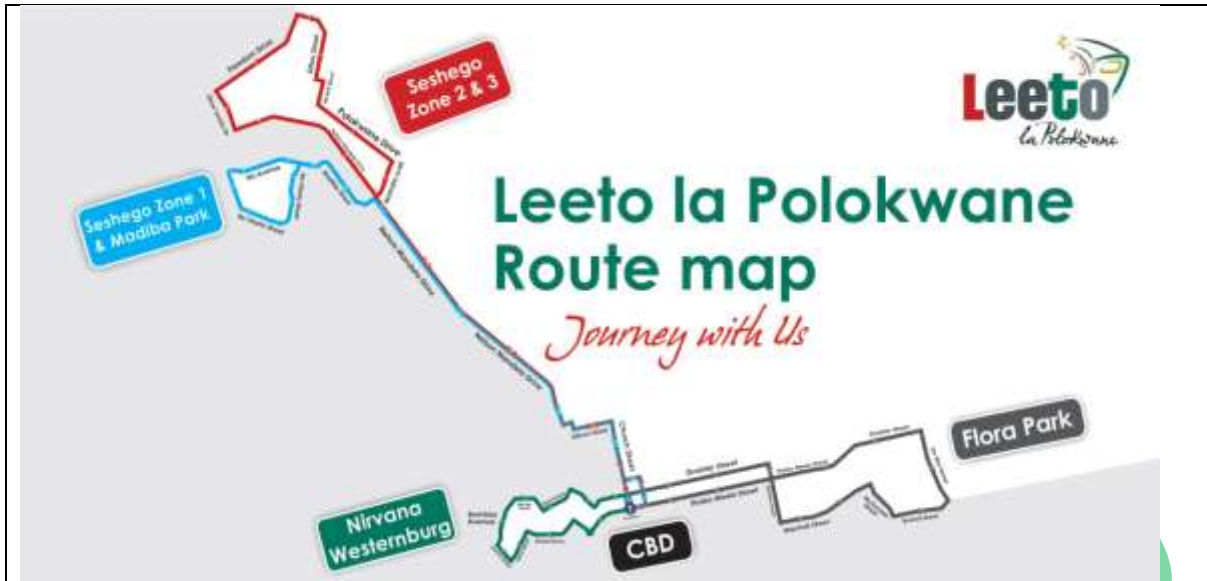


Figure 1: Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane

- Leeto La Polokwane commenced with the Phase 1A operations in October 2021, as it has been nominated as one of the flagship programs by the Minister of Transport.
- The Municipality allowed its residents to name their transport system through intensive public participation processes. Some of which allowed for creativity in suggesting a name that emulates and represents the culture of Polokwane.

### 10.11.6 Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane

**THE BENEFITS OF LEETO LA POLOKWANE™**  
The Municipality aims to achieve the following main objectives through the implementation of Leeto La Polokwane

- Reduce traffic congestion currently causing delays, increased travel costs, fuel consumption, accidents and deterring investment
- Reduce overcrowded/unsafe/excessive journey times on existing Public Transport (PT) facilities
- Coordinate and integrate all public transport modes, including Non-Motorised Transport (NMT)
- Reduce over-reliance on private transport, formalised parking and loading zones
- Improve the access to public transport for people with disabilities, the elderly and people with young children, improve pedestrian and bicycle facilities
- Increase inner-city revenue through the provision of integrated public transportation
- Reduce travel time and providing efficient and safe access to various employment, retail, business, social and leisure activities in the inner city
- Reduce user costs/access inner-city
- Reduce traffic accidents and minimise impact of accidents on traffic and pedestrian flow
- Reduce carbon foot-print of inner-city transport and fuel consumption
- Make inner-city pedestrian and cycling friendly
- Improve access between residential areas and major economic nodes
- Drive an implementation programme for new and attractive rail-based public transport
- Integrate land-use development

Fig 1: The benefits of Leeto La Polokwane

- The Public Transport System is intended to transform the public transport sector through the provision of a high-quality and affordable public transport system in line with the national policy. The Public Transport System will also be aimed at reducing the overall journey times for public transport users.
- The key characteristics of the system are an improvement in access between residential areas and major economic nodes. The main objective of the Public Transport System is therefore, to provide new and attractive road-based public transport services.
- Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A Compensation payment effected to 123 affected minibus taxi (MBT) operators from Flora Park Pietersburg (FPTA), Seshego Polokwane (SPTA), and Westernburg (WTA) Taxi Associations. A Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA) concluded with Esilux (Pty) Ltd, a vehicle operating company (VOC) established by Phase 1A affected taxi associations.
- The AFC and PTMS equipment have been fitted in the 21 x 12m buses, layover facility and the control centre.
- The construction of the Depot and the Station at General Joubert is underway, while the construction of the Layover Facility has been completed.

### **10.12 Leeto la Polokwane Turnaround Strategy**



Leeto La Polokwane commenced operations with fare paying passengers from 27 October 2021 with a fleet of 11 buses. The Operations plan, related to the negotiated, three (3) year Vehicle Operating Company Agreement, outlined that a bus fleet of 36 would operate on the identified routes. The fleet of 36 buses was to operate at a frequency of 15 minutes during peak and 30 minutes during off-peak. An adjusted Operations Plan was introduced, due to the limited bus fleet. The Leeto la Polokwane service has been adjusted to an interim bus fleet of 11 x 12 m bus fleet, with a bus frequency of 30 minutes during peak and off-peak periods. Based on historical data extrapolated from other operating Cities across the country low ridership was predicted at the beginning of operations and, with the expectation that ridership would gradually increase. Analysis of actual data from the start of operations indicates that



the ridership is low, with no gradual increase for the past three months. As a result of the analysis, this has necessitated intervention through a Turnaround Strategy. The purpose of the Turnaround Strategy is to address the low ridership volumes on Phase 1A of Leeto La Polokwane. The Turnaround Strategy is critical to provide measures that may increase ridership. The Turnaround Strategy is targeted at sustainable and efficient operations of Leeto la Polokwane Phase 1A. The Turnaround Strategy must be anchored on the following key objectives:

- Identify Gaps for Operational Efficiency and Propose Improvements.
- Secure Financial Viability and Sustainability of operations.
- Obtain high Levels of Customer Centricity.

Phase 1A of the PIPTS is operational from 27 October 2021 and a Vehicle Operating Company (VOC), Esilux (Pty) Ltd, formed by the Phase 1A affected associations, Flora Park Pietersburg (FPTA), Seshego Polokwane (SPTA), and Westernburg (WTA), are contracted to operate the Phase 1A bus fleet on behalf of the City of Polokwane.

At commencement of operations, ridership projections were to peak at 14 659 per day, when operations have stabilised, and based on a fleet of 36 buses (21 x 12 m buses and 15 x 9 m buses). The projection was also based on a higher frequency of bus timetables (5-to-10-minute headways during peak periods). Currently, an average of 566 passengers are utilising the service daily with a fleet of 11 buses at a reduced frequency of 30 minutes. This is unacceptably far below the initial projections. We further highlight that 123 Mini-bus taxis (MBTs) and their Operating Licences (OL) were removed from service to make way for Phase 1A operations. Based on the afore-mentioned the following may be expected for ridership numbers:

*123 MBTs x 15 passengers per trip x 6 trips per day x 50% capacity utilisation = 5 535 passengers per day.*

Through the removal of the 123 MBT a gap has been created in the market for 5 535 passengers per day, however ridership indicates that those passengers have not migrated to Leeto La Polokwane services. This may be attributed to:

- Utilising other modes of transport
- No longer travelling

### 10.12.1 Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service

Table 1: Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service

Ridership on Leeto La Polokwane (Fleet of 11 buses and 116 daily bus trips)	
Projected	Actual
7 308 passengers per day	2 373 passengers per day (end of July 2022)

**Error! Reference source not found.** below indicates actual weekly ticket sales from Inception of operations (at the end of July 2022).

### 10.12.2 Challenges for Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A Operations

#### Accessibility and Convenience

In order for ridership to increase for Leeto la Polokwane bus service, all system elements should be accessible and convenient to promote modal shift from other transport modes to our bus service/ system. To address the afore-mentioned the following challenges were identified:

#### Paper Ticket Sales Points

Leeto La Polokwane was ready to operate with the MiFare collection system which was operational before October 2022. Prior to the implementation of MiFare Automated Fare Collection System the National Department of Transport (NDoT) informed the City of Polokwane that MiFare will no longer be implemented and introduced a new Account-Based Ticketing (ABT) system that must be implemented. The introduction of a new Automated Fare Collection (AFC) System affected the City's implementation plan and methodology for the selling of tickets. Furthermore, the implementation of the ABT system required sufficient time to be developed and introduced. In the interim the City of Polokwane with the concurrence of NDoT, decided to purchase paper tickets to avoid further delays in the implementation of the service. The Turnaround Strategy addresses ticket selling points further in the document with proposed solutions.

When the operations began in October 2021, there were only three municipal sales points, for the Leeto La Polokwane paper tickets, the sales points operated from Monday to Friday, 08h00 to 15h00, and were closed over weekends and public holidays. This was not in line with the LLP operations which operated as follows:

- Monday to Friday, 05h00 to 20h00,
- Saturday 07h00 to 16h00,

- Sundays and Public Holidays 07h00 to 14h00.

This misalignment was a huge challenge, furthermore, the locations of the sales points were not conveniently accessible to passengers and not located on the Phase 1A route alignment, which discouraged potential passengers from buying tickets.

### Fare Media

Leeto La Polokwane will ultimately be cashless using the ABT system. Albeit the ABT systems was not ready for implementation during the commencement of the operations in 2021. The Leeto La Polokwane ABT systems has been technically completed and is currently undergoing a pilot phase wherein tests are conducted before the system can be officially implemented. The paper ticket fare collection is an interim and temporary measure which will be phased out in due course.



Account Based Ticketing (ABT) Fare Collections System

### 10.12.3 Bus Stop Coverage

Bus stop coverage based on the Operations Plan is not adequate and has a negative impact on passengers utilising the service. This is based on the following:

- That the distance between bus stops along the bus routes are placed far apart, and does not adhere to NDoT's Universal Access guidelines,

- Impacts the accessibility of the system, as NDoT's Universal Access Guidelines further state that passengers should not walk long distance to the bus stop and does not adhere to the recommended NDoT's Universal Access guidelines, which states that passenger should not walk more than 500m to the bus stop,
- Some of the key trip generators were not adequately covered such as, educational institutions, hospitals etc.,
- The community (potential passengers) have also raised various concerns with regards to the placement of the bus stops.

#### **10.12.4 Route Alignment Coverage.**

The Phase 1A route alignment is the initial operations Phase, with a limited bus fleet which is a factor influencing ridership. The route alignment and current bus fleet, is therefore only able to partially satisfy passenger demand, contributing to ridership, until the expansion of the fleet size, and bus frequency to cover a wider footprint of the population for Phase 1A.

However, some of the passenger demand would necessitate possible review and rationalisation of the route alignment as the system does not meet the Origin-Destination (O-D) pairs. The data on which alignments were planned is outdated and travel patterns have changed since the collection of that data which is more than 8 years. We outline issues, and possible interventions, that must be introduced to the route alignment.

#### **10.12.5 Flora Park (F1) Route**

The envisaged service for the Flora Park route is to provide both clockwise and anti-clockwise services to Flora Park in order to provide a direct service between the CBD and Savannah Mall. The current service provides only the anti-clockwise service, therefore taking longer for passengers going directly to Savannah Mall and surrounding areas. The project team has been receiving concerns from some of the passengers pointing this as one of the contributing factors for not using the service due to long journey times. Some passengers that it takes them close to 30 minutes to travel between Library Gardens and Savannah Mall through the current anti-clockwise route.

#### **10.12.6 Westernburg (F4A) Route**

The current service is operating from the CBD to Nirvana; however, it has been performing very poorly in terms of passenger volumes since its inception. Although there were amendments done to the original route due to unavailability of the 9m midi-buses, this is not considered as the primary reason for the low passenger numbers.

### **10.12.7 Seshego (TE4) Route**

The current alignment within Madiba Park traverses along Bo-Okelo Street, which runs on the outskirts of the catchment area. The catchment for this alignment for most part of the route is concentrated on one side only as the area to the east of Bo-Okelo Street is not yet developed. This results in most passengers residing further in the centre of Madiba Park to consider other modes of accessible public transport routes and stops.

### **10.12.8 Seshego (TEB) Route**

The current route alignment proceeds from the Seshego circle and loops around the area following Ditlou Street towards the industrial areas, Khensani Street and down along Freedom Street, Oliver Tambo and back to the trunk route along Nelson Mandela Drive. Based on assessments undertaken and feedback received from stakeholders, it has been identified that most of the passengers are concentrated along Zondi Maphanga Street and across Freedom Street to Realeboga Street and Bram Fischer Street.

### **10.13 Modal Competition**

It should be noted that only a portion of the incumbent minibus taxi industry was removed to create a gap for the Leeto La Polokwane fleet and were compensated for their loss of business.

The low ridership may be attributed to the availability of other transport modes, operating in competition on the same route, therefore potential passengers have alternative modal choices.

After the removal of a total of 123 vehicles per Phase 1A affected association, the following number of vehicles still remains in operation and therefore in competition with Leeto La Polokwane:

- Seshego Polokwane Taxi Association (SPTA) - 418
- Westernburg Taxi Association (WTA) - 23
- Flora Park Taxi Association (FPTA) – 38

Individual Restraint of Trade and Compensation Agreements (ROTCA) were signed with the 123 operators and their vehicles and corresponding OLs were removed, which left a total of 479 vehicles to compete with Leeto La Polokwane. It should further be noted that the minibus taxi industry provides unscheduled services, whilst Leeto La Polokwane's services are scheduled. This means that minibus taxis can stop anywhere and anytime which is not the case for the bus service. As such, this option might be more convenient for passengers.

There also appears to be illegal operators who are providing public transport services and as there are no Law Enforcement measures dedicated to Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A route that might be a contributing factor to the illegal operations. The afore-mentioned challenges may be eliminated by increase in the fleet size, frequency of bus operations, and introduction of law enforcement measures, such as monitoring of MBT operator licenses and operations.

### **10.13.1 Information Dissemination**

During engagements with stakeholders, it became evident that information with regards to Leeto La Polokwane has not adequately reached the target market. Various platforms (website, social media) are being utilised to share information to the public, however it appears that not many people have access to these platforms. Intervention measures are necessary for dissemination of information, and are addressed further below, in the document.

### **10.13.2 Insufficient Human Resources**

To implement Leeto la Polokwane efficiently and effectively, sufficient, and qualified personnel is required. Coordination with and support from other departments within the Municipality is also crucial to ensure efficiency of services rendered by other departments to Leeto La Polokwane where required.

The following key personnel dedicated to Leeto La Polokwane is required:

- Law Enforcement
- Customer Care
- Operations and Monitoring
  
- System Marketing
  
- System Inspectors

It is recommended that the City of Polokwane address this issue with urgency.

### **10.13.3 POSSIBLE Strategies to Address Identified Challenges**

Through the implementation of the identified response strategies, the Polokwane Municipality has a vision of increasing ridership on Leeto La Polokwane.

**A) Paper Ticket Sales**

**B) ABT Implementation**



**C) Route optimization**

**D) Increase the number of bus stops**

**E) Improve and increase brand visibility and loyalty through the implementation of a revised Integrated Marketing Communication Turnaround Strategy**

**F) Improved Law Enforcement visibility**

**G) CCTV Cameras along the Leeto La Polokwane route, facilities, and infrastructure**

The City of Polokwane has acknowledged the current situation of the Leeto La Polokwane service as it relates to low ridership and the causes thereof. In response to the challenges identified, several strategies have been developed in order to turn the situation around. A variety of opportunities exist for the improvement of operations as stipulated in this document.

## **10.14 ROADS & STORM WATER**

### **10.14.1 Introduction to Roads and Storm water**

Polokwane Municipality is characterised by a radial road network of approximately **7 495 km** covering its area of jurisdiction with a backlog of approximately **6026.35km** as per the recent inventory. This backlog translates to a total of **80.4%** percent. This is due to the establishment of new developments both formal and informal settlements. It is situated at the point where National and Provincial roads converge from where they radiate out in all directions providing good regional accessibility.

The municipality is faced with huge challenges in providing and maintaining the local roads at an acceptable standard which ensures accessibility at all times. Coupled with the latter, there is storm water management and control to an extent that it poses as a threat to mobility, infrastructure and communities.

The long-term strategy of the municipality is to surface and pave roads within the municipal area. Based on this high road backlog, different strategies are implemented including preventative maintenance of the road infrastructure.

The Municipality has since moved from implementing an average of **19km** road upgrading per annum to an average of **24km** per annum. In the **2022/23** Financial year the Municipality has budgeted approximately **R271M** for construction of access roads and Paving of internal streets in townships and rural areas which will have an impact in reducing backlog of gravel roads in those areas. The Municipality relies on IUDG Grant funds to address backlog of gravel roads.

in rural areas, in 2022/23 approximately R72.650M (IUDG and CRR) has been budgeted to address backlog of gravel roads in Seshego and Mankweng area. The Municipality will also be upgrading some of the RAL roads as agreed with RAL. These roads are deemed necessary as they connect villages.

In terms of the current analysis, City/Seshego and Mankweng Cluster have roads that deteriorated due to limited routine and preventative maintenance hence most of the roads have exceeded their design life. The other challenge affecting the roads is the unavailability or the insufficiency of Storm water system. The Municipality has in the **2021/22** financial year appointed a contractor for the implementation of a program for rehabilitation of roads in Polokwane as part of road asset renewal program to rehabilitate streets in the urban area especially the city cluster and surrounding suburbs, Approximately **R12.780M** and **R5.220M** has been budgeted for in the 2022/23 financial year for the rehabilitation of roads in the city and surrounding suburb through own funding and IUDG respectively, the program will be implemented in multi-year. Due to financial constraints by the Municipality the contractor has been requested to scale down activities on site. The Municipality has in the **2021/22** financial year implemented a program to upgrade roads in 24 wards and of these 24 projects 20 projects are completed and 4 are at implementation stage. All these remaining 4 will be completed by the end of August 2022

Roads and storm water SBU is made up of two divisions but only Roads is mostly considered over Storm water when it comes to budgeting, Storm water should have its own budget. The other challenge affecting the roads is the unavailability or the insufficiency of Storm water system. The Municipality has for long time neglected the issue of storm water in that there is never a dedicated budget for storm water to address areas that are too problematic. Areas like Seshego, Flora Park, Sterpark, CBD, Welgelegen and Mankweng get flooded each time that it rains. Whenever a budget for storm water is made available, you find that it is insufficient to kick start a project. Another challenge is the high vacancy rate in the SBU

A Consultant has been appointed and completed investigations of storm water challenges in Flora Park/Sterpark and Fauna Park. Some areas are completely without storm water system and other areas have insufficient capacity. Due to budget constraints the project has been put on hold and to be advertised for appointment of contractor once sufficient budget is made available to the project. Approximately **R25.9M** has been budgeted for through CRR, IUDG and NDPG for implementation of storm water project municipal wide. Construction of low-level bridges in rural area has started as requested by community during IDP consultation meetings and **15 low level** bridges will be implemented in the **2022/23** financial year

The Municipality is also implementing Non-Motorized transport infrastructure project that is funded through CRR/ KFW Bank approximately **R2.6M** has been allocated for the implementation of the projects and KFW will be donating about R26M for this purpose.

Traffic safety can be linked with the existing condition of roads in the municipal area. With increased road users, congestion has also increased in recent years and has now become problematic in the City/Seshego and Mankweng clusters. In addition, road safety has become a concern with increasing accidents occurring on municipal roads. The Municipality has from the previous financial years approved three **(3) speed humps** yearly per ward in areas that are critical. The approved 3 speed humps will not be possible in the 2022/23 financial year, however only two speed humps will be prioritised in most critical wards due to limited budget. Traffic calming measures are still a problem on most roads. The municipality has in the financial year 2022/23 FY managed to budget **R2.1M** to implement installation of traffic lights and signs at southern gateway in the city cluster. Designs are completed and project to be advertised for appointment of a contractor

#### **10.14.2 Classification of Roads**

The municipality has developed the Road Master Plan that has been approved by Council in 2014. This Master plan will be updated to include the incorporated area of Aganang. It was in anyway due for review and such will take place in the **2023/24** financial year.

The Roads Provincial Gazette was published and Roads authorities are familiar with their new Road Network.

The municipality is faced with huge challenges in providing and maintaining the local roads at an acceptable standard which ensures accessibility at all times. Coupled with the latter, there is a challenge with storm water management and control to an extent that it poses a threat to mobility; infrastructure and communities. The Municipality will develop storm water master plan in the **2023/24 financial** year for municipal wide which will assist in planning and addressing storm water challenges that are faced by the Municipality.

The long-term strategy of the municipality is to surface and pave roads within the municipal area. Based on huge road backlog, different strategies are implemented including preventative maintenance of the road infrastructure. In terms of the current analysis, City / Seshego and Mankweng Cluster have roads that deteriorated due to limited routine and preventative maintenance.

### **10.14.3 Leeto La Polokwane Infrastructure**

The key requirements for the public transport system to go live are full compliments of infrastructure and in **2022/2023** financial year, approximately **R119.9M** has been budgeted for the implementation of Leeto La Polokwane infrastructure projects.

The Municipality is planning to complete civil works at the Bus depot, complete Daytime layover facility, civil works at the Bus Station and Transit Mall which will include UTC at certain intersections.

The Construction of the Superstructures and buildings at the Bus station and Bus Depot will start in October 2022 and towards end of 2022/23 financial year once civil works are completed respectively.

The project for the widening of the Sandriver Bridge on Nelson Mandela Trunk Route is at implementation stage and to be completed in the 2022/2023 financial year.

The Municipality is also planning to refurbish the Indian centre taxi rank, the consultant is appointed and busy completing the designs

### **10.14.4 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Roads.**

- Aging infrastructure (deterioration of roads due to limited routine and preventative maintenance)
- Most of roads have exceeded their design life span (approximately **R1.9Billion** required to rehabilitate the existing roads) in both Polokwane and Aganang area
- Unavailability or insufficient storm water systems
- Huge rural backlog with minimal impact of 27Km per annum.
- Though the municipality has approved a new organogram, most critical positions are still vacant due to the insufficient funding.
- There is only one operator who is currently providing grading services for the entire Aganang cluster, the other two operators have medical unfitness certificates.
- 98% of Roads that Community prioritize during IDP's do not belong to the Municipality but to RAL and the Department of Roads.
- Insufficient budget
- Insufficient plant (construction machinery)
- High vacancy rate in the Roads SBU

### **10.15 ROADS BACKLOG**

Below is the current status of existing backlog, which without annual maintenance will escalate.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog
Roads (7 495km)	280 225	1469.15(19.6%)	6026.35km

Source: Stats, S.A

### 10.15.1 Municipal Roads Current Status Quo

#### Operational issues /Capacity

- Inadequate routine maintenance staff/ high vacancy rate/ reliance on casuals

#### Status of Yellow fleet

- High down time of graders as a result of ageing. / Machinery takes a very long time to be fixed.

#### Number of graders broken down

- There are 9 graders which are frequently broken and not reliable. Only 3 graders are mostly operational

#### Potholes Repairs in the City CBD, Seshego, Westerberg.

- All main street in the City CBD were patched, The Team is currently attending to Seshego main roads

### 10.15.2 Potholes Repairs in the City CBD



Source: PLK Roads SBU

### 10.15.3 Grader's status per Cluster (Their Condition)

- **Dikgale Sebayeng**=1 grader in good condition
- **Mankweng**= 2 graders allocated, 1 in good condition, 1 is fair
- **City cluster and Seshego**=1 grader fair
- **Moletjie** = 2 graders, 1 in good condition, 1 is fair
- **Aganang**= 4 graders, 1 in good condition, 3 redundant
- **Molepo Chuene Maja**= 1 grader in poor condition, Engine down, went for Engine overhaul and programming.
- **3 graders are on frequent breakdown and 4 redundant waiting for Auction.**

### 10.15.4 Roads SBU Yellow Fleet Status Quo

Type of Fleet	Status of the fleet (How many functions and how many not functional)	Type of Service Required	Condition of the Fleet (Poor, Fair Good)
<b>Graders</b>	5 functional; 8 not functional	6 graders to be scrapped, 1 grader Engine overall, regular Transmission fault and overheating, no torque, Frequent overheating,	5 graders in good conditional, 2 fair condition, 6 extremely poor
<b>Roller</b>	1 functional		
<b>Maintenance trucks</b>	13 Functional and 4 not functional	Overheating, Roadworthy, Exhausted engines.	7 trucks in good condition, 6 trucks fair and 4 trucks extremely poor.
<b>Water Trucks</b>	1 Functional, 1 not functional	Road worthy	1 good condition, 1 fair
<b>TLB</b>	3 functional, 1 not functional	Insufficient torque to lift and load material due to hydraulic diagnosis and frequent overheating	2 good and 2 fair
<b>Front end loader</b>	1 x functional		
<b>Tipper Trucks</b>	6 tipper truck, 1x6 cubic and 5x10cubic  3 functional, 3 not functional	hydraulic cylinder diagnosis, Aged Engines and low tipping torque.	4 fair and 3 good



Type of Fleet	Status of the fleet (How many functions and how many not functional)	Type of Service Required	Condition of the Fleet (Poor, Fair Good)
Dozer (track wheel)	1xnot functional	Engine down	Poor
Lowbed truck	Functional	Silencer broken and overheating due to inadequate water-cooling tank which affects circulation of water cooling system.	Good
Light delivery vehicle	8 functional, 5 not functional	4 scraps and 1xaccident	5 good,3 fair and 4 obsolete and 1 beyond repair

Source: PLK Roads SBU

## 10.16 PUBLIC TRANSPORT INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

### 10.16.1 CONSTRUCTION OF LOW-LEVEL BRIDGES FOR 2021/2022 FINANCIAL YEAR:

- Targeted low level bridges= 15
- Achievement =15
- Project status: Completed

### 10.16.2 Areas where low level bridges were constructed and completed

- 1) Maratapelo access to Moshate office x2
- 2) Marulaneng Ga Maja
- 3) Ditshweneng ga Maja
- 4) Ga Sebati
- 5) Ga Thoka x2
- 6) Makgobathe
- 7) Masealama
- 8) Asbes
- 9) Mamadimo park Marikana section
- 10) Komape
- 11) Blood river
- 12) Mantheding
- 13) Mothapo Masioeneng

## Low level bridges were constructed



Source: PLK Roads SBU

### Remarks:

Target for financial year 2021/2022 achieved, currently preparing setting out, for 2022/2023 financial year.

The Municipality had also managed to refurbish two bridges which were adversely damaged by Tropical Storm Eloise through intervention from Disaster Management Centre's grant: MDRG in Madietane and Christina.

### 10.16.3 Refurbish two bridges



Source: PLK Roads SBU

### 10.17 REPAIRS ON STORM WATER DRAINS

Targeted storm water drains for June= 6 storm water drains

**92 x Storm water drains maintained:**

Targeted area: CBD and main street around the city.

#### 10.17.1 Challenges for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance

- Planning for upgrading of storm water system from upstream of Sterpark, Flora park and Penina park was completed, implementation not yet started due to budgetary constraints.
- Regular flooding around the city due to clotting of debris around the outlet points of storm water system.
- Shortage of budget to upgrade existing over flooding storm water systems in Ivy park, Nirvana near Jumbo.
- Frequent damage of catch pit frames by trucks.
- Illegal dumping of rubbles inside the side drains and channels.

#### 10.17.2 Interventions for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance

- Currently doing regular cleaning of debris and sand deposits to the storm water systems needing upgrades.
- Lining of storm water discharges at outlet point to minimise clotting and blockages on the discharge point.
- Notice boards erected on all illegal dumping spots.
- To procure and erect concrete bollards (during 2022/2023 FY) at the back of all catch pits which are frequently overdriven by trucks. The specification to request service provider for supplying of road construction material is currently at procurement stage.



## 10.18 Rehabilitation of City CBD Roads (Road Concession CBD)

The streets in Polokwane CBD and surrounding suburbs are deteriorating with time and they need special attention so that they can be rehabilitated to an acceptable standard. Council has Approved an initiative to rehabilitate all the streets within the City CBD and the surrounding suburbs which includes (Flora Park, Faunapark, Sterpark, Bendor, Ladanna, Penina Park, Ivy Park & Westernburg, Nirvana etc.). The Project for Rehabilitation of City Cluster Roads has Started within the City CBD as of **01 September 2021**, however due to budget constrains by the Municipality the contractor has been requested to scale down activities on site which will have an impact with the project completion duration.

### 10.18.1 Rehabilitation of City CBD Roads



Source: PLK Roads SBU

### 10.18.2 Personnel for Roads and Storm Water

Number of Vacancies:

**8x Budgeted Positions: i.e.**

- 1x Superintendent
- 2x Technicians
- 2x Special Workman
- 5x Drivers
- 7x labourers

**Other Essential vacancies with no budget: i.e.**

- 3 x Foreman City cluster.
- 6 x Senior Operators.
- 3x technicians
- 4 x operators.
- 2 x drivers.
- 1 x Project administrator.
- 1 x Wayleave Technician.
- 30x labourers.

**10.19 Grading of rural roads Status Quo Per Cluster**

**10.19.1 Grading of Roads Status Quo**

Cluster	PERIOD OF WORK					Remarks
	09/07/22	16/07/22	23/07/22	29/07/22	5/8/22	
City	PM711				PM711	
Molepo Chuene Maja	PM17/01			PM17/01	PM17/01	PM 712, transmission, overheating and Gears automates to neutral while in motion. Sharing PM 17/02 from Dikgale Cluster.
Dikgale Molepo		PM17/02	PM17/02			
Aganang	Pm17/01	PM17/01			PM18/96	Two Graders are redundant, PM 18/96 breakdown, overheating
Mankweng	PM18/101	PM18/101	Pm18/101	PM18/101	PM18/101	PM710, turn table motor stripped out and taken for repairs.
Seshego		PM711	PM711	PM711		Sharing Grader with City cluster
Moletjie	PM18/100	PM18/100	PM 17/01	PM17/01	PM7/01	PM 18/100 fuel injector not stroking fuel

Source: PLK Roads SBU

**10.19.2 Challenges for Rural Roads Grading**

**Inadequate functional graders**

- We need at least **two graders** per cluster, this will reduce long travelling distances and over utilization of machinery. This will also improve service delivery and elimination of overtime cost.
  - Total number of Municipal graders=13

- Full functional graders=5
- Redundant graders=4
- Graders experiencing regular breakdowns=4

#### Shortage of Grader operators.

- There are only 5 Senior Operator who are currently performing grading services and are not sufficient enough to deliver adequate grading service.
- At least two senior operators are required per cluster to enable effective grading of roads in rural areas.

### 10.19.3 Roads SBU Fleet analysis

#### ANALYSIS OF FLEET REQUIRED TO RENDER ROADS FULLY FUNCTIONAL

FLEET DESCRIPTION	TOTAL ALLOCATION	AVAILABLE	OLD FLEET	REQUIRED ADDITIONAL FLEET
Graders	13	5	8	10
TLB	4	2	2	2
Lowbed Truck	1	1		1
LDV's	13	8	5	7
4 Ton Maintenance Trucks	17	7	6 awaiting to be fitted with canopies, and 5 are old	12
Excavator	0			1
10m3 Tipper trucks	5	3	2	7
Front End Loader	1	1	0	0
Water trucks	2	1	1	2 x 18000litres
Smooth roller	1	1	0	0
Grid Roller and Tow tractor	0	0	0	1
Tamping roller	0			1
Dozer	1	1		0
Crane Truck	0			1
Road Marker self-propelled	0			5
Asphalt milling machine	0			1
Double drum asphalt compactor	0			2

Source: PLK Roads SBU

### 10.19.4 Incomplete Provincial D-Roads (Bermuda Roads)

Incomplete Provincial roads implemented by the Municipality (Bermuda Roads)



PROJECT NAME	ROAD NUMBER	TOTAL KM	KM COVERED TO DATE	OUTSTANDING KM
Phomolong to Moshate to Tjatjaneng	D4030	7.2KM	4 KM	3.2 KM
Upgrading of arterial road in Ga-Rampheri	D4032	11 KM	7 KM	4 KM
Upgrading of Mohlolong to Kalkspruit	D3370	13 KM	5.2 KM	7.8 KM
Upgrading of Lonsdale to Percy Clinic via Flora	D3405	4.9 KM	3.5 KM	1.4 KM
Upgrading of Mamatsha (Makubung to Boshega	D4000 - D4020	21.5 KM	11.3 KM	10.2 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Kgohloane to Makgofe	D3422 – D3390	16.4KM	10.8KM	5.6 KM
Upgrading of arterial road D977 (Silicon to Matobole)	D977	19 KM	7 KM	12 KM
Upgrading of arterial road (Nobody to Laastehoop to Mothapo)	D1809 – D4030	20 KM	5.4 KM	14.6 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Sebayeng Mantheding to Ga-Dikgale	D3959 – D3997	8.5 KM	6.4 KM	2.1 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Mamadila to Ramakgaphola to Manamela	D3413 – D3414	15.3 KM	5 KM	10.3 KM
Arterial roads Molepo Maja Chuene Cluster (Paledi)	D4016	18.4 KM	8.4 KM	10 KM
Upgrading of Mmotong to Sengatane road	D3422	13.8 KM	5.8 KM	8 KM

Source: PLK Roads SBU

#### 10.19.5 Overview summary achievement of Public Transport Infrastructure Development

The municipality has in the past 5 years (2017/18 to 2021/22) upgraded **119.1km** of roads from gravel to tar, rehabilitated **12.03km** of roads, re-graveled **538.17 km** of road, graded **10484.92km** of roads, routine maintained **268021.03m<sup>2</sup>**, constructed **52** low level bridges, **117** speed humps, **6.97km** of sidewalks, **10** traffic lights, **6.412km** of storm water and **5049.04km** of storm water maintained constructed **4.5km** trunk route, **31.5km** Feeder routes, **20.4km** Trunk extensions, **86** Kerbside stops.

The Municipality is planning to complete civil works at the Bus depot, complete Daytime layover facility, civil works at the Bus Station and Transit Mall which will include UTC at certain intersections.

The Construction of the Superstructures and buildings at the Bus station and Bus Depot will start in October 2022 and towards end of 2022/23 financial year once civil works are completed respectively.

The project for the widening of the Sandriver Bridge on Nelson Mandela Trunk Route is at implementation stage and to be completed in the 2022/2023 financial year.

The Municipality is also planning to refurbish the Indian centre taxi rank, the consultant is appointed and busy completing the designs

STATUS QUO

## CHAPTER Eleven -Financial Analysis

### 11.1. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY

#### 11.1.1 Revenue Management

The municipality derives revenue through the rendering of services as mandated through the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and other related regulations. Municipal revenue comprises of own revenue as well as grants from the national government. Own revenue contributes **52%** of total revenue and is consistent from the prior financial year.

The municipality main sources of own revenue are as follows:

- Property Rates
- Electricity
- Water and sewerage
- Refuse and
- Other income such as rental of property, investment income and traffic fines.

The municipality's own revenue across the board has increased by an average of around **4%** year on year with increases in service charges by around **5%**. The main contribution to the year-on-year increase in service charges is mainly due to the increase in the installation of pre-paid water meters and the upward impact on the revenue from assessment rates due to the implementation of the new valuation roll that saw increase in property values.

All the grants from the National government is dealt with in terms of the requirement of Division of Revenue Act (DoRA) and management of own revenue is dealt with in terms of the MFMA. The municipality also applies its indigent policy to cater for the indigent population within its jurisdiction.

Two key revenue enhancement initiatives that have been introduced in the previous financial years namely the replacement of AC pipes and the smart metering project has proven financially successful by realising over **80%** return/payback period on its capital investments since its inception.

The replacement of AC pipes continues to ensure that the water losses are substantially minimized within the National Treasury norm of within **15% to 30%**. This will ensure that more water is available for future developments and therefore contributing more to revenue billing and collections.

The smart metering project had completed its final stage of conversion where approximately 600 high power uses were changed to the e wallet system including Government Departments. This will ensure cash backed pre-billing from electricity and water consumption from high power users as is done with the non-high-power users. The pre-paid electricity replacement exercise also assisted in the reduction in electricity distribution losses to less than the National Treasury norm of 10%.

### 11.1.2 Status on Revenue Management

Averaged **93%** on collections for the last financial year (2020/21) with COVID 19 having a significant impact during the months of lock down.

Approximately only 4000 accounts remain on conventional electricity meters whilst the rest of the accounts are on prepaid electricity. Out of the approximate **33 000 pre-paid water meters** installed around **15 000** meters have been converted to prepaid and is ongoing on a monthly basis averaging **1200** conversions a month → pre-paid sales average around **R1.8 million** per month and growing by about **25%** per month as the conversions take place.

On the overall, the municipality is receiving around **R489 million** in advance cash relative to the conventional model due to the smart metering programme.

### 11.1.3. Revenue Enhancement

#### Tariff setting challenges

The MFMA and enabling legislations such as the Water and Electricity Acts requires tariffs to be cost reflective.

Although the municipality is showing a positive gross profit percentage on service charges the following **challenges** remain:

- High tariff increases of Eskom and the water boards
- The COVID 19 pandemic has dampened the local economic environment resulting in unaffordability of service charges.

The municipality is **addressing** these challenges by exploring alternative cost savers such as power banks and the installation of pre-paid meters to ensure customer consume at the rate that they can afford.

#### Credibility of bills and data

Since the implementation of the new system around 2018, the municipality is able to produce credible billings. The installation of prepaid meters has also assisted in the production of credible revenue bills and reports.

### 11.1.4 Collections from households, businesses and Government Departments.

The municipality has averaged a collection rate of **93% percent** vs a budgeted rate of 87%.

The installation of the new system has allowed the municipality to interface the billing module with the credit control module. This ensures that the cut off list is done almost at real time thereby making it possible to perform more cut offs on a daily basis improving the collection rate.

Further, the installation of pre-paid meters as improved cash collections as about 45% of service charges are in the form of pre-paid sales.

However, the impact of the COVID 19 pandemic have affected vulnerable households and businesses. Arrangements are allowed on the system for those who are unable to be meet their arrear debts.

As far as government is considered, collections have improved as a separate cut off list is implemented. The debt of government debts stood at R96 million at the end of the quarter. This was down from the average of R120 million average balance of government debts in the past financial years.

The Mankweng hospital accounts for almost 50% of the government debtors' book at R43 million. Talks are ongoing with the Rural Department to recover the arrears over a period.

### **11.1.5 Implementation of revenue enhancement strategy**

The municipality has implemented two key revenue enhancement strategies

- 1) Replacement of AC pipes which resulted in the reduction in distribution losses and more water revenue. Water distribution losses have been reduced from a high of 30% pre implementation
- 2) Pre-paid meters – installation has resulted in around 45% of all service charges revenues. This figure will increase as more meters are being installed city wide.

The municipality is also in the process to introduce arrear collections through the prepaid system to ensure arrear debts are collected on the purchase of pre-paid services.

### **11.1.6 New system Key achievements - Revenue Management**

Since migration into the new system, the revenue SBU is able to integrate seamlessly with its outstanding debtors' book in almost real time. This has resulted in more cut offs on daily basis and its impact can be seen in the growth in the monthly cash flows.

Use of online payment methods and views by consumers have been enhanced. Estimation module effective and accurate reporting enhanced through the new system.

Continued success on the smart metering programme → R479 million in advance cash as opposed to the conventional mode of readings and collections thereafter.

Completeness test on property rates and basic charges to ensure correct tariffs are being used – over 3 800 properties rectified → increased property rates billed, and additional revenue collected which was 1% or R2 million than anticipated for the first time - the new valuation roll project also added to the completeness project.

### **11.1.7 Key Challenges and Interventions in Revenue Management**

No	Challenge	Intervention
1	Meter tempering/faulty meters	The establishment of the revenue protection unit to deal with specific matters on possible meter tempering and addressing faulty meters and other challenges that may contribute to under billing and under collections.  Revised fines for meter tempering from <b>R13k to R150k</b> .  Use of third-party data to analyse possible tempering or dysfunctional meters through the revenue protection unit.
2	Poor economy impacts	Continue with credit control with consideration of Poor Economy strain consumers on a merit basis as per National Treasury circular. i.e., considering the 20% reconnection fee on merit. However, if any arrangement made are not honoured strict credit control will apply as to do otherwise will compromise our financial viability.
4	Mankweng debt book	Debt writes off approved by council and political leadership to communicate with the community at large
5	Government debt book	Use of the e wallet system where pre-paid purchases to be done.  Cut off/credit control still continuing on Government Departments with outstanding balances with positive impact as dents stand below <b>R95 million</b> when compared to the historical trends of <b>R150 million</b> in outstanding debts.

## 11.2 Billing System

The new billing system was migrated on **01 April 2019** and has a major impact on the effectiveness of billing estimation and the accuracy of reports.

The Municipality have now concluded connecting most of our satellite offices to the internet and our network and residents in areas like **Seshego, Sebayeng and Mankweng** will no longer have to come to **Head Office (Civic Centre)** to check and **pay for their accounts**. Plans are in place to connect the Outstanding satellite offices which are in the **Moletji, Aganang, and Molepo Chuene Maja clusters (Mostly Rural Clusters)**, they will be connected in the coming Financial years.

The Municipality is exploring solutions on **Wi-Fi installation** in the rural and urban areas at critical hotspots such as schools and libraries and others so that children in those areas can be able to access the global community. Soon we will be inviting service providers in the area of Wi-Fi connection.

The municipality continues to explore smart innovation towards service delivery in order to improve the experience of our residents when interacting with the municipality.



### **11.3. FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK**

In terms of governing legislation, the municipality is required to develop and implement rates and tariff policies or bylaws to guide the revenue management of the Municipality. The following budget related policies have been approved and adopted by council.

- Borrowing policy
- Petty cash policy
- Budget policy
- Funding and reserves policy
- Indigent policy
- Banking & investment policy
- Supply chain Management policy
- Credit control and Debt collection policy
- Customer Care Policy
- Tariff policy
- Rates policy
- Subsistence & Travel Policy
- Leave Policy
- Virement policy
- Asset Management Policy

#### **11.4 Expenditure Management**

##### **11.4.1 Expenditure Management Status Quo/Achievement**

- All conditional grants maintained in a separate bank account and not used in normal operations.
- No double payments encountered to service providers.
- Salaries and Eskom bills paid promptly.
- **Roll overs** are **cash backed** in terms of National Treasury circular 99.
- All creditors submitted to Finance and recorded on the system at the end of July were within 30 days i.e., all creditors due were paid.

#### **EXPENDITURE**

##### **11.4.2 Expenditure analysis**

Description	2021/22	
	Actual Outcome	%
R thousand		
<b>Expenditure By Type</b>		
Employee related costs	990 542	23%
Remuneration of councillors	38 449	1%
Debt impairment	80 540	2%
Depreciation & asset impairment	825 120	19%
Finance charges	55 164	1%
Bulk purchases	878 180	20%
Other materials	324 460	7%
Contracted services	890 277	20%
Transfers and grants	45 240	1%
Other expenditure	216 487	5%
Loss on disposal of PPE	-	0%
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	<b>4 344 460</b>	<b>100%</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.4.3 Key contracted services

Description	Budget	Actual
Project Management	20 382 000	16 620 351
Security Services	70 189 856	65 246 326
Transport Services Fleet	42 242 100	36 760 891
Transportation	35 729 300	26 297 436
Maintenance of Buildings and Facilities	51 122 551	39 672 794
Maintenance of Equipment	43 648 052	43 522 536
Meter Management	21 356 770	21 356 770
Water maintenance	84 329 693	122 522 582
Roads maintenance	62 962 500	47 015 230
Commission and Committees Cigicell	52 528 534	51 133 672
	<b>484 491 356</b>	<b>470 148 589</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.4.4 General Expenditure

Description	Budget	Actual
External Audit Fees	15 826 100	15 140 226
Cellular Expenditure	16 508 649	12 704 107
Insurance Underwriting	26 246 124	25 954 355

Description	Budget	Actual
Professional Bodies; Membership and Subscription	10 366 565	10 316 698
Wet Fuel	50 713 405	50 713 404
Skills Development Fund Levy	13 908 744	11 825 822
Advertising; Publicity and Marketing	12 209 081	10 272 489
Bank Charges; Facility and Card Fees	4 489 158	4 489 158
Hire Charges	11 189 988	8 800 398
Indigent Relief	15 775 532	15 775 531
	177 233 345	165 992 188

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.4.5 Overtime

Vote Description	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	YTD actual	% Spent vs Adjusted Budget
<b>Vote 1 - CHIEF OPERATIONS OFFICE</b>	334 803	664 803	747 620	112%
<b>Vote 2 -MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S OFFICE</b>	-	179 815	148 197	82%
<b>Vote 3 - WATER AND SANITATION</b>	9 321 843	24 583 795	26 972 674	110%
<b>Vote 4 - ENERGY SERVICES</b>	5 739 525	18 773 056	22 619 608	120%
<b>Vote 5 - COMMUNITY SERVICES</b>	6 863 978	15 514 329	16 545 511	107%
<b>Vote 6 - PUBLIC SAFETY</b>	10 223 346	24 972 164	36 343 649	146%
<b>Vote 7 - CORPORATE AND SHARED SERVICES</b>	2 256 167	4 777 167	3 158 748	66%
<b>Vote 8 - PLANNING AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>	433 550	643 974	397 653	62%
<b>Vote 9 - BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE</b>	1 638 405	3 822 405	3 162 907	83%
<b>Vote 10 - TRANSPORT SERVICES</b>	2 108 490	3 608 490	3 433 892	95%
<b>Vote 11 - HUMAN SETTLEMENT</b>	53 750	145 591	95 569	66%
<b>Total</b>	<b>38 973 857</b>	<b>97 685 589</b>	<b>113 626 028</b>	<b>95%</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.4.6 Capital Performance

MULTI YEAR BUDGET CAPITAL PROGRAMME	Special adjustment (Incl. Transfer)	TOTAL YEAR TO DATE	% Spent
<b>Total Capital Expenditure</b>	<b>1 004 481 941</b>	<b>841 686 901</b>	<b>84%</b>
	-	-	
Intergrated Urban Development Grant	377 104 666	312 518 402	83%
Public Transport Network Grant	76 634 101	42 641 429	56%
Neighbourhood Development Grant	48 000 000	25 314 760	53%
Water Services Infrastructure Grant	50 000 000	37 447 077	75%
Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant	218 806 000	191 537 920	88%
Integrated National Electrification Programme Grant	12 000 000	11 720 207	98%
Energy Efficiency and Demand Side Management Grant (EEDSM)	6 000 000	5 914 774	99%
Municipal Disaster Relief Grant	2 600 000	2 599 916	100%
<b>Total DoRA Allocations</b>	<b>791 144 767</b>	<b>629 694 486</b>	<b>80%</b>
	-	-	
Capital Replacement Reserve	213 337 174	211 992 415	99%
<b>TOTAL FUNDING</b>	<b>1 004 481 941</b>	<b>841 686 901</b>	<b>84%</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022) Capital Programme (20 August 2022)

### 11.4.7 Non-core expenditure

Non-Core Function	Budget	Actual
CULTURAL SERVICES	2 236 392.90	1 637 413.75
CULTURAL SERVICES (ADMINISTRATION)	2 309 737.00	1 969 618.96
CULTURAL SERVICES (ART GALLERY)	1 251 712.00	996 261.99
CULTURAL SERVICES (LIBRARIES)	22 451 080.10	20 203 112.31
CULTURAL SERVICES (MUSEUMS)	9 305 179.76	8 331 702.13
DISASTER MANAGEMENT (FIRE FIGHTING)	71 258 942.00	65 527 493.00
DISASTER MANAGEMENT ADMINISTRATION	13 077 894.00	8 616 527.17
ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH SERVICES (ADMINISTRATION)	2 077 048.00	1 791 574.24
ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH SERVICES (AIR POLLUTION CONTROL)	1 025 000.00	859 736.08
ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH SERVICES (HEALTH INSPECTION)	3 775 256.00	2 551 008.76
ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT (OPEN SPACES AND PARKS)	9 170 629.00	8 154 696.29
ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT (OPEN SPACES AND PARKS/RECREATION MANAGEMENT)	30 799 231.00	30 302 077.62
Road and Traffic Regulation	949 040.00	- 389 173.49
TRAFFIC AND LICENCES (LICENSING)	15 130 047.00	14 036 614.25
TRAFFIC AND LICENSING (ADMINISTRATION)	2 151 809.00	1 815 311.27
TRAFFIC AND LICENSING (TRAFFIC SERVICES)	88 027 281.00	87 829 005.01
TRAFFIC AND LICENSING (VEHICLE TESTING AND DRIVERS LICENSE TESTING)	13 087 303.00	11 963 413.31
	288 083 581.76	266 196 392.65

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.4.8 Challenges and Intervention for Expenditure Management

No	Challenge	Intervention
1	Payment within 30 days	Monthly cash flow to be submitted to all SBUs. SBUs are not allowed to exceed the allocation for that month.
2	Invoice submitted late to Finance	Munsoft requires Managers to authorise/submit invoices on the system.  A memo to explain the processes was communicated by BTO
3	Eskom bill exceeding <b>R113 million</b> in the first two months of the financial year due to the peak season demand rates.  Municipal tariffs for electricity will soon not be cost reflective due to the high anticipated increase in Eskom tariffs in the coming years.	Finalised the power bank feasibility and ready for advert.  In the process of finalising the solar project

### 11.4.9 Roll Overs Projects

MFMA Circular No. 91 refers to Section 22 (2) of the **2019** Division of Revenue Act (**DORA**) which states that any conditional grant which is not spent at the end of the municipal financial year must revert to the National Revenue Fund.

### 11.4.10 Budget Adjustments

The adjustment budget is conducted in February each Financial year. Municipal Budget is Adjusted after assessing the following:

- 1) Cash flow analysis on own revenue (actual vs budget).
- 2) Revenue performance (actual vs budget).
- 3) Revenue and cost optimization measures.
- 4) Spending trends on own funded Capital projects.
- 5) Unspent conditional grants.

### 11.5 Investments

The municipality is implementing stringent investment measures to ensure financial sustainability and that all the investments are made in line with the investment policy through the establishment of an investment committee. The investment policy is fully aligned to the municipal investment regulations.

Our cash resources will be invested in various institutions as per the Cash Management Policy, Investment Terms of Reference. Project Managers have provided Grant Cash flow projections to ensure smooth running of operations

## 11.6 Asset Management

The asset management unit is responsible to oversee the assets with total value of **10 billion** at net book value. The municipal asset register has the following key components.

1. Investment property
2. Community and infrastructure assets.
3. Movable assets.
4. Finance lease assets.
5. Biological assets.
6. Heritage assets.
7. Library books.
8. Land
9. And other assets.

Municipality makes hybrid method to account for municipal assets and verification of assets is performed ongoing basis. Assets are recorded either at fair value, cost or depreciated replacement cost.

The asset management team together with the PMU and town planning unit developed a capital expenditure framework (CEF) which is high-level long-term-infrastructure plan that flows from a spatial development framework. It estimates the level of affordable capital investment by the municipality over the long term. This framework largely informed our capital expenditure budget over the MTEF.

### 11.6.1 State of Assets

With respect to **immovable assets**, City of Polokwane owns or otherwise controls some **372,974 fixed point assets** (e.g., facilities such as buildings, pump stations and bridges, as well as water and electricity meters), and **19,320 km of linear assets** such as electricity cables and lines, water and sanitation pipes, and information and communications technology (ICT) cables. Additionally, the city's investment property portfolio **includes land of 38 hectares**.

Polokwane's immovable asset portfolios have a combined current replacement cost (CRC) value of **R 31 billion**.



### 11.6.2 State of Assets – Asset Portfolio

Infrastructure Portfolio	CRC 2022	Accumulated depreciation 2022	Accumulated impairment 2022	DRC 2022
Community Facilities	995 931 912	- 605 610 717	- 414 240	389 906 955
Electrical Infrastructure	4 861 297 007	- 3 492 473 502	- 2 303 166	1 366 520 339
Electricity Network	2 146 593	- 286 651	-	1 859 942
Housing	38 041 731	- 27 388 307	-	10 653 424
Information and communication infrastructure	38 158 198	- 21 569 730	-	16 588 468
Land	512 040 141	-	-	512 040 141
Operational Buildings	684 876 742	- 490 070 022	-	194 806 721
Roads and Stormwater Network	165 214 264	- 16 566 571	-	148 647 693
Roads infrastructure	12 381 141 671	- 6 887 913 421	- 5 221 765	5 488 006 485
Sanitation Infrastructure	1 422 333 546	- 1 006 743 910	- 8 298 776	407 290 860
Solid Waste Infrastructure	211 853 654	- 121 763 839	- 1 108 821	88 980 993
Sport and recreation facilities	3 482 986 266	- 1 963 339 516	- 71 163	1 519 575 587
Storm water infrastructure	1 365 458 129	- 965 432 098	-	400 026 031
Water Supply Infrastructure	5 389 275 007	- 3 127 035 536	- 6 269 056	2 255 970 414
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>31 550 754 861</b>	<b>- 18 726 193 819</b>	<b>- 23 686 988</b>	<b>12 800 874 054</b>

Source: City of Polokwane – Strategic Asset Management Plan (SAMP)

### 11.6.3 Asset Consultants

#### Reason for the need of Asset Consultants

Specialist skills of around 21 employees comprising electrical and civil engineers, town planners, GIS specialists, land valuers, quantity surveyors and environmentalists. The skills are required to comply to GRAP standards and therefore would not be cost effective to have employees with these skills appointed on a full-time basis.

#### Value for money

Unbundling of assets, conditional assessments Unit rate calibration to ensure compliance to GRAP standards and asset register. No qualification on audit since 2016/17 financial year on these assets that require such expertise

#### Skills transfer

The transfer skill plan was drafted/compiled, and progress was given on quarterly basis to Audit Committee.

All officials involved in preparation of the Asset Register were involved in the process, being financial and technical officials.

#### Monitoring

Weekly meeting chaired by CFO in a form of OPCA (operation clean audit) and AFS readiness meetings.

## 11.7 DEBTORS MANAGEMENT

### 11.7.1 Debtor Book

Debtors amount to almost **R1,7 billion**. Mankweng project to be fast tracked. Government debtors (**SANDF and Hospitals**) may need an IGR intervention

Staff and councillors' debt is being recouped monthly and progress is reported to Council on a monthly basis through the revenue report.

Debt incentive scheme at an advanced stage and anticipated to be implemented in July/August 2022.

#### Debtor Book

Description	Amount	%
Mankweng	330 000 000	22%
Govt debtors	91 946 555	6%
Interest on outstanding debts	286 145 908	19%
Indigent debtors	55 556 000	4%
Other debtors (commercial, institutions and households)	756 395 508	50%
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>1 520 043 971</b>	<b>100%</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.7.2 Debtors Aging (30 June 2022)

Description	Budget Year 2021/22								
	0-30 Days	31-60 Days	61-90 Days	91-120 Days	121-150 Dys	151-180 Dys	181 Dys-1 Yr	Over 1Yr	Total
<b>R thousands</b>									
<b>Debtors Age Analysis By Income Source</b>									
Trade and Other Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Water	33 198	10 777	7 389	6 190	6 057	5 629	31 052	232 470	332 763
Trade and Other Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Electricity	65 964	17 444	10 194	7 869	5 341	5 822	18 993	104 082	235 709
Receivables from Non-exchange Transactions - Property Rates	49 381	17 087	13 988	40 347	11 714	10 502	48 965	252 319	444 303
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Waste Water Management	27 084	6 735	4 096	3 449	3 218	2 972	17 646	56 204	121 404
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Waste Management	21 490	5 906	3 946	3 332	3 042	2 888	17 274	75 807	133 684
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Property Rental Debtors	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	187	187
Interest on Arrear Debtor Accounts	7 284	7 032	6 820	6 436	6 377	6 199	27 995	251 359	319 502
Recoverable unauthorised, irregular, fruitless and wasteful expenditure									
Other	37 475	4 013	3 086	3 433	2 245	2 669	9 353	47 195	109 469
<b>Total By Income Source</b>	<b>241 876</b>	<b>68 994</b>	<b>49 520</b>	<b>71 056</b>	<b>37 995</b>	<b>36 680</b>	<b>171 278</b>	<b>1 019 622</b>	<b>1 697 020</b>
<b>2020/21 - totals only</b>	<b>264 362</b>	<b>60 828</b>	<b>43 044</b>	<b>35 866</b>	<b>32 654</b>	<b>32 285</b>	<b>144 471</b>	<b>906 533</b>	<b>1 652 046</b>
<b>Debtors Age Analysis By Customer Group</b>									
Organs of State	12 468	6 826	6 027	32 696	4 950	4 767	25 978	38 434	132 145
Commercial	84 578	20 513	10 495	7 839	7 528	6 844	27 478	210 117	375 393
Households	144 829	41 655	32 998	30 521	25 518	25 068	117 822	771 071	1 189 482
Other	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Total By Customer Group</b>	<b>241 876</b>	<b>68 994</b>	<b>49 520</b>	<b>71 056</b>	<b>37 995</b>	<b>36 680</b>	<b>171 278</b>	<b>1 019 622</b>	<b>1 697 020</b>

Municipality is currently implementing credit and debt control initiatives in order to minimize level of debt book, some of those initiatives are debtor cleansing, replacement of ageing meters, application of disconnection on customers who owes municipality above 60days and settlement incentives as well as handover to debt collectors on debts above 90 days. Central to that is improvement on customer relation management which the municipality has made a pillar.

**COVID 19** have serious implications for South African society in the social, economic, health and technological realms.

- Municipality: - more customers are failing to pay their municipal accounts.
- Tempering of Meters is on the increase.
- Municipal Call Centres are no longer relevant:
- Customers communicate using various social media platforms.
- Polokwane needs to urgently migrate into the technological space.

### 11.7.3 Creditors

Outstanding trade creditors amounted to **R 186 746 770** at **31 July 2022**.

Supporting Table SC4 Monthly Budget Statement - aged creditors - 2022/23

Description	Budget Year 2022/23									Prior year totals for chart (same period)
	0 - 30 Days	31 - 60 Days	61 - 90 Days	91 - 120 Days	121 - 150 Days	151 - 180 Days	181 Days - 1 Year	Over 1 Year	Total	
<b>R thousands</b>										
<b>Creditors Age Analysis By Customer Type</b>										
Bulk Electricity	119 689	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	119 689	117 556
Bulk Water	17 605	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	17 605	19 672
PAYE deductions									-	-
VAT (output less input)									-	-
Pensions / Retirement deductions									-	-
Loan repayments									-	-
Trade Creditors	49 453	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	49 453	33 019
Auditor General									-	-
Other									-	-
<b>Total By Customer Type</b>	<b>186 747</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>186 747</b>	<b>170 248</b>

Notes

Material increases in value of creditors' categories compared to previous month to be explained

### 11.7.4 Payment of creditors

Description	Ageing	0-30 days
<b>Eskom</b>	Current	119 689 109,35
<b>Lepelle Northern Water</b>	Current	17 604 921,45
<b>Other service providers</b>	Current	49 452 739,27
<b>Total</b>		<b>186 746 770,07</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

Council pays its creditors within **30 days**. In terms of circular 49 issued by treasury and further section 65(2) (e) of MFMA emphasize that municipality must honour its obligation within 30 days.

### 11.7.5 Key Intervention on Debt Book

The **smart metering** project will be the **key catalytic** intervention that will assist in recovering arrear accounts. The draft revenue recovery plan is based on a 60/40 principle whereby all consumption/purchased for a month will be allocated at 60% for current consumption and 40% will be allocated on the arrears.

Furthermore, consumers will be categorized under certain levels depending on the amount of debt whereupon a payment structure will be developed. For example, if a consumer is owing above R100 000, will be required to pay a 20% upfront payment before activating his/her token or meter for purchases. The above approach will ensure that the majority of the debt is realised within 12 months.

The above intervention will be implemented once the data cleansing on the ground is finalised. The data cleansing exercise resolves around the linking of account numbers to erf numbers rather than meter numbers as this can create a distortion of data once the accounts are closed or changed.

## **11.8 CASH FLOW**

Cash flow constraints were experienced in the first half of the last financial year and last quarter of the financial year mainly due to the following reasons.

- High Eskom bills in excess of **R119Million** for the first month of the financial year.
- Expenditure, although within budget, was incurred faster than the rate of revenue collections.
- Revenue collections were subdued due to the general poor economy, breaching/tempering of meters and dysfunctional meters.
- Integration of credit control was still in progress as the previous financial system was unable to perform real time credit control\
- Significant impact from COVID 19 as detailed under revenue management section **during the last quarter of the financial year.**

### **11.8.1 The municipality implemented the following controls**

The municipality implemented the following controls to date:

- Use of the **new financial system** to perform real time credit control due to the successful integration functionality.
- Intensified credit control including government departments (with the assistance of the finance portfolio) which saw collections of over **R60 million** from government departments in a space of few months.
- Continued conversions to **prepaid meters** which serves as a main cash drive year in year out.
- Reduction in operation expenditure of almost 30% compared to the prior financial years mainly due to the reduction of consultants as transfer of skills have been met, completion of feasibility studies to implement key projects and use of internal staff rather than outsourced companies such as grass cutting and electricity maintenance.

Further, the Office of the Chief Financial Officer has made the capital budget (both own and grant funded) VAT inclusive as opposed to the previous financial years. This will prevent the strain on the cash flows that would be required to fund the VAT payable to SARS until it is recovered. The VAT receivable in this approach will be directly invested into a reserve account to ensure that the municipality is always cash backed and financially stable.

The above interventions had a significant impact as cash flows increased by almost 20% year on year as average collection

## 11.9 Auditor General Outcomes

### 11.9.1. AUDIT OUTCOMES OPINIONS PER FINANCIAL YEAR

FINANCIAL YEAR	AUDIT OUTCOME
2008/2009	Unqualified
2009/2010	Qualified
2010/2011	Qualified
2011/2012	Disclaimer
2012/2013	Disclaimer
2013/2014	Qualified
2014/2015	Unqualified (Matters of Emphasis)
2015/2016	Unqualified (Matters of Emphasis)
2016/2017	Qualified
2017/2018	Qualified
2018/2019	Qualified
2019/2020	Qualified
2020/2021	Qualified
2021/2022	

### 11.9.2 Audit Strategy

The Municipality established a task team to drive the Clean Audit initiative called “Operation Clean Audit” and which aims at improving governance, financial systems and service delivery at both local and provincial government level, reversing poor internal controls, poor quality of financial statements and non-compliance with Supply Chain Management whilst attaining a clean audit opinion.

The Task Team report to Council via the Audit and Performance Audit Committee which is responsible to Council for financial and internal control oversight in line with the Audit and Performance Audit Committee Charter.



Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
<b>Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)</b>	To report progress on the audit action plan.	Weekly	Management, internal audit, MMC for Finance and the EM.
<b>Asset management</b>	To report progress on specific asset issues. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
<b>Annual Financial Statement</b>	To report progress on the AFS process plan. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
<b>Audit Committee</b>	To review the annual financial statements and audit action plan.	Quarterly and through special meetings.	Management, internal audit, MMC for Finance and the EM.

### **11.10 FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY**

It has been recognized that the well-managed physical development of the municipal precinct and the sustainable provision of infrastructural and social services to the citizenry of Polokwane Municipality, both depend to a large degree on the efficiency of the municipality as an institution, as well as its financial viability.

Repairs and maintenance become fundamental to financial sustainability. All revenue generating assets have to be maintained and refurbished all the time to continue rendering the requisite services and yielding the revenue required to continue as a going concern. To this end the municipality has continued to set aside more and more resources both operational and capital to ensure that the assets are in a good state.

One of the processes the municipality embarked on as part of the turnaround was to develop a turnaround strategy striving to reduce costs and enhance revenue. Specific areas were targeted for budget reduction and streamlining. Luxury spending and unplanned spending was discouraged. Certain measures have been put in place to improve the management of revenue and collection thereof. In general municipality is working hard to ensure full compliance to circular 70 of the MFMA issued by National Treasury.

## **11.11. SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT POLICY (SCM)**

The Polokwane Municipal Council adopted the Supply Chain Management Policy that was drafted in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, No. 56 (MFMA), as well as the Municipal Supply Chain Management Regulations, Government Gazette Notice No. 868 of 2005.

Section 217 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa requires that when an organ of State contracts for goods and services, it must do so in accordance with a system which is fair, equitable, transparent, competitive and cost effective.

The Supply Chain Management Policy gives effect to these principles and the Preferential Procurement Legislation, and furthermore to comply with the provisions of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act and its Regulations promulgated in terms thereof. The SCM policy has recently been reviewed and approved by Council to ensure that controls are tightened to combat fraud and corruption in procurement processes.

### **11.11.1 Supply Chain Committees**

Chapter 11 of the MFMA compels the municipalities to establish Supply Chain Management Units and implement the SCM Policy, which gives effect to all SCM functional areas. The Supply Chain Management Unit has been established and operates under a direct supervision of the **Chief Financial Officer**.

Regulation 26 of the Municipal Supply Chain Management Regulations stipulates that a municipality's Supply Chain Management system must provide for a committee system for competitive bids consisting of at least a bid specification, bid evaluation and bid adjudication committee. The Municipality has established the following committees: -

- **Bid Specification Committee.**
- **Bid Evaluation Committee and**
- **Bid Adjudication Committee.**

Each Committee consists of a practitioner from Supply Chain Management and officials from key Directorates in the Municipality. The Accounting Officer is responsible for the appointment of bid committees and committees are appointed once a year and reviewed accordingly by the Accounting Officer. Although the chain of work of these Committees is intertwined, they operate separately from each other. All members of the Committees sign an Oath of Secrecy and Declaration of Interest to ensure that the bidding system is fair, transparency, openness and equitable.

Municipality has awarded 98% of the bids to the BBBEE compliant service providers as part of implementation of BBBEE legislation however the challenge remain on the category of empowerment insofar as disabled sector of society is concern. Currently municipality is advertising the tenders on the CSD as part of National Treasury initiative.

To curb irregular expenditure, the Office of the Chief Financial Officer has strengthened its compliance unit and developed a procurement checklist. The compliance officers verify whether all bids have been processes in accordance with the MFMA procurement regulations before been awarded.

A new reform was implemented by changing the SCM accounting policy to include the bench marking of all store materials on the market before tendering or advertising for the bid. This will ensure value for money and a further efficient spending of taxpayer money.

### 11.11.2 SCM Challenges on Projects

List of SCM challenges on Projects	Progress to date	Solutions
<p><b><u>Non-Responsive Bid</u></b></p> <p>Non-responsive bid is when service providers or contractors are failing to respond to the bid evaluation requirements. In this case, the bid is cancelled and re-advertised.</p>	<p>All the bids where bidders were non-responsive to the bid have been cancelled and re-advertised.</p>	<p>The SCM will revert to having physical briefing sessions to assist service providers in understanding the tender conditions.</p>
<p><b><u>Declining the Award</u></b></p> <p>There are incidents whereby contractors decline the appointments or awards due to under-quoting by the contractor or service provider on the project. The projects were cancelled and re-advertised if there are no second bidder in line.</p>	<p>The projects were cancelled and re-advertised.</p>	<p>The SCM will revert to having physical briefing sessions to assist the service providers in understanding the tender conditions.</p>
<p><b><u>Delays in Finalization of the Specifications by the Consulting Engineers</u></b></p> <p>Supply Chain Management (Demand Management) experienced delays with specifications that are referred to consulting engineers for rectifications. The specification takes a very long time to be finalized and thus delays the process of advertisement of the bid.</p>	<p>Follow ups are being made with the end-user departments for submission of specifications.</p>	<p>The SCM will create a spreadsheet which will indicate timeframes from the date of submission of the specification and approval by the Municipal Manager. The SCM has issued a circular to all SBUs to submit specifications in preparations for next financial year.</p>
<p><b><u>Quoting Above Budget</u></b></p> <p>There are incidents wherein service providers or contractors quote above the budget. The risk of appointing such contractors is that projects will be delayed since there will be no funds to cover the shortfall at that time. The end-user department will wait for budget adjustment processes to unfold in order to obtain additional funding.</p>	<p>Projects are delayed for appointment until such time that funding is guaranteed.</p>	<p>Proper costing of the project should be done by the consulting engineers.</p>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

## **11.12 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS ON A STANDARD CHART OF ACCOUNTS (MSCOA)**

mSCOA stands for “standard chart of accounts” and provides a uniform and standardized financial transaction classification framework. Essentially this means that mSCOA prescribes the method (the how) and format (the look) that municipalities and their entities should use to record and classify all expenditure (capital and operating), revenue, assets, liabilities, equity, policy outcomes and legislative reporting. mSCOA is a “proudly South African” project researched by National Treasury based on municipal practices, reporting outcomes, policy implementation and review, etc.

### **11.12.1 mSCOA as a Business Reform**

mSCOA is a business reform rather than a mere financial reform and requires multidimensional recording and reporting of every transaction across the following 7 segments:

#### **Background**

Minister of Finance has, in terms of section 168 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act No.56 of 2003), and acting with the concurrence of the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs gazette the Municipal Regulations on Standard Chart of Accounts (mSCOA) into effect on 22 April 2014. Municipal SCOA provides a uniform and standardized financial transaction classification framework. Essentially this means that mSCOA prescribes the method (the how) and format (the look) that municipalities and their entities should use to record and classify all expenditure (capital and operating), revenue, assets and liabilities, policy outcomes and legislative reporting. This is done at transactional level and ensures that a municipality and its entities have minimum business processes in place. This will result in an improved understanding of the role of local government in the broader national policy framework and linkage to other government functions.

The Regulations apply to all municipalities and municipal entities and indicate its applicability and relevance to each specific municipal environment while accommodating organizational uniqueness and structural differences. The Regulation provides for a three-year preparation and readiness window and all 278 municipalities had to be compliant to the mSCOA classification framework.

### **11.12.2 mSCOA Implementation by Polokwane Municipality**

The municipality is one of the best performing municipalities in the country in the compliance of Mscoa regulations. To date we have not lost any of our equitable shares due to non-compliances and our reporting is extracted directly from the system by National Treasury due to the strict compliances to the Mscoa regulations.

### 11.12.3 mSCOA - Business process & systems alignment

	National Treasury area of Focus	Polokwane Municipality
1	Is this treated as a business reform? What is the involvement of different departments within the municipality?	Yes, 15 Business processes are consistently reviewed and evaluated however, because of the enormity of the task, it is done piecemeal according to the highest priority budget and treasury and AFS and IDP subsequent review of the remaining process will be actioned and prioritized accordingly.
2	What is the involvement of different departments within the municipality?	Composition of steering committee is comprised of different SBU representatives, and each department is responsible for their strategic objective, e.g., unbundling of capital and operational projects (e.g., Typical Work stream).
3	Reflect on your progress with mSCOA reflecting on the implications of not being up to date with the reform?	Even though the Financial Management System (FMS) is mSCOA compliant sub-systems are not seamlessly integrating with the FMS. Our current status at NT is green. The team is continuously working hard to ensure progress and compliance.
4	Reflect a road map to indicate how and by when the municipality will become mSCOA compliant.	<u>Green status</u> has been achieved at NT and on those bases, we believe we are on the road to fully compliant.  The Municipality is now working on traffic system be mSCOA compliant by the end of this quarter ( <b>30 June 2021</b> ).  Payroll system also need to be amended to change their GL setup in order to be mSCOA compliant.

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.12.4 mSCOA Governance Structures

The required governance structures are in place to drive and ensure successful implementation of the reform. This is treated as a reform where all stream members (which included different departments) were appointed by the **Municipal Manager** and project plan was developed and delivered as such.

The **technical and steering committee** met regularly to update each other on the challenges and progress made. All Departments are using the mSCOA budget to transact on and will submit their **budget** in this format.

### 11.12.5 mSCOA Implementation Progress

#### 2. Data string submission status – Financial and Non-financial data

Section 71(1) of the MFMA requires the accounting officer of the municipality to submit monthly budget statements no later than 10 working days after the end of each month in a prescribed format. During the period of review, all the Section 71 data strings were submitted successfully.



It was also observed that all the required Non-financial data strings for the period M01 – M12 were successfully submitted to the LG portal.

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

The budget was prepared on the Munsoft financial system. Data strings are seamlessly synced with MUNSOFT Reporting tool which generates A, B and C Schedule.

#### Module Usage

Module	Usage	Challenges
IDP Projects	Fully utilized - MUNSOFT	N/A
Budget Management	Fully utilized - MUNSOFT	N/A
Billing and Receipting	Fully utilized - MUNSOFT	N/A
General Ledger	Fully utilized - MUNSOFT	N/A
Asset Management	Other System	Asset management project has been put on hold until finalization of Annual Financial Statements
Payroll	3 <sup>rd</sup> Party System - SAGE	Interface to the Munsoft is a challenge as the system fails to accommodate multiple companies.
Creditors	Fully utilized - MUNSOFT	N/A
Supply Chain Management	Partially utilized - MUNSOFT	Contracts, SLA's as well as evaluation of supplier performance are managed manually outside the MUNSOFT system.

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

**Green status** has been achieved at NT and on those bases, we believe we are on the road to be fully compliant.



- **Sub-system at traffic department (Truvelo)** is integrating seamlessly to the FMS.
- **Sage Sub-system (employee related cost)** do not integrate seamlessly at this stage.
- **Assets** are not seamlessly integrating to the FMS.
- Polokwane will start migration of their assets to Munsoft Asset Management System and the **completion date** as per project plan are **31 December 2022**.

### 11.12.6 mSCOA Implementation Progress -(PHA)

#### Polokwane Housing Association (PHA)

- The mSCOA compliant FMS was implemented **1 July 2020** and **they are transacting** on it.
- Munsoft is currently **assisting PHA** to setup the consolidation between the **parent and the entity**.
- PHA Sage sub-system – **Not fully** implemented yet.
- Expected finalization date is **31 May 2021**.

### 11.12.7 NT benchmarking Session mSCOA Request

During the NT benchmarking Session held on the 18 May 2021, The City of Polokwane has requested National Treasury of the following:

The National Treasury must:

- Investigate the possibility to create data strings linked to the Batho Pele dummy budget A1 schedule; and
- Investigate the possibility to create data strings linked to an Annual Financial Statement specimen budget.

### 11.12.8 BORROWINGS

INSTITUTION	INTEREST	LOAN AMOUNT - OPENING BALANCE June 2022	REDEMPTION TO DATE - May 2022	EXPENSED INTEREST TO DATE - June 2022	ACCRUED INTEREST - June 2022	CLOSING BALANCE - June 2022	EXPIRY DATE / REDEMPTION DATE
DEVELOPMENT BANK OF SOUTHERN AFRICA - 61007443	10.75	198 347 537				198 347 537	31/01/2032
STANDARD BANK SOUTH AFRICA	10.98	197 017 191				197 017 191	30/01/2032
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>395 364 728</b>	<b>.</b>	<b>.</b>	<b>.</b>	<b>395 364 728</b>	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.13 COST CONTAINMENT

The cost containment regulations came into effect on 1 July 2019. The regulations require the municipality to monitor certain categories of expenditure with the objective to contain costs. The municipality is also required to report on the budget and actual expenditure relating to the regulated costs on a regular basis as outlined below

Cost Containment Annual Report				
Cost Containment Measure	Original Budget	Adjustments Budget	Total Expenditure	Savings
		R'000		R'000
Consultants and Professional Services	105 446 400	111 414 124	85 324 100	26 090 024
Advertising Publicity and Marketing	14 582 200	14 471 024	10 081 818	4 389 206
Overtime	26 668 614	51 946 196	46 947 841	4 998 355
Catering Services	878 200	2 224 100	1 490 482	733 618
Travel Agency and Visa's	2 240 720	3 330 720	2 735 722	594 998
Travel and Subsistence	3 209 150	3 545 800	344 151	3 201 649
<b>Total</b>	<b>153 025 284</b>	<b>186 931 964</b>	<b>146 924 114</b>	<b>40 007 850</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

#### 11.13.1 UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR AND FRUITLESS EXPENDITURE

##### UIF SUMMARY

2020/21 FINANCIAL YEAR					
Description	Opening balance	Movement	Non cash expenditure portion	Closing balance	Previous write offs by Council
<b>Irregular</b>	478 108 870	753 365	-	478 862 235	89 400 000
<b>Unauthorised</b>	484 280 664		614 252 938	1 098 533 602	489 351 372
<b>Fruitless and wasteful</b>	-	-	-	-	8 629
<b>TOTAL</b>	962 389 534	753 365	614 252 938	1 577 395 837	578 760 001

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

## UNAUTHORISED

Non-Cash items due to GRAP 24. National Treasury working on a solution as other secondary cities have the same challenge.

Non cash item arising from application of GRAP	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21
	Amount	Amount	Amount	Amount	Amount
Contribution to leave provision	6 883 889	-	-		
Profit/loss on sale of assets/ fair value adjustments	7 279 834	-			
Debt incentive	38 046 677	-			
Contribution to Provision for bad debt	1 906 569	96 266 404			
Depreciation	186 019 501	300 698 270	489 207 492	12 210 123	614 252 938
Donation of roads to RAL	15 542 289	-			
Maintenance of infrastructure (GRAP classification)	14 616 741	-			
Employee cost (actuary valuations)	-	3 978 999		449 879 394	
Land provision movement		10 106 943			
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>270 295 500</b>	<b>411 050 616</b>	<b>489 207 492</b>	<b>462 089 517</b>	<b>614 252 938</b>

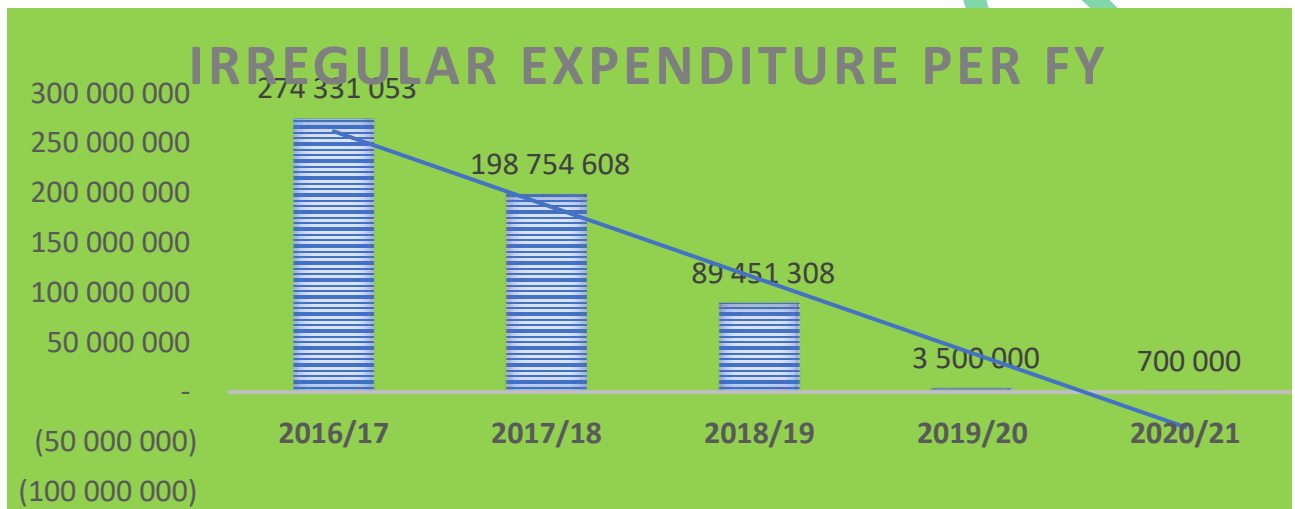
Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### IRREGULAR EXPENDITURE PER FINANCIAL YEAR

Financial year	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20	2020/21
Irregular expenditure	274 331 053	198 754 608	89 451 308	3 500 000	700 000

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### IRREGULAR EXPENDITURE PER FINANCIAL YEAR (GRAPH)



Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.14 Indigent support

#### 11.14.1 Status of Municipal Indigent Register

The municipality has 13 196 currently on its database and spends around **R165 million** on poor households

Description	Monthly average	Annually
Rebates on rates	1 546 189	18 554 268
Free basic water and electricity	2 404 216	28 850 594
Rebates on basic service charges	3 707 329	44 487 948
Purchase of Gel	400 000	4 800 000
Eskom for boreholes (rural areas)	1 641 099	19 693 188
Provision for water in rural areas	5 000 000	49 000 000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>13 782 167</b>	<b>165 385 998</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.14.2 Processes in indigent Applications

TASK	TIMELINE	OUTPUT
Receipt of application files from the Municipality and consumption and account confirmation	5 days	Received documents to be sorted according to the wards
Capturing of the information on the indigent system and scanning of documents	3 days	Verification of the collected files and the existing information on the system
Distribution of Public Notice Letters and SMS	2 days	Clear and precise instructions to be forwarded to the applicants beforehand, for the required attachments
Site Visits	1 days	Collection of the required documents from the applicants, and photographic evidence of the indigent household
Capturing of updated documents on the system	2 days	Scanning and uploading of the updated documents on the system.
External Vetting	14 Days	The collated documents and the information to be vetted for correctness.
Vetting Results and follow up and customisation	4 day	Compilation of a Report to the Municipality on recommendations of the applications based on the results of the external vetting.
Send Report to the Municipality for decision	3 day	Compiled and consolidated report to be forwarded to the Municipality.
Upload results of the application unto the system	3 Days	Receipt of the decisions of the applications from the Municipality
Send outcome results to the applicant through sms	1 day	Informing the applicants of the outcome of their applications.
Write Off and flagging as indigent on the system	3 to 15 days after month end done	The capturing and rebates and possible write off applied on the system after system month end is processed.

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.14.3 Challenges and Mitigation/Control – Indigent Support

Challenges	Description	Mitigation/Control
Late application	Residents don't apply for indigent subsidy until they are terminated and then they claim the indigent status	Payment is required until the customer qualify as indigent. Applicant does not warrant the indigent status.

Challenges	Description	Mitigation/Control
Incomplete/ inaccurate information	Applicant often supply incomplete or incorrect information and documents delaying the verification process	Checklist is made and the officials try to validate the information on application, the vetting provide information not provided by the applicant.
Unavailability of applicant	Customers when requested to be available for verification they are often not available delaying the process, at times the customer do not have the required copies of conformation required failing the site verification.	Up to about 3 site visits are done before the customer is disqualified and the process has to start from the beginning.
Ownership	Often the owners who passed on has the house allocated as family house while other members of the household are employed	The information provided by the household get verified and normally the process requires more time and additional documents.
False information/claims	New information is not disclosed such job status and spouse who is employed.	Write offs if already done are reinstated and the indigent disqualified.  Currently 300 under investigation

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.15 Extent of existing loans, and associated finance and redemption payments.

#### 2021/22 Financial Year

LENDER	BALANCE 01/07/2021	INTEREST 12/2021	REDEMPATIO N 12/2021	INTEREST 06/2022	REDEMPTION 06/2022	BALANCE 30/06/2021
DEVELOPMENT BANK OF SOUTHERN AFRICA	209 903 394	11 721 729	4 704 864	11 721 729	4 889 328	200 309 201
STANDARD BANK SOUTH AFRICA	206 547 909	11 308 413	4 727 021	11 231 747	4 803 686	197 017 202
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 416 451 303</b>	<b>R 23 030 142</b>	<b>R 9 431 885</b>	<b>R 22 953 476</b>	<b>R 9 693 014</b>	<b>R 397 326 403</b>

#### 2022/23 Financial Year



LENDER	BALANCE 01/07/2022	INTEREST 12/2022	REDEMPTION 12/2022	INTEREST 06/2023	REDEMPTION 06/2023	BALANCE 30/06/2023
DEVELOPMENT BANK OF SOUTHERN AFRICA	200 309 201	11 721 729	4 704 864	11 721 729	4 889 328	190 715 009
STANDARD BANK SOUTH AFRICA	197 017 202	10 608 809	5 426 624	10 720 044	5 315 390	186 275 188
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 397 326 403</b>	<b>R 22 330 538</b>	<b>R 10 131 488</b>	<b>R 22 441 772</b>	<b>R 10 204 718</b>	<b>R 376 990 197</b>

### 2023/24 Financial Year

LENDER	BALANCE 01/07/2023	INTEREST 12/2023	REDEMPTION 12/2023	INTEREST 06/2024	REDEMPTION 06/2024	BALANCE 30/06/2024
DEVELOPMENT BANK OF SOUTHERN AFRICA	190 715 009	11 721 729	4 704 864	11 721 729	4 889 328	181 120 816
STANDARD BANK SOUTH AFRICA	186 275 188	10 142 454	5 892 979	9 984 378	6 051 056	174 331 152
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>R 376 990 197</b>	<b>R 21 864 183</b>	<b>R 10 597 844</b>	<b>R 21 706 106</b>	<b>R 10 940 385</b>	<b>R355 451 969</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### BORROWINGS

Institution	Interest	Balance as at 30 June 2021	Repayments July 2021	Closing balance	Expiry date
DBSA	10.75%	208 893 740	16 436 586	203 670 674	31-Jan-32
Standard Banks	10.98%	206 547 898	16 035 434	201 820 878	31-Jan-32
<b>TOTAL</b>		<b>415 441 638</b>	<b>32 472 020</b>	<b>405 491 552</b>	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.15.1 Loans Repayments

- Repayments are made on the due dates and the municipality has not defaulted in its loans since inception. The loans were incurred to finance **the replacement of AC pipes and pre-paid metering projects around 2016/17 financial year.**
- These projects have returned 76% return on capital since inception in line with the 5 year pay-back period.
- However, we need to reassess how to pay back the loans sooner since the returns are being realised as plan.

## 11.16 Key Ratios

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Cash / Cost Coverage Ratio (Excl. Unspent Conditional Grants)	1 - 3 Months	1 Month	Within the norm. However, the municipality should set a target of 1,5 in the short term, 2 in the medium and around 2,5 in the long term.
2	Current Ratio	1.5 - 2:1	1.1	Much needs to be done on creditor management and a reduction in budget is necessary.

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.16.1 Net cash flow position from working capital

The following table reflects the net cash flow position from working capital (i.e. trade creditors and debtors).

Description	Amount
Available cash	301 154 777
Less: Trade creditors	(497 112 352)
<b>Net cash flow before cash inflows from trade debtors</b>	<b>(195 957 575)</b>
Add: Trade debtors	654 197 235
<b>Net operational cash surplus</b>	<b>458 239 660</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

Although, we are in a net cash surplus from a working capital position, National Treasury only assesses the analysis from a creditor relative to the available cash as highlighted in yellow.

This implies that our budget will have to take this analysis into account going forward. Reduction in expenditure and increase in cash reserves will be the only appropriate mitigation measure to achieve a positive cash flow before taking cash inflows from receivables into account.

## 11.17 FINANCIAL HEALTH ASSESSMENT

### 11.17.1 Description of each Financial Health Category

	Category	Description
1	Bankrupt	Solvency ratio of less than 1 (total liabilities exceed total asset i.e., negative equity)
2	Insolvent	Current ratio less than 1
3	Solvent	Current ratio above 1 but available cash exceeds trade creditors <b>before</b> taking cash collections from debtors.
4	Constraint Liquidity Ratio	Current ratio less than 1 but can meet current creditors from available cash.
5	Short To Medium Term Viability	Current ratio above 1

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.17.2 Polokwane Financial Health Status

Financial component	Amount (R'000)	Ratio
Total Assets	16 945 861	Solvency ratio 8,5:1
Total Liabilities	1 979 436	
Total Wealth/Equity	16 189 748	
Total current assets	1 223 323	Current Ratio 1,07:1
Total current liabilities	1 147 279	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.17.3 The Status of the City of Polokwane in terms of the NT Assessment

Based on the analysis, the city of Polokwane falls under the **solvent category** which generally indicates that the municipality can continue operations financially **but not** as comfortable as we would desire.

Unfortunately, the COVID 19 pandemic did not assist the current ratio as the municipality loss over **R110 million** in billable revenue since the hard lockdown in March 2020.

Although solvent, the City of Polokwane should **not** exercise complacency as in our view this category indicates a break-even situation where revenue **needs to increase** and/or better expenditure management (including cost optimisation) needs to be implemented **urgently**.

#### 11.17.4 SHIFT TO THE SHORT TO MEDIUM CATERGORY

There is a need to shift towards the **short to medium category** to achieve an adequate current ratio.

Description	Amount
Available cash	301 154 777
Less: Trade creditors	(497 112 352)
<b>Net cash flow before cash inflows from trade debtors</b>	<b>(195 957 575)</b>
Add: Trade debtors	654 197 235
<b>Net operational cash surplus</b>	<b>458 239 660</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

Although, we are in a net cash surplus from a working capital position, National Treasury only assesses the analysis from a creditor relative to the available cash as highlighted in yellow. This implies that our budget will have to take this analysis into account going forward. Reduction in expenditure and increase in cash reserves will be the only appropriate mitigation measure to achieve a positive cash flow before taking cash inflows from receivables into account

#### 11.18 KEY RATIOS

##### 11.18.1. Asset Management

RATIO		NORM	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Capital Expenditure to Total Expenditure	10% to 20%		<b>16%</b>	Within the norm.
			Total Operating Expenditure	4 294 765	
			Taxation Expense	-	
			Total Capital Expenditure	827 146	
2		0%		<b>0%</b>	

RATIO		NORM	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
	Impairment of Property, Plant and Equipment, Investment Property and Intangible assets (Carrying Value)		PPE, Investment Property and Intangible Impairment	-	No impairment was noted i.e. assets are in a reasonable condition.
			PPE at carrying value	16 216 926	
			Investment at carrying value	715 153	
			Intangible Assets at carrying value	16 934	
3	Repairs and Maintenance as a % of Property, Plant and Equipment and Investment Property (Carrying Value)	8%		8%	If we take out the revaluation gain of the assets at carry them at cost of purchase the ratio is within the norm of 8%. By taking the revalued amount the ratio is 3.3%. The revaluation tends to increase the value of assets from what was originally purchased
			Total Repairs and Maintenance Expenditure	527 000	
			PPE at carrying value	6 216 926	
			Investment Property at Carrying value	715 153	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.18.2. Debtor Management

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Collection Rate	95%		107%	Collection rate accumulatively above the norm
			Gross Debtors closing balance	1 435 308	
			Gross Debtors opening balance	1 593 380	
			Bad debts written Off	-	
			Billed Revenue	2 210 308	

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
2	Bad Debts Written-off as % of Provision for Bad Debt	100%		<b>0%</b>	No bad debts written off. Waiting for the next Council for approval.
			Consumer Debtors Bad debts written off	-	
			Consumer Debtors Current bad debt Provision	939 401	
3	Net Debtors Days	30 days		<b>99 days</b>	The huge net debtor days is due to the govt debtors and debtors of Mankweng which are cumulatively R600 million.
			Gross debtors	1 593 380	
			Bad debts Provision	992 000	
			Billed Revenue	2 210 308	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.18.3 Liquidity Management

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Cash / Cost Coverage Ratio (Excl. Unspent Conditional Grants)	1 - 3 Months		<b>1 Month</b>	Within the norm. However, the municipality should set a target of 1,5 in the short term, 2 in the medium and around 2,5 in the long term.
			Cash and cash equivalents	301 200	
			Unspent Conditional Grants	77 000	
			Overdraft	-	
			Short Term Investments	-	
			Monthly Fixed Operational Expenditure	2 259 000	
2	Current Ratio	1.5 - 2:1		<b>1.07</b>	



RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
			Current Assets	1 223 323	Much needs to be done on creditor management and a reduction in budget is necessary.
			Current Liabilities	1 147 279	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.18.4 Liability Management

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Capital Cost(Interest Paid and Redemption) as a % of Total Operating Expenditure	6% - 8%		<b>3%</b>	Within the norm. Capital and interest payments represent a small portion relative to our total operational expenditures.
			Interest Paid	61 910	
			Redemption	50 609	
			Total Operating Expenditure	4 295 000	
			Taxation Expense	-	
2	Debt (Total Borrowings) / Revenue	45%		<b>11%</b>	Within norm. According to the indicator we qualify for a <b>R700m loan</b> . However, <u>loan funding not recommended.</u>
			Total Debt	415 000	
			Total Operating Revenue	3 616 890	
			Operational Conditional Grants	-	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.19 Key Ratios - Financial Performance

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1		= or > 0%		<b>1%</b>	

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
	Net Operating Surplus Margin		Total Operating Revenue	3 616 890	Although we are in net surplus, an increase in this figure is required with a recommended 2,5% in the short term.  A 1% surplus reflects more or less at break-even point mainly caused by the COVID 19 pandemic.
			Depreciation (Valuation less original cost)	711 102	
			Total Operating Expenditure	4 295 000	
			Taxation Expense	-	
<b>2</b>	Net Surplus /Deficit Electricity	0% - 15%		<b>25%</b>	Above the norm. Key consideration is however sustainability.
			Total Electricity Revenue	1 070 089	
			Net expenditure after EQ allocation	803 678	
			EQ allocation in terms of LGES	205 483	
			Total Electricity Expenditure (including depreciation at cost)	1 009 161	
<b>3</b>	Net Surplus /Deficit Water	= or > 0%		<b>-11%</b>	Less than the norm.  Relook at cost drivers.
			Total Water Revenue	245 370	
			Net expenditure after EQ allocation	272 905	
			EQ allocation in terms of LGES	317 803	
			Total Water Expenditure (including depreciation at cost)	590 708	
<b>4</b>		= or > 0%		<b>100%</b>	Within the norm.

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
	Net Surplus /Deficit Refuse		Total Refuse Revenue	127 400	More effective allocation of EQ needs to be considered irrespective of green highlight.
			Net expenditure after EQ allocation	-	
			EQ allocation in terms of LGES	196 588	
			Total Refuse Expenditure (including depreciation at cost)	149 069	
<b>5</b>	Net Surplus /Deficit Sanitation and Waste Water	= or > 0%		<b>100%</b>	Within the norm  More effective allocation of EQ needs to be considered irrespective of green highlight
			Total Sanitation and Water Waste Revenue	125 300	
			Net expenditure after EQ allocation	-	
			EQ allocation in terms of LGES	234 513	
			Total Refuse Expenditure (including depreciation at cost)	45 600	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.19.1 Key ratios – Distribution losses

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
<b>1</b>	Electricity Distribution Losses (Percentage)	7% - 10%		<b>13%</b>	More losses than the requirement of the norm.
			Loss in kwh	92 309 655	
<b>2</b>	Water Distribution Losses (Percentage)	15% - 30%		<b>22%</b>	Within the norm
			Loss in KL	8 536 877	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.19.2 Key ratios – Revenue Management

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Growth in Number of Active Consumer Accounts	None		<b>2%</b>	Developments within the City should be fast tracked, or strategies should be developed to encourage more investments.
			Number of Active Debtors Accounts (Previous)	70 584	
			Number of Active Debtors Accounts (Current)	71 806	
2	Revenue Growth (%)	= CPI		<b>4%</b>	Within the norm. However, planning projects need to be fast tracked to ensure growth above CPI.
			CPI	4%	
			Total Revenue (Previous)	2 019 714	
			Total Revenue (Current)	2 105 784	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.19.3 Key ratios – Expenditure Management

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Creditors Payment Period (Trade Creditors)	30 days		<b>30 days</b>	Within the norm.
			Total expenditure	220 000	
			Trade creditors	497 112	
2	Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful and Unauthorised Expenditure / Total Operating Expenditure	0%		<b>14%</b>	The unauthorised expenditure of R1 billion on the AFS is due to non-cash unauthorised expenditure and is awaiting Council
			Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful and Unauthorised Expenditure	614 953	
			Total Operating Expenditure	4 295 000	

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
			Taxation Expense	-	approval for write off. Benchmarked with City of CT in 2017
3	Remuneration as % of Total Operating Expenditure	25% - 40%		<b>23%</b>	<p>Within the norm. However, this is 38% of own cash revenues and will have to be carefully monitored.</p> <p>Further, overtime of R92 million was incurred which represents 10% of the salary bill,</p> <p>General acceptable norm from Treasury is 5%</p> <p>While a revised policy is in progress, much is needed to address this matter (Corporate and Shared Services).</p>
			Employee/personnel related cost	964 703	
			Councillors Remuneration	38 692	
			Total Operating Expenditure	4 295 000	
4	Contracted Services % of Total Operating Expenditure	2% - 5%		<b>19%</b>	<p>R157 million is funded from grants. The ratio drops to 15% when</p>
			Contracted Services	808 992	

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
			Total Operating Expenditure	4 295 000	excluding grants.
			Taxation Expense	-	However, not within the norm. More cost efficiencies need to be achieved.

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.19.4 Key ratios – Grant dependency

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Own funded Capital Expenditure (Internally Generated Funds) to Total Capital Expenditure	None		<b>18%</b>	The expenditure will not be reduced in the short to medium term.
			Internally generated funds	146 712	
			Total Capital Expenditure	803 096	
2	Own Source Revenue to Total Operating Revenue(Including Agency Revenue)	None		<b>52%</b>	Faster growth in the City will ensure less dependency on grants.  The fast tracking of catalytic projects including the low hanging fruits such timely approvals of rezoning applications amongst others.
			Total Revenue	4 381 882	
			Government grant and subsidies	2 146 189	
			Public contributions and Donations	5 385	
			Capital Grants	77 200	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)



### 11.19.5 Key ratio - Budget performance

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	Capital Expenditure Budget Implementation Indicator	95% - 100%		<b>89%</b>	The capital expenditure includes own funded projects. DoRA expenditure amounted to 90% whilst the CRR was at 88%
			Actual Capital Expenditure	1 676 700	
			Budget Capital Expenditure	1 887 400	
2	Operating Expenditure Budget Implementation Indicator	95% - 100%		<b>113%</b>	The over expenditure was a result of the non cash expenditure of depreciation that exceeded the non cash budget.
			Actual Operating Expenditure	4 295 000	
			Budget Operating Expenditure	3 816 732	
3	Operating Revenue Budget Implementation Indicator	95% - 100%		<b>99%</b>	Revenue targets were met within the norm
			Actual Operating Revenue	69 000	
			Budget Operating Revenue	70 000	
4	Service Charges and Property Rates Revenue Budget Implementation Indicator	95% - 100%		<b>91%</b>	Variances were mainly due to subdued consumption revenue due to the COVID impacted economy.
			Actual Service Charges and Property Rates Revenue	2 052 160	
			Budget Service Charges and Property Rates Revenue	2 263 191	

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.20 EXPENDITURE

### 11.20.1 Expenditure analysis

Expenditure	Amount (R'000)	%
Employee related costs	871 932	20%
Overtime	92 771	2%
Councillors	38 692	1%
Depreciation	946 608	22%
Finance costs	61 910	1%
Provision for bad debts	156 669	4%
Bulk purchases	956 189	22%
Contracted services – own funded	651 892	15%
Contracted services - grant funded	157 100	4%
Transfers (PHA)	66 558	2%
Inventory	68 356	2%
General expenses	226 085	5%
<b>Total</b>	<b>4 294 762</b>	<b>100%</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

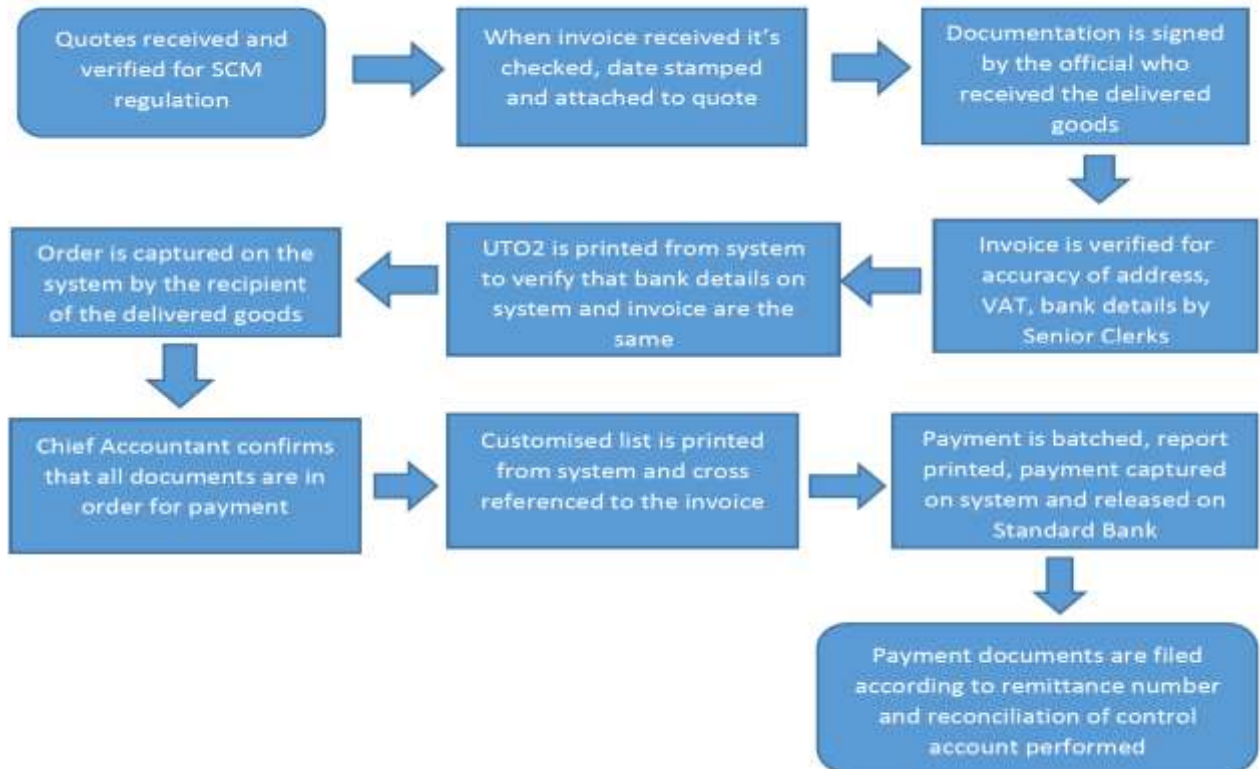
### 11.21 Expenditure

All creditors are paid within 30 days. AGSA has not raised this as a finding in the last audit as opposed to the last 3 financial years where it was a recurring finding.

Eskom and Lepelle Northern Water remain up to date. Proper engagements between managers and their service providers on the payment processes **is required**.

#### 11.21.1 Expenditure Flow Chart

### Order Payments



Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.21.2 Key contracted services

Expenditure	Amount (R'000)	Comment
infrastructure and planning	79 088	Roads and water maintenance
Refuse removal	62 483	Outsourced refuse function
Security services	60 450	Municipal wide security services
Sewerage services	41 815	Maintenance
Water tankers	48 378	Cost reduced due to purchase of own tankers
Legal costs	24 992	Details appear in the litigation register.
Laboratory services	35 402	Water management
Meter Management	24 424	Meter reading of +70 000 monthly meters
Credit control and prepaid commissions	39 296	Credit control of +70 000 monthly account and commission of prepaid sales to Cigicel.

Expenditure	Amount (R'000)	Comment
VAT recovery	15 460	To expire in February 2022 in terms of the consultant reduction plan.
Accounting consultant	15 074	Contract expired in May 2021 in terms of the consultant reduction plan.
Asset Management	15 978	Unbundling of assets in terms of the MFMA/Accounting standards.
Electrical	25 940	Electrical maintenance
Maintenance of buildings	31 172	Maintenance of facilities
Maintenance of equipment	18 893	Water maintenance and quality
Maintenance of other assets	11 104	Road's maintenance
Transportation	32 927	Fleet management
Personnel and Labour	28 875	Outsource services mainly from roads and refuse SBUs (net of EPWP Grant)

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.21.2 Expenditure

Expenditure	Amount (R'000)
Advertising	8 720
Auditors' remuneration	13 839
Bank charges	4 007
Hire	5 468
Insurance	19 325
IT Expenses	10 045
Levies (SALGA)	11 942
Fuel	41 908
Postage and courier	4 788
Protective clothing	11 782
Subscription	9 552
Telephone	19 086
Travel	178

Expenditure	Amount (R'000)
Title deed search	17
Eskom bills for boreholes (rural area)	19 693

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

### 11.21.3 Cash flow vs Budget

FINANCIAL YEAR	BUDGET	ACTUAL	SURPLUS
30-Jun-21	2 356 109 080	2 483 958 842	127 849 762

### 11.21.4 Cash Reserve

DETERMINATION OF CASH RESERVES	
Description	R'000
Closing bank balance	301 000,00
Less: Grants account	221 100,00
Amount net of grants	79 900,00
Less: Operational account	- 29 900,00
Reserve	50 000,00

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.21.3 Debtors – Government

SUMMARY GOVERNMENT DEBT REPORT AS AT 31 MARCH 2022

Name of Department	Payments	Current	30 Days	60 Days	90 Days	120 Days	150 Days	180 Days	210 + days	Total Balance
LIMDEV	-R266,689.61	R896,105.61	R868,549.93	R890,818.33	R809,722.48	R776,571.12	R771,474.68	R3,348,919.62	R3,729,593.67	R12,041,755.44
Limpopo Department of Sports, Arts & Culture	-R310,587.80	R342,064.28	R10,938.79	R10,873.78	R10,416.37	R10,436.50	R11,778.72	R170,355.07	R969,931.72	R1,536,795.23
Limpopo Department of Agriculture	-R32,802.89	R37,390.74	R2,198.52	R3,064.95	R1,904.52	R2,158.47	R2,224.55	R24,122.18	R393.58	R73,457.51
Limpopo Department of Cooperative Governance	-R68,732.45	R97,106.16	R24,498.22	R69,907.83	R69,582.75	R69,413.13	R69,009.41	R553,594.33	R2,087,131.09	R3,040,242.92
Limpopo Department of Economic Development	-R119,749.00	R42,516.15	R0.00	-R219,826.74	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	-R177,310.59
Limpopo Department of Education	-R679,831.15	R718,528.45	R233,718.09	R149,575.33	R138,572.73	R99,082.74	R95,560.94	R378,528.36	R518,931.54	R2,332,498.18
Limpopo Department Of Health	-R1,571,538.23	R4,281,017.24	R190,008.61	R193,872.19	R207,173.47	R190,337.93	R82,343.49	R354,237.80	R1,860,175.20	R7,359,165.93
Limpopo Department of Public Works	-R1,960,659.97	R3,900,807.25	R1,849,073.48	R1,729,662.89	R1,665,145.98	R1,422,884.90	R1,367,071.45	R4,802,813.31	-R1,440,207.51	R11,837,925.97
Limpopo Department of Rural Development	-R1,322,222.52	R1,915,175.21	R2,213,779.35	R2,044,096.89	R1,248,395.20	R2,287,385.92	R7,047,214.06	R370,554.58	R15,265,662.03	R31,935,547.63
Limpopo Department of Transport	-R89,099.99	R46,697.19	R22.15	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R46,719.34
Limpopo Department Of Treasury	-R256,410.82	R175,438.90	R3,219.35	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R178,658.25
Limpopo Office of The Premier	-R298,540.20	R306,312.43	R1,873.84	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R0.00	R308,186.27
National Department of Public Works	-R11,205,459.68	R4,230,686.53	R1,972,231.95	R1,051,103.74	R646,669.50	R539,065.89	R440,357.27	R2,703,982.97	R3,373,464.07	R14,957,561.92
	<b>-R18,182,324.31</b>	<b>R16,989,846.14</b>	<b>R7,370,112.28</b>	<b>R2,463,823.41</b>	<b>R4,797,583.00</b>	<b>R5,397,936.60</b>	<b>R9,837,034.57</b>	<b>R12,707,108.22</b>	<b>R26,365,075.39</b>	<b>R98,471,204.00</b>

NOTES TO GOVERNMENT DEBT REPORT

Name of Department	Challenge	Action	Intervention
LIMDEV	Day to day queries and disputes relating to water	All queries go through the normal process of	No intervention required
Limpopo Department of Sports, Arts & Culture	The Department has 5 accounts, 3 of these	Both properties have been disconnected	To disconnect the Department of Sports arts and
Limpopo Department of Agriculture	Constant engagement with the Department	Constant disconnection	No intervention required
Limpopo Department of Cooperative Governance	The Department has 4 accounts, 2 of these	Both properties have been disconnected	To disconnect the Department of Sports arts and
Limpopo Department of Economic Development	Good payer	Improve relationship management	No intervention required
Limpopo Department of Education	Constant engagement with the Department	constant dis connection	No intervention required
Limpopo Department Of Health	51% of the debt relates to Seshogo Hospital who is	Preparing for Disconnection of the Head Office.	Disconnect Health Head Office.
Limpopo Department of Public Works	Constant engagement with the Department	Constant disconnection	No intervention required
Limpopo Department of Rural Development	Dispute with regards to calculation of property	Department of Rural Development does not	kind request for CFO to meet up with counterparts
Limpopo Department of Transport	Good payer	Improve relationship management	No intervention required
Limpopo Department of Treasury	Good payer	Improve relationship management	No intervention required
Limpopo Office of The Premier	Good payer	Improve relationship management	No intervention required
National Department of Public Works	Constant engagement with the Department	Constant engagement with the Department	No intervention required

11.21.4 Debtors Aging (March 2022)

DEBTORS AGE ANALYSIS FOR THE MONTH ENDING MARCH 2022										
Description	NT Code	Budget Year 2021/22								
		0-30 Days	31-60 Days	61-90 Days	91-120 Days	121-150 Dys	151-180 Dys	181 Dys-1 Yr	Over 1Yr	Total
<b>Debtors Age Analysis By Income Source</b>										
Water	1200	R 24,922,752.00	R 10,732,008.00	R 7,173,180.00	R 6,310,575.00	R 6,683,424.00	R 11,099,226.00	R 86,912,400.00	R 173,049,631.00	R 326,861,257.00
Electricity	1300	R 66,403,102.00	R 13,594,117.00	R 8,670,813.00	R 5,598,907.00	R 5,417,829.00	R 5,280,510.00	R 26,140,054.00	R 96,384,845.00	R 226,480,178.00
Property Rates	1400	R 68,160,880.00	R 16,616,607.00	R 12,458,366.00	R 11,625,600.00	R 11,117,255.00	R 10,657,437.00	R 48,983,662.00	R 239,919,054.00	R 418,538,861.00
Waste Water Management	1500	R 10,602,868.00	R 5,072,139.00	R 3,786,182.00	R 3,429,025.00	R 3,189,131.00	R 3,051,435.00	R 27,582,836.00	R 42,800,710.00	R 99,494,326.00
Waste Management	1600	R 11,268,285.00	R 5,049,908.00	R 3,751,043.00	R 3,343,353.00	R 3,084,211.00	R 3,181,978.00	R 28,357,642.00	R 61,312,811.00	R 119,349,231.00
Property Rental Debtors	1700	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R 187,884.00	R 187,884.00
Interest on Anear Debtor Accounts	1810	R 6,844,676.00	R 6,738,109.00	R 6,306,968.00	R 6,300,130.00	R 5,966,506.00	R 5,823,949.00	R 30,152,165.00	R 240,737,452.00	R 309,069,954.00
Other	1900	R 6,587,174.00	R 3,189,472.00	R 3,508,781.00	R 1,743,646.00	R 2,453,949.00	R 1,863,270.00	R 13,057,582.00	R 136,324,384.00	R 167,728,248.00
<b>Total By Income Source</b>	<b>2000</b>	<b>R 193,789,737.00</b>	<b>R 68,992,361.00</b>	<b>R 45,855,333.00</b>	<b>R 38,351,236.00</b>	<b>R 37,922,365.00</b>	<b>R 49,957,904.00</b>	<b>R 251,166,381.00</b>	<b>R 989,716,782.00</b>	<b>R 1,668,751,939.00</b>
<b>Debtors Age Analysis By Customer Group</b>										
Organs of State	2200	R 16,158,628.00	R 6,322,294.00	R 4,637,631.00	R 3,624,809.00	R 4,407,682.00	R 9,003,919.00	R 15,960,023.00	R 25,356,218.00	R 85,471,204.00
Commercial	2300	R 75,242,987.00	R 16,947,662.00	R 9,499,479.00	R 8,087,192.00	R 7,294,727.00	R 6,277,048.00	R 33,400,430.00	R 203,321,961.00	R 360,081,546.00
Households	2400	R 102,388,122.00	R 37,722,405.00	R 31,718,223.00	R 26,629,235.00	R 26,219,896.00	R 25,676,837.00	R 211,805,868.00	R 761,038,603.00	R 1,223,196,189.00
Other	2500	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -	R -
<b>Total By Customer Group</b>	<b>2600</b>	<b>R 193,789,737.00</b>	<b>R 68,992,361.00</b>	<b>R 45,855,333.00</b>	<b>R 38,351,236.00</b>	<b>R 37,922,365.00</b>	<b>R 49,957,904.00</b>	<b>R 251,166,381.00</b>	<b>R 989,716,782.00</b>	<b>R 1,668,751,939.00</b>



### 11.21.5 Debtors Incentive Scheme

From the draft data it means that **65%** of all active accounts are recoverable (excluding deceased accounts). If we add 50% of bad debtors as recoverable from the active accounts, the recoverability percentage moves up to **84%**

The inactive debtors (regarded as slow payers) has still been reconciled and will be finalized before 31 May 2022. More incentives can be focused here which will further increase the collectability of old debtor accounts. Looking at the bigger picture after considering the affordability levels, Polokwane can remain a good destination for investments.

### 11.22 Indigent Support

Description	Monthly average	Annually
Rebates on rates (revenue forgone)	1 546 189	18 554 268
Free basic water and electricity	2 404 216	28 850 594
Rebates on basic service charges (revenue forgone)	3 707 329	44 487 948
Purchase of Gel	400 000	4 800 000
Eskom for boreholes (rural areas)	1 641 099	19 693 188
Provision for water in rural areas	5 000 000	49 000 000
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>13 782 167</b>	<b>165 385 998</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.22.1 Indigent management

- Around 13 000 indigents on the system
- AGSA noted that the indigents or their household doing business with government and employment by government.
- In the 2021/22 financial year we have made use of technology by capturing electronic registration on the cloud and implemented a system that flags changes in indigent status monthly.
- Roadshows were conducted during February.
- The whole indigent register is to be revamped and cleansed by 30 June 2022.

### 11.23 Revenue performance

- To date, we have achieved almost **R192 million more** in own revenue collection than budgeted (or 10% over the anticipated budget). This was achieved through efficiency mainly through the use of technology and detailed review and monitoring over the credit control process.

Own revenue	Budget	Over performance
2 045 633 974,00	1 854 000 000,00	191 633 974,00

### 11.24 Revenue enhancement initiatives through technology

Finance and Electrical department working in collaboration with Cigicell (pre-paid bending system service provider) in a joint committee established in September 2021

Use of a software to identify low consumption on our 600+ Large Power Users. This has resulted in R27 million more billing since September 2021.

Use of specific software to identify consumers who are consuming less pre-paid electricity than expected. This has resulted in 334 illegal connections identified which is levied at **R70k** and **R150k** for households and businesses respectively. Around **70 accounts** have attached these penalties whilst the others are being investigated before been billed.

#### 11.24.1 FINANCE MODELLING

For the next 10 years, our Capital Expenditure Framework/Asset Management Plan indicates that we require around **R11 billion** for new infrastructure projects to facilitate growth. The only viable option for now is to invest in PPP on revenue generating models.

Risk based revenue generating model → Municipality and SP share the additional revenue or cost savings.

#### 11.24.2 CASH FLOW STRATEGY

- Municipality developed two main reforms
- Cash flow strategy and Request for Goods and Services (RGS) → Please refer to handouts.

#### 11.24.3 Cash flow strategy methodology

- The revenue/cash inflow capacity is calculated
- The fixed component is calculated
- The savings or cash reserve build up is calculated.
- The remaining allocation is then distributed to the SBUs based on past performance and can be re-allocated accordingly based on priorities.

### 11.24.4 New Budget Approach

- No longer budget engagements between BTO and directorates.
- Directors to take the lead.
- Monthly cash flow allocations to be given as per the cash flow strategy framework.
- Budget (opex and capex) to be established from the allocation.
- Avoid budget allocation for the sake of budgeting Budget must be allocated to projects/activities that can have a full impact rather than allocating some budget to a project that requires much more. This renders the project ineffective.

### 11.24.4 BUDGET ALLOCATION - FIXED MONTHLY COSTS

Description	Amount
Eskom	88 000 000
Lepelle	28 000 000
Fleet management	1 376 000
Waste trucks	4 900 000
Landfill	1 500 000
Security	5 100 000
Munsoft	1 500 000
Fuel	4 000 000
Fleet tracking	1 200 000
Fleet maintenance	1 800 000
Telkom	1 200 000
Salary (inc overtime)	86 000 000
Traffic department	8 000 000
Esilux (BRT VOC)	2 200 000
IT network, printers and other items	3 174 000
<b>Total</b>	<b>237 000 000,00</b>

### 11.24.5 BUDGET ALLOCATION - MONTHLY NET AVAILABLE RESOURCES EXCLUDING CONDITIONAL GRANTS

Description	Amount
Own revenue	218 000 000,00
Equitable share	88 000 000,00
<b>Total own revenue</b>	<b>306 000 000,00</b>
Fixed costs	235 000 000,00
Amount available before savings	71 000 000,00
Savings/Reserve build up	14 000 000,00
<b>Available for distribution</b>	<b>57 000 000,00</b>

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.25 AUDIT OUTCOMES

Financial year	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20
<b>Audit opinion</b>	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

Component	No of audit findings	Result	Verified by Internal Audit	Reviewed by National Treasury	Reviewed by APAC
<b>PPE</b>	2	Addressed	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Revenue</b>	1	Addressed	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>SCM</b>	7	Addressed	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Expenditure</b>	2	Addressed	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Governance</b>	2	Addressed	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>TOTAL</b>	14				

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.25.1 Audit COMMITTEES Outcomes

Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
<b>Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)</b>	To report progress on the audit action plan.	Weekly	Management, internal audit, MMC for Finance and the EM.
<b>Asset management</b>	To report progress on specific asset issues. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
<b>Annual Financial Statement</b>	To report progress on the AFS process plan. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
<b>Audit Committee</b>	To review the annual financial statements and audit action plan.	Quarterly and through special meetings.	Management, internal audit, MMC for Finance and the EM.

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.25.2 Audit paragraph

Audit paragraph	Action
<b>Useful review not adequately reviewed</b>	Addressed in terms of AG recommendations and monitored through those activities
<b>The municipality did not correctly calculate the fair value of land held to earn rentals or for capital appreciation in accordance with the requirements of GRAP 16, Investment property. This was due to inadequate assumptions made and variables used in the valuation methodology which were not supported by reliable and accurate information</b>	Addressed in terms of AG recommendations

Audit paragraph	Action
The municipality's revenue and receivables related to the service charges (Mankweng area) was incorrectly calculated as the estimated consumption used included inaccurate and incomplete information	Addressed in terms of AG recommendations

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.25.3 Plan targets

Indicator	Current result	Desired result
Liquidity ratio	1.07:1	1,5:1
Cash coverage ratio	1 month	2,5 months
National assessment ratio	(R195 million) creditors > cash on hand	R 0 difference or greater than R 0

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.23.4 Cash flow monitoring

DETERMINATION OF MONTHLY DISTRIBUTION	
Description	R'000
Revenue	196 342,42
Less: Monthly commitments	210 000,00
Amount before equitable share	- 13 657,58
Add: Equitable share	81 665,25
Amount before savings	68 007,67
Less: Savings	- 15 000,00
Available for distribution MONTHLY	53 007,67

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

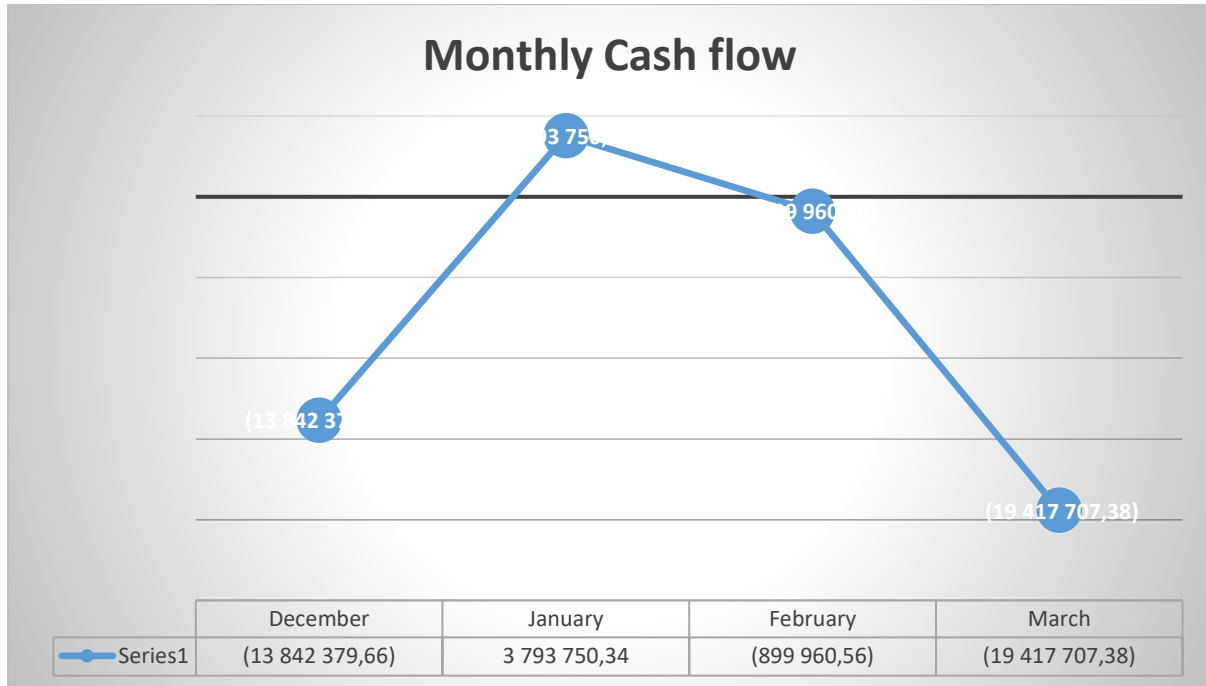


### 11.25.5 CASH FLOW PER DIRECTORATE

Directorate	Allocation	OPEX	CAPEX	Total Expenditure	Over/under expenditure	%
BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE	25 188 551	23 128 561	-	23 128 561	2 059 990	-8%
CHIEF OPERATIONS OFFICE	16 318 909	13 022 389	1 055 172	14 077 561	2 241 348	-14%
COMMUNITY SERVICES	12 885 598	28 525 672	12 363 747	40 889 419	28 003 821	217%
CORPORATE AND SHARED SERVICES	11 133 010	23 188 184	8 012 196	31 200 380	20 067 370	180%
ENERGY SERVICES	40 263 469	11 455 443	11 967 386	23 422 828	16 840 641	-42%
HUMAN SETTLEMENT	87 734	13 529	-	13 529	74 204	-85%
MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S OFFICE	5 643 862	3 006 287	-	3 006 287	2 637 575	-47%
PLANNING AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT	1 964 775	652 876	1 037 323	2 1 690 199	274 576	-14%
PUBLIC SAFETY	608 642	2 934 358	2 817 078	5 5 751 436	5 142 794	845%
TRANSPORT SERVICES	12 962 397	36 230 263	21 234 458	57 464 721	44 502 324	343%
WATER AND SANITATION	52 943 055	23 052 523	-	23 052 523	29 890 533	-56%
<b>Grand Total</b>	<b>180 000 000</b>	<b>165 210 083</b>	<b>58 487 360</b>	<b>223 697 443</b>	<b>43 697 443</b>	<b>31%</b>

### 11.25.6 MONTHLY CASH FLOW GRAPH

## Monthly Cash flow



### 11.25.6 Plan to achieve targets

Indicator	Short term	Medium term	Long term
<b>Liquidity ratio</b>	1,3	1,5	1,5
<b>Action</b>	Reduce creditors by R195 million Increase cash reserve by R180 million	Contain increase creditors by 8% Increase cash reserve by R180 million	Contain increase creditors by 9% Increase cash reserve by R180 million
<b>Cash coverage ratio</b>	1,2	1,98	2,5
<b>Action</b>	Increase cash reserves by R180 million per annum	Increase cash reserves by R180 million per annum	Increase cash reserves by R180 million per annum
<b>National Treasury assessment indicator</b>	R5 Million (cash should exceed creditors)	R15 million (cash should exceed creditors)	R30 million (cash should exceed creditors)

Indicator	Short term	Medium term	Long term
<b>Action</b>	Reduce creditors by R195 million Increase cash reserve by R180 million	Contain increase creditors by 8% Increase cash reserve by R180 million	Contain increase creditors by 9% Increase cash reserve by R180 million

Source: Budget and Treasury Office

### 11.25.7 RISKS TO VIABILITY

- Meter tempering.
- Residents' unwillingness to pay/resistance.
- The operational costs of implementing BRT project.
- Insufficient budgeting for non-cash generating projects.
- Overspending of budgets or inadequate budget management by SBUs.
- Reliance on contracted services as opposed to building internal capacity.
- Slow turnaround times in supporting growth projects in the private sector e.g. housing and commercial developments.
- Overtime management.
- Non utilisation of appropriate funding models i.e. there should be more use of revenue sharing models rather than long term funding or PPP projects that require municipalities to pay from **projected (not guaranteed)** returns that might not be realized.
- Not adapting to zero based budgeting
- Hefty increases by Eskom
- Consumers switching to alternative energy sources
- 

### 11.25.8 Revenue and Cost Optimization

Description	Short term	Medium term	Long term
<b>Sale of land</b>	R60 million	X	X
<b>Impact of implementing catalytic projects of developments</b>	X	X	X
<b>Review of all lease properties to market related rentals</b>	X	X	X
<b>Water metering of Mankweng</b>	R7,8 million p.a.	R8,4 million p.a.	R9,1 million p.a.
<b>Electricity metering of Mankweng</b>	R7 million p.a.	R7,5 million p.a.	R8,2 million p.a.
<b>Use of technology to curb contracted services eg use of trigger alarms to curb physical</b>	X	X	X

Description	Short term	Medium term	Long term
security such as those located at the substation or cables.			
Power banks	R11 million per annum	R12,2 million per annum	R13,3 million per annum
Solar project		X	X
Land fill site extension vs recycling project (Tzaneen Municipality)	R10 million	X	X
Commercialisation (facilities)	R12 million p.a.	X	X
Use of temp labour vs over time job cards to reduce costs.	X	X	X
Fast tracking of the PHA housing projects in particular Garena Phase 2	R4,8 million p.a.	R5 million p.a.	R5,2 million p.a.
Use of internal capacity vs contracted services across the SBUs	X	X	X
Purchase of refuse trucks vs outsourcing	X	X	X

Source: Budget and Treasury Office (2022)

#### 11.25.9 Revenue and Cost Optimization → What has been done already

- Purchased own water tankers
- New waste bid to cover only the city area while the rural clusters will be in house
- Reduction in financial consultants by 100% as the annual financial statements will be done in house as we build capacity and skill transfer has already taken place.
- The use of own staff as far as possible in the Electricity SBU.

#### 11.25.10 Revenue generation from other SBUs

Revenue component	Activity to enhance revenue
Traffic fines	Intergrated system to collate all fines payable within Polokwane's jurisdiction. To be paid when renewing annual license fees
Illegal dumping	Utilizing our fleet to perform monitoring
Clean up fees after conferences	Utilize our cleaners to clear up after conferences for a fee
Hawkers	Create an automated database and ensure debt is collected
Markets	Encourage flea markets and others for a fee

## 11.26 Research and Development

### 11.26.1 City of Polokwane Investor summit

A city development strategy should be developed to determine the status quo and the direction the city should follow to ensure city growth. The strategic document should be able to identify and analyze the key job creating industries (such as manufacturing) through key stakeholder engagements. Once such plan is developed a city summit can be held to attract potential investors from the private and public sector alike

### 11.26.2 Use of early warning underground cable theft alarm system to prevent cable theft

This solution is mainly applied below the soil surface above load carrying cable. It utilizes vibrations to activate and informs that a tamper is detected. The technology is used at other municipalities and will also significantly reduce reliance on physical security and its related costs

### 11.26.3 Revamped IT infrastructure and control centre

Example, a customer should be cable to log faults with pictures on an app. These issues should be than routed to all the various stakeholders such as technicians, relevant managers and the EM for monitoring purposes. This will also hold technicians accountable and reduce overtime due to the data that will be available for oversight reporting

### 11.26.4 Risk to our financial viability

- Non-adherence to the cash flow strategy

- Overtime management especially over emergency overtime for essential services
- Road's concession project
- Illegal connections
- Community disruption as unwillingness to pay
- Over reliance on contracted services and non-utilization of own staff
- Fuel costs
- Not investing in revenue generation projects
- Leeto Project

STATUS QUO



**THE END**

STATUS QUO

---

<sup>i</sup>Section 16A of the Deeds Registry Act, Act 47 of 1937.

<sup>ii</sup>Section 35 the Spatial Planning and land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

<sup>iii</sup>Regulation 20 to the Act read with section 56 of the Spatial Planning and land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

<sup>iv</sup>Municipal delegation of power as amended from time to time read with section 56 of the of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013.

<sup>v</sup>Schedule 1 (v) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

<sup>vi</sup>section 32 read with section 6 (1)(a) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

<sup>vii</sup>section 24 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

<sup>viii</sup>Chapter 4 Part E. section 20 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013